













MY OWN

**REPERTORY**

OF

**ENGLISH WORD-COMBINATIONS**

UTILIZABLE BY INDIAN HIGH SCHOOL TEACHERS  
AND COLLEGE UNDERGRADUATES.

BY

**SARAT CHANDRA MUKERJEE M. A., B. L.,**  
*Emeritus Professor, Canning College, Lucknow.*

*(All rights reserved.)*

**BENARES CITY:**  
**PUBLISHING HOUSE, 27 NAWAPURA.**

*Price Rs. 3/-*

BY THE SAME AUTHOR:

For Matric and S. L. C. Students,

## ALGEBRAICAL EXERCISES WITH SOLUTIONS.

**Third Edition : Brought up-to-date.**

Cr. 8vo. pp. 165 with 19 graph diagrams.

**PRICE ONE RUPEE.**

### SOME RECENT OPINIONS :—

- (1) A very popular manual.—*Modern Review.*
- (2) *Great benefit* I derived in my school days from this book.—*Gokaran Nath Misra, M. A., LL. B., Advocate, Oudh.*
- (3) A handy compendium of the entire syllabus adroitly worked out by a skilled master.—*Educationist.*
- (4) A splendid performance showing much thought and originality.—*Teacher.*
- (5) *A valuable help* to acquire neatness of method and clearness of reasoning.—*Hon'ble P. N. Mukerji M. A., Rai Bahadur Inspector General of Registration, Bengal.*

## PREFACE.

---

The title of the book speaks for itself. It comprises notes written at intervals in the course of a life-long cultivation of English as a foreign tongue for the writer's private study and delectation. The idea of publishing them struck upon him only recently when after retiring from service he could find sufficient leisure to recast them after thorough overhauling from the learner's stand point. Accordingly they are issued as presentation of the result of many arduous labours before the Indian community of students by one of their co-workers in the same field. To the young members of that community this collection may appear as a sort of armoury furnishing ready weapons to combat successfully the bugbear of "the Unseen" in their examination curriculum. To the more elderly amateurs of English Idioms and Phrases it may yield a supply of both pastime and recreation.

In the face of numerous works on English Idioms and Phrases by very able and learned men the publication of this "Repertory" might seem to be a daring feat. But on closer scrutiny it will be seen that the method of treatment of the subject as adopted in the following pages is different from that followed by the former. Its distinctive features consist in :—

1. The grammatical part of speech affixed to various groups of combined words viewed as units;
2. Substitution of single word synonyms for the combinations as far as possible;
3. Exhibition of "Affinities" and "Contrasts" by means of the Symbols "Cp" and "Contra".
4. Attractive remarks on special grammatical points together with warnings against snares and pitfalls;

5. Use of thicker types in the body of *misused* phrases serving to bring into relief the *vital* constituent of the Idioms;

6. Indication, wherever necessary, by means of italics, of implications underlying the sense of the phrases.

Citations in illustration of the use and meaning of phrases have been gleaned from the range of the compiler's own reading. To show how even a very few good books, studied with assiduous care, may be turned to account, he has (not without a spirit of thankfulness) largely drawn upon a limited number of his special favourites among which the following deserve mention: viz., Rowland E. Prothero's picturesque and historical "Psalms in human life"; Sir John Seely's monumental "Ecce Homo"; the late Right Hon'ble George William Russell's bright and piquant "Collections and Recollections" and admirably portrayed "Life of Gladstone"; and last though not least, the Annotation of Shakespeare's Plays by K. Deighton, wherein that master dramatist's semi-archaic diction has been given modernized reading in the annotator's polished and scholarly style. Among the passages quoted are to be seen some precious gems which along with others of outstanding merit, are in themselves instructive to a degree.

An apology is deemed necessary for several typographical errors that have crept into the work. The compiler, alone and singlehanded, passed the manuscript through the press, and his weak eye-sight due to age is responsible for confusion in some places between such similar small types as "n" and "v", "e" and "c", "g" and "y" &c. These slips are too obvious to need exhibition on a separate list of *corrigenda*. But two gross errors cannot be slurred over. On page 50 line 15 the readers are requested to change "behalf" into "behoof"; and on page 566 line 5, "upon" into "open".

• विराम गेह

27, NAWAPURA  
BENARES CITY,  
15th June 1919.

S. C. M.-

## My own Repertory OF English Word-Combinations.

---

Two or more simple words so combined as to convey some sense form what is called an *expression*. All such expressions are usually divided into three classes.

**I.** Compounds or Compound words—*i. e.*, words so combined as to cause by the union one single or unit word. The union is sometimes indicated by a hyphen linking the separate words, as *self-assertion*, and at other times without such sign as *Vainglory*, *Makeshift*, &c.

**II.** An Idiom. "This is a peculiar form of expression the principle of which cannot be carried out beyond the particular instance; as *get thee gone*. But we cannot say either *Make thee gone* or *He got himself gone*." CRAIK. It is a kind of surprise on account of its deviation from common rules of grammatical or practical composition or usual sense of some word in the expression, as, to *run a race* where the verb *run* which is usually intransitive has from its cognate relation with the word *race* has been forced, as it were, to become transitive.


**III.** Paradigmatic phraseologies.—These are not idiomatic.—They "may serve as models or moulds for others to any extent"—CRAIK.

The English language is very rich not only in vocabulary, but also in phraseology. *Phrases* are mostly devices to express sense of a single word by means of combination of two or more words. Here the prepositions are mostly brought into



requisition. Each phrase thus made is regarded in the light of a single word and is "parsed" as belonging to that category in the Parts of Speech to which the displaced single word (*i. e.*, the one of which it is merely a substitute) belongs, *e. g.*

- (g) Noun phrase: *Man-at-arms i. e.*, soldier.
- (b) Adjective phrase: *of importance* in "matter of importance" *i. e.*, important; *a good-for-nothing i. e.*, (worthless) fellow.
- (c) Adverbial phrase: *By degrees i. e.*, gradually.
- (d) Prepositional phrase: *In spite of i. e.*, despite.
- (e) Verbal phrase: *Call in question i. e.*, question or doubt.
- (f) Transitive phrase (one that changes an intransitive into a transitive verb): *Fall into a habit i. e.*, adopt, *Fall foul of i. e.*, attack.

 In the following arrangement the alphabetical order has been observed. The principal word in the combination or the *key-word*, as it is called, guides the arrangement. It is printed in Bold letters.

A. There are several points about the indefinite article which cannot fail to strike an Indian student —

1. Though singular in meaning its use with plural words such as *dozen*, *hundred* and other numerals; (explainable as forming a single group or unit); also such as *few*, *many people*, *handful*.

(a) My class consists of only *a dozen* pupils.

(b) (Shylock to Antonio). *Many a* time and oft

In the Rialto you have rated me—SHAKESPEARE (M. V.)  
*i. e.* Too frequently indeed you have reproached me  
 in the stock-exchange of Venice.

(c) Party is the madness of many for the gain of a few.—POPE.

(d) The Indians are a law-abiding people.

e) This country is governed by a handful of civilians.

2. Its allocation. As an article its usual grammatical place is (a) before the noun; (b) before the adjective when the noun is qualified; (c) and before the adverb when it qualifies the adjective. But this order of sequence is not observed in the following cases.

(i) With the word *many* as "*Many* a man of distinction was present at the funeral. (But use the phrase *great many*, or *good many*, then the natural order is restored, the following noun being made plural as "*A great many men* of distinction attended the funeral).

Cp. Full *many* a gem of purest ray serene.

The dark unfathomed caves of ocean bear,

Full *many* a flower is born to blush unseen.

And waste its fragrance on the desert air.—GRAY'S ELEGY.

(ii) When used with pronominal adjectives *such* and *what* e. g., *such* an event; *what* a scene!

(iii) When used with adjectives, qualified by the adverbs *as*, *how*, *so*, and *too*; e. g. It is *as good* a lesson as any that you may lay to heart; The shock of *so calamitous* an event can hardly be endured. It is indeed *too great* a shock to be borne.

3 Though indefinite its use before so definite an object as proper name e. g.

A *Daniel* come to judgment! Yes, a *Daniel*—SHAK (M. V.) i. e. One who in point of wisdom is equal to Daniel.

[Note.—In negative sentences or where the existence is denied, the indefinite article should be changed into "any"; an error of idiom to which Indian writers are liable.

He did not pay *any* attention to my admonitions.

I never write to him for *any* help.

In the absence of *any* mitigating circumstance the prisoner was convicted of murder and sentenced to death.]

**A-1.** Here is the combination of the *first letter* of the Alphabet with the *first numerical figure* or digit. So, it is like "double first", which denotes a person who has taken first-class University honours in two subjects. This combination is colloquially attached as an adjective to vessels, conveyances and articles of trade and manufacture, as also to other common nouns as synonymous with "first rate" "first class" "of the first order" and "of the first water".

The superior ships are marked in the Lloyd's register as A-1.

The heir-expectant of even an ordinarily rich person nowadays does not consider his life to be worth living unless he has a number of A-1 Motor-cars in his garage.

In this connection **note**:—*dux* of a school or college class, *doyen* of a profession (*e. g.*, Mr. S. is the *doyen* of the Calcutta bar, the *elite* of a community, *Pink* of courtesy, *flower* of chivalry &c.

**Cp.** A crack fellow; A crack jest.

**Aback.**—*To be taken aback* = To be surprised—To be taken by surprise = To be assailed in the mind in a manner never expected.

**Note.**—This is usually a passive-verb phrase—In the active voice "to take one *aback*" is less frequent than, "to take him by surprise"—*i. e.*, startle.

Shylock, *taken aback*, is now willing that Antonio should be set free upon payment of thrice the sum lent.—DEIGHTON.

He displayed such a rude temper that I was quite *taken aback*. [This is a metaphor from a vessel at sea driven to a backward course by a suddenly veering wind.]

**ABC.** This union of the first three letters of the alphabet is the short form used to denote the *alphabet* itself *i. e.*, the first beginning of any learning; the elements, the rudiments, or the first principles (of a subject).

He does not know the very ABC of Political Economy.

**Abeysance.** "The office was understood not to be abolished but simply *to be in abeyance*." *i. e.*, in a state of suspension, not extinction.

The party is *in abeyance* and in time it will revive.—MR. ASQUITH.

Through Manning and Hope-Scott the influence of the Catholic revival reached the young member for Newark (Mr. Gladstone) and they were the God-fathers of his eldest son. After their secession to Rome in 1851 this profound friendship *fell into abeyance*—G. W. E. RUSSELL.

[Mark the two different prepositions *In* and *Into* as used after the words *Be* and *Fell*—The former is a verb of *rest*, the latter of *motion*—so, rights are said to *be in abeyance* when they are not exercised. "In abeyance" is an adjective phrase (predicative *i. e.*, used only in the predicate).

**Abide.**—1. *To abide by* (V. T.) = To stick to, or remain steadfast to (a person or cause); Also, To take the consequences of (an act, deed, or conduct).

I will *abide by* the rules of discipline *i. e.*, observe, not hold back from them; so you should *abide by* the terms of your contract *i. e.*, act upon them. [The past tense and *p. p.* of the verb in the phrase is *abided*—not *abode* as in the case of its simple use.]

2. *To abide with* (V. T.) = To put up with = endure or suffer (misery, insult, one's own lot or destiny).

**Ab initio** : (adv.) a Latin phrase = from the beginning [It often qualifies an adjective, not an adverb].

The contract is *ab initio* void, or the contract is void *ab initio*.

**Above**—1. *Above all*. (adv) = most prominently = as the most important of all = before any other consideration.

**Above,**

**Abraham.**

(Remember) This *above all*: to thine own self be true,  
And it must follow, as the night the day,  
Thou canst not them be false to any man—SHAK.

On the one side were the consciousness of talents, achieved success, a growing reputation, congenial pursuits, material comfort, affection for his home, kindred, friends, and *above all*, his (Henry Martin's 1781-1812) love for Lydia Grenfell—On the other side were exile, solitude, obscure employment &c.—R. E. PROTHERO.

If a good system of agriculture, if unrivalled manufactures, if the establishment of schools for reading and writing, if the general practice of kindness and hospitality, and *above all*, if a scrupulous respect and delicacy towards the female sex are among the points that denote a civilized people, then the Hindus are not inferior in civilization to the people of Europe—SIR T. MUNRO.

My theme is not Sir William Harcourt the politician, but Sir William Harcourt the man, the member of society—*above all*, the talker.—G. W. E. RUSSELL.

[See the citation under "Leave alone."]

2. *Above board*: (a pred. adj. or adv.) = in the sight of competitors (or fellow players at game of cards,) = using no tricks or under-hand means ∴ free from all trickery.

Cp. "Fair and square." [Board = card-playing table from which the metaphor is taken.]

**Ab ovo.**—(adv.) a Latin phrase, literally = from the egg (the primordial creation). It is used with the verbs *relate* *describe* and others of like meaning—

Cp. "To begin with."

**Abraham.**—1. *Abraham men*: itinerant mendicants, vagrants.

[From the Abraham ward of Bethlehem in London.]

2, Hence, *To sham Abraham*: To simulate sickness; To malingering—

Cp. To play 'possum.'

**Abreast**—1. *Be abreast of the times* = keep pace with the progressive movements of the modern age.

Cp. 'up to date.' ("Abreast" is adv.)

• The 3rd edition of Alg. Ex. is *abreast of the times*. The present volume will be indispensable to all who wish to keep abreast of modern knowledge.—SIR F. TREVES.

A graduate's knowledge must be broadly *abreast of the latest research*.  
—J. N. SARGAR.

[But it may be used prepositionally by the omission of the preposition "of".]

Contra. *Behind the times*.

2. So, *Be abreast with the progressive thoughts of the age*.

**Abstract**—*In the abstract*: (adv.): (considered) apart from any particular concrete object or thing with which it is connected.

Christ forbids his followers to appeal to the secular courts, not because ~~he~~ disapproved of criminal law *in the abstract*, but for the same reason for which he systematically passed over every thing relating to politics and government. —ECCO HOMO.

**Abroad**.—*The school master is abroad*. Here the figure metonymy—concrete for the abstract—is used—*The school master* = Education. *Abroad* = spreading or expanding, not confined within the four walls of a school or university in a particular locality.

\* Recollect that, 'Knowledge is power.' You have now laid the foundation of it among an acute and intellectual people (the Indians). Its diffusion is inevitable. *The school master is abroad* with his primer, pursuing a course which no power of man can hereafter arrest.—MR. RICARDO [Essays on India 1832].

Cp. Throughout his public career Guizot wielded the *school master's ferule*.—TIMES.

**N. B.**—The sentence is sometimes *ironically* used as=good education has left this country and has transplanted itself elsewhere.

**Abundance.**—*Out of the abundance of the heart the mouth speaketh.* This is often quoted from the Bible (Matt. xii, 34). 'Heart' is the seat of emotions. When one is too full of (or overflows with) emotion, it must give itself utterance or vent by "word of mouth."

**Accident.**—1. *By accident* (adv.)=accidentally i. e., by chance.

I met him *by accident* i. e., without pre-arrangement or design.

2. *Separable accident.* (In Logic this is one of the Heads of Predicables)=not an essential attribute belonging to the subject.

That Mr. C is a judge of a High Court is a *separable accident* i. e., due not to the fact of his being Mr. C, but due to the accidents of birth, education, an opportune vacancy, and favourable circumstances.

3. *The Chapter of accidents*=series of events that happen without any pre-determined or antecedent cause. ∴=simple or absolute chance.

Trusting too much to *the Chapter of accidents* he does not think it worth while exerting himself to earn a suitable livelihood.

As he was self-willed, unreasonable, and even refractory, I withheld all help from him and thus left him to *the Chapter of accidents*.

**Accord.**—1. *With one accord*—(adv.) unanimously: with perfect agreement; *negm con.* i. e., no one contradicting or dissenting. "The proposal was carried *with one accord*."

**Cp.** Hit together.

2. *Of one's own accord*—(adv.)=Freely=without compulsion=quite voluntarily; *Motu proprio*, as, "Did you come of *your own accord*?"

The bare mention of a topic which interests Mr. Gladstone opens the floodgates and submerges a province—But the torrent does not wait for the invitation. If not invited it comes *of its own accord*.—RUSSELL.

A thing that grows from within and *of its own accord* is said to develop itself.

**Account** —1. *To account for* : (V. T.). To explain:

This (fluency + wit + argument) is a very striking combination and goes far *to account for* the transcendental success which Plunket attained at the Bar and in the House.—RUSSELL.

2. *On account of* (property or any cause) = Because of.

On account of illness he could not come i. e., because he was ill.

3 *On no account* (adv.) = For no reason whatever ; By no means.

I was early taught that though I might be a fly on the wheel of the official hierarchy, I was in the eyes of the people a representative of the government and entitled as such to rights and privileges *on no account* to be foregone.—SIR H COTTON.

4. *Leave any thing out of account*. (V. T) [In this phrase “account” = Calculation or consideration] i. e., consider as of no value ; consider not all.

Contra : Take into account = regard as worth considering  
= Make allowance for.

He (MR. GLADSTONE) is so consumed by zeal for great subjects that he *leaves out of account* the possibility that they may not interest other people.—RUSSELL.

5. *On my account* (adv.) = For my sake ; to oblige me ;  
Please to make the inquiry *on my account*.

So generally, *on one's account* = for his service.

6. *Call to account* (V. T.). Require explanation from (a person for his conduct).

Cp Bring to book.



7. He stopped his tailor's mouth with a payment *on account* (adv.) *i. e.*, in part. So I paid Rs 100 *on account i. e.*, as part payment.

8. Give a good account of (V. T.). Furnish satisfactory proof of happy or successful result as regards.

English footmen and grooms have given as good an account of themselves in South Africa as the sons of the houses they served—RUSSELL.

9. Turn to account. (V. T.). = utilize or make useful. (Here *account* = profitable use).

I was able to turn my interview with the governor to account.

So, find one's account in.

This picture gave me many a lesson which was turned to good account on the Judicial bench.—SIR. H. HAWKINS.

Hamlet at once conceives the idea of turning the presence of the players to account.—DEIGHTON.

[Beware of using "into" for "to."]

Cp. Profit by.

10. He is gone to his account *i. e.*, dead (referring to the explanation to be given for conduct on the Day of Judgment.

No reckoning made, but sent to my account.

With all my imperfections on my head—SHAK.

11. By all accounts = according to all accounts *i. e.*, according to information received from all sorts and classes of people.

The last Congress was by all accounts a great success.

Ace.—Within an ace of = very near; near enough, to reach; on the point of.

In these days of C. I. D. over-vigilance he came within an ace of falling a victim *i. e.*, very narrowly escaped.

Cp. Hair-breadth escape.

**Acquiesce.**—*Acquiesce* (V. I) with the preposition in following acquires the force of a transitive verb.

I *acquiesced* in the arrangement i. e., tacitly accepted it.

What the Irish *acquiesced* in the English radicals would not denounce.

**Acquit.**—1. To *acquit* a person of a charge = declare that he is innocent

2. To *acquit oneself* of: (reciprocal trans. V.) Discharge (debt, duty &c)

I *acquitted myself* of the trust to my own satisfaction.

3. To *acquit oneself* (without the prep. of: (recip. Intr. V.) followed by an adverb or adverbial phrase):

He *acquitted himself* well i. e., behaved or acted his part well.

He *acquitted himself with credit* i. e., creditably.

**Act.**—1. (Caught or detected) *in the very act.* (adv) = just while committing a crime.

Cp Red handed; *In flagrante delicto*

2. I will *act upon* your advice i. e., carry it into effect.

3. A gentleman *acts up to* his promise i. e., puts it into practice, fulfils it. (V. T.) so, a man of honour *acts up to* a standard of worthy conduct.

4. *Act of God* = result or operation of *natural force* beyond human control; as, cyclone, flood, great fire, sea-accidents.

**Adam.**—1. *The old Adam.* (Fig. concrete for the abstract): The frailty inherent in human nature.

Cp. Original sin: "In *Adam's* fall, we sinned all"—

He had the *snack of the old Adam* in him—SHAK.

Consideration like an angel came

And whipped the *offending Adam* out of him—SHAK (H. V)

2. *Modern Adam* = Jesus Christ.

Cp.

Till one *greater Man.*

Restore us, and regain the *blissful seat*—MILTON.

3. *Adam's apple*: (u) The natural prominence on the fore-part of the throat.

4. *Adam's ale* (or *wine*): Simple water; *Aqua pura*.

5. *Not to know a man from Adam*: Not to be able to recognise himself at all.

A popular clergyman was stopped one day in the street by an aggrieved parishioner whom to use a homely phrase, he did not know from Adam.—  
G. W. E. RUSSELL.

**Ad.** 1. *Ad hoc*. [*Lat.* adv.] = For this special purpose  
My papers were arranged *ad hoc*.

2. *Ad libitum*. [*Lat.* adv.]: At pleasure; as much as possible; To any extent.

Drink water *ad libitum*: this is the general direction which physicians give to their cholera patients

3. *Ad nauseam* [*Lat.* adv.] To disgusting extent.

The question was discussed *ad nauseam* i. e., to a very tiresome extent.  
We have been told *ad mansaem* that &c.

4. *Ad valorem*: (*Adj.* and *Adv.*) According to the value.

Taxes are levied *ad valorem* on imported goods, (*adv.*)

The imported goods are subjected to *ad valorem* duties, (*adj.*)

**Address**—1. *To address oneself to a person*: To speak to him,

2. *To address oneself to a task*: To apply oneself to it.

3. A man *pays his addresses* to a lady: Courts her; woos her with a view to marriage. [Note the plural].

**Advantage**.—1. *To have the advantage of* (V. T.) To be in a more advantageous or favourable position than (another person).

Also, To know him without being known to him.

2. *To gain an advantage over*: (V. T.) To acquire the

above-mentioned advantageous or favourable position which was not existent before.

[Note, the difference in use between the two articles and between *of* and *over*]

3. To **take advantage of**: (V. T.) To avail oneself of one's favourable position in respect of (person, thing &c.)

I took *advantage* of his goodness in getting him to sign the obnoxious document.

I took *advantage* of my rival's absence to twist the case to his prejudice.

**Afloat**.—1. To *keep oneself afloat*: (Lit.) To prevent oneself from sinking; (*Fig*) from getting into debt; To keep oneself out of debt.

Cp. To pay one's way;—To hold (or keep) one's head above water.

2. To *set* (a scheme) *afloat*. (V. T.) To publish (it); To give (it) currency.

Cp. To keep in full swing.

**A fortiori**.—(Adv): With greater force or reason;

A is greater than B, and B is greater than C; *a fortiori* A is greater than C.

**After**.—1. *After all*. (Adverbial Conjunction): Although every thing has been considered; yet; Nevertheless.

[This phrase introduces some circumstance or fact of an *attractive* or *impressive* nature.]

The forensic manner of speech in which Sheridan was a head and shoulders higher than any of his local contemporaries is, *after all*, distinct from parliamentary eloquence.—RUSSELL.

*After all*, philosophy must prevail over passion.

*After all*, the benevolent—despot theory is not a bad one.—PIONNER.

Cp. Upon the whole; At most.

2. *After a man's own heart*: (Pred. adj.): exactly such as one desires,

3. *Afternoon of life*: The latter part of decaying old age.

Cp. The sunset of life (i. e., its declining period).

4. *After-thought*. (n): Reflection that comes after an act., Later expedient or explanation.

In that (Prime Minister's Table to the Dominions) there was not a word about India and the cable to the Viceroy to the Secretary of state was an *after-thought*.—MR. HORNIMAN.

**Again**.—1. *Ever and again* (adv.) Incessantly.

2. *Now and again* (adv.) = occasionally.

3. *As much again* (n) = twice as much; so *half as much again* = as much and half of it.

4. *Time and again* = (adv.) Repeatedly; *again and again*.

We may prove that we are this, and that, and the other—our orators have proved it *time and again*—the census has proved it,—J. R. LOWELL.

**Age**.—1. To be or come of age (V. I.) = To attain majority in the eye of law i. e., 19th year in some cases and 22nd in others in India.

(A) *Of age*: (adj.) Old; as he is fifteen years of age. [It is never used in the sense of "aged" which is equivalent to "very old."]

2. He is over age = past the age of discretion i. e., 14th year,

3. Feebleness of age is his excuse i. e., old age.

4. *Age-long*: (adj.) Lasting through ages. e. g., *age-long* customs and institutions of a nation; So, *Life-long*.

**Agree**.—1. To agree together. (V. I.) with plural nominative = agree, as, we did not agree together i. e., get on with one another.

2. He agreed to my proposal i. e., consented to it.

3. He *agreed with* me in the matter = as regards this subject he and I were of one mind or opinion.

4. *To agree upon* (V. T.) Settle in concert with each other; Concertedly arrive at; jointly decide as to.

Goneril told Regan that they must *agree upon* a plan as to the way in which they were to treat their father.

Deferred Annuities do not come into effect until such a specified period as may be *agreed upon*.

Cp. "Hit together."

5. *To agree to disagree or differ* = come to the understanding that agreement is not possible.

6. *To do or make the agreeable to* = (V. T.) behave entertainingly towards, (as great persons do to their guests); use polite language to.

Cp. "Speak one fair."

"To do or make the amiable to" is an equivalent phrase.]

**Ahead.**—1. "The times *a head* (n) Immediate future (course of events directly in the line of our onward movement).

If we satisfy ourselves with Lord Tennyson's chilly doctrine that

"The course of time will swerve,

Crook and turn upon itself in many a backward streaming curve"

We knock the heart out of all mainly exdearver for *the times ahead*—  
RUSSELL.

2. So, *Breakers ahead*; the young do not look ahead at all.

**Air.**—1. Opinions regarding Hindu revivalism are *in the air* (adj) i. e. spreading about = gaining ground.

Additional war taxation is *in the air*. i. e. talked about everywhere.

Armed rebellion aided by foreign intervention was, *in the air*—PROTHERO.

2. He is building *castles in the air* (v) (forming) visionary projects.

Cp. Alanaschar's dream. So, This project is *quite* *in the air* = dreamy ; uncertain.

3. *To take the air*. (v. i.) = To air oneself = go out doors *i. e.* go out into fresh air (for the sake of health or exercise)

4. *To beat the air* : (v. i.) To strive in vain.

We talk of expending the Legislative councils and possibly of increasing the number of the executive : all this is *beating the air* if these councils have definite powers on which to exercise their brains.—TIMES OF INDIA.

5. *To take air* : (V. I.) = Become known. [Note the omission of the article in the phrase].

6. *To give oneself airs* = To affect a pompous appearance or assume a conceited and arrogant attitude. [Note. the plural.]

They shook off the thralldom of an economic superstition which gives itself the air of an exact science.

Madam is in *her airs*, I protest.—FIELDING.

Cp. A *padjandrum* (a pompous pretender) ; a *petit maitre* ; Jack in office.

"The wealthy curled darlings of our nation"—SHAK.

**Aladin.**—*Aladin's lamp or ring* ; These were the two things, ~~which~~, as stated in the Arabian Nights' Entertainments, gave Aladin (son of a poor tailor in China) Magical power to call to his aid an exceedingly powerful Spirit through whom he obtained whatever he wished—Hence, the phrase is often used to denote anything that brings supreme good fortune or happiness, as it were, by magic.

**Alert.**—*On the alert* (Pred. adj) = vigilant; watchful; On the look-out; on the *qui vive* (usually preceded by the verbs *be* and *keep*). .

Speculation was keenly *on the alert* about the writer's identity.

Cp.—“Keep one's weather-eye open;” “wide-awake”; cute.

**Alive.** 1. *Alive to* = sensitive to; susceptible to.

Cambridge is as keenly *alive* as Oxford *to* the social needs of great cities and the problems of the coming hour.

2. *Alive with* = Crowded or thronged with.

The market is *alive with* buyers and sellers.

3. The city is *Alive with* excitement = animated by; brisk or sprightly with.

**All.** 1. *At all* (adv) = In the least degree; under any circumstance (used in an affirmative *conditional* clause, or usually in a *negative* sentence or with the word *not* preceding it).

Nor fame I aught, nor for her favours call;

She comes unlooked for, if she comes *at all*—POPE.

I could not *at all* take home to myself the peculiar meaning of your words.

My wants are small, I care not *at all*

If my debts are paid when due.—H. CLIFTON.

If an impetus for promoting social reform should emanate from any place *at all* in India, it should be from Bombay.—G. C. WHITWORTH.

2. *After all*: (see *After*.)

3. *In all*: (adv) = All included.

The land-lady presented several bills for small items and I settled my account by paying her £ 20 *in all*.

Cp.—“All found.”

4. *All in all* (pronoun) = Every thing in all respects.

Trust me *not at all* or *all in all*—TENNYSON.

He was a man, take him for *all in all*,

I shall not look upon his like again.—SHAKESPEARE.



5. *All along* (adv) = Throughout; from the beginning onwards.

His old master's wits are all shattered in pieces : to prevent this, he (the fool) has *all along* been toiling his force to the utmost.—STAKES-PEARE'S CHARACTERS.

(But, *all along of* is preposition = Owing to or due to ; as "it is all along of you that I succeeded")

6. *And all found*: (adv) with all necessities provided.

I had given him a situation under government, livery *and all found*.—SIR H. HAWKINS.

7. Whether you be absent, or being present remain reticent, it is *all one to me*. i. e. has the same result in so far as I am concerned, (used after two or more alternative statements.)

8. *All the same* (conj) = nevertheless ; notwithstanding ; even under different circumstances. ["all," (adv.) = quite, as in "All at once," "all too soon."]

My rival's influential friend has been busy making damaging statements ; *all the same*, I will not withdraw my candidature. (Here even one preceding circumstance has been enough)

9. *All but* (adv) = almost ; every thing short of being.

Simplicity in Sunday meals was an *all but* universal rule in those days.

10. *All round* (adj) : He is an *all round* member of the staff. i. e. possessed of varied talents ; good at many subjects.

It is doubtful whether Mr. Labouchere is the absolute and *all round* cynic that he would seem to be.—RECOLLECTIONS.

Genius apart, there is much to be said for the old university ideal of the "*all round man*," not the superficial smatterer who knows something about everything and much about nothing.—ISM.

11. *All the year round*: (adv) Throughout the year ; from the beginning of the year to its end. (*Round* is an adverb intensifying the sense of the adverbial phrase *all the year*.)

After the general meeting is over, the Executive committee should work *all the year round*.

12.\* *All and sundry*. (Pronoun) = Each (individually) and all (collectively) = every one high or low.

Cp.—Every man Jack.

Then (in 1835) the Court was a social gathering of great people well acquainted with each other, over which the sovereign presided, and in which he could talk freely to *all and sundry* who came within the charmed circle of his presence.—GRENVILLE.

N. B.—A notable feature of the word *all* is its adverbial use in the sense “wholly” or “quite” (a) Before an adjective as, he was *all* wild with despair. (b) Before adverbial phrase to make it intensive, (but not before a single-word adverb) as *all of a sudden* (not all suddenly); *all too soon*; *all of a heap*, *all at once*, *all the same*.

In this connection the combination *all the more* and others of the same kind, viz. *all* + *the* + a comparative adjective, require special notice. The entire phrase is adverbial. *All* is adverb modifying the adjective phrase *the more*; *the* is not an article, but an adverb = By that (measure or degree or proportion) qualifying the following comparative adjective *more* etc. The idea of *proportionality* pervades the phrase and this is suggested by a *causal* antecedent or consequent, the latter being introduced by *from*, *through* and by conjunctions *if*, *when* etc.

“I respect you *all the more* for your refusal of my request.” *i. e.* my respect for you is increased in proportion to the *added* quantity, as it were, of your (honourable) refusal.

Deformity which conceals itself under a pleasing fair outside appears *all the more horrid* from its internal contrast.—DELIUS.

So, I felt *all the better* for the change.

France, learning the cause of Lear’s displeasure, *all the more eagerly* presses his suit.—DEIGHTON.

I believe India's future will be great and for my own part I believe it will be *all the greater* through her association with Great Britain.—LORD CARMICHALE.

I believe this (hope of improving English) to be a mistake and that in many cases they would write *all the better* English if they had not gone on to the M. A. degree.—HOMERSHAM COX.

The inadequacy of this preparation is *all the more manifest* when it is remembered that they are expected to imbibe raw culture through the medium of a foreign tongue.—DR. MACKICHAN.

**Contra.**—None the less (adv); None the worse; and others of the same kind.

**Alma.**—*Alma Mater* = Fostering mother. This phrase is applied by a student to his college or University.

**Almighty.**—*The Almighty Dollar*, that great object of universal devotion throughout our land, seems to have no genuine devotees in these peculiar villages.—W. IRVING.

[Dollar is the principal American coin as Rupee is Indian].

∴ *The Almighty Rupee* would mean the great power which money exercises].

Cp. money makes the mare go.

**Alone.**—To leave or let alone: [See Leave and Let.]

**Along.**—1. I go along with you in this matter i. e., concur with you.

2. All along of—[See All.]

• **Aloud.**—He is *thinking aloud* i. e., soliloquising.

• **Alpha.**—*Alpha and Omega* (the first and the last letter of the Greek alphabet) = the beginning and the end.

I am *Alpha and Omega*, the beginning and ending, the first and the last —Rev. xxii, 13.

The quality of the teacher is *the alpha and omega* of educational efficiency.—LORD CHELMSFORD.

The Indian Cincinnatus fails (in Parliament) because he has so frequently and unashamedly been told by Viceroy in public that he is *the Alpha and Omega* of intellect.—E. NORTON (LOOKER—ON).

The political association in which I stood was to me at the time the *alpha and omega* of public life —GLADSTONE.

Cp. Be all and end-all.

**Altar.**—To *lead to the altar*: (V. T.) To marry.

I had the honour and happiness to *lead to the altar* Honoria Countess of Lyndon, widow of the late Right Hon. Sir Charles Lyndon K. B.—THACKERAY.

**Alter.**—*Alter ego* (Latin) (u)=another myself i. e., an inseparable friend.

• Cp. *Fidus Achates*.

**Amende.**—*Amenle*: honorable. (French) (u) A frank public apology and reparation.

The accused in this case of defamation made **an amende honorable** and the court allowed its withdrawal.

**Amiss**—1. *I take* that remark *amiss* (V. T.) i. e., I resent it, or I take it ill; take offence at it.

2. No pleasure of body or spirit *came amiss* (V. I.) to Lord Houghton i. e., seemed to be awkward or untowardly.

**Amour.**—*Amour propre* (n) = self love; vanity.

**Amuck**—To *run amuck* (V. I.): To rush about frantically attacking all that comes in the way.

There is a jingo type of journalism which *runs amuck* at every progressive measure.—LEADER

**And.**—1. For *miles and miles* not a creature could be seen i. e., many miles.

2. There are *books and books* i. e., good books and bad books mixed together.

**Angel.**—1. *Ministering Angel* = A person who as a messenger is sent by God to render service in times of distress.\*

O woman \* \* \* \*  
When pain and anguish wring the brow,  
*A ministering angel* thou.—SCOTT.

2. **Cp.** A guardian angel o'er his life presiding  
Doubling his pleasures, and his cares dividing—S. ROGERS.

So, *Avenging Angel*.

**Another.**—1. *One way or another.* (adv.) = In some way; or in any manner.

The proposal does not affect our school one way or another.

[N. B.—Take care not to use *the* for *an*.]

2. *Go upon another tack*: (V. I.) *Figuratively*, Take or follow a different line of action or policy.

**Animal.**—1. *Animal spirits*: (n) plural: vivacity and ardour as characteristic of a healthy animal. Natural buoyancy. Health and energy.

Puerile puns, personal banter, and good stories collected from other people are all that the books disclose.—*Animal spirits* did the rest.—(Reference to the Biographer of Bishop Wilberforce.)

2. *Animal passions* (n) ["Animal" as in the preceding phrase is adjective i. e., characteristic of animal viewed as a sentient being apart from his intellectual or spiritual part]: Fleshly lusts or desires; sensualities; Carnalisms.

3. *Animal magnetism* = Mesmerism.

**Answer.**—1. To answer (V. T.) a purpose = To serve, suit, or fulfil it.

2. To answer (V. I.) to a description = correspond to it in the way of resemblance.

Christ's conception of practical goodness answers to his ideal of a right state of mind.—ECCÆ HOMO.

*Answer to my hopes.*

3. That scheme of yours will *not answer*, (V. I.) i. e., fail.

**Anterior.**—*Anterior to reason* (adj.) = Intuitive.

Sometimes great truths are perceived not by reasoning or deduction but by that innate faculty which is *anterior to reason*.

**Anti.**—*Anti-climax* = A sentence in which the ideas first increase in force and then end in something less important and striking, e. g.

I think the hon'ble member's proposal an outrageous violation of constitutional propriety, a daring departure from traditional policy, and *in short, a great mistake* —PALMERSTON.

**Anxious.** 1. I am *anxious that* this should be done, i. e. I earnestly desire it; am *anxious for it*.

The agriculturists are anxious for rain.

2. I am *anxious about* the matter; i. e., troubled by it; uneasy on account of it (as my son's serious illness).

3. The magistrate is *anxious lest* a lenient punishment should fail to have any deterrent effect on the criminal.

(Note.—Here the conjunction is not "that" as in (1), because the noun clause after *anxious* is not what is *desired* but what is *feared*).

**A posteriori**: (Adv) [Reasoning] from effect to cause; Inductively.—(Latin).

**Contra.**—*A priori* (i. e. Deductively).

**Appearance.**—1. *To all appearance*: (adv) = apparently: so far as can be seen: it fully appears that.

As he lay *to all appearance* asleep, he was often heard repeating to himself the words, "come Lord Jesus, into thy hands I commend my spirit." —PROTHERO.

2 *To keep up appearances* = maintain an outward show of better circumstances.

3. *To save appearances* = To preserve a good outside.

[This is the practice of "the shabby-genteel" folk who retain traces of better days.]

**N. B.**—Carefully mark the *plural* in the last two phrases.

**Apple.**—1. *Apple of Sodom* or *Dead-sea apple* <sup>(a)</sup>  
Figuratively, anything which is deceptively attractive as disappointing expectation.

According to old writers this is a fruit of fair appearance which turns to ashes when plucked. In some parts of India a fruit called *मकल फल* Makal-phal actually exists the exterior of which is most tempting and which when peeled and opened yields a horridly nauseating smell.

**Cp.**—A goodly apple rotten at the heart;

O! what a goodly outside falsehood hath,—SHAK. (M. V.)

2. *Apple of discord*: Figuratively anything about which there is strife or contention: subject of quarrel.

(Reference is to the mythological story of the golden apple bearing the inscription "To the fairest" which was contested for by three goddesses Juno, Minerva, and Venus.)

Rich estates left by their rightful owners at death often become the veritable *apples of discord* between their rival heirs.

**Cp.**—Bone of contention.

3. *How we apples swim*.

While tumbling down the turbid stream,

Loid love us, how we apples swim!—D. MALLET.

4. *The apple of one's eye* = Eye-ball or pupil. (*Fig*)  
Something specially loved.

It (struggle for Free Trade) attacked a monopoly cherished as *the apple of their eye* by the privileged class.—TIMES.

He kept him as the apple of his eye—THE BIBLE.

[Note the singular number *eye*; "eyes" would be unidiomatic.]

5. *In apple-pie order* (adv.) = in perfect order.—(rather colloquial). "The steward keeps the house in apple-pie order."

6. An *apple pie* bed is one with sheets so folded that the legs of the person lying in it cannot get down.

**Apply.**—1. *Apply the match to a train*—[In this phrase “train” = a line of combustible materials to lead fire to a charge or mine]—(*Fig.*) Make a beginning in some *dreadful* business or enterprise.

**Cp.** Set the ball in motion.

2. *To apply oneself to something* (as work or task) = To be engaged in it *with close attention*.

**Cp.** Apply the mind to.

3. *To apply (V. I) to a person for help* = To beg of him a favour in the way of some personal gain or advantage.

**Appointment**—1. *To keep an appointment* = To appear at the fixed place and time.

2. *To break an appointment* = To fail so to appear.

**Approve.**—To *approve of* a plan is to consider it good ; to judge of it favourably ; but, ‘to approve it’ is to confirm or sanction it as a superior official—[In the former the verb is intransitive ; in the latter, transitive.]

**Note** the similar use of “of” after the transitive verbs, *Admit, Allow, Permit,*

**A priori.**—To argue or reason *a priori* (adv) : From first principles ; From cause to effect ; *Deductively*.

**Contra** : A posteriori.

**Apron.**—*Tied to the apron-strings of* (a woman, usually one’s wife or mother) : [*Lit*] Being *always* in the company of ; [*Fig*] Unduly controlled *like a child* by (her).

**Cp.**—Kept in too strait-laced control.

**A propos.**—1. (Adj) : To the purpose : (used attributively), opportune, seasonable ;



2. Used in the predicate it is followed by "of"; as, the remark was *apropos* of the occasion. So, the combination forms a preposition.

**Arab.**—1.—*Street-Arab* (n): A homeless and helpless child, unowned and abandoned, wandering *about the streets*. A waif; a wastrel.

**Cp.**—Waifs and strays (Mark the plural in both).

2. *The Arabian bird* (also called the Secular bird) = phoenix: a fabulous female bird *only one of its kind* said to have lived 500 years in the Arabian desert and then to have built its own funeral pyre and to have burnt to ashes out of which it arose with renewed youth. (typical of immortality.) (Figurative) A paragon.

If she be furnished with a mind so rare  
She is alone *the Arabian bird*.—SHAK.

**Cp.**—Non-pareil; Without a parallel.

**Arcades.**—*Arcades ambo*: (n) Both simpletons.

(Arcadia was in ancient times the name of a mountainous district in southern Greece, the inhabitants of which were rustics devoid of any culture.)

"*Arcades ambo*" *id est* (i. e.) blackguards both.—BYRON.

**Argus.**—*Argus-eyed* (adj); Very watchful; over-vigilant.

(In Greek mythology Argus had 100 eyes and was over-watchful.)

**Contra**: Polyphemus (a cyclops or one-eyed giant)

The political *Polyphemes*, who have only one eye did not perceive that public health is public duty.—SIR P. MEHTA.

**Ark.**—*Ark and Sanctuary* (n): A place of safety or shelter.

The king himself was virtually a prisoner in the very Court which, up o

that moment, was <sup>the</sup> the ark and sanctuary of absolute government—FR. REVOLUTION.

Today (February 2nd 1901) all that was mortal of Queen Victoria will rest in St. George's historic chapel, the very ark and sanctuary of English Chivalry.—G. W. E. RUSSELL (Recollections).

**Arm.**—1. A child or infant is said to be *in arms* (adj.) when it is too young to walk. •

2. To be *in open arms against* = (V. T.) To fight undisguisedly.

3. (*To receive*) with *open arms* : (adv.) most cordially. Hence, the adj. *open-armed* (welcome).

4. (*To walk*) *arm in arm* (adv.) i. e., with arms interlinked—[Note the singular number].

5. (The men are) *under arms* (adj.) : ranged in battle array.

6. (*To be*) *up in arms* (adj.) : actually engaged in rebellion (against authority) ; armed and ready to fight.

Or to *take arms* against a sea of troubles,

And by opposing end them.—SHAK (H.)

Sir Edward Carson <sup>is</sup> *up in arms* because the Compulsory Service Bill is not to operate in Ireland.—MAIL.

7. To *lay down arms* = cease hostilities.

If, I were an American, as I am an Englishman, while a foreign troop was landed in my country, I would never *lay down my arms* ; never, never never.—LORD CHATHAM.

**Arrears.**—*In arrears* (adj. or adv.) = Behind-hand (esp. in payment of a due).

Such strict propriety (as regards morals) is not possible in this world, that we have too much on our hands to think of these niceties, that the man who makes leisure for such refinements will find his work *in arrears* at the end of the day—ECCE HOMO.

**Arriere.**—*Arriere pensee*. (Fr. n.). A hidden or ulterior motive ; Also, mental reservation.

In the Senate Mr. Sakaran Nair showed himself to be a dispassionate critic of educational matters with no *arriere pensee* or partiality with regard to any particular class or community—I. REVIEW.

**Cp. Double-dealing.**

**Art.—1.** (To be) *art and part* (with) i. e., Joint actor."

You are *art and part* with us,  
In purging heresy.—TENNYSON.

**2.** (To have) *neither art nor part* (in) i. e., no concern (about a matter) as regards either inception or execution.

[In both these phrases *art* = design (skilfully made) and *part* = execution.]

**Cp. Accessory to.**

**As.—1.** *As if*: (conj.) This is elliptical for "as it would be if" [see "if"]

**2.** *As though* (conj.). This is also elliptical = as if.

The little actor cons another part ;

\* \* \* \* \*

*As if* his whole vocation.

Were endless imitation.—WORDSWORTH.

And (we shall) take upon's the mystery of things,

*As if* we were God's spies—KING LEAR.

Why do you behave *as though* it were something special to you ?  
(Queen to Hamlet).—SHAK.

[See the last quotation under "Maiden."]

**3.** *As it were*: an apologetical clause put in the middle or at the end of a sentence by way of simile or metaphor or the like, which the writer or speaker perceives to be either forced or not very apposite. It is the contraction of "as if it were *actually* so."

**Cp. "As if".**

It is my pride that I am, *as it were*, an hereditary member of the (Indian) Administration—SIR HENRY COTTON.

We are to consider the ancient world as a society of men in whom

natural humanity 'existed, but had been, *as it were*, crusted or frosted over—SIR J. SEELY.

A people who are still, *as it were*, but in the gristle, and not yet hardened into the bone of manhood.—BURKE.

Standing, *as it were*, between life and death, he (Wishart) preached to the people from a particular psalm.—PROTHERO

[N. B.—The word 'as' may be used as having three distinct parts of speech—relative pronoun, adverb, and conjunction.]

4. *As for, As regards* } (Prep) = about; concerning; anent.  
5. *As to*

Give us the latest news *as to* the progress of war.

Do not be punctilious *as to* the order in which you take your leave.

**Note.**—Inverted phrase or clause with the conjunction "As." The introduction of such a clause or phrase implies *coming contrast*. e. g. "Long as the time was, it was insufficient for the purpose." "Attractive as the proposal is, it is not one that should be adopted." (WHITWORTH) Here in consequence of the inversion the latent meaning of *as* = *though*. When the following principal clause is an effect or consequence of the introductory clause the inversion is not allowed, e. g. As his services were valuable, the association recorded it in most appreciative terms.

Sometimes the above inversion is made without implication of a coming contrast, but in the ordinary sense of consequence, by changing *as* into *that* e. g.

- (a) Able and experienced lawyer *that* he is, he soon won the confidence of Government and was appointed to that responsible post which had not till then been held by an Indian. (The word *that* performs the double function of a conjunction and relative pronominal adjective.)
- (b) Tender slaves *that* they (the women) are, they must needs be hypocrites and weak.—THACKERAY.
- (c) Beggar *that* I am, I am even poor in thanks.—SHAK.

**Ascendant.**—(To be) *in the ascendant* (adj-predicative):

supreme, dominating; predominant (*Fig* from astronomy and astrology as, your star is in the ascendant i. e. the star which presides over your fortune is rising towards zenith.)

King Ferdinand still believes that Germany's star is and will remain in the ascendant.—Dr. DILLON.

**Contra** —One's star is set.

In the time of Christ all true Jews were depressed with the feeling that the theocracy was in a great degree a thing of the past, that they were in a new age with new things about them, that Greek and Roman principles and ways of thinking were in the ascendant, and that the face of the Invisible King no longer shone full upon them—ECCLE HOMO.

**Ashamed** —(To be) *ashamed* (pred. adj.): conscious of having done a wrongful act and dejected in consequence.

1. I am *ashamed* of having told my father a lie.
2. I am *ashamed* to behave treacherously to my friend,
3. I am *ashamed* for you, my dear boy. i. e. on account of you, in my fatherly relation to you.

**Aside**.—(To speak) *in an aside* (adv.) in an under-tone.

**Cp.**—*Sotto voce*.

**Askance**.—1.—To look *askance at*. (v. t.) = To view suspiciously. So, to look *asquint at*.

2.—But, to look *askew* does not connote any suspicion; it means simply "to look obliquely"—not straight in the face.

**Cp.**—To look awry.

**Ass**.—1. To make an *ass of oneself* = Stultify oneself; = To behave like a fool.

2. To make an *ass of* another person = To make a fool of him.

I see their knavery: this is to make an *ass of me*—SHAK.

3. The *asses' bridge* (n); The fifth proposition of the first Book of Euclid's Geometry which is the first theorem

established by close deductive reasoning and which dull-headed beginners find too difficult to follow. Latin name: *Pons asinorum*.

• He could disport himself with trigonometry, feeling confident that Dr. Tempest had forgotten his way over *the asses' bridge*.—A. TROLLOPE.

4.—*An ass in a lion's skin* = a cheat or a bungler.

5. *An ass between two bundles of hay*: (*Fig*) an indecisive character.

Cp.—One who halts between two opinions.

**Assert.**—To *assert oneself*.—1. To insist upon one's own rights or claims. 2. To put oneself forward in an assuming manner.

(From both these meanings we get the adjective "self-assertive.")

**Assurance.**—To *make assurance doubly sure*—To give further strength to a declaration already guaranteed as certain.

(The phrase is taken from Shakespeare's *Macbeth*).

But yet I'll make *assurance double sure*,  
And take a bond of fate.

**Attain.**—*Attain* (*v. i*) to: To arrive at; To reach; To gain; To accomplish.

He died not before he *had attained* to all the honours which are open to the army.—TIMES.

The socialist ignores the fact that nations do not stand alone and that that the future is with the race that can by self-discipline *attain* to the highest general average of efficiency.—TIMES OF INDIA.

[Differentiate "obtain" (*V. T.*) = secure as grant from others.]

**Attention.**—(a) Our *attention is fixed* on a thing.

(b) The chairman *called the attention* of the members to this all-important matter.

**Augean.**—1. *Augean stable* = an extremely filthy place.

(Augeus was a mythical King of Elis in Greece. There were 3000 oxen in his stables which remained uncleared for 30 years. Hercules cleansed them in one day by letting the river Alpheus flow through them.)

2. *To cleanse the Augean stable* = *Fig* To remove accumulated abuses and nuisances; to clear any thing of its impurities; [Do not use "clear" for "cleanse."

**Cp.**—To perform a *lustration* [which is the ceremonial washing of impurities.]

**Augur.**—1. *It augurs well* = It promises well or gives a good foreboding.

2. *So it augurs ill* i. e. it gives a bad foreboding; it does not bode well. So a certain bad indication is said to be a *bad augury*.

**Augustan.**—The *Augustan age* = The most brilliant period of Roman Literature when Virgil and Horace wrote their immortal poems, that being the reign of the Emperor Augustus. Hence, any brilliant period in the literary history of any country.

**Auld.**—*Auld Lang Syne* = old long since (n). This is the theme of old acquaintance and friendship written by Robert Burns (1759-96)

Should *auld* acquaintance be forgot,  
And never brought to min' ?  
Should *auld* acquaintance be forgot,  
And days o' *lang syne* ?

Lord Houghton was peculiarly sensitive to the claims of "*Auld Lang syne*"—RUSSELL.

**Cp.**—For old sake's sake.

**Auspices.**—*Under the auspices of*: under the patronage or prosperous lead of. (*Auspices* = any favourable influence such as, protection, authority etc.)

The National society was instituted to promote elementary education *under the auspices* of the Church of England.

The investigation of such phenomenon as sleeping sickness *under the auspices* of a British Government Commission belongs to the recent activities of biological science.—*ENCYC.*

*Under the aegis and auspices* of British Government.—*PIONEER.*

In 1847 Lord Clarendon entered on his Viceroyalty *under the most favourable auspices*.—*TIMES.*

**Avail.**—1. *Of avail* (adj. pred.) = beneficial or useful.

His arguments were of *much avail*.

2. *Of no or little avail* (adj. pred.) ineffectual or useless ; Unavailing.

All my efforts proved of *no avail*.

3. *To avail oneself of* (V. T.) Use advantageously = To profit by = Take advantage of. Turn to one's advantage or profit.

There is a moral in every thing, if we would only *avail ourselves* of it.—*DICKENS.*

The Christian church is a society of men who meet together for common objects, and it differs from the minor clubs or unions under which men *avail themselves* of the principle of association.—*ECCE HOMO.*

By refusing to communicate your griefs to your friend, you do but decline to *avail yourself* of the means of escaping from them.—*DRIGHTON.*

**Cp.**—To take occasion.

**Ave.**—*Ave atque vale.* (Lat). n. Hail and farewell.

The "Well done" of Heaven is echoed in the *Ave atque vale* of earth. We look backward and we look forward. We render high thanks for a reign dedicated to that righteousness which exalteth a nation. We face the future with the deep-rooted hope that King Edward VII may prove himself worthy of his illustrious traditions and may lead his people forward on the truly royal road of virtuous living and social service.—*G. W. E RUSSELL.*

**Cp.**—For I, who hold sage Homer's rule the best,  
Welcome the coming, speed the going guest. —*POM.*



**Avenge.** 1. *To avenge oneself* = to be avenged : To deal punishment to an injuring party *by way of satisfaction* ; To take vengeance.

I have won my case against the persecutor ; he has been sent to jail and I am avenged.

**Cp.**—To take one's change out of.

2. *To avenge a person* (or any violated right or cause) : To inflict retribution on behalf of that (injured) person or violated cause.

\* \*        This shows you are above,  
You justicers, that these our nether crimes  
So speedily can 'venge. —SHAKESPEARE.

I thought ten thousand swords must have sprung from their scabbards to *avenge even a look* that threatened her (Queen of France) with insult — BURKE.

So, "Avengers of the slain" is used by Macaulay in the sense of the great Dispenser of Justice on behalf of the slain.

**Cp** —Nemesis a female deity regarded by the Greeks as personification of *retributive justice*.

Who eventually will be overwhelmed by this murderous policy the *Nemesis of events* will record. —I. REVIEW.

**Awe.**—To stand in awe of (V, T.). To fear greatly.

**Awkward.**—The *awkward squad* (n) : a set of backward pupils.

• **Awry.**—1. *To go or run awry* (V. I.) : Do wrong.

2. *To look awry* (V. I.). Look askance.

• **Axe.**—1. *To have an axe to grind* = Have private ends to serve.—[The expression is used in U. S. politics.]

When I see a merchant over-polite to his customers, begging them to taste a little brandy and throwing half his goods on the counter, thinks I, that man *has an axe to grind*—CH. MILNER.

2. *To turn the grindstone* : To play into another's hands.

3. To put the axe in the helve = To solve a puzzle.

**Away.**—To give oneself away. (V. I.) = To betray oneself; To let slip some thought which was meant to be kept secret.

**Aye.**—For aye (adv.) For ever.

This world is not for aye.—SHAKESPEARE.

## B.

**Back.**—1. •Behind one's back. (adv.) (say or utter things) without his knowledge.

**Cp.** Back-bite = slander an absent person.

They are arrant knaves and will backbite—SHAKESPEARE.

2. He turned his back upon me i. e., abandoned me.

3. The hillman had a great burden on his back = bore the burden [literally]—(Fig.) I have great responsibilities on my back—i. e., I am burdened with them. [Note the prep. on.]

4. What do you fear when the magistrate is at your back; i. e., when he is your supporter. [Note the preposition]

So, to back a person up = to support him.

4A. But, to back down (V. I.) = surrender claim.

After the suit had made considerable progress in court the plaintiff backed down.

**Cp.** To climb down; To cave in.

5. To be on one's back; i. e., (adj.) at the end of one's resources.—Also, laid up with illness.

• **Cp.** Be on one's beam-ends.

6. To give or make a back to a person = To bend down as in the game of leap-frog that he may jump over.

But, to give one the back = to leave or quit him.

7. To back out of an undertaking = To withdraw from it after having given consent.

Cp. Cry off (V. I.)

7A. When I gave a call to my enemy in his sick room it set his back up i. e., irritated him. (The verb *put* may be used for *set*).

[This phrase is also used as = cause pride in (a person).

Cp. "Toss the head." "Give oneself airs."

8. To break the back of a task or duty = To finish the hardest part of it; To dispose of it.

Cp. Break the neck of

So, To break one's back = To overburden him, or kill him.

9. To be laid on one's back (adj.) = powerless.

10. He set his back against the wall = was resolute or firm of purpose.

11. He stood with his back to the wall (adj.) i. e., was hard-pressed.

Cp. At bay.

12. This scene carries my thoughts back i. e., to a certain time which is past.

13. To go back upon one's word = To retract his promise.

(The prep. *upon* may be replaced by *from*.)

He would not go back on his word, and true Indian that he was, he remained with the company.

14. A back-number; a person of antiquated views: one behind the times.

It is a misnomer to call M. M. S. as representative of educated opinion in general. The latter is progressive and the former a pronounced reactionary. He is decidedly a *back number*.—LEADER.

**Back-bone.**—1. Backbone (*fig*) = main strength (as the spine is of the body).

Mrs. Besant is the *back-bone* of the Theosophical cause in India.

2. *To the back-bone* (adj. pred) = thorough-going.

All through and over.

Justice Banerjee is a conservative Hindu *to the back-bone* i. e. staunch.

Lord Kitchener was a soldier *to the back-bone*.—I. MAIL.

They were English *to the backbone*, whether gamblers or saints.—SIR. H. HAWKINS.

Cromwell was an Independent *to the backbone*

**Cp.**—Out and out, (which is generally used *attributively*).

3. *Game to the backbone* (adj) = firm ; indomitable.

**Back door.**—1. *Back-door* influence : (adj) secret and unfair.

2. 'Backstairs influence' has exactly the same meaning : "not open and straightforward." Without merit or any qualification whatever. \*

It is not unoften that well-paid appointments in the uncovenanted civil service in India are made only through *back-door influence*.

In George III's time Edmund Burke denounced the Earl of Bute as a *backstairs minister*, because he owed his appointment to underhand and clandestine influences.

**Backwards.**—[N. B. The adverb "backwards" is to be distinguished in its use from "back." The addition of the suffix 'wards' fortifies the sense of direction of motion, while "Back" is consistent with a stationary position. You may say 'go back' or 'go backwards,' but only 'stand back' and not "stand backwards"—G. C. Whitworth.]

**Back water.**—[*Lit.* the part of water near a stream but without current, being fed by its back-flow].

Things are *in back water*: They are in stagnant or retrograde condition.

There is a feeling that this (Roorkee C. E.) College is rather *in back water* so far as the interests and the good wishes of the Government are concerned—SIR J. MESTON.

**Bacon.**—*To save one's bacon* (V. I.) To escape death or any personal injury.

But as he ran to *save his bacon*,  
By hat and wig he was forsaken. —COMBE.

The ex-viceroy (Lord Hardinge) *has saved his bacon* by persuading a credulous parliament that India would go into mourning if he got his deserts over Mesopotamia.—STATSMAN.

As one more absence from the meeting of the Faculty was to result in forfeiture of my seat, I applied to my superior officer for leave to *save my bacon*.

**Cp.**—To save one's face; to save one's skin; to save one's hide.

**Bad.**—1. *To go to the bad* (V. I.) Fall into every thing that is bad, e. g. bad company, bad ways, surroundings, and so *bad end*. Hence, fall into vicious courses and ruin one's life.

*Gone to the bad* altogether, the poor fellow was refused admission to the alms-house.

2. *To the bad* (pred. adj.) on the bad side, i. e. debtor's side of an account, i. e. on the side that exhibits debt or loss.

When my Banker presented his account I found that I was Rs. 1,000 *to the bad*.

My father died leaving Rs. 3,000 *to the bad*, i. e. that amount of debt which I was to pay.

3. I am now *on bad terms* with my rich cousin; (adj.) i. e. in discord or enmity.

4. He is ~~now~~ *badly off* : (adj) in evil case ; in adverse circumstances

**Contra.**—Well-off.

So, He *has a bad time of it*. (*It* is impersonal).

Cp — To fall on evil days ; “quaff the bitter cup.” Drain the cup of misery to the dregs.

5. There is *bad blood* between us, i. e. Ill feeling, malice, hatred and anger.

6. The bisenits will *go bad* in the transit, i. e. not keep well ; spoil (so, any other provision or food).

7 *Bad debts* : those which cannot be recovered.

The bank went into liquidation with *bad debts* amounting to 50 lakhs of Rupees. •

8 *In bad odour* (pred. adj.)—[odour = reputation or favour] i. e. ill spoken of.

My regret is that, though no moral delinquent, I have been *in bad odour* with one whom I hold in high respect for his education and liberal views.

Cp.—“Blown upon” ; “under a cloud.”

9. That is a *bad shot*, i. e. wrong guess. [colloquial.]

**Bag** —1. *With bag and baggage* (adv) = With all belongings ; completely. (The phrase is used with the verbs *depart* *expel* and others of like meaning).

The force of doubling *bag* with *baggage* denotes the *absolute* character of expulsion. The combination does not allow of the insertion of any pronominal adjective or the definite article between it and the preposition *with*.

\* \* \* It will let in and out the enemy

*With bag and baggage*.—SHAKESPEARE.

The officials of the Turkish government shall be driven out of Bulgaria *with bag and baggage*.—GLADSTONE.

[N. B. "with" is sometimes omitted.]

Cp.—"neck and crop"

2. Let the cat out of the bag = [The cat here is figurative for a secret concealed within one's mind, and the bag for the concealed place, the mind] Hence, the expression = reveal, divulge or disclose a secret involuntarily; So, we have "the cat is out of the bag"

**Balance.**—1. *Weighed in the balance and found wanting*: (adj) Inferior; below the standard; [This expression is taken from the Bible (Daniel v. 27)] Wanting or lacking in what? The answer is requirement that will make the balance even: (*Fig*) = Defect from the standard (weight).

Is Democracy destined, after being *tried and found wanting*, to make way for some other type of government?—RUSSELL.

Cp.—Below the mark; Below par

2. One's fate *trembles in the balance* (V. I.): has reached a critical point. Is in extreme danger.

Rochelle was also the Geneva of France, the city of refuge to which fled Protestants from all parts of the country. But for the moment its fate *trembled in the balance*.—PROTHERO.

Which hang so tottering in the balance

That I could neither believe nor misdoubt.—SHAK.

Cp. To hang by a thread

3. To *lose one's balance*. (V. I.) Fall: (physically); (*Fig*) = Be upset mentally = Be so perturbed by conflicting emotions as to fail to come to the right decision or judgment.

4 They are as *the dust of the balance* when weighed against the all prevalent power of money—: Nothing appreciable.

The fine imposed on this country is as *dust in the balance* compared with the moral value of the example set.—GLADSTONE.

**Baker.**—1. *Baker's dozen*—Thirteen (not the usual twelve.) (Colloq) He has a *baker's dozen* of dependants.

.Cp: a long dozen

2. *Pull the Devil, pull the baker.*—This expression is used when encouragement is given to both sides.

**Ball.**—1. *To open the ball* (V. I.): literally, to lead the first dance; (*Fig.*) to commence an operation. When at a *conversazione* a man speaks first, he is said to *open the ball*. So, to *lead up the ball*. (V. I.)

2. *The three balls* = (sign of) a pawnbroker's place of business. Sometimes, only "Balls" is used without "the three", B being capital letter.

3. *To have the ball at one's foot* (V. T.): To see one's way to success: To be in such a position as to be able to command success.

A judge's barrister son in starting life *has the ball at his foot*.

4. *To keep the ball rolling* (V. I.) Generally used of a person attending a soiree or party when he takes his part in talk, sport, &c., and thus prevents interest in the proceedings from flagging).

So "The Ambulance Corps *set the ball rolling in this matter*"—A MAZUMDAR.

5. *The ball is with you* = it is now your turn: So, you *take up the ball* = it is your turn to speak or take part in the social gathering,

**Ballast.**—A man *without ballast* (adj): unsteady and rash (*Fig.* from ballast which confers steadiness on a ship in motion).

Cp. Having no grit.

**Ban.**—A person is *under a ban*: public opinion is decidedly against him in the matter of social fellowship.



**Cp.** *Under taboo* = tabooed.

A subject or a book is *under a ban or taboo* when it is prohibited or excluded by authority or social influence.

**Bandy** —1. To *bandy* (angry) words or compliments = To give and receive them *reciprocally*.

I will no longer stay here to *bandy words*.

So, *to bandy blows*.

**Cp.** To spar at each other.

Also, There was a *breeze* in court (slang) i. e., display of temper by exchange of hot words between the judge and the counsel.

2. To *bandy arguments with one* i. e. To argue contentiously with him.

**Cp.**—To chop logic.

3. *Bandy-legged* = (adj) = having bent or crooked legs, also, Bow-legged.

**Bang**.—1. To *go bang* (V. I.) To explode [Here *bang* is an adverb = with a loud noise or report.]

*Bang* (V. I.) = To resound with such noise. To thump.

2. It *banged* the door (V. T.) i. e. produced a loud noise from the slamming of the door.

3 That *bangs the bush*: [slang] surpasses any thing of the kind ever heard of.

**Cp.**—Outdo the past; Beat the record.

**Bar**.—1. To *join the bar* (V. I.) To enter the profession of law. To be enrolled as pleader or barrister. [Mark the def. article].

2. To *be called to the bar* = Be admitted a barrister.

3. *Prisoner at the bar* = person under trial for an offence standing in the court before the presiding judge.

4. The *bar* of public opinion i. e. tribunal (*public opinion* being figuratively impersonated as judge).

**Bargain**.—1. *Into the bargain* (adv) = Over and above ; in addition ; besides ; moreover.

We cheerfully paid down as the price of its abolition (that of the slave trade) twenty millions in cash and threw the prosperity of our West Indian colonies *into the bargain*.—G. W. RUSSELL.

The new "Webster" is easily consulted as an ordinary dictionary and yet an illustrated encyclopædia *into the bargain*.

He is rather fatigued with the occupation of the morning and tolerably cross *into the bargain*.—DICKENS.

2. This *is a bargain* : it is a thing acquired cheap.

3. Let us *strike a bargain* (V. I.) : come to terms.

Cp.—There was a bargain made.

4. To *make the best of a bad bargain*.—To make the best possible use of an adverse situation ; To take a misfortune cheerfully ; Endure patiently what cannot be helped.

Also, *To make the best of a bad business*.

[The alliteration in both phrases is worth notice.]

Cp. To make the best of a bad penny worth.

5. I never *bargained* for it = was not prepared for it, i. e. did not expect it.

So, this is more than I *bargained* for.

**Bark**.—His *bark is worse than his bite*—GEORGE HERBERT.

This is usually said of a testy harmless person of fretful disposition ; he sooner utters violent words than gives way to a harmful course of action.

Cp.—Barking dogs seldom bite.

**Barmecide.**—A *Barmecide feast*: an illusory and disappointing entertainment. [Prince Barmecide in the Arabian Nights feasted beggars with rich dish-covers having no victuals below them]. So, a Barmecide gift or benefit.

A *Barmecide room*, that had a great dining table in it and never had a dinner.—DICKENS.

So, the surprise dinner to which Timon of Athens (SHAK) invited his mouth-friends.

Cp.—Dine with Duke Humphrey.

**Basket.**—1. *The pick of the basket* = the best of the lot.

2. *To be left in the basket* = disregarded [from waste-paper basket into which useless scraps of paper are thrown].

3. *To throw into the basket* (V. T.): To cast as useless.

Cp.—They have lived long on the alms-basket of words.—SHAKESPEARE.

4. *To keep or place all one's eggs in one basket* [see Eggs.]

**Bated.**—*With bated breath.*—(adv): With the breathing restrained from fear, awe or the like; With *lowered* voice.

Shall I bend low and in a bondman's key

*With bated breath* and whispering humbleness.—SHAK.

**Battle.**—1. *To give battle to.* (V. T.): To attack.

2. *To join battle with* (V. T.): To meet in *hostile* encounter.

3. *A pitched battle*: One planned beforehand and fought on chosen ground; or one fought by common consent.

4. *Battle royal*: (n) A free fight; a general *melee*.

5. *Half the battle.* (adj) Going half way towards *victory* or success.

Let us determine and resolve upon improvement which is the first step to be taken, and this first step is *half the battle*.—SMILES.

Cp.—The race is not to the swift nor the battle to the strong.—BIBLE.

[Here both *race* and *battle* = final success].

**Bay.**—1. *To bring to bay* (V. T.): Run down; Ride down; Hunt down; Come to close quarters with (an intended prey or victim).

- So, *To hold at bay*; *To drive to bay*. (Bay = Barking).

[Hunting hounds in full cry encounter the hunted stag].

Here wast thou *bayed*, thou noble hart.—SHAK (J. C) i. e. Brought to bay by your enemies, as a hart in the chase is brought to bay by hounds. "Bay" as V T = Bark at, e. g. *To bay the moon*.

*Fig.* A persecutor drives his victim to bay.

2. *At bay* (Pred. adj.): so hard pressed by enemies as to be compelled to turn round and face them from impossibility of escape. [From the position of the stag when surrounded by the hounds and unable to escape.]

The she-wolf's litter (i. e. the Romans) stand savagely at bay. Macaulay.

So, the stag holds the hounds at bay.

They could only sleep when they had lighted heaps of dried cow-dung which poured out volumes of acrid smoke and kept the insects at bay.—PROTHERO.

**Cp.** To show fight. To stand with one's back to the wall.

**Be.**—1. *The be-all* (n). The all or whole being i. e., essence. [From the Latin verb *esse* = to be]. This phrase is usually combined with "*And the end-all*": that which puts an end to all; that which concludes all; Nothing further.

\* \* \* \* \* this blow

Might be the *be-all* and the *end-all* here.—SHAK (Mac.)

i. e., the beginning and the end of the matter.

To eat and drink; to have, as the phrase is, a good time.—this is the *be-all* and the *end-all* of social life in London.—RUSSELL.

Success and fame and professional advancement are no longer treated as the *be-all* and the *end-all* of rightly directed manhood.—INCH.

2. *Have been* or *has been*: [Being in the present perfect tense one would expect its connection with a period continuing

to the present time. Its application, therefore, to a time which is wholly past or gone, appears to the Indian student as strikingly idiomatic,]

The time *has been* : i. e., There was a time.

Nor heaven itself upon the past has power,

But what *has been*, *has been*, and I have had my hour.—DRYDEN.

We will grieve not, rather find

Strength in what remains behind,

In the primal sympathy,

Which *having been*, must ever be.—WORDSWORTH.

It is now as it *hath been* of yore.—IBID.

I *have been* worth the whistle.—SHAKESPEARE.

3. *For the time being* (adv.): Temporarily. [Being = present].

I allow you residence here *for the time being*.

**Beam.**—1. *On one's beam-ends* (pred. adj.): almost capsizing. (*Fig*) in sore straits; In great danger. [Metaphor from ship].

Cp. To be on one's back.

2. *To kick the beam*. [see Kick].

**Bear.**—1. *To bear down* opposition: (V. T.) To overcome by force.

Antonio *was borne down* by a nameless melancholy, i. e. pressed down (by something resembling weight).

Cp.—To brow-beat (with looks or words).

2. *To bear down upon* an enemy: (V. T.) To approach with deliberate violence.

Cp.—To swoop upon. [*Upon* implies attack]

3. *To bear up*: (V. I.) To have fortitude. [followed by *against*].

Terrors which one has to face at once are easier to *bear up against* than the imagination of horrors to be faced at some future time.

The children ~~turned~~ their backs on him; the wife died broken-hearted; He went with the stream and he had not courage sufficient to *bear up* against so many shocks.—DICKENS.

4. To *bear* a person up: (V. T.) To keep an *unfortunate* person from sinking (literally and figuratively) under *adverse* force; To support.

5. To *bear upon* (a subject, matter or question): Be relevant to.

6. To *bring* (some quality, influence, or force) to *bear* (V. I.): To apply; To bring into operation or use; To exert; To exercise [See Bring].

An organisation is being formed to *bring pressure to bear* on the Government to ensure the most vigorous prosecution of the war.—D. MAIL.

You should *bring to bear upon* the Western teaching that you receive a discerning and discriminating mind —LORD RONALDSHAY.

Cp.—To put the screw on.

6a. To be *borne in upon* a person: To be *impressed* as conviction upon him: To become his conviction.

It had already *been borne in upon* the mind of the League that it was of little use to petition the existing Parliament.—TIMES.

[Note the use restricted to the passive form.]

7. To *bear one hard* = Treat rather oppressively.

Cæsar doth *bear me* (Cassius) *hard*. (SHAK.) Has most unfriendly feelings towards me.

Cp. *Bear a grudge against* (Bear = carry internally).

8. To *bear in mind* (V. T.) = To remember.

There is another precept which it is important to *bear in mind*.

9. To *bear with* a person (V. T.) Tolerate; endure; put up with; forbear to resent.

Cp. Grin and bear it.

And men have lost their reason. *Bear with me,*

*My heart is in the coffin there with Cæsar*—SHAKESPEARE,

There are a few words, if you will *bear with me*, which I should like to say.—LORD RONALDSHAY.

10. To *be borne away* by one's feeling i. e., carried away.

11. A *bear-leader* (n) *lit*, one who leads about a *traiped* bear. (*Fig.*) a travelling tutor.

12. A *bear-garden*: (n) a scene of tumult, confusion, and disorder.

**Cp.** A Donnybrook fair; the devil to pay; Pretty kettle of fish,—Bedlam or hell broke loose; A bull in a China shop; All the fat in the fire; Confusion worse confounded.

**Beard.**—To *beard the lion in his den*—To defy boldly a powerful antagonist in his own quarters. (To *beard* = insult by taking by the beard).

Comest thou to *beard* me in Denmark?—HAMLET (SHAK).

\*                      \*  
And dar'st thou then  
To *beard the lion in his den*,  
The Douglas in his hall!—SCOTT.

An independent jury-man was determined to *beard the lion in his den* (the Judge on the bench) and possibly shake off "the dew drops of his British indignation"—SIR. H. HAWKINS.

**Cp.** To take the bull by the horn.

**Contra.** That like an eagle in a dove-cot, I  
Fluttered your Volscians in Corioli.—SHAK (*Coriolanus*)

**Beat.**—1. To *beat out* metal (V. T.) To extend it by hammering; To forge.

2. To *beat up* an enemy's quarter = (V. T.) To attack it quite suddenly.

3. To *beat up* (eggs &c.) (V. T.) To reduce to froth, powder or paste.

4. To *beat up for recruits* (V. I.) = To go about in quest of them. So, To *beat up recruits* (V. T.) = To collect them.

5. *To beat* (V. I.) at a door = To knock loudly.

6. *To beat the bush* = (V. T.) To strike the bush so as to rouse game.

7. *To beat* (V. I.) about the bush = (Fig.) To approach a subject slowly and cautiously or in a roundabout way. To shilly-shally. To dilly-dally. To make an indirect advance instead of going directly to a place or object.

**Contra:** To come to the point.

Cp. Slips of prolixity or crossing the plain highway of talk.  
—SHAKESPEARE.

8. *To beat a person black and blue* = To bruise him.

9. *To beat the air* = To strive in vain. [See Air].

Cp. To fish in the air; To lash the waves; To bay the moon; To milk the ram.

10. *To beat down* a competitor = To overthrow him or defeat him.

11. *To beat down a seller or a professional man* = To cause him to reduce his price or fee.

Also, to dash down a wall by battering.

12. *To beat a parley* = To propose terms (by beating the drum as sign).

13. Similarly, *To beat a retreat* = To retire hurriedly.

14. *To beat hollow* = (V. T.) To defeat easily and completely (as a competitor in race &c.)

15. The heart *beating high* (V. I.) i. e., throbbing too quickly.

Cp. The heart leaping into one's mouth.

Similarly,—The eye in a fine frenzy rolling.—SHAKESPEARE.

16. *Dead beaten* = completely exhausted.



**Beau.**—1. *Beau ideal* ; [Fr. = Ideal Beauty] (n.) Mental conception of some perfect object ; Model of excellence.

Just as Cordelia is the *beau-ideal* of the heroine, so is Edgar the very type of the hero.—DEIGHTON.

It would be difficult to imagine a more complete *beau-ideal* of aristocracy than the seventh Earl of Shaftesbury. —G. W. E. RUSSELL.

2. *Beau-monde* : (n) Fashionable society.

**Because.**—*Because of* : (Prep) *By* reason of ; *On* account of ; *For* this reason namely ; *Owing* to.

A brave man never shrinks from his duty *because of* threat.

[Beware of using the word *by* in this sense unless after passive verbs.]

**Beck.**—*At one's beck and call* : (adj and adv.) As one doing his bidding ; In complete command. [Beck = a mere nod significant of order [call = command ]

Aladdin had *at his beck and call* the genii who were attached to a ring and lamp as slaves.—ARABIAN NIGHTS.

The sun and the moon cannot be made to appear or disappear at the sweet will of the astronomer. Haley's comet is not *at his beck and call*.

Cp. A Man-Friday.

**Become.**—1. What *became of* him is not known : i. e. what his fate was or what his end was.

So, what *became of* that matter is not known.

• 2. It is not *becoming to* your dignity : In accord with ; Suiting [This is another way of saying "It does not become your dignity" where "become" (V. T.) = Befit.]

What should it be that has made it impossible for Hamlet to recognise what is *becoming to* him.—DEIGHTON,

[Beware of using "of" instead of "to".]

Cp.—To look well on.

**Contra :** Unbecoming to or for.

**Bed**—1. The lady was *brought to bed* of a child : confined to bed after delivery of a child.

2. He is a *bed-ridden* invalid, i. e. long confined to bed on account of ill health or infirmity of age.

3. *Bed-time* = usual hour for retiring to rest.

4. *Narrow bed* = the grave.

Cp.—Each in his *narrow cell* for ever laid  
The rude forefathers of the hamlet sleep.—GRAY'S ELEGY.

5.—*As you make your bed, you must lie in it.*

You must take the consequences of your acts.

Cp.—As thou sowest, so shalt thou reap ; drink as you have brewed ;  
stand the racket.

6. *A bed of roses* or *a bed of down* = (*Fig.*) a very easy and comfortable situation.

Judicial service is not always *a bed of roses*. [See *Rose*].

7. *To take to or keep one's bed* = Become ill or continue to be ill. [It does not mean simply "to go to bed"]

8. *To share bed and board with* = To have connubial relation with.

**Bee**.—(To go) *in a bee-line* (*adv.*) = along a straight line ; (To take) a straight course without turning to the right or left. So, *to strike a bee-line*.

Cp.—As the crow flies.

**Beef**.—*Beef-eater* = a member of the body-guard of the sovereign.

**Beer**.—1. I think no *small beer* of him, i. e. have a high opinion of him. (*small beer* = something trifling used in *negative* sentences ; as he does not think *small beer* of himself).

2. To *chronicle small beer* = To record only trivial matters.

She was a wight, if ever such wight were,  
To suckle fools and *chronicle small beer*.—SHAK.

3. *Beer and skittles* = Pleasure and enjoyment; merry life. Amusement.

Life is not all *beer and skittles*, i. e. Happiness and satisfaction.

**Before.**—1. *Long before* (adv.): Long ago; long way back in *the past*.

2. *Before long* = (adv. used with reference to *future* time) i. e., before a long time elapses; in the future; very soon; shortly.

Cp.—Odd-come-shortly = some near day, as “one of these odd-come-shortlies.”

3. He *carried all before him* = swept away every opposition under his own *superior impulsive* force; was completely successful.

So sudden was their onset that at first they *carried all before them*.—PROTHERO.

His (Mr. Gladstone's) eloquence flowed like a stream of molten lava *carrying all before* it in its irresistible rush, glorious as well as terrible, and fertilizing while it subdued.—RUSSELL.

4. To *be before hand* with (V. T.) = anticipate; hence, To forestall; frustrate, prevent.

For ~~far~~ he should do so let us *be beforehand* with him and stop him.

“Be quick in striking your blow, for we are afraid that they will *be beforehand* with us by warning Cæsar and frustrate our intention.—SHAK.

5. *Be beforehand with the world* = have money in hand.

**Beg.**—1. To go *a-begging*.

A post is said to be *going a-begging* when there are no candidates for it, i. e. no one thinks it worth while accepting it.

Thirty pounds and twenty five guineas a year made fifty-six pounds five shillings English money all which was in a manner *going a-begging* (i. e. found no acceptor).—GOLDSMITH.

2. *To beg the question*—To take for granted what has to be proved. To commit the logical fallacy of *petitio principii*.

Cp.—A woman's reason.

3. *To beg of a person*: To entreat him (to do something).

*I beg of you, to think well of the matter.*—MISS HURST.

4. We all *beg for* mercy: earnestly pray for it.

N. B.—The transitive character of the verb is manifest when followed by Infinitive or *that-clause*. The common official routine form "I beg to state etc." is really condensed from "I beg leave to state etc."

**Begin.**—1. *To begin with* (adv)—In the first place; as the first thing to be mentioned and then to be followed by others.

[A comma must separate the phrase, if at the beginning of a sentence, from the rest of the clause].

Bishop Wilberforce's humour was of an entirely different quality from that of Sydney Smith. *To begin with*, it is unquotable.—RUSSELL.

The metaphor is a very quaint one *to begin with*, and these embellishments make it ludicrous.

It is good that only a limited number of Faculties are established *to begin with*.—LORD HARDINGE.

[Beware of using "from" instead of "with"]

2. *To begin the world* = To start in life.

3. *The beginning of the end* = The first clear and unmistakeable indication of the final result.

**Beguide.**—1. We *beguile a person of something* i. e. cheat him out of it (so as to make him part with it).

So, he may be *beguiled into* doing something.

2. Cp. \* \* \* \* \* To *beguile the time*

Look like the time ; bear welcome in your eye,  
Your hand, your tongue ; look like the innocent flower  
But be the serpent under it.—SHAKESPEARE.

i. e. hoodwink the world around you.

So, to *beguile hopes*.

**Behalf**.—1. *On behalf of* or *In behalf of*: (prep.) = To further the interest of = In favour of.

Will you not say something *on behalf* of your friend ?

Finance went near to involving us in war *on behalf* of Turkey in 1878.

2. Also, the noun "behalf" is used with a pronominal adjective when "of" is necessarily dropped, e g. *On my behalf*, *In his behalf*.

I will do all my abilities in thy behalf —OTHELLO.

Cp.—*For your behalf*.

3. *In that behalf*: (adv.) In support of that *matter* or *cause*.

When the local governments are asked to make a forward move, they urge they cannot do so without instruction *in that behalf* from the Government of India.

**Behind**.—1. You are always *behind time*: (adj.) unpunctual.

Cp.—A slow coach (colloquial).

2. He is a man *behind the times*: (adj.) of antiquated views and ideas. Rusty. (Fr. *Passé*).

Cp.—An old fogey (colloq.): (n.) A back number.

3. *To fall behind* (V. I.): fail to keep up.

4. *Behind the scenes* of (pred. adj.): privately acquainted with.

Lord Acton, if he has not acted conspicuous parts, has been *behind the scenes* of many and different theatres.—RUSSELL.

5. You always go *behind my words*, i. e., look for secret motives on my part.

4. Do not speak ill of a man *behind his back*: (*adv.*) Without his knowledge. Do not backbite him.

**Beholden.**—To *be beholden*: [only in the past participle —a Shakesperian phrase still in use] = obliged.

For Brutus' sake I am *beholden* to you.—JULIUS CÆSAR.

**Behove.**—It *behoves a person* to do something, i. e., it is incumbent on him to do it: it is fit or proper that he should do it. (Notice the impersonal subject.)

*Behoves it us* to labour for the realm.—SHAKESPEARE.

(In mod. English, it *behoves us* etc.)

*It behoves you* to listen to your father's safe counsel.

**Believe.**—1. *To believe in* (V. T.): To have faith in; Hold *as true*. Put trust in *the truth* of a statement, or in the *efficacy* of a principle, or in the *existence* of anything.

[It generally takes an *opinion, doctrine, or theory* as object]

The Inferno, as imagined by Dante, is even now *believed in* by many.

There never was a rogue that some fool would not *believe in*.—SIR H. HAWKINS.

Dickens *believed in* a career open to the talents and prizes for success, but the successful man must share his good things with those who are less fortunate.—PIONEER.

It is not conceivable that intelligent men and women really *believe in* the lore of spooks and star-gazings and lines of life.

The truest philosophers are those who in days of darkness and difficulty still dare to *believe in* "the good time coming."—RUSSELL.

But, *To believe* (also, V. T. without *in*) = To trust the word of (a person as speaking the *truth*,); or To trust a statement which is regarded *as true*. [usually followed by a noun-clause beginning with "that" as conjunction].

**Cp.**—To have belief of ; To hug a belief (= To be wedded to it : To cherish it in the mind.)

**2.** *To make believe*: [a curious combination of two transitives resulting in an intransitive ; a shortened form of *To make others wrongly believe*] (V. I.) To pretend ; To make pretence ; To feign or affect (*usually* followed by Infinitive or noun clause with conjunction *that*). Hence the compound noun “make-believe” = a pretence.

**Bell.**—1. *To bear the bell* To be the first in a competition ; To win[from the following].

**2.** *Bell-wether* = a sheep which leads the flock with a bell on his neck. Generally Figurative of a “ring-leader.”

John Fisher, Bishop of Rochester, *bell-wether* of the flock which adhered to the older faith.—PROTHERO.

**3.** *To bell the cat*: (Fig) To take the danger of a common enterprise on oneself (From an ancient fable of concerted design on the part of mice to suspend a bell from the cat's neck).

So, *Bell-the-cat* is a noun in

And from a loop-hole while I peep

Old Bell-the-cat came from the keep.—SCOTT.

**4.** *To swear by bell, book or candle* = To curse with due solemnity = To excommunicate (from the church according to the practice of the Roman Catholics. The excommunication ended with the words: “Do to the book, quench the candle, ring the bell.”)

*Bell, book and candle* shall not drive me back

When gold and silver beck me to come on.—SHAK. (K. J.)

**Below.**—1. He is *below flattery* (*adj.*): too low to be affected by it.

**Cp.**—This is *beneath contempt* i. e., not even worth despising (so low that contempt cannot reach it in all its efforts to go down.)

So, it is *beneath you* = not worthy of you ; it will bring you to a lower level in the opinion of men.

2. *Blow the mark* (*adj. pred.*) Having a position lower than the level of the standard in value, merit or efficiency = deficient, inferior.

The examiners found the candidate to be *below the mark* and rejected him.

Cp.—Weighed in the balance and found wanting ; Below par.

3. To *hit a person below the belt* = To fight unfairly (*Fig.*) To attack a person by referring to private matters in a public debate.

**Benefit.**—1. To *reap the benefit of* : (V. T.) To profit by ; derive advantage from.

You will *reap the whole benefit of* the generosity of yours which causes me to flourish.—(Banquo to Duncan in Shakespeare's *Macbeth*).

Cp. To reap the harvest ; To avail oneself of.

2. *Benefits forgot* = (Black) Ingratitude.

Freeze, frgeze, thou bitter sky,  
That dost not bite so nigh,  
As *benefits forgot*—SHAKESPEARE.

Cp. Looking a gift-horse in the mouth. Insensibility of benefits ; Insensibility to the past.

3. The Judge gave the prisoner *the benefit of the doubt* : failed to bring the charge home to him for want of sufficient evidence and was doubtful as to his guiltiness—So, he set him free on the principle that it is better that ten guilty men should escape than that one innocent should suffer. (This, 'escape' is the *benefit* referred to in the expression).

Cp. "Not Proven."

4. *Benefit society* = Association of persons for mutual insurance against illness or infirmity of age. Assistance is



received from a common fund to which each member contributes.

**Cp.** Friendly society [see Society].

**Bent.**—1. They fooled me to the top of my bent (adv.) (Fig. from a bow bent to its fullest extent) : most thoroughly.

2. Let him follow his own bent : act in whatever manner suits his pleasure.

**Berth**—To give a wide berth to a person. (Fig. from the room given to a ship for swinging freely while at anchor) = To avoid him ; To keep well away from him.

Since the last fracas I have taken good care to give that devilish friend a wide berth.

**Beside.**—1. Your remark is beside the mark. (adj. pred.)  
i. e., irrelevant.

So Beside the point. [“beneath” must not be used.]

2 My friend was beside himself, i. e., lost his self-control.

Only be patient till we have appeased

The multitude,, beside themselves with fear—SHAKESPEARE.

i. e., out of their senses from fear.

So, I was beside myself with pain [distinguish from ‘Besides’ = over and above]

**Best.** At the best : (adv) Taking as favourable or hopeful a view as possible ; Looked at in the most favourable light.

Take up this mangled matter at the best.—SHAK (Othello)

**IN. B.** “The” which is strictly grammatical before the superlative degree is often dropped for the sake of brevity].

Virtue concealed within our breast

Is inactivity at best.—SWIFT.

I hate legislative interference in any department of life. At best it is the lesser evil.—M. K. GANDHI.

Life in London is devoted to pleasure, or, at best to profit.—RUSSELL

2. *At one's best* : (pred. adj. or adv.) In one's best state.

Verily, every man *at his best* is altogether vanity.—PSALM (39)

Lord Salisbury is seen *at his very best* in his own house.—RUSSELL.

3. *The best is the enemy of the good* :—[an antithetical saying]; Too high a standard or ideal hinders progress.

4. *To make the best of* (a bad business): To put up with (it) as well as one can.

So, *To make the best of a loss or misfortune* :—To be content.

[DIFFERENTIATE, *Do as best as you can.* : an implication that the best is but bad.

You have got yourself into this difficulty and now you must get out of it *as best as you can* (adv).

But, "*To do one's best*" has no such implication.]

5. *He has the best of it* : ["It" is impersonal] won the argument. Also, Outwitted, over-reached (an adversary).

Cp. To turn a person's flank.

**Betake.**—*To betake oneself to* : To go, repair, or resort to.

The grief-stricken man *betook himself to* a hermitage.

**Bethink.**—[Like the above, reciprocal V. T.] *To bethink oneself of* (a person or thing) : To call to mind ; To consider.

**Better**—1. *Better off* : (pred. adj) In better circumstances ; Richer or more comfortable.

That lady was *better off* after her remarriage.

Cp. Comfortably off.

2 *To get the better off.* (V. T.) To prove stronger than ; To gain the advantage over (an enemy or rival) ; To out-wit ; To worst.

Cp. To get the upperhand of.

3. *One's better half* = His wife.

Cp. The grey mare is the better horse

4. To take *for better for worse*—(Reference to the ritual of the marriage ceremony): (adv.) as inseparably and indissolubly connected with and bound to each other [no conjunction between the phrases]. \*

[In the ritual the adverbial phrase is strengthened by additional phrases as *for richer for poorer, in sickness and in death.*]

5. *I know better than that*: refuse to accept the statement.

6. You will soon *think better of it*: have occasion to change your mind, i. e. reconsider the matter more favourably.

7. *Better than one's word*: more liberal in performance than one's promise.

8. *The better part of valour is discretion*; [This proverbial expression is from Shakespeare's *Henry IV*].

(*The better part of* = superior to.): Discretion wins more than valour.

Cp.—Speech-making is not *the better part of* political valour. Rather does it often defeat its own object.—G. C. WHITWORTH.

Contra: Having more man than wit about me.—SHAK.

[man = valour (concrete for the abstract *manhood*) and, wit = discretion].

9. *He has seen better days*: There was a time when he was in more prosperous circumstances. Idiomatic use of the *present perfect* for the *past*. [See Be]

A very poor man who *has seen better days*, as the phrase goes, is a strange compound of dirty slovenliness and wretched attempts at faded smartness.—DICKENS.

Cp.—Shabby-genteel.

10. You *had better do this* = It would be a wiser course for you to do it than not to do it.

[N. B.—This 'had' is not the auxiliary of the pluperfect-

tense, but it is a mistaken substitute for 'd = would]

**Between.**—1. (This is) *Between ourselves*: (adj.) confined to ourselves so that none outside of us may know it.

[As adverb the use of the phrase is rather parenthetical = speaking confidentially].

So, *between you and me*. [To emphasize the confidential character, an addition, viz "and the door-post" is made]

Well, *between you and me and the door post*, our impulsive friend is being shadowed by an officer of the C. I. D.

2. *Between the devil and the deep sea* (adj. pred.) = Having a menacing danger on either side = Having no escape either way.

So, *Between two fires*; *Between the anvil and the hammer*; *Between Scylla and Charybdes* (a dangerous rock and a dangerous whirlpool on the coast of Sicily).

3. A *betwixt and between* sort of creature (adj.): belonging neither to the one nor to the other of the two classes of creatures (previously mentioned) = half of one class and half of another (adv.) = in a mid-way position.

4. *Few and far between*: (adj.) rare and at wide intervals.

Visits like those of angels, *short (few) and far between*.—BLAIR.

[N. B.—"Between" is not used of more than two persons or things: 'Among' should take its place in such cases.]

5. *Between whiles* (adv.) = in the intervals (a series of intervals being denoted.)

6. *A slip between the cup and the lip* = Blasting or frustration of a keenly cherished hope.

**Beyond.**—1. You have prospered *beyond me*: i. e., more than I.

2. *Beyond compare*; (adv.) Incomparably.

Cp. \* \* \* O, not like me.

For mine is *beyond beyond*.—SHAK (cymb)

i. e., better than all superlatives can express.

**Bid.**—1. To *bid welcome* (V. T.): *salute* while *welcoming*.  
So, to *bid farewell*.<sup>n</sup>

2. To *bid defiance* to (V. T.) = *Defy publicly*.

3. To *bid fair* (followed by an infinitive) (V. I.): Be or seem likely to. [See *Fair*.]

The scheme *bids fair* to succeed i. e., shows promise of success.

The children of the depressed classes *bid fair* to compete with the scions of the upper classes.

Cp.—To be in a fair way of.

4. They are my *bidden guests*, i. e., invited ones.

**Bid.**—You must *bide your time*, i. e., wait for a suitable opportunity.

Cp.—To watch one's time.

**Big.**—1. A woman is *big with child* (adj.) i. e., pregnant; Gravid. An animal is *big with foal* (or young);

Cp. The dusty collier heaves his ponderous sack,

And *big with vengeance*, beats the barbar black.—CAMPBELL

Similarly, 'He is big with news'

2. *Big with the fate of*: prognosticating evil to; ominous to.

The great, the important day, *big with the fate*  
Of Cato, and of Rome.—ADDISON.

Cp.—Coming events cast their shadows before.

3. 'To talk big' = 'Big' is here adverbial = in a threatening manner; also, boastfully. So, to look big.

Cp.—A big man: one of importance. Also, great guns.

Big words (= bluff.)

A big wig (colloq) = a person in authority: A man of considerable influence.

**Bill.**—A *clean bill of health*: certificate of no disease.

**Bird**—1. *A bird's-eye view*. such as is seen by a bird flying over; a *conspectus*. Also a *resume* (of a subject).

Cp.—*Coup d'œil* = general view.

2. *Birds of a feather* = Persons of similar taste or character.

Cp. (a) Fellows of the same kidney. (b) Both of a hair. (c) Cast in the same mould; (d) Tarred with the same brush.

3. *A bird in hand is worth two in the bush* = a *sure present* possession is better than two *would-be or doubtful* ones. [This expression is used whenever there is a case of "*Certainty versus Contingency*"]

Mark the contrast of **A** (=one) with *Two* in the sentence.

4. *Birds of passage* = Migratory ones. (*Fig.*) Sojourners, temporary dwellers.

Europeans, particularly Englishmen, in India are mere *birds of passage* having no stake in the country—GOKHALE.

5. *A little bird whispered*: An informer *who should be nameless* brought the news. [The allusion is to the following Biblical passage :—

Curse not the king, no not in thy thought, and curse not the rich in thy bed-chamber: for a *bird of the air* shall carry the voice, and that which hath wings shall tell the matter.—ECCLES x 25.]

6. *The bird has flown*: The culprit has escaped.

7. *To kill two birds with one stone* = Gain two ends by one stroke or effort.

**Bit**—1. *Bit by bit* (adv.) *very gradually*. Taking a *very small portion* at a time.

2. *To give another a bit of one's mind* = To *speak candidly* to him. To *Castigate* him.

3. You are *a bit of a liar* i. e., partially though not wholly a liar.

4. *Not a bit* = (adv.) not at all—(negative).

Opposed to “every bit” as = quite as (good &c.)

So, wait *a bit* [adv.] (affirmative) i. e., for a short time.

**Bite.**—1. To *bite one's thumb* at another = Provoke quarrel by showing contempt for him.

Do you bite your thumb at us.—SHAK (Romeo & Juliet)

So, To *bite the nail* of one's thumb: sign of scorn and disrespect.

2. To *bite one's lips*; sign of impatience and disgust.

3. To *bite the dust*: To suffer defeat in battle; To die.

4. *The biter bit* i. e., is bitten, (exclamation of exact retaliation). Tit for tat.

**Bitter.**—(To fight) *to the bitter end*: to the last extremity i. e., to the death.

**Black.**—1. *The black art*: magic; sorcery; Necromancy. An occult power by which its practitioners were supposed in olden times to converse with the spirits of the dead in regard to the future.

2. To *black-ball* (V. T.) To reject a person who is candidate for admission to a club or society by ballot, the *black-balls* being significant of votes against him.

Cp.—To *taboo*.

3. A *black-leg* is a workman who refuses to join a trade-union or continues working during a strike.

Also, a swindler on the turf.

4. *Black-mail*: money extorted by threats or terror.

5. *Black Monday*. (school boys' slang) The first day after a long vacation—usually a Monday.

She made home so disagreeable to me that what is called by school boys *Black Monday* was to me the whitest in the whole year.—FIELDING.

6 *Black man* = An Indian (whatever his colour or complexion) in the eyes of Imperial Englishmen.

We are afraid to admit the social superiority of Lord Salisbury's *black man*.—G. W. E. RUSSELL.

7. A *black-guard*: A fellow of offensive manners and low character; a rogne; a scamp; a scoundrel. (originally, a lowest menial in the kitchen whose duty was to attend to the *pots and coals*: Hence, *black*.)

8. A *black sheep*: a member of society distinguished by low habits and loose conduct; a scamp.

The anarchists are the *black sheep* of educated Bengali community.—GUARDIAN.

Cp.—*Mauvais sujet*. (Fr.)

9. To *look black* V. I. To have a sulky appearance.

So, *black* despair, i. e., dismal.

10. *Black ingratitude*: Wicked offence against benefactor.

Cp.—Besotted base ingratitude.—MILTON.

Alas! the gratitude of men

Hath oftener left me mourning.—WORDSWORTH.

11. A crime of the *blackest dye*: most heinous.

Cp.—Of the deepest or deeper dye.

12. *In black and white*: (adv. or adj.) Written or printed.

The memorandum is set down in *black and white*.

13. To beat a person *black and blue*: (adv. Prolepsis) so as to leave his skin *discoloured* with bruise.

14. To be *in the black books of one*: (adj.) i. e., in disfavour with him.



**15.** *Black list*: a list such as is kept by magistrates or police officials containing the names of political suspects, or of men of very bad character; men tabooed by authorities.

**16.** *Black spots in the horizon* = visible signs of coming despair or despondency.

Cp. — Slough of despond; Cays of despair.

**Blank.** — To *look blank* (V. I.): To be nonplussed.

**Blanket** — 1. *A wet blanket.* (n.); anything which discourages. To *be treated with wet blanket* = To be discouraged. Also, A person who discourages any scheme or project; one who extinguishes conversation\* (in a company),

Cp. To throw cold water on (an enterprise &c.)

**2.** *Born on the wrong side of the blanket*: (adj.) illegitimate.

**Blaze.** — To *blaze away at a thing*: (V. I.) To work with great energy and enthusiasm.

**Bless.** 1 He has not a penny to *bless himself with*, i. e. in his possession [from the figure of the cross on silver penny].

Cp. *Blest with peace and plenty* = possessed of:

**2** *Bless my soul*: (interjection). Exclamation of surprise or indignation.

**3.** To *bless one's stars.* (V. I.) Rejoice and be thankful to Heaven.

\* **4.** *Single blessedness* = (Humorously said of) unmarried state.

But earthlier happy is the rose distilled,  
Than that which, withering on the virgin thorn  
Grows, lives, and dies in *single blessedness*. — SHAK.

**Blind.** 1. One's *blind side*: that direction in which he is unguarded. Hence, (fig.) His weak point,

2. A *blind bargain*: a compact made or agreement entered into *without foresight* or knowledge of its true character (generally used of a purposeless and rash transaction).

Cp.—To buy a pig in a poke; To take a leap in the dark.

3. To *blind truth* = To conceal it.

**Block**.—1. A *chip of the old block*: This is used of a child who has inherited his father's qualities, "worthy son of a worthy father"

2. To *cut blocks with razor* = To waste skill.

**Blood**.—1. *Flesh and blood* = Human nature or animal nature generally. [See *Flesh*.]

2. *One's own flesh and blood* = His relatives, or offspring.

3. *Fresh blood*: new members admitted to a family or society.

4. *In bad blood*: (adv) Out of ill feeling, anger, or hatred.

The agitator endeavours to *make bad blood* between the civilians and the people.-- (create ill will and rancorous feeling)—A REVIEW.

So, *Blood feud*: Lasting mutual hostility between families of which one has spilt the other's blood, Vendetta.

5. *In cold blood*: (adv) Without any cause for rousing passion; without provocation, i. e. deliberately. (The phrase is associated with the verbs *attack*, *Kill* &c.)

6. *In hot blood* (adv.): (opposite of the above) i. e. in anger; under great excitement or provocation.

So, *one's blood boils* (followed by an infinitive) = he becomes highly indignant (on seeing an incident or hearing a narrative).

Cp. His blood was up, i. e. His anger or spirit was roused.

7. To *make one's blood green* = To fill him with awe or terror.

8. *Blue blood* = High birth ; aristocratic descent.

9. *A Prince of the blood* : a relative of the royal family.

10. *Blood is thicker than water* : the tie of kindred is real ; A relative is more likely to help than a stranger.

**Contra** : "A little more than kin, but less than kind" — SHAK.

11. A transaction is said to be *died in blood*, when it is marked with severe cruelty.

12. *An apostle of blood and iron* : one who advocates military compulsion.

13. *Blood-sucker* : (*Lit.*) Leech ; Vampire — (*Fig.*) a cruel extortionate person. A "sponger."

14. A quality *runs in one's blood* = is his family characteristic ; is inherent in him.

**Cp.** Brod in the bone.

**Blow.**—1. A storm *blows over* (V. I.) : passes off after having spent its force. But, a storm *blows itself out* (V. T. for the adverbial adjunct "out") : spent its force completely.

2. So<sup>a</sup> a scandal (which is in the nature of storm) *blows off*, i. e., is forgotten.

3. To *blow up* (V. T.) (collog). To scold. Hence, the noun : I gave him a *blow up*. Also, To puff up.

4. The Magazine *blew up* = (V. I.) was broken and scattered by explosion.

5. At present I am *blown upon* : (*adj. p. red.*) discredited ; have lost my reputation.

**Cp.** in bad odour.

6. To *blow out* a lamp = To extinguish it.

7. At a *blow* (adv.): By one single action; at one effort; quite suddenly; By one stroke.

• Cp. At one fell swoop.

8. To *blow hot and cold* (in the same breath). [V. I.] Be favourable and unfavourable *by turns* (i. e., alternately). To vacillate.

Cp. To play fast and loose.

9. To *blow one's own trumpet*: To praise oneself highly; To sound one's own praises.

10. At last it *blew great guns*: it (impersonal for weather) became very stormy. (great guns = a heavy gale). The storm blew violently.

•  
Blue.—1. *Blue-ribbon* (lit.)—The broad blue ribbon worn by members of the order of the Garter over the left shoulder and hanging to the hip. Hence, (by metonymy—sign for the thing signified) a member of this order. (*Fig.*) What marks the attainment of an *object of great ambition*, or the object itself.

Also, the highest position in any society; or the highest prize in any competition.

The Derby is the *blue-ribbon* of horse-racing.

Justice Sir Asutosh was appointed to the vice-chancellorship, the *blue-ribbon* of Calcutta University.

Let us hope that the *Blue Ribbon* of the Garter which ranks with the Golden Fleece and makes its wearer a comrade of all the crowned heads of Europe is attained by arts more dignified than those which awoke the picturesque satire of Dean Swift.—RUSSELL.

"The Emperor of Lilliput rewarded his courtiers with three fine silken threads, one of which was blue, one green, and one red. The Emperor held a stick horizontally and the candidates crept under it, backwards and forwards, several times. Whoever showed the most agility in creeping was rewarded with the *blue thread*."—SWIFT.

Cp. A feather in one's cap.

2. *The man in blue* = The police-man.

3. *A blue-jacket* is the sign of marine or naval service ; a sailor.

4. *A blue-stocking* = a lady of great learning. (Fr.) *A bas-blue*.

5. He was then *in the blues* or *in a fit of the blues* = in low or depressed spirits. [Note the plural]

Cp. A fit of the blue devils.

6. *Blue books* are the authorized reports and publications made by government (the cover being blue)

7. He is *true-blue* (adj.): of inflexible honesty and fidelity, [a staunch adherent or follower is so called.]

8. *To look blue*: To seem nervous or depressed.

9. *A bolt* (i. e., thunder-bolt) *from the blue* (i. e., clear sky): a complete surprise ; something sudden or unexpected.

What had wrought such a sudden and marvellous change? What was the nature of this terrific *bolt out of the blue*?—TIMES.

**Bluff.**—1. *Boasting bluff*: Big but empty words; Rodomontade.

**Blurt.**—To *blurt out* a secret &c.: To divulge it *unadvisedly*. To utter inadvertently.

Cp. To let the cat out of the bag.

**Blush.**—1. *At the first blush* (adv.): At the first view or consideration of a matter. Cp. *Prima facie*.

(Metaphor from the first ray of dawn.)

The amazing declaration was made *in the first blush* of this reciprocity proposal.—PIONEER.

2. *To put a person to the blush*; To put him to shame. = To make him ashamed (or *redde*n with shame).

**Board**—1. To go by the board: To fall overboard (as masts of a ship); (*Fig.*) to be discarded or rejected.

The crude principle that one country should manufacture and that others should be content to supply the raw materials *has gone by the board*.—PIONEER.

2 Above board (*adj. pred*): fair and undisguised (*adv.*) openly; without suspicion of unfairness.

[Metaphor from games at cards].

**Boast**.—1. *Not much to boast of*: (*adj.*) Mediocre; of mediocrity.

Cp.—No great shakes.

Contra: As to leave nothing to be desired.

2. To boast a person off: To praise him exultingly.

Do not smile on me that I boast her off;  
For thou shalt find she will outstrip all praise,  
And make it halt behind her.—SHAK. (T.)

Cp.—To set off (= adorn or embellish.)

**Boat**.—1. To be (or row or sail) in the same boat: Placed in positions equally risky.

Cp.—In the same box (i. e., equally embarrassed)

2. He has an oar in every one's boat: is meddlesome; a busy-body.

**Body**.—To keep body and soul together: To sustain the body that it may not perish from starvation. [Beware of inserting "the" before the nouns.]

The Indian going abroad to earn enough to keep body and soul together has that body tortured and that soul damned for ever.—MRS. S. NAIDU.

**Bold**.—1. To make bold (*V. I.* followed by Infinitive): Presume; Venture.

Also, To make so bold as to say.

2. To show a bold front: Not to yield tamely; To meet opposition bold!

The country needs determined and courageous men who would remain at their posts, compose their differences of opinion without complaining to the public and *show an equally bold front to the external critic and the internal enemy*—H. SPENCER.

3. *Bold and rude* : (adj) Impudent.

**Bolster.**—To *bolster up* (usually an unworthy cause and object, as claim, pretention &c.): To support.

Why do you *bolster up* your pretensions with lies?

No scheme for *bolstering up* the decaying fabric of a service adapted only to conditions which have passed away never to return.—A. MAJUMDER.

**Bolt**—1. *A bolt from the blue* : [See Blue.]

2. *A fool's bolt is soon shot* : He soon speaks and is soon silenced.

**Bon.**—1. *Bon mot.* (Fr. n.) A smart or witty saying.

2. *Bon-vivant* (Fr. n.) One fond of indulging in good living. A gluttonous person ; an epicure ; a gourmand.

**Bona.**—1. *Bona fide.* (Lat. adv.): In good faith ; with honest belief ; without fraud or deception ; as, he acted *bona fide*.

2. This is a *bona fide* transaction : (adj) Honest ; guileless.

3. His *bona fide* cannot be questioned : (n.) Honest belief or honesty.

**Contra** : *Mala fide.*

**Bone.**—1. *Bone of contention.* (n.) *literally*, one over which dogs quarrel when it is thrown among them—(*Fig.*) a subject of dispute or rivalry.

Alsace is the *bone of contention* between France and Germany.

Symptomatology and Pathology—Neither can be ruled out, and it is foolish for our school (Homœopathic) to divide on such a *bone of contention* :—DR. NASH.

14. I have a *bone to pick with you* = I have some cause of quarrel with you : I have a complaint to make against you.

2. This lying tendency of his *is bred in the bone*, i. e., cannot be eradicated.

. Cp. Running in the blood.

\* 3. *To make no bones of*: (V. T.) Not to hesitate about ; To make no scruples about. (The metaphor is taken from a dog greedily swallowing meat together with the bone to which it is attached.)

• He *makes no bones of telling* falsehood on occasion.

N. B.—*About* may take the place of “of”: an infinitive may be used for the preposition as he *makes no bones* to tell falsehood.]

4. This declaration will *break no bones*: cause harm to none.

5. He is mere *skin and bone*, i. e., a very thin person.

**Book.**—1. I am no longer in *that upstart's books* or in *his good books* = in favour with. So, to be in one's bad books = in disfavour with him.

2. My name is *on the books* of the company, i. e., entered in the list of its members.

[Note the plural forms in both.]

3. If any mischance occurs I will *bring you to book*. (V. T.) i. e., call you to recount ; hold you responsible for it.

4. He is *at his books* (pred. adj.) = reading and learning.

5. *Book-learned* (adj.) Knowing books only, not life, i. e., theories not practice.

**Boon.**—A *Boon companion* is one that is jolly and merry.

A wily sportsman once induced a band of intoxicated *boon companions* to bet some sums of money.—RUSSELL.

\* Conscience makes me firm ;

The *boon companion*, who her strong breast-plate



Buckles on him that feels no guilt within,  
And bids him on and fear not.—DANTE (*Inferno*)

Cp. Good fellow. Hail-fellow-well-met.

**Boot.**—1. *Over shoes, over boots* = As well risk much as little. No half measures.

2. *The boot is on the other leg.* Truth or responsibility is just the other way round.

3. *To boot* (adv.) = also.

The bounty and benison of heaven  
*To boot* and *to boot*.—SHAK.

With all appliances and means *to boot*.—SHAK.

Cp: The adverbial phrase ‘*To the good*’ = additionally.  
As well.

**Born.**—1. *In all one's born days* = During the days that have passed since his birth; hence, during his whole experience.

I have never met with such a monstrous case of ingratitude in all my born days.

2. *Born under a lucky star*, i. e., destined to be fortunate. So, *born under an evil star* = destined to be unfortunate always.

Cp. I was not born under a rhyming planet.—SHAK.

3. He is a *born orator*, he is *an orator born* i. e., destined to be an orator.

The lawyer is born but to murder, the Saviour lives but to bless.—TENNISON.

4. *To be born to*: Destined by birth to have.

One great factor in my fortunate condition of health was, perhaps, that I had no ridiculous ambition. What was to come would come as result of hard work, for I was *born to* no miraculous interpositions or official friendships.—SIR H. HAWKINS.

[Note: A person is *born of* a woman; or is *borne*, by her]—

**Bore.**—*Bore and button-hole.* These two words often go together. The former means a person who *wearies* by tedious

dull talk; a twaddler; and the latter means one who by his talk *detains* a listener against his reluctance.

One of the principal clubs in London has the misfortune to be frequented by a gentleman who is by common consent the greatest *bore* and *button-holer* in London.—RUSSELL.

[Fr. Raconteur = story teller.]

**Both.**—To make both ends meet: [The two ends are, the means and the maintenance, or the income and the outlay.]

To keep the expense within the income, or to keep them equal.

[N. B. Don't substitute *two* for *both*.]

**Bottle**—1. To look for a needle in a *bottle of hay*; This is said when a *hopeless search* is made. [Bottle = Bundle]

Cp Gratiano speaks an infinite deal of nothing, more than any man in all Venice. His reasons are as *two grains of wheat hid in two bushels of chaff*—SHAK. (M. V.)

2. *New wine in old bottles* · New principle too powerful to be restrained by old forms

This course consisted in ~~the~~ attempt to pour new wine into old bottles.—TIMES

**Bottom**—1. To bet one's *bottom dollar* = To stake all the money one has.

2. To go (V. I.) or send (V. T.) to the *bottom* (of a river, lake or sea) = To sink or cause to sink.

3. He is at the *bottom of this affair*, i. e., the chief cause or instigator.

Cp. To pull the wires; wire-puller.

4. Let us *search* the matter to the *bottom*, i. e. so as to find its real or essential character.

So, let us get to the bottom of the affair.

Cp. Probe to the quick: find out *what is at the bottom of his mind*.

5. He is a kind hearted man *at bottom* [ no article before *bottom*] i. e. in reality, though his exterior or speech may indicate the contrary.

Cp. At heart.

6. He *stands on his (own) bottom*: is quite independent.

Cp. To stand on one's legs.

**Bound.**—1. To advance *by leaps and bounds*. (adv) with startling speed.

2. You are *bound up with me* in this matter, i. e. you have the same interest in it as I have.

Cp. In the same boat.

3. (As adj followed by Infinitive) = certain (to happen).

Whichever way the luck went, a greater or less sum was *bound to* find its way into the coffers of the family —RUSSELL.

**Bout.**—1. *This bout*: (adv.) on this occasion.

2 *Bout of drinking*: Fit of drunkenness; carousal; Booze. So, *bout of illness*.

3. *Bout of strength*: Trial or contest.

**Bow.**—1. *To draw or pull the long bow*: (V. I.) To tell unlikely stories especially of one's own prowess. To exaggerate.

To indulge in hyperboles. To romance.

2. I have a *bowing acquaintance with him*: Slight recognition.

3. That haughty fellow is now *bowed down* by misfortune, i. e. crushed.

[ Note the passive form ]

4. *To bow down* ( V. I. ) *to an object of reverence*, even if that object is an idol. But we *bow to a decision* [ *not down* ].

**Bowels.**—*Bowels of compassion or of mercy* = Tender feelings such as pity or forgiveness. (Note the plural).

Bergundy was a shallow-hearted fortune-hunter with *no bowels of compassion*. Shakespeare's (characters)

**Bowl.**—1. To *bowl along* (v. i.) To go fast and smoothly.

2. To be *bowed out*: Stopped in a successful career.

3. To be *bowed over*: Rendered helpless; Disconcerted.

**Box.**—1. *I am in the wrong box*, i. e. in an awkward position, a scrape, or difficulty.

2. To be in *the same box* with another = To be as embarrassed as he.

Cp. To row or sail in the same boat.

3. To *box the compass*. (a nautical phrase): To repeat or go over the points of the compass in order. (*Fig.*) To make a complete revolution and end where one began (in politics, arguments &c.,)

Mr. B. harangued in his rapid and vehement manner and amazed the audience by *boxing the compass* all round (i. e. trying all sorts of argument and sophistry)—M. MAIL.

**Brain.**—1 To *cudgel one's brains* = To think hard.

2. To *have something on the brain*: To be crazy about it.

3. This success will *turn his brain*, i. e. make him vain and silly.

**Brand.**—( *Bran-new* or ) *Brand-new*. = Conspicuously new as if just fresh from the mint (said of a coin).

Shakespeare uses the phrase "fire-new".

Formerly the compound was spelt and pronounced as "Bran-new"]

**Brazen.**—1. *Brazen-faced* (person) i. e. shameless.

2. To *brazen it out*: ( *It* is used indefinitely for a particular matter or deed, or act. ) To boast of it *instead of being ashamed*. To carry it off impudently.

So, To *brave it out* = To carry oneself defiantly when under suspicion or blame.

**Bread.**—1. *Bread and butter*—This is concrete materialization of the abstract "livelihood."

2. To *Take the bread out of one's mouth* = To take away his living by some means.

3. To *make one's bread* = To earn a living.

4. He knows on which side his bread is buttered: (n.) *Fig.* where his interest lies.

5. *His bread is buttered on both sides*: He is in enjoyment of the easy comforts of life.

**Cp.** To live in clover.

(b) To *cast one's bread upon the waters*: To do good without looking for gratitude or immediate return. [Taken from the Bible].

Costly artistic advertisements are so much *bread cast upon the waters*. The cost seems for the present to be thrown away, but they pay well in the long run.—ADVERTISER.

**Break.**—1. *I broke my son of that pernicious habit*: i. e., caused him to give it up.

2. *I broke the unpleasant news to my friend*: i. e., told it so cautiously as not to startle or shock him.

3. So, to *break one's mind to another* = To reveal one's thoughts and feelings to him.

4. To *break ground*: (*lit.*) to begin to plough; (*Fig.*) To begin to execute any plan; to commence any operation.

5. To *break a lance with* some person = To enter into contention with him (by force or strength, literally) or (by arguments, figuratively) = To argue against him.

6. To *break down* (V. I.). (a) while making that most pathetic appeal the speaker *broke down*, i. e., lost control over

his feelings. Also, (b) to fail and be unable to proceed in an undertaking.

(c) Four witnesses *broke down* in cross examination i. e., failed to sustain the truth of their previous statement.

(d) No man can work so hard without *breaking down* : i. e., failing in health.

So, *Break-down* : (n.) a complete failure in any enterprise ; a fiasco.

7. To *break down* (V. T.) = To subdue or crush.

The teacher could with no little difficulty *break down* this formidable opposition on the part of his pupils.

[Note. Used generally in the passive form.]

Of late years these social barriers have been *broken down*. So, to be *broken down* with illness or grief = To be prostrated.

8. To *break* (V. I) *away from*—(V. T.) : To leave, desert.

What a contrast between Then and Now ! Girls who do not marry in their first three or four seasons soon *break away* from home.—RUSSELL.

9. To *break loose* (V. I.) To shake off restraint. Used also in p. p. as, the devil *broken loose* from hell.

10. To *break forth* (V. I.) = Burst out [used generally of any sudden manifestation, as light, rage voice &c.]

11. To *break in* (V. T) = To tame or discipline (as any wild animal or bird).

[Note.—In the passive form *in* is dropped, as a *broken horse*—When some other preposition follows, *in* is dropped as, to *break a horse to the rein* or to the harness. Without such consequent preposition *in* is retained, as the child requires to be *broken in*].

12. To *break in* (V. I) : say something causing interruption to a speaker.

Sir H St. J. *broke in* loudly, "good heavens! well, he is an extraordinary man"—C. READA.

So, To *break in upon* a person is to interrupt him in his speech.

Let us not *break in upon* him (Samson).—MILTON.

If there is to be a real reform of the administration, the monopoly of the covenanted Civil Service must be *broken in upon*.—CHRONICLE.

A small ray of light *broke in upon* my gloom.—J. S. MILL.

**13.** To *break off* (V. I.): cease to speak; Stop during the progress of a speech; To pass suddenly into a different line of thought or action.

Cp. To go off at a tangent = diverge impetuously from the matter in hand. (V. T.) The speech was *broken off* by the entrance of the much dreaded C. I. D. officer. (i. e., interrupted) so, To *break off* a marriage = put a sudden stop to it.

**13A.** She at last *broke through* her shyness: Overcame.

**13B.** To *break up*: (V. T.) To tear; To pull to pieces (V. I.) To begin to fail in health.

**14.** To *break with* a friend: To quarrel with him or part with him.

To *break with* prejudice and with convention, to enter upon a great and free life, is not due until some doubts have been mastered and some coward hesitations silenced.—ECCLE HOMO.

Knox had carried the people with him, and Scotland had for ever *broken with* Rome.—PROTHERO.

Cp. To *break with* the past = To renounce old beliefs and strike out something new. Iconoclast.

**15.** To *break the ice*: To get over initial shyness—To speak first after a prolonged silence on a delicate matter.

Having thus *broken the ice* Mr. Fawcett now appeared frequently in public.—TIMES.

After he'd a while looked wise,

At last *broke* silence and the ice.—S. BUTLER.

Cp. To *break through* shyness or some delicate feeling, i. e. to overcome it in others. To prepare the way for others.

16. This calamity *broke his heart* : caused him to die of grief :

So, the compound "broken-hearted" (adj.)

(Had we) Never met or never parted

We had never been *broken-hearted*.—BYRNES.

The children turned their backs *on* him, the wife died *broken-hearted*.  
He went with the stream and had not courage sufficient to bear up against  
so many shocks.—DICKENS.

Cp. Broken fortune.

**Breaker.**—*Breakers ahead* : [*Lit*, a nautical cry] *Fig.*  
Great danger about to befall ; An imminent menacing danger.

He failed to see the social *breakers ahead*.

Cp. Clouds gathering ; Storm brewing.

**Breast.**—1. Pressed so much the boy made a *clean breast*  
of his part in the ugly transaction, *i. e.* confessed it.

2. To *breast the current* = To bear the breast against it.

Cp. To stem the tide.

**Breath.**—1. To *take breath* (v. i.) : To rest.

2. To *take away one's breath* = To astonish him or to  
cause fear in him.

3. To utter *under the breath* or *below one's breath* (v. i.)  
= To whisper. Cp. *Sotto voce* (= in an under-tone).

4. To *waste breath* = Talk vainly.

5. *With bated breath* : (adv.) with the breathing restrained  
from fear.

In a bondman's key

With bated breath, and whispering humbleness.—SHAK.

**Breath.**—5A. To be *out of breath* (adj.) : Breathless.  
To lose the power of breathing freely.

Oh ! I am out of breath in this fond chase —SHAK.

6. *Do not breathe a word* : Do not utter a single word  
(about a matter.)—[ Mark the negative sentence. ]



7. To *breathe one's last* (V. I.) To die.

We forget how many mortals *breathe their last* in every minute according to the calculations of statistical authorities.—TIMES.

**Breed.** To *breed in and in*: used of a sect or people that always marry near relations.

**Breeches.**—A woman is said to *wear the breeches* when she usurps her husband's authority or rules him.

Cp. The gray ~~mare~~ is the better horse.

**Brew**—*Drink as you have brewed* = Take the consequences of your act.

Cp. Reap as you have shown [SEE BED].

**Brick**—To *make bricks without straw*: To work without having the necessary materials or appliances supplied.

A good master never tells his subordinates to *make bricks without straw*.

Cp. To weave a rope of sand.

**Bridge.**—To *bridge over* a difficulty, crisis &c., = To find some way of overcoming it.

**Brief**—1. This adjective is used substantively in combination with the prep. *in* to make an adverbial phrase = To say briefly.

Cp.—*In short*.

*In brief*, all things are artificial<sup>ly</sup>; for nature is the art of god.—SIR T. BROWNE.

2. To *hold (or accept) a brief (n.) for (or on behalf of) a person* = To advocate his cause as a counsel does. Hence, generally, to argue a matter in favour of him.

[Note.—Noun from *brief* is *brevity*. Brevity is the soul of wit (Shak) = There can be no witty thought unless expressed in a very few words. The essence of wit is terseness.]

**Bridle**.—1. To *bridle up* V. I. (used of a horse) = To toss or throw up the head and draw in the chin.

2. To *bridle in* (V. T.): Bring under control (used *literally* with horse as object; and *figuratively* with person as object.)

**Brim.**—A cup or vessel is said to *brim over* (V. I.) when its liquid contents run over the brim, i. e., when it is so full as to overflow.

**Bring.**—[This verb is essentially transitive. It combines with prepositional adverbs in various senses.]

1. To *bring about* (generally a result) = To cause to happen = To effect; To accomplish.

All is best, though we oft doubt  
What the unsearchable dispose  
Of Highest Wisdom *brings about*,  
And ever best found in the close.—MILTON. (Samson).

**Cp.** Bring to pass.

2. To *bring things to bear* (V. I.) = To cause them to yield successful result.

**Cp.** To work the oracles.

3. To *bring* (usually some power or influence) *to bear upon* a person = To apply it to him. [See Bear.]

Sir Feroz Sah Mehta *brought* great wisdom *to bear upon* all the work of the University.—Dr.—MACKICHAN.

Great care and thoroughness have been *brought to bear upon* the production of this work.—SIR. N. LOCKYER.

4. To *bring* (a person) *down* = To abase him.

5. To *bring down the house* = To elicit *enthusiastic* applause.

To *bring down* a narrative &c. to the present time.  
i. e. to continue it.

**Cp.** To bring up accounts to a further point or date.

[Note.—*Down* is appropriate after the object in (4) but not in (5).]

6. To *bring forth* (used of pregnant females) = to produce or give birth to (young). (used of trees or plants) = To produce (as fruit)

Cp—*The she-wolf littered a whelp; The she-goat goat yeaned a kid; the sheep yeaned a lamb.*

Though in Rome littered—not Romans as they are not, though calved in the porches of the Capitol.—SHAK (Cor)

7. To *bring a matter or truth home* (adv.) to a person = To convince him of it.

That leading journal ransacked the works of premier authorities to *bring home* to the government that the Municipal Bill should be differently framed if the cause of popular government is to be really promoted.

8. To *bring a charge home to a person* = To convict him of it. = To find or pronounce him guilty of it.

9. To *bring in* (an income or profit) = To yield or realize.

The jury *brought in* a verdict of guilty against the prisoner i. e., pronounced.

10. To *bring on* (a disease) = To originate; lead to.

Indulgence in passionate outbursts is likely to *bring on* Dementia.

10A. The author has *brought out* a new edition of his book, i. e., published it.

11. I will *bring over* this antagonist, or *bring him over* = convert him *by persuasion* to our party; make him change his opinion and espouse our cause.

12. The doctor succeeded in *bringing* his patient *through*, i. e., in saving him or enabling him to recover from his illness.

Also, to *bring one round* (again.)

My illness threatened to be fatal: and nothing but the greatest care and skill *brought me round*.—SIR H. HAWKINS.

**13.** He fell into an epileptic fit, but I *brought* him *to*, i. e., caused him to recover. [so, in the passive form, he was *brought to*.]

*Bring to* (V. T.): The ship was *brought to* — Her motion was checked; or (V. I.) The ship *brought to* = came to a stop.

[Note this exceptional intransitive use though *Bring* a transitive verb is combined with *to* (here an adverb.)]

**14.** The fire was *brought under*, i. e., subdued or nearly extinguished.

The refractory child was *brought under* : reduced to obedience.

**15.** I *brought up* several orphan relatives, i. e., reared; fed and tended; educated. So, I was *brought up* in the Presidency College, i. e., educated there.

The mother-bring-up-brings up a child not her own.

This man had forgotten the religion he had been *brought up in*.

**16.** To *bring up* a subject or grievance is to introduce it to notice.

**16A.** To *bring up* accounts to a further point or date : To continue.

Cp. To bring down (a narrative &c.)

**17.** To *bring up the rear* (V. I.) : Form the rear portion i. e., to come last. To move onwards in the rear.

**18.** The lady was *brought to bed* of a male child, i. e., delivered. [Note the passive form.]

**Broad.**—**1.** To me the matter is *as broad as it is long* (*adj*): indifferent.

**2.** (To sow or scatter) *broadcast* (*adv.*) i. e., over the surface instead of in drills or rows. (*Fig.* extended to opinions, pamphlets, spies &c.)

One of those precious little gems of thought which Mr. Besant alone knows how to produce and scatter broadcast.—I. REVIEW.

3. *Broad-based* (adj.) strongly supported on a broad basis, as a building (often used figuratively.)

"*Broad-based* upon the people's will."—TENNYSON. (To the Queen).

**Broom.**—1. *New brooms sweep clean.* (Fig.) Newly appointed officials are eager to sweep away abuses.

2. *To jump the broomstick* or *to jump over the broomstick.*

To get married not in the usual or ordinary way.

The widow was married young *over the broomstick* to a well-to-do widower in a out-of-the way village.—CHRONICLE.

Cp. *Scotch marriage.*

**Brown.**—1. *Brown bread*: such as is made of unbolted flour, i. e., made of whole meal ["wholemeal" or wheatmeal biscuits made this way are prescribed for diabetics]. ●

2. *Brown study* (u) Absent-mindedness: Reverie.

3. *Brown-ware*: common sort of pottery.

**Brunt**—To *bear the brunt of* (an attack, struggle &c.) = To endure the utmost violence or chief stress of an onset. To brave; To stand.

Let Cassius singly *bear the whole brunt of* your vengeance, leaving Brutus and his friends unharmed.—DEIGHTON.

Cp. To stand in the breach.

(Fig.) General Barrow has *borne the brunt of* much heavy additional work.—TIMES.

**Brutum.**—*Brutum fulmen* (Lat.) = a harmless thunder-bolt. An empty threat. So "Blank cartridge" is figuratively used.

The Anglo-Indian agitation (against Mr. Sankaran Nair) proved, in the long run, *brutum fulmen*.—I. REVIEW.

**Bubble.** 1. *Bubble and squeak*: (lit) cold meat fried

with vegetables. (This combination is generally used to express contempt for what it really of little worth though possessing a showy exterior. "Rank and title ! *bubble and squeak*."—Lytton.

Cp. Brummagem (adj.) = Showy but worthless : Pinchbeck.

Similarly, *Bubble* is used as an adjective, as in "Bubble reputation" (Shak).

Cp. "Empty shade"—POPE.

Dryden speaks of "honour" as "an empty bubble"

2 *The bubble burst*. Figuratively used whenever the utter worthlessness of anything specious or meretricious is exposed.

Cp. The mountain brought forth a mouse. The game is up : All is lost.

Do but blow them to their trial, the bubbles are out. —SHAK (II)

**Buckle**—1. To *Buckle to* (V. I.) [*To* is here an adverb] = Begin one's work in right earnest ; To start it with zeal and vigour.

2 Also (V. T. where *to* is a preposition) : To set about ; prepare for :

3. To *buckle on one's armour* = Fasten it with a buckle so as to be ready for fight or action.

Cp. *gird up one's loins*.

**Bud**.—1. The plant is *in bud* (adj.) = putting forth buds.

2. The project was *nipped in the bud*, i. e., suppressed at its inception ; prevented from being further developed. (*Fig.* from bud developing itself into flower).

Cp. Kill him (J. Cæsar) in the shell.—SHAK.

**Buffet**.—1. *Fortune's buffets*. (knocks, blows) i. e. heavy strokes of calamity. The phrase is taken from Shakespeare. (Hamlet to Horatio).

\*                      \*

A) one, in suffering all, that suffers nothing ;                      thou hast been

A man that *fortune's buffets* and rewards  
Hast taken with equal thanks, (i. e., with *equanimity*).  
So, the buffets of fate.

2. To *buffet the torrent or the waves* = contend with or struggle against the current or the surges. (*Fig.*) To grapple with *great difficulties*.

Cp. To breast the current. To scud under bare poles.

**Build.**—1. To *build* (*V. I.*) upon: (*Fig.*) To have reliance upon.

This was a man the stability of whose good faith seemed such that I thought I might *build upon* it, as upon a firm foundation, with entire confidence.—DEIGHTON.

2. So, (*V. T.*) To *build oneself up in*: To base one's hopes upon.

Mr. Dombey *was built up in* his young son Paul.—DICKENS.

**Bulk.**—1. To *break bulk* (*V. I.*) To reduce the volume of cargo by unloading.

2. *In bulk* (*adj.*): loose not packed up.

The goods are stored in bulk.

3. (To buy or sell) *in bulk* (*adv.*): in *large quantities*.

4. Your debts are *bulking up* (*V. I.*) = amounting to a heavy sum.

**Bull.**—1. A *bull-headed fellow* is one that is obstinate and impetuous.

2. A *bull in a china shop* = (*Fig.*) A clumsy fellow recklessly upsetting order and well-arranged system.

Cp. Bedlam or hell broke loose; All the fat in the fire.

3. To *take the bull by the horns*. (*Fig.*) To confront a danger or difficulty most boldly instead of flying from it.

Cp. To face the music; To grasp the nettle.

**Bullet.**—*Every bullet has its billet*: has, so to speak, attached to it a ticket of order from God directing it to kill this or that person in a fight. (*Fig.* applied to any disease or pestilence bearing the mandate of God, as it were, to carry off particular persons as its victims.)

No one talks now of "every bullet having its billet" or thinks of life as an appointed span.—C. REVIEW.

Cp. Death is but preordained destiny.

**Buried.**—1. *Buried in oblivion* = (p. adj.) = forgotten.

2. (Talent) *buried in a napkin* or *laid up in a napkin*, i. e. no use is made of it. = consigned to obscurity.

Cp. Light hidden under a bushel.

**Burn.**—1. *To burn up a thing* is to get rid of it by fire.

2. *To burn out* (V. T.) To exhaust the contents of (wick or any thing that is capable of being burnt.)

[**Note.**—out is an adv. = completely.]

"I should leave the ashes of my weary life to burn themselves out". (Here the figure is from the snuff of a candle).

3. *Burning question* = one that is being keenly discussed and requires immediate solution, as "self-government within the empire" is the burning question in India at present.

4. *Burning shame*; (adj.) glaring; hence, scandalous.

5. *Burning with curiosity* (p. adj.) i. e. inflamed; being under great excitement for curiosity.

6. *To burn day-light*: To use artificial light by day when none is necessary. *Fig.* = To waste or Kill time.

Cp. "In delay we waste our lights in vain, like lamps by day.—SHAK.

Cp. Waste the precious hours.

7. *To burn one's boats* = To leave no means of retreat. (*Fig.*) To commit oneself to a course without any chance of its being recalled.

The Rubicon is crossed; The die is cast



8. To *burn one's fingers* = To hurt oneself by rashly meddling in another's quarrel or in any transaction beyond one's own sphere.

The (Irish University) Bill did not pass, and ministers were now chary of *burning their fingers* again over this matter.—TIMES.

I warned you in the very beginning that if you went in for shares of a Bank managed by speculating Indians you would soon *burn your fingers*.

8. To *burn the candle at both ends*: To expend one's energies in two directions instead of utilizing them the better by employing them in one. Not to husband one's resources.

9. A *burnt child dreads the fire*: one who has suffered becomes wary because of past experience of pain.

Cp. Once bit twice shy.

**Burst.**—1. To *burst in* (V. I.): To come into a room rather suddenly and thus cause interruption.

2. To *burst out* (V. I.) To exclaim by *suddenly* giving vent to a pent-up feeling.

Cp. Burst into a flame; Burst into tears.

3. To *burst with joy* (V. I.): To be filled to *excess*. So, to *burst with envy* or any emotion too strong to be restrained as grief. So, *burst* (n) of anger, envy, laughter, eloquence &c.

**Bury.**—1. To *bury the hatchet*: (From North American Indian custom) symbolical of making peace or becoming reconciled.

**Contra.** To *take up the hatchet* = To declare war or antagonism.

Cp.—To smoke the calumet.

2. To *bury one's talent in a napkin* = not to use it.

Cp. To hide one's light under a bushel.

**Bush.**—1. To *beat about the bush*: (V. I.) To *deviate from plain straightforward language*. [See Beat].

2. *Good wine needs no bush* : A really good thing requires no advertisement. (Bush or thick shrub hung out in front of inns serving as advertisement for liquor being sold inside )

**Cp.** A thing is its own recommendation.

**Bushel.**—1. *Not to hide one's light under a bushel* = To set example. To expose one's views.

Neither do men light a candle, and put it under a bushel but on a candle-stick.—**MATTHEW**

I have been sufficiently long in public life and have never hidden my light under a bushel; consequently my views in public questions of importance are well known to all —**V. R. PANDIT.**

**Cp.** Not to bury one's talent in a napkin.

2. (Do anything) *Under a bushel* (adv.) : (a figurative phrase) = secretly ; without letting others know what cannot be kept secret.

3. *To measure others' corn by one's own bushel* : To judge others by making oneself the criterion.

**Business.**—1. *To go about your business* (V. I.) [Generally used in the imperative mood as reproof to an intruder]. Mind your own business, this is none of yours ; it does not concern you.

2. *To send a man about his business.* (V. T.) = To dismiss him as an intruder. To tell him that he had rather mind his own business instead of meddling in that of others. [This also is reproof.]

3. *He means business*, i. e., is an earnest worker : is in earnest about any serious work.

"I think nothing of their Lord Salisbury. He is only a lath painted to look like iron. But that old Jew means business.—**PRINCE BISMARCK.**"

So, he is a man of business, i. e., does not trifle with what he takes in hand.

But, he is my man of business = my attorney or agent.

And, he is a *business man* (where *business* is used *adjectively*) = one engaged in some trade or commerce.

4. The *business of a meeting* = Items of business to be considered at a meeting. The list of Agenda.

5. This is *business like* (adj.) practical; well ordered.

**Busy.**—1. *Busy-body* = a meddler; generally, a mischief-maker.

*Busy-bodies* never feel happy. They often burn their fingers, i. e. hurt themselves by their meddlesomeness.

Local busy-bodies associated themselves in the endeavour to popularize the Fr. Revolution in England — RUSSELL.

Cp. To have one's oar in every man's boat.

Mr. Paul Pry (in Poole's Comedy).

**Butter.**—1. She *looks as if butter would not melt in her mouth* = looks demure or prudish; affects to be nice, formal and unconcerned. \*

2. *Fine words butter no parsnips* = Mere professions or utterances of fine sentiments are of no value unless accompanied or followed by corresponding good action.

Cp. Deeds not words.

**Butterfly.**—To *break a butterfly on a wheel* = To expend too disproportionate a force or energy to achieve a *very small* result. To waste power.

"Satire or sense! Alas! can Sporus feel!

Who breaks a butterfly on a wheel? — POPE.

Cp. To waste powder and shot. To employ a steam-engine to crack a nut.

**Button.**—1. *Boy in buttons*: A page-boy dressed in livery. [also called a "tiger"]

**Buy.**—1. To *buy in* (V. I.) To name a higher price at an auction sale than the highest offered, and thus withdraw.

2. It was an evil day that I *bought into* the Specie Bank. i. e., bought its shares.

3. I *bought off* that antagonist. i. e., got rid of him by payment.

4. The Income-tax officer *was bought over*, i. e., bribed.

5. To *buy a person out*: To pay him for giving up any possession.

6. To *buy a pig in a poke*: To make a blind bargain.

To commit oneself inconsiderately to a course of action.

Cp. To take a leap in the dark.

**By.**—1. *By this*: (adv.) as soon as this happened.

2. *By now*: (adv.) Not later than this time.

3. *By and by* (adv.) After a time.

The uncertain glory of an April sky

Which now shows all the beauty of the sun

And *by and by* a cloud takes all away.—SHAK.

It (unfaith) is the little rift within the lute,

That *by and by* will make the music mute,—TENNYSON.

Also *bye-and-bye*.

4. I met him *by the way* (adv.): as I went.

Let me remark *by the way* (adv.) i. e. Parenthetically; incidentally. Cp. *en passant*.

[Note. This is an apologetic formula for introducing a digression.]

5. *By-the-by* is also used in the latter sense.

6. *By-gone* (adj.) days = Days gone by = Days of old.

In days *gone by* people having a house in London and another in the country commonly gave 3 months to London and spent the rest in what they regarded as really Home.—RUSSELL.

7. Let *by-gones* (n.) be *by-gones* (n) = cease thinking of or brooding over what has happened. Let the past be forgotten.

**Cp.** Forgive and forget. —SHAK.

Let the dead past bury its dead. —LONGFELLOW.

None can undo the past

It were lost sorrow to wail one that is lost. —SHAK.

**8.** By-name = a nickname ; sobriquet.

**9.** *By-word* = proverb :

A proverb and by-word among all people. 1 Kings ix 7.

**10.** *By-work* : what is done at leisure moments.

[**Note.**—The word *bye* or its condensed form *by* is combined with nouns to form compounds signifying (as adjective) *secondary, incidental, out-of-the-way* or *subsidiary* e. g , Bye-road, By-path, Bye election, Bye-consideration, Bye-effect and so on.]

## C.

**Cæteris.**—*Cæteris paribus.* *Lat.* (absolute adverbial phrase) = other things being equal.

Well I do n't mind admitting that ; *cæteris paribus*, I prefer my own relations.

**Cajole.**—[This transitive verb which means to deceive by flattering or smooth honeyed words takes both persons and things as objects usually followed by an adverbial adjunct.]

(a) You *cajoled* him *into* doing this unrighteous act.

(b) You *cajoled* the boy *out of* his obstinacy.

(c) He *cajoled* a rich donative *out of* me.

**Cake.**—1. You *can't both eat your cake and have it.*—  
[The doing of these two acts *at the same time* is opposed to the Law of Contradiction and their joint performance is utterly impossible, or impracticable] : you cannot do the impossible.

2. *To take the cake* : To have the first place in a competition. To carry off the honours,

**Calculate.**—1. [Apart from its usual transitive sense, the verb has an intransitive use when followed by the preposition "upon" and then it means *to rely* or *depend*.]

I have little ground for *calculating* upon your good opinion.

2. [As *passive Past* participle adjective = fit or suitable] it is followed by either the preposition *for* or an infinitive phrase.]

This led to dissensions *calculated* to produce broil and antipathy

**Calf.**—1. As a pregnant woman is said to be *big with child*, a pregnant cow is said to be *in calf* or *with calf*.

So, *to slip the calf* or *cast the calf* = To bring forth the young *abortively*.

2. *Golden calf* = (from Exodus xxxii) = (*Fig*) Wealth as object of worship.

The worship of the *Golden Calf* is the characteristic cult of modern Society — RUSSELL.

Cp. Mammon. Filthy lucre.

3 *Calf-love*—A youthful romantic passion or affection.

I thought it was a childish besottishness you had for that man—a sort of *calf-love* that it would be a real kindness to help you out of—RHODA BROUGHTON.

4. Never *eat the calf in the cow's belly* = Don't be over-sanguine in your calculation or anticipation.

Cp. To reckon one's chickens before they are hatched.

**Call.**—1. To *call at* a house or place = To pay a short visit to it.

2. To *call on* a person = pay him a short visit.

[*Note*, as noun, *Call* = visit, as in the phrases To make a call; to pay a call].

3. My money lies in the bank *at call* i. e., to be got back whenever I make a call or demand.

4. I *called* him to account (See *Account*.)

**5. To call down:** (V. T.) Invoke.

Lear contrasted Goneril's youth with his own age and *called down* a curse upon that youth — DRYDEN.

**6. To call for** (V. T.) To need, require, or demand.

This crime *calls for* punishment. The letter *calls for* a reply.

For the convenience of travellers government provides a section of the P. O. called *Poste Restante*—in which letters are kept until *called for*.

[Note.—This combination is used to take some object that is deemed or considered necessary].

**7. To call forth:** (V. T.) To bring out; To provoke; To bring into action or exercise. To evoke.

The difficulty of the situation *called forth* all his energies.

I have *called forth* the malicious winds. — SHAKESPEARE.

He has a manner of delivery that cannot fail to *call forth* applause. [Take care not to use *applause* in the plural].

**8. To call a person names:** To speak abusively of him. To use opprobrious epithets to him.

It is no wonder in this degenerate age that an orphan child brought up with such scrupulous care and parental fondness should when fully grown up *call* his benefactor *names*.

[Note. To *call over names* = To recite a list of names to ascertain who are present and who are not]

**9. To call upon a person** = To pay him a visit.

Cp. To look him up.

**10. (a)** To quell the riot the civil authorities were compelled to *call out* the military, i. e., to summon them into service or action.

**(b)** To *call out* = (V. I.) To utter words in a loud voice; to hawl.

**11.** The liquidator of the Bank at once began to *call in* the debts and outstandings, i. e., to collect all monies given

as loan to debtors. (Literally, to bring back into the lender's coffer what had gone out as a loan.)

12. To *call up* (V. T.) Recollect, Revive in memory, Recall.

Cp. Call to mind.

Also, to require payment of: as the liquidator *called up* the unpaid shares of the company.

13. The chairman of a meeting is said to *call* an unruly member *to order* when he gives from his place the pronouncement that he has violated the rules of debate or orderly decorum, and formally orders him to desist.

14. To *call in question* (as a man's ability, moral worth or quality) = To doubt, challenge, dispute, or impugn.

[Beware of using "into" instead of "in."]

**Calm.**—1. *Calm and collected*: (adj.) Self-possessed.

2. *Calm before a storm*: (*Lit.*) serene or windless atmosphere presages its violent disturbance in the shape of thunder, strong wind, or heavy rain.

*Figuratively*, used of mental, social, and political conditions.

**Camel.**—1. To *swallow a camel*: To believe a thing which is hard to believe; or to put up with a thing which is hard to tolerate. Make no difficulty about some thing incredible, or impossible, or outrageous.

Ye blind guides, which strain at a gnat and *swallow a camel*.—

2. It is the *last straw that breaks the camel's back*. [See *Straw*].

**Candid.**—The *candid friend* = a nominal friend that says ill-natured things under the guise of candour.

But of all plagues, good Heaven, thy wrath can send,  
Save *Satan*, oh! Save me from the *candid friend*.—G. CAMPING.



Her Majesty sent for Lord Hartington, and not merely requested but implored him to form an administration. He replied that a Liberal administration with Mr. Gladstone as *the Candid Friend* just outside it would be a practical impossibility.—RUSSELL.

**Candle.—1.** *A person is not fit to hold a candle to another* when the former is not to be compared with the latter, i. e., very inferior to him.

For cutness there is none that holds a candle to him.—SIR H. HAWKINS.

Others aver that he (Bononcini) to Handel

Is scarcely fit to hold a candle.—JOHN BYRON.

[Note. This phrase is restricted to negative sentences, as you cannot hold a candle to him. In the above quotation *scarcely* is negative.]

Cp. To be a fool to another.

In affirmative sentences the phrase means "to be an assistant to" especially in a bad sense as, *to hold a candle to the devil*. So in Shak "I will be *candle-holder* and look on"

How commentators each dark passage shun

And *hold* their farthing *candle* to the sun.—YOUNG.

2. Thy modesty is a *candle* to thy merit. i. e., is a conspicuous indication of; serves to illumine; throws light upon.

3. To *burn the candle at both ends*: To disregard economy; Not to husband energy; To make wilful waste; To be recklessly extravagant. (*Figuratively*,) To overwork oneself.

4. *The game is not worth the candle*: The object is not worth the pains requisite for its attainment. The result does not justify the cost or trouble.

It is a poor sport that is not worth the candle —G. HERBERT.

5. To sell (or bargain) *by inch of candle*: i. e., by auction, the last bid before the expiration of the small candle winning.

6. *Candle-ends* (n.) like cheese-parings are "the odds and ends" hoarded by the stingy.

**Canker.** 1. *Canker-worm*: (*Lit.*) a grub or larva destructive to plants, their buds and leaves. (*Fig.*) Any pernicious influence.

2. *Canker-bit*: (*Fig.*) Bitten by envenomed tooth.

\* \* \* \* \* My name is lost.

By treason's tooth bare-gnawn and *canker-bit*.—SHAK. (K. L.)

**Cannot.**—1. *I cannot away with* (person or thing): cannot get on with; cannot tolerate. [An idiomatic use of the auxiliary "can" as principal verb, or an instance of the principal verb "Be" or "Do" being a licensed omission].

2. *I cannot but* do this: [*Gram.* I cannot do any thing but (i. e., *except*) doing this] I cannot help doing this; cannot refrain from this; am compelled to do it.

**Note** the contrast: *I can but* do this = *I can only* do this; can do no more than this. [Here "but" is an adverb].

3. *I cannot sufficiently* thank you: whatever thanks I may give, they will not be sufficient or enough.

So, *I cannot be too* thankful: My thankfulness expressed in words does not adequately express my real feeling.

[**Note.** The adverbs "sufficiently" and "too" are to be taken as linked with "not" to form a single word. Indian students fail to catch the idiom when they come across it for the first time.]

**Cp.** Debt immense of *endless* gratitude.

**Cant.** *Cant phrase*: Influential temporary words used in politics or religion; words peculiar to a sect, party or profession; words hypocritically used for fashion.

**Canter.** To win at a *canter*: (*adv.*) at the end of an easy race.

**Cp.** Walk-over the course; A mere walk-over.

**Cap.** 1. *Wearer of the cap and bells*: The fool, clown, buffoon, or licensed jester in great houses in the middle ages.

[The cap and the bells were the insignia of his office. Hence *a fool's cap* = a dunce's conical paper-cap.]

One is bound to speak the truth, as far as one knows it,  
Whether one mounts a *cap and bells*, or a shovel hat.—THACKERAY.

2. *The cap fits* (one): (*Fig.*) A person who feels that some *general* remarks or accusation comes home to him and is found applicable to him.

Well Sir, *if the caps fits, wear it* (i. e. think over it.)

3. *Cap in hand* (adv.): in an attitude of humble submission.

The candidate entered the room *cap in hand*.

4. *A feather in one's cap* = something one may prize highly as conferring honour; something to be proud of; or what confers distinction.

Cp. The blue ribbon.

5. *To set her cap at a person* = To make herself attractive to the person in question; Try to get him as husband.

This lady attempts to set her cap at every young gentleman that she comes across.

6. *To cap verses texts or proverbs*: To quote verses &c., alternately in emulation or contest.

It requires a very slight effort of the imagination to conceive this well-born young Templar (Sir William Harcourt) bandying witticism with Shoriden, and *capping Latin verses* with Charles Fox.—RUSSELL.

7. *To cap the climax* = To go beyond the highest limit. To outdo. [In this sense the verb combines also with such objects as *anecdote*, *quotation* and even *any matter*.

Regan *caps the whole matter* with her question "What need one"—

8. Covered or armed *Cap-a-pie*: (Fr. adv.) From crown to toe; from head to foot. [The word *cap* is contraction of Lat. *Caput* = head.]

Cp. I am a courtier *cap-a-pie*.—SHAK.

So, *cap* is used as noun in

Thou art the *cap* of all the fools alive.—SHAK. (TIMON).

Cp. Armed to the *teeth* : (adv.) completely or elaborately.

**Capital.** To *make capital out of* (any thing) : [V. T.] To turn (it) to one's advantage ; To profit by ; To benefit by ;

We seek to *make no capital out of* the service so ungrudgingly rendered by our countrymen to the empire.—SIR S. P. SINHA.

When the inevitable result, viz., the inadequate response to the measure followed, Government would not be slow to *make political capital out of* it—COMMONWEAL.

Cp. To turn to account ; To make stock of.

[N. B.—Beware of using any article before " capital "]

**Card.**—1. It is *on the cards* = (pred. adj.) likely to happen ; probable. So, *the card* (pred.) = the correct thing, what is expected.

It is quite *on the cards*, that Bagdad will before many weeks are over be in possession of the combined troops.—I. REVIEW.

2. To *speak by the card* : (adv.) with precision.

[According to some the reference is to the mariner's chart ; according to others, to the card and calendar of etiquette or book of manners.]

How absolute (i. e., precise) the knave is ! We must *speak by the card*, or equivocation (i. e., want of precision) will undo us.—SHAKESPEARE.

Cp. To pick one's steps.

3. To *throw up one's cards* : To admit defeat. To give in. So, To *throw up one's plan*.

4. To *play one's cards well* = To make the best of one's chances. To make good use of one's opportunities.

Cp. To play one's best card.

5. To *show one's cards*, i. e., to let out or divulge one's plan or scheme.

6. *House of cards* = one liable to be easily broken.

*Fig.* an insecure scheme, method or arrangement.

7. [Colloquially, such combinations as the following are used.] *The great card* (of a society) = the most prominent member and much talked about = (a man of mark ; a 'great gun, a magnate of the realm); *a knowing card, a queer card &c.*, [card = person]

8. *A card-sharper*: one who makes it a trade to *fleece* the unwary in games of cards.

**Care.**—1. *Carking care* [Alliterative combination]: anxieties that are burdensome = *Cark and care* [*Fig. Hendiadys*]

2. *Cares of state*: Matters that require to be *anxiously* attended to. [Note the plural].

Cp. That shall be my care = That is a matter to which I must attend.

3. To *care for or about* a thing: To be anxious or concerned about it ; To feel interest in it.

**Note.**—1. Followed by an infinitive, *to care* = to be inclined or disposed.

**Note.**—2. *To be careful* is followed by the preposition *of*, e. g., you cannot be too careful of your health.

4. I do *not care* if I do this : I am willing to do this.

5. *Take care*: (Imperative) Be cautious.

So, Have *a care*. But, I shall have or take *care of* the boy = have charge of him.

6. The boy is *in (or under) my care*: I have him in my charge.

7. *Care-taker*: a person left in charge of a house or establishment. Steward or Major domo.

The sexton is considered to be the *care-taker* of a church.

Mr. Howard is the *care-taker* of the new Hostel.

8. *Care-laden* or *care-worn* looks: appearance giving clear indication of harassing care.

9. *Care Killed a or the cat*: so deleterious are the effects of great mental anxieties upon bodily health that even cats

in spite of their proverbial *nine lives* fell victims to them.  
(Nine lives, i. e., nine times the sustaining power of man).

Hag sorrow ! *care will kill a cat,*

And therefore let us be merry.—G. WITHER.

What though *care killed a cat*, thou hast *mettle* enough in thee to  
kill *care*.—SHAK.

**Carpet.**—1. A matter or question is said to be *on the carpet* when it is under consideration (*originally* from the carpet as used in table covering)

Cp. *On the tapis.*

2. To *come or be brought on the carpet* : To be introduced as a subject for deliberation. Also, to be brought up for censure.

3. A *carpet knight* : one who has not known the hardships of the field, but knighted by mere court favour. A stay-at-home soldier ; a lady's man.

I hold thy valour light,

As that of some vain *carpet knight*

Whose best boast is but to wear

A braid of his fair lady's hair.—SCOTT.

**Carriage.**—1. A *Carriage and pair* = A conveyance drawn by two horses. So, a carriage and four.

2. *Carriage folk* = persons who keep private vehicles for conveyance.

Cp. To keep one's carriage.

**Carry.**—1. To *carry all (or every thing) before one*—So great is one's impelling force that it compels everything to yield to the impulse. Hence *Figuratively*, To be most successful in one's action or influence over others.

As morning broke, the little band of Saxons fell on Guthrum, and the sleeping Danes : so sudden was their onset that at first they *carried all before them*.—PROTHERO.

The shilling numbers of "Boz" *carried every thing* before them.—TIMES.

So, *To carry the world before one*: To have rapid and complete success.

2. Imagination *carries me back* to earlier times.

3. Money *carries the day*: succeeds, wins victory. So, a successful candidate at an election is said to *carry the day*.

4. *To carry one's point*: To bring it to a successful termination.

So, one *carries a motion or resolution* at a meeting by over-ruling objections.

A *resolution* is said to be *carried* when it is accepted by a majority.

5. A person is said to *be carried away* by his feelings when he is so much under their sway as to *lose all self-control*.

[Note.—The force of *away* is *the wrong direction*]

6. Your words do *not carry conviction*: what you say is not convincing enough.

Contra: your words *carry weight*, i. e. have sufficient influence.

7. *To carry a fortress* is to capture it.

8. *To reap and carry* (V. I. in a general sense.) = To get in the harvest.

9. *To fetch and carry*: (V. I.) To be an underling, bound to execute others' orders.

Cp. To run and fetch.

10. *To carry off*: To render passable—(V. T.)

The position of a Cardinal with a princely rank recognised abroad but officially ignored in England was difficult to *carry off*.—RUSSELL.

Also, to win (as a prize). Cp. *Come off best. To carry it away*.

Henry Sumner Maine's University career was exceptionally brilliant. In 1842 he *carried off* the Browne's medal for a Greek Ode, the Camden medal, and the Chancellor's medal for English verse.—TIMES.

[Note.—A culprit is *carried off* to prison, i. e., removed. The epidemic of small pox *carried off* thousands of people, i. e., removed them from life.]

11. He *carries it off well*: makes a brave show. [The pronoun *it* is indefinitely used for the cognate object i. e. outward carriage. Instead of *well* any adverbial adjunct may be used as, *like a king*.]

12. To *carry on* (V. T.) a business = conduct, prosecute, or transact it. So, to *carry on* a war is to wage war. To *carry on* a process is to continue it.

[Note.—The force of adverb *on* is continuity.]

12A. To *carry on* (V. I.) To behave so strangely as to arouse attention to it. [The phrase is usually followed by an adverbial adjunct.]

He *carried on* with mad gesticulation at that meeting.

13. To *carry out* a scheme, purpose, or undertaking : Achieve ; Put into practice ; Sustain to the end.

Cp. To *carry into effect* = give practical effect to.

[Note.—The force of the adverb *out* is effectiveness.]

14. To *carry* (a thing or matter) *through* : To complete it, i. e., To conduct it safely out of all difficulties.

[Note.—the force of the adverb “through” viz., passage through hindrances.]

Lord Kitchener explained exactly what was necessary to *carry the thing through*.—C. M. GAZETTE.

So, To *carry a thing to the finish*.—SIR H. HAWKINS.

‘Through’ is used as preposition when the object (i. e., the difficulty) is stated.

The sad news (Prince Eddie Duke of Clarence’s death) affected us deeply, we all believing that his youthful strength would *carry him through the danger*.—OAKS WIDOWS (to Queen Victoria.)

15. To *carry over* (V. T.) an entry in an Account Book : To transfer to the next page. [*Over* is adv. and implies transference ; “forward” is also used. The transferred entry is said to be *brought forward or over* on the new page.]



**Cart.**—To *put the cart before the horse*: (*Fig.*) To say or do a thing in *reversal* of the proper and natural order. [The normal position of the cart relatively to the horse is "after"—not "before."] ]

Without such military training our demand for Home Rule would be, as it were, *putting the cart before the horse*.—SIR K. G. GUPTA.

May not an ass know when *the cart draws the horse*.—SHAK. (K. Lear.)

**Cp.** The wrong way about. (*adv.*)

**Carte.**—*Carte blanche* (*Fr. Lit* white card): (*n.*) A *blank* paper given to a person to be filled up *as he pleases*. Unconditional terms. Full discretionary power.

I gave him *carte blanche* in the matter.

**Case.**—1. *In case*: (*conj.*) If. If the case be that.

I shall award a valuable prize *in case* you stand first.

2. *In any case*: (*adv.*) Whatever may be the case, or may happen.

Hold your own *in any case*.

3. *In good case* (*pred. adj.*): In good condition; healthy and prosperous.

She hath been *in good case*, and the truth is that poverty hath distracted her.—SHAK. (H. iv.)

**Cast.**—1. To *cast about* (*V. I.*) for: *Lit.* To go this way and that way in search of something (e. g. a suitable house.)

*Fig.* To devise means [followed by a noun clause, e. g., how to attain an object; or by infinitive phrase,] e. g.

Napoleon vainly *cast about* to get hold of Luxemburgh.—TIMES.

2. To *cast adrift*: (*V. T.*) *Lit.* To place at the mercy of wind and tide; *Fig.* of circumstances.

Also, To out oneself adrift from.

It is not necessary in order that you should benefit enormously by the arts and sciences of the West that you should *cut yourselves adrift* from your own paths.—LORD RONALDSHAY.

**Cp.** (To leave one) to sink or swim.

3. To *cast aside* : (V. T.) To give up using ; To discard ; To reject.

So, To *cast away* (care) = To reject (it).

To *cast away* a person : To dismiss him.

Do not *cast away* an honest man for a villain's accusation.—SHAK.

Cp. To cast off a habit, To cast off clothes.

4. To be *cast down* (used in the p. p.) : To be dejected ; to be depressed.

5. To *cast up* (sums and figures) = (V. T.) To calculate or add up. Also, to eject ; to vomit.

Their vilany goes against my weak stomach and therefore I must *cast it up*.—SHAK.

**Note.**—To *cast* (V. T.=To throw) is *figuratively* used in combination with many nouns as objects as a *glance*, *spell*, *blame*, *slur*, *aspersion*, *reflection*, *lustre*.—In all these cases the preposition after the object-noun is *on* or *upon*. To *cast oneself upon* a person is to resign or yield oneself to his disposal. They are cast in the same mould : *Fig.* their opinion and habits have been formed in the same manner.

6. I must *cast in* my lot with you, i. e., share the fate or fortune of you.

7. To *cast or throw something (as bribery) in one's teeth* = To upbraid or twit him with it.

8. The *last cast* (i. e. throw of the dice) = The last chance.

9. *Casting vote* = An additional or second vote given to decide a cause when the votes are equal.

**Castles.**—(To build) *Castles in the air* (or *in Spain*) : visionary projects : schemes having no solid foundation—Hence, a *castle-builder* = a day-dreamer ; one who schemes impossible things. So, *Castles in the clouds*.

"A pleasing land of drowsy bed it was

Of dreams that wave before the half-shut eye ;

And of gay castles in the clouds that pass,—TAMSON,

**Cat.**—1. *A cat has nine lives*: [See **CARE** (9).]

2. See *which way the cat jumps*: This *cult of the jumping-cat* is used with reference to politicians who refuse to advise until public opinion has declared itself.

3. *The cat is out of the bag*: [See **BAG**.]

4. (To live) a *cat-and-dog life* (of it) = constant petty quarrels especially between husband and wife. Contention in words.

Cp. Family jars; cross questions and crooked answers.

5. To rain *cats and dogs* (adv.) = very heavily or very hard.

[N. B.—Take care not to reverse the order of the two words]

6. *To make a cat's paw* of another: To use him as tool to attain one's object. To make a dupe of him.

The brave Russian troops have now finally destroyed Germany's hopes of making Persia, as she has already made Turkey, a *cat's paw* of her insensate ambitions.—LORD HARDINGE.

7. *There is no room to swing a cat*: The space is too confined.

8. *To fight like Kilkenny cats*: To fight to complete mutual destruction. [The reference is to the saying that the Kilkenny cats fought until only their tails were left.].

9. *To turn a cat-in-pan*.—To veer round quite suddenly; To change sides; To be a turn-coat.

**Catch.**—1. To *catch at*: [*At* denotes attempt.] The phrase means to attempt to catch,—“A drowning man *catches at straws*”

2. To *catch on*: (V. I) To become popular (as a book fashion, or practice). Cricket was introduced into India and it soon *caught on*.

The advertisement *caught on* like wildfire, i. e., its popularity spread.

\* 3. To *catch up*. (V. T.) To overtake (one who is in advance), or To interrupt (a speaker). So, To be caught in a storm.

\*Cp. To come up with.

4. To *catch a man napping*: To gain an advantage over him through his unpreparedness or temporary carelessness.

Cp. To *catch a weasel asleep*: To deceive a wide-awake person.

So, To *catch a man tripping* in his figures = To find him committing errors in them.

5. *No catch*: (predicatively used) = an unwelcome acquisition; a bad bargain.

✓ 6. *A great catch* (predicate.) A very desirable person from wealth's point of view as a husband or wife. (Colloq.)

Marquis of Fariatosh has neither abilities, character nor breeding to recommend him, but is a *great catch* in the marriage market and is expected to become the husband of Ethel Newcome — THACKERAY.

7. *Catch-penny* = (something of little value got up to hit the popular taste and thereby catch the popular penny), any worthless thing got up merely to sell. *Unw.*

8. *Catch-word* = The last word of the preceding speaker in a play which reminds one that he is to speak next; Cue; a word used as the symbol of a party.

**Cave.**—To *Cave in*: (V. I) (as a ground) To give way or subside. Also. to acknowledge defeat.

**Caviare**—(It is) *Caviare to the general* (Predicate.) Not pleasing to people in general. Common people could not relish it, (*Fig.*) any good thing *unappreciated* by the ignorant [Caviare is a Russian dish of sturgeon's roe, appreciated only by educated palates.]

As for the play it pleased not the millions; it was *caviare to the general*.—SHAK. (H)

**Certain**.—1. *For certain*: (adv): assuredly.

In the expression 'Know it *for certain*', the word *for* may be taken = *as*, or *certain* = *certainty* (n.)

Cp. Without fail (where *fail* is a noun).

2. The conviction of him is a *dead certainty*: completely or undoubtedly certain.

3. *To a certainty* = (adv.) certainly, assuredly.

**Chalk.**—1. *To chalk out* (a scheme): To plan it out.

2. As like as *chalk and cheese*: unlike in essentials.

3. *By a long chalk or by long chalks* (adv.) undoubtedly; decidedly; as, A is superior to B *by long chalks*.

Cp. By far.

4. Not *knowing chalk from cheese*: said of a simpleton.

**Chance.**—1. He *has an eye to the main chance*, i. e. is mindful of his own interests: The chance of making gain.

\*                      \*                      As the ancients say wisely,  
Have a care of the *main chance*.—BUTLER.

The Lady Ascot of real life had a *shrewd eye to the main chance*.—RUSSELL.

2. *To mind one's chances* = To seize every opportunity.

" And grasp the *skirts* of happy chance  
And breasts the blows of circumstance.—TENNYSON.

3. *Turns of chance* = vicissitudes of fortune.

With downcast looks the joyless victor sat  
Revolving in his altered soul  
The various *turns of chance* below.—DRYDEN.

N. B.—'Chance' in the sense of opportunity may be followed by *for* before the person to whom the opportunity is available, but in the sense of probability it is followed by *of*. There is no chance of an increase in the number of readers.—G. C. WHITWORTH.

**Change.**—1. *To ring the changes* (on any thing) = To repeat it in all possible variety of ways. [Cp. To box the compass.]

Also, to practise the trick whereby in paying or receiving money a rascal tries to confuse the person with whom he is dealing so that he may cheat him.

2. To put the change (upon a person) = To deceive him.

3. To take one's change out of a person = To avenge oneself on him. Also, To take the change out of him.

**Chapter.—1.** The chapter of accidents : [See Accident.]

2. To the end of the chapter : (adv.)—For ever.

He might argue to all eternity and so on to the end of the chapter.

In education India has made an unconsciously slow progress. In sanitation also we have made very little progress ; and so on to the end of the chapter.—Dr. P. Roy.

Cp. In aeternum (Lat.)

3. (To give or quote) Chapter and verse for any statement, i. e., exact reference to a passage in support of it. [No article is used before the phrase].

**Charge.—1** To Charge a person for a thing : To register a debt owing by him.

So, To charge the thing to or against the person.

2. To charge a person with a crime = To lay it to his charge. To accuse him of it.

Cp. To charge guilt on a person. To lay it at his door.

**Charity.—Charity begins at home :** is due first to one's kith and kin.

They (the great prelates) had thoroughly learnt the divine lesson that charity begins at home.—RUSSELL.

**Charm.—(To bear) a charmed life.** [See Life].

**Cheap.—1.** Dirt-cheap : As cheap as dirt.

Cp. To buy a thing good cheap = buy so as to make a good bargain.

2. To hold cheap (V. T.) To despise, To take to be of

little account. Hence *to feel cheap*, i. e. *To feel djsrespected or insulted.*

Louis Philippe had *made himself cheap* by too much simplicity.

3. *On the cheap* (adv.) cheaply.

**Cheek.**—1. *Cheek and chaff* = Saucy speech and banter.

2. He *has the cheek* to say so in my presence, i. e. shameless audacity, impudence, effrontery.

3. *Cheek by jowl*: (adv. or pred. adj.) close, side by side, intimate.

Young Battles and young Barrels have long since taken their places among our hereditary legislators, and sit *cheek by jowl* with the Talbots and Stanleys.—RUSSELL.

You wouldn't bet if you had lived six months *cheek by jowl* with a bailiff put into your home on account of racing debts.—ISID.

**Cheer**—1. *To cheer up* (V. I.): Take comfort.

Cp. To take heart of grace (= try again after encouragement or help)

2. *Of good cheer*: (adj.) hopeful.

Be of good cheer: it is I; be not afraid.—MATT.

Cp. Put a good face on = Don't be downcast.

3. *Make good cheer* (V. I.) feast.

4. *Three cheers* = *United hurrahs* in honour of a person.

**Cheese.**—1. *Cheeseparing*: (adj.) stingy (n.) stinginess.

2. *Cheeseparings* (n.) (always in the plural); worthless odds and ends.

**Chef.**—*Chef-d'œuvre* one's master-piece (Fr.).

Cp. *Magnum opus.*

**Cherry.**—1. *To make two bites at a cherry.* To divide what is too small for division. (*Fig*) To boggle, To be unenterprising or formal.

But it is possible to *make two bites at a cherry.* This year there must be two budgets.—W. STEAD.

**Chicken.—1** *Reckon not your chickens till they are hatched:* (*Fig*) Be not over-sanguine.

To swallow gudgeons ere they are caught,  
And count their chickens ere they are hatched. — BUTLER.

**Cp** There is many a slip between the cup and the lip  
To eat the calf in the cow's belly.

**Child.—1** *From a child:* (concrete for the abstract) i. e., from childhood, e. g., *from a child* he has been subject to this fit. So, The child is father of the man.

*From a child* Harriet Martineau resolved to practise the virtue of self-reliance. — TIMES.

**2.** Old age is *second childhood*: "old fools are babes again" — SHAK (K. Lear.) The old man is twice a child.

\* \* \* \* \* Last scene of all,  
That ends this strange eventful history  
Is *second childishness* and mere oblivion, — SHAK. (A. Y. L.)

**3.** *Child's play*: (n.) an easy task or affair.

The land question was one to which that of Disestablishment was but a *child's play*. — TIMES. •

**4.** *With child*: (adj.) (said of a woman that is) pregnant.

**Cp.** With young; *Enciente*; Gravid.

**Chime.** — *To chime in with* (V. I) Be in agreement or harmony with.

It is undeniable that the war *chimed in with* popular sentiment in Germany — DR. A. SHADWELL.

It is a feeling (chivalrous) that *chimes in* more artistically with an essay or biography than with the broad battle piece of a warlike history. —

**Chip** — A *chip of the old block*: A child having all the characteristics of its father.

J. S. Mill was veritably a *chip of the old block*.

[N. B. — "**Chip**" is a modified form of *chop* as "*drip*" is of *drop*.]



**Chuck.**—1. A *chuck under the chin*: A slight blow or tap under the chin. Also, *Jerk*—(V).

2. To *chuck away* (a chance): To throw away; lose.

3. To *chuck up* (an affair or a person): To abandon it or him in disgust.

4. To *chuck up the sponge*.—To give up a contest.

5. To *chuck out* (a person). To expel him from an assembly. Cp. To drum out.

6. To *chuckle over* (a person's misfortune); To show signs of glee on account of it. To exult over it. To crow over it.

**Circum.**—*Circumlocution office*: Humorously applied to Government office the transactions of which are carried on in a most dilatory manner.

[Dickens made the phrase popular].

**Circumstance.**—*With pomp and circumstance* (adv.): with pompous or fussy display; with great *eclat*. [*Fig. Hendiadys*].

**Claim.**—*To lay claim to* (V. T.) To demand as something due.

**Clap.**—1. To *clap the wings* = To flap them or strike them together so as to make noise.

2. To *clap hands* = To strike the palms of the hand together as a mark of *applause* or delight.

3. To *clap the hand to the mouth*: To place it there by a hasty motion.

So, clap the spurs to a horse.

4. To *clap to* (V. T.) *the door*: To shut it hastily.

5. To *clap hold of*: (V. T.) To seize *roughly* and suddenly.

6. *Clap-trap*: Words spoken as *artifice* to gain applause from others.

## Cp. Platforma. Bunkum.

The favourite *clap-trap* of modern Jingoism of the East and the West did not commend itself to Milton.—*MOD. REVIEW.*

**Claw.** *Claw me and I'll claw thee*: an expression often used to denote *mutual flattery*.

## Cp. Mutual Admiration Society.

Roll my log and I will roll yours: Let there be mutual help.

**Clean.** 1. *To make a clean breast of* (a thing)—To confess without reservation—[See Breast.]

2. I am *cleaned out*—used in the passive form—[Rather slang.] My pecuniary resources are exhausted.

3. *To show a clean pair of heels*: (V. I.) To escape by speed.

4. *To make a clean sweep of*: complete riddance.

Cp. *To make short work of*; *To make mincemeat of*;  
*To cut up root and branch.*

**Clear.** 1. *The mist clears away*: (V. I.) Disappears.

2. *To clear up* a mystery is to solve it. (V. T.) also, (V. I.) *The weather has cleared up* (become fair).

3. *To clear out* (V. I.): To make off. To go off entirely.

4. *To keep clear of* (V. T.) To remain apart from. To shun; To eschew.

So, *To steer clear of*.

5. *Clear conscience*: one free from the stain of doubt, suspicion or hypocrisy.

6. *The coast is clear*: There is no one about to see or interfere.

**Cleft.** *To be in a cleft stick*, i. e., in a tight place which allows neither advance nor retreat.

**Climb.** *To climb down*: (V. I.) To retreat from the position already taken up.

His optimism is due to the expectation that Germany will quickly *climb down* and reveal peace terms.—REUTER.

**Cp.** To give in.

**Clip. 1.** To *clip* (*shorten*) *one's wings*—(*Fig.*) To disable him from continuing in his path of *ambitious* career.

**2.** To *clip one's words*—To cut them short.

**Close. 1.** To *close in*. (V. T.) To enclose. (V. I.) To come nearer.

After 22nd June the days in the Northern hemisphere *close in*, i. e., get successively shorter.

**2.** To *close with* (an offer, terms &c.) : To agree to *rather eagerly*. So, to *close with a person* who makes such offer &c. But a *bargain is closed* when it is brought to an end.

The worldly, the pre-occupied turned away with peremptory contempt ; a few of rare devotion *closed with* the Call (of Christ) at once.—ECCLES HOMO.

**3.** To *close down* : (V. I.) To be declared as closed, i. e., not open.

The Act will be applied *regardfully* ; otherwise some businesses have to *close down*.—STATSMAN.

**4.** To *close up* (as the ranks) [*see* Rank].

**5.** A *close shave* (*Fig.*) a narrow escape from a collision.

**Cp.** Hair—breadth escape. Touch and go. A near squeak.

**6.** Close at hand : (adj.) very near.

So, *close upon* : *Fig.* (adv.) very nearly.

This friendly society has now a membership *close upon* a million.

**7.** To *close the hand* : To refuse.

**8.** At *close quarters* : in immediate contact. So, *come to close quarters*.

In his rural diocese he had admired smart society at a distance, but now he saw it *at close quarters*, and he was honestly amazed at the apparent indifference to every form of religious faith and duty.—RUSSELL.

In the Chapel there is a chance of seeing Royalty *at close quarters*.

When I come to close quarters with any subject I find that it will probably overflow the limits of a single chapter.—*Idem*.

9. A close fistcd person is a stingy niggard. Cp. Skinflint.

Contra. Open handed [Don't write "open fistcd," for "fist" is closed hand].

**Closet.** To be closeted with a person: To have private consultation with. So, persons meeting for such consultation are said to be closeted together.

**Cloud.** 1. To be under a cloud (pred. adj), i. e., discredited; in disgrace or disrepute. Shorn of one's glory.

Cp. In bad odour; Blown upon.

2. Every cloud has a silver lining: [See silver]. There is some good in every evil. Nothing is wholly evil. There are compensations in life.

Cp. Balm in Gilead.

Also, It is an ill wind that blows no body good. [See Ill].

**Cloven.** (To show or reveal) the cloven foot or hoof: The foot of Satan. Hence devilish nature.

(Upon the select committee's alteration of Police Bill 1895). Some point and some powder have no doubt been used to soften the features and new and flowing habiliments thrown over the gaunt spectre, but beneath the bland smile and the respectable attire the cloven foot is visible after all.—*SIR P. MERTON*.

**Clover.** To live in clover: To be in most enjoyable circumstances. So, to be in clover, i. e., in ease and luxury.

Cp. To live on the fat of the land. To have one's bread buttered on both sides.

Contra. To live on husks.—(i. e. penuriously).

**Club.** Club-law: Government by clubs or violence.

Cp. Lynch law: *Argumentum bacillanum*: lawlessness.

**Clutch.** To be in the clutches of: in the cruel grasp of: entirely in the power of (an unprincipled person).

[N. B.—Mark the plural form].

**Coals.** 1. *Call a person over the coals*: To reprimand him (for a fault). Also, to *haul him over the coals*.

Now that Sir Asutosh has done real work in the direction pointed out by the official reformers, he is being *hailed over the coals*.—LEADER.

2. *To carry coals to Newcastle*: To take any thing to a place where it is already abundant. (*Fig.*) To do anything superfluous.

Cp. To carry owls to Athens.

To hold the farthing—candle to the sun.

To gild the refined gold, to paint the lily,

To throw a perfume on the violet,

To smooth the ice or add another hue

Unto the rainbow, or with taper-light

To seek the beauteous eye of heaven to garnish,

Is wasteful and ridiculous excess.—SHAK. (K. JOHN.)

3. *To heap coals of fire on a person's head*: (This is taken from the Bible): To render or return good for evil—To shame an enemy by a generous act.

Cp. Generous revenge.

[N. B.—Notice the plural *coals*].

4. *To blow the coals*: To fan the flame.

**Coast.** The *The coast is clear*: [see Clear.]

**Coat.** 1. *Cut your coat according to your cloth*: (*Fig.*) Limit your expenses to the size of your income: Expend within income, not beyond it. Be economical, not extravagant.

Rich and resourceful though we were, we must *cut our coat according to our cloth*.—MR. ASQUITH.

Cp. To make both ends meet.

2. *To dust a person's coat*: To beat him; (*Fig.*) To castigate him.

3. *To turn one's coat*: (V. I.) To change sides; To desert

one's party and join the opposite one—Hence, a person doing so is called a “turn coat.”

**Cp**—To turn a cat-in-pan.

**Cobbler.** *Let the cobbler stick to his last; Let no one meddle with what lies beyond his range.*

**Cock.** 1. *Cock of the walk.* The person that dominates a small party.

**Cp.** Triton of the minnows, (Shak.); Cock of the roost. Cock on the dunghill. So, ‘the Cock of a school or college’

2. *Cock sure of:* Quite convinced of (a matter): self-confident *about*; dogmatic *in*.

Mr. Gladstone was possessed by the notion that the age which he was addressing had a tendency to *overculture*; that it was in love with its own opinions, was confident that they were right and all others wrong, and believed that the future would inevitably develop itself on the lines of truths so clearly ascertained.—ROBERT.

3. *A cock and bull story:* an incredible tale.

The man requires no deception, no chicanery, no artful dodges, no baited trap, no tiradilles or *cock and bull stories* to prove its worth.—COMMERCE.

4. This *brats cock fighting*: is excessively amusing.

5. To knock a person *into a cocked hat*: (adv.) out of shape. Hence, to defeat his plans completely.

I was instructed to cross examine the Prince Napoleon *into a cocked hat*.—SIR H. HAWKINS.

This would enable my opponent to bring up reinforcement, and *knock me into a cocked hat* instead of Napoleon.—LARD.

**Coddle.**—To *coddle one's self*=To over-indulge or pamper one's self.

Hence, a *Mollycoddle* (n): a milksop.

To *coddle one up*: To keep one from cold and exertion.

**Cp.** To cocker up.

**Coffin.**—To *add a nail to one's coffin*: [See Nail]

**Coin.**—1. To *coin money*: To get money very fast,

\* \* \* Steal but a beggar's dog,  
And give it Timon, why, the dog *coins gold*.—SHAK.

2. To *pay a man back in his own coin*: To give tit for tat.

Cp. Task the tasker. (SHAK); Threaten the threatener,—(SHAK)  
The biter bit. Diamond cuts diamond.  
Also, Two can play at that game.

**Cold.**—1. *Cold (i. e., depressing) comfort*: mortification; inquietude. So, cold counsel; cold news, etc.

Also, the cold shade of neglect or of opposition.

2. To *throw cold water* on a scheme, enterprise, or project = To discourage it; To poohpooh it.

Cp. Wet blanket. [See Blanket]

3. To *give, show, or turn the cold shoulder to or upon a person*: To treat him with *studied coldness*, neglect or contempt, or in a very unfriendly manner. [See Shoulder]

[Beware of using the indefinite for the definite article.]

4. To *leave one out in the cold* = To overlook or neglect him. (In the passive form): not looked after.

**Colour.**—1. To *change colour*: To turn pale or red from shame.

2. To *see a thing in its true colours*, i. e., as it really is.

So, To show one's colours, i. e., true character.

3. To *come off with flying colours* (as a student at an examination): To acquit oneself with great credit.

So, come off with honour.

Contra. To come off badly.

4. To *naïl one's colours to the mast*: To refuse to climb down.

To show firmness and determination. [See Nail]

**Come.**—1. To *come about* (V. I.) To happen, [The adverb *about* carries with it the notion of circuitousness.]

Cp. ' To come to pass (To happen.)

2. To *come across* (V. T.): To meet with (as while on one's way)

In the course of reading I *came across* a difficult passage.

It is a relief to come across an optimist.

3. I cannot so easily *come* at him, i. e., get access to him. [Beware of writing "to" for "at"].

Hence the queer (adj) compound, come-at-able = accessible.

3A. To *come by*: (V. T.) To get possession of.

How I came by that money I cannot say.

By the operation of those very natural laws whose dictates are violated the oppressing power soon *comes by* its destruction —INNER MAN.

It is no mean happiness to be seated in the mean: superfluity *comes* sooner by white hairs, but competency lives longer. —SHAK (M. V.)

4. To *come down upon a person*: To rebuke or castigate him. [N. B. "upon" connotes attack]

5. To *come down with* money: To subscribe or pay it.

5A. A come-down: (n) [predicatively used like Break-down.] Humiliation; lowering of dignity.

6. A student *comes in* first at an examination, i. e., takes the first place. (Similarly in any race or competition)

Cp. To *come out* (followed by a predicative adj): emerge from an examination (with success or failure).

7. To *come home to*: Touch nearly; Affect the feelings, interest or reason of. Be realized by. [See Home.]

8 To *come in for* a share: To get or obtain it.

9. To *come into* a property: To acquire it by inheritance or bequest. [The prep *To* is also used]



9A. This is what *comes of* drunkenness: is the result of.  
[of = from].

9B. The ceremony *came off* yesterday: Took place.

This was a mighty affair talked off for weeks before it *came off*.

9C. He has *come off well*: Had good luck; Acquitted himself well: Distinguished himself.

It never *came into my head*: occurred to me.

10. A young lady is said to *come out* when she is introduced to general society.

Cp. Debut: (first appearance)

10A. He has *come out of* that inquiry very well: got clear; emerged scatheless from an accusation.

10B. To *come out with* a secret: To let it out or disclose it.

11. Fear *come over* him (V. T.): overcame or dominated him.

12. To *come round* (V. I.) To regain one's former state of health: (V. T.) To get round. To obtain influence over (a person) so as to make him alter his views or action. [I *got him round* to cancel his will].

13. To *come to* (V. I.) To recover consciousness.

This fainting fit seems to be the severest of its kind; it is doubtful whether she will *come to*.

[N. B. This is the abbreviated form of "To come to oneself"]

\*11. To *come up with* (one in advance) (V. T.): To overtake in following or pursuit.

Your merits soar with so swift a wing that recompense, however it may strain its flight, cannot *come up with* them.—DRIGHTON.

Cp. To catch up.

15. To *come up to* (a standard or an ideal): (V. T.) To attain to or reach.

Also, to amount to ; as the expenses *came up to* a heavy sum.

Contra. To come or fall short of (i. e., fail to reach)

16. (a) He *came upon* a horse, i. e., on horseback.

(b) My lucky friend *came upon* a treasure-trove, i. e., discovered.

Cp. Fall in with.

(c) We *came upon* the enemy : attacked by surprise.

N. B. As instances of *come*=become (in some combinations) the following may be given : (a) He has *come of age*=become major, i. e., attained legal majority or full age. (b) The provision *came short*. (c) The prediction *came true* (was verified.)

The verb has also its cognate (V. T.) use, as he has *come a long way*.

17. To *come* (adj) [used *after* the noun of time it qualifies] = future.

The time is gone when we could hold India by mere force. She must be "ours" in the *days to come* because England is 'here,' because the basis and purpose of our sovereignty there are advancement and benefit.—SIR EDWIN ARNOLD.

The soul, uneasy, and confined from home  
Rests and expatiates in a *life to come*.—POPE.

**Comfort.**—1. *Creature comforts* : good food, good clothes, and other necessities well supplied. *Literally*, comforts of the body or those belonging to the body.

I don't know when I have been better entertained, as far as *creature comforts* go, than by men of very Low Church principles.—THACKERAY.

2. *Crumb of comfort*, i. e., a very small portion of it.

Cp. 'Balm in Gilead.

3. My neighbour is now *comfortably off* : in easy circumstances. Cp. Well-off. Contra : Ill off. [See *off* (b)]

**Commit**—1. To *commit oneself*, i. e., compromise oneself.

Bring oneself under suspicion by some *indiscreet* act.

2. To *commit oneself to a course* = To take a decided step. To bind or pledge himself; Not to temporize.

Cautious people often prefer to take a long time to think over a contemplated act before *committing themselves to it*.

3. To *commit to memory* (V. T.) To learn by heart; To con. To memorize.

So, commit a thing to writing, commit a criminal to prison; commit a person to another's care etc.. To commit a crime, To commit a mistake.

**Common.**—1. *In common* (adj.): In joint use. As shared.

In its earlier period Judaism had many peculiarity *in common with* heathenism.—ECCE HOMO.

In the officers and men of my Navy on which the security of my Empire depends I repose *in common with* all my subjects a trust that is absolute —(*King Emperor's Christmas message 1915.*)

In mental outlook a beurocracy has much *in common with* a sacerdotal system.—B. HOUGHTON.

Sir Arthur Helps had a good deal *in common with* the late Prince consort's peculiar bent of mind.—TIMES.

2. *Out of the common*: (adj.) unusual = Novel.

I like to hear any tale that is *out of the common*.

Cp. Out of the ordinary.

3. *On short commons*: (adj.) Having meagre diet.

The interned prisoners are now *on short commons*.

4. To *make common cause* (with): To take sides (with)

5. *Common sense*: The natural sagacity or understanding of mankind in general. Hence, sound practical judgment in every day affairs. Mother-wit.

Philosophy of common sense accepts primary beliefs of mankind as ultimate criterion of truth.

6. *Common weal*: public welfare.

**Compare.**—1. *To compare notes*: Exchange opinions on any subject.

I remember an earlier tragedy where a (man's) cardsharp's habitual companion and lifelong friends formed themselves into a committee to watch his play. Day and night for weeks they maintained their scrutiny and took notes of what they saw. *The notes were not compared*, but were handed separately to a criminal lawyer and his opinion was a sentence of social death.—RUSSELL.

2. *Beyond compare*. [Here *compare* is noun = comparison] (adv.): Incomparably.

If God hath made this world so fair,  
Where sin and death abound,  
How beautiful *beyond compare*  
Will paradise be found—J. MONTGOMERY.

So, "without compare"; "past compare"

Note. "*In comparison*" is followed by the prep. "with". I am nothing in comparison with him; but "compared" (p. p.) is followed by "to" or *with*.

Hindi writers are not behind hand *as compared with* their Bengali brethren in advocating marriage reform.]

**Compliment.**—To *compliment a person on a thing*: To praise him for it.

**Compromise.**—To *compromise oneself*: To endanger, one's reputation or interests.

**Conceit.** 1. He is out of *conceit* with me: (adj.) Now dissatisfied. *No longer* pleased.

2. So, To be *in good conceit*.

Lord Granville possesses in supreme perfection the happy knack of putting those to whom he spoke in *good conceit* with themselves.—G. W. E. RUSSELL.

**Conclusion.** 1. *Foregone conclusion*: an opinion formed *in advance* of the evidence and necessary facts. A result that could have been *anticipated*. [See Foregone]

2. *In conclusion*: (adv.) Finally; Lastly. In fine.

3. To try *conclusions* with a person: To engage in a

*trial of skill* with him, [Mark the plural form = experiment].

The Peers had *tried conclusions* with Mr. Gladstone and had <sup>a</sup>come off second best.—RUSSELL.

**Confide.** Used both transitively and intransitively: 1. As transitive it takes the prep. "to" before the person trusted.

This mission your majesty has been pleased to *confide* to me.

You have done very well in *confiding* the orphan to the Mission's care.

2. As V. I. it is followed by the prep. "in"—So, the noun "confidence" is followed by "in".

I have no confidence *in* you.

**Confusion.** To *make confusion worse confounded*: To cause what is already bad to become worse.

There is always a danger that reforms hurriedly prepared may *make confusion worse confounded*—TIMES.

Cp. To darken counsel.

**Congratulate.** 1. I *congratulate you* on your success: Wish joy to you for (V. T.)

2. To *congratulate oneself* on an event: To feel happy for it.

Cp. To hug oneself (on or for).

**Contra**: To condole (V. I.) *with* a person in his misfortune.

[Note. To express congratulation (n) *with* a person.]

**Conjure.** 1. (A name) to *conjure with*: (adj.) By the utterance of which a spirit is invoked, or enthusiasm is roused.

Among students in this part of the country the name of Mr. G. S. Arundale is one to *conjure with*.—LEADER.

The spell loses its power, and he who should then have to *conjure with* it would find himself as much mistaken as Cassim in the Arabian Tale.—MACAULAY.

2. To *conjure up*: (V. T.) To compel (a spirit) to appear (by invocation).

I am young enough to enter into your feelings of joyful anticipation as you dream dreams and conjure up visions of the greater life which lies before you.—LORD RONALDSHAY.

**Conscience.** 1. To have the *conscience* (followed by an infinitive): Audacity; impudence.

2. In *all conscience*: (adv.) To be reasonable, to keep within the bounds of moderation. Also, assuredly.

“Plain and precise enough it is, in *all conscience*,—M. ARNOLD.

**Cp.** Goodness knows—(adv. clause) [Indignant way of telling—I do not know.]

**N. B.** Conscience is *consciousness* that one's actions are right or wrong. [Thus in that famous soliloquy of Hamlet (in Shakespeare) “Thus conscience makes cowards of us all”].

3. *Conscience money*: payment made to relieve the conscience for having wilfully evaded it before—*e. g.*, a legitimate tax.

**Consider.** 1. In *consideration* of things: Having regard to; also, in return for.

The judge dealt with the criminal leniently in *consideration* of his youth.

The amount is shamefully fixed *without any consideration* of the means of the bride's parent.

2. In *consideration* for (persons): having regard to the *interests* of those persons.

**N. B.** The participial form “considering” has both a prepositional and adverbial force. It then means “in view of” (*prep.*) or “in view of the fact” (*adv.*)—The punishment is too heavy *considering* the age of the culprit or *considering* that he is of tender age. (*adv.*)

**Consist.**—1. To *consist* in (followed by a complementary predicate).

To be; or to be contained in; or to be comprised in.

To lie in. To have as constituent.

Does not the priceless value of the Scriptures *consist in* this, that for all conceivable circumstances they furnish a rule which simple men may follow with simple obedience ?—SIR J. SEELY.

The true wisdom, the true strength, *consists in* feeling, the support of God.—PROTHERO.

The art of teaching *consists in* exciting interest, and making use of the spontaneous effort to learn more which the pupil is ready to give.—SIR RAY LANKESTER.

Rebellion *consists in* forcibly opposing the general will of a nation whether by a party or by a government.—LORD ERSKINE.

**2.** To *consist of* : To be composed or made up of.

A common sentiment of political opposition to the government will be a poor bond of union for a nationality which *consists of* races and sects separated by the widest and deepest of religious differences.—I. CHRONICLES.

**3.** To *consist with* : To be in keeping with : To harmonize with. To accord with—*e. g.*, one statement does not consist with the other.

So, To be consistent with : compatible with : consonant to.

**Conspicuous.** The Magistrate of the District was *conspicuous by his absence* when the riot broke out : His absence was remarkable.

[Here is a seeming contradiction in the combination :

How can a thing be *conspicuous* when it is absent or not seen ?]

**Constable.** To *outrun the constable*—To run into debt.

\* \* \* Friend Ralph, thou hast

*Outrun the constable at last.*—HUDIBRAS.

Also, To talk without knowledge.

**Consummation.** 'Tis a *consummation devoutly to be wished* : a desired end for which we all ought to pray : A wished-for goal. This sentence occurs in Hamlet's famous soliloquy.

**Contact.** 1. To be in contact with : *Let*, To touch ; To meet.

**2.** To come into contact with : *Fig.* To have dealings with.

A missionary has more opportunities of coming into contact with the the people.—I. REVIEW.

**Contain.** 1. I could not contain myself for anger : Restrain myself.

**2.** Contain your anger : Keep it under restraint ; Subdue it.

**Contempt.** To hold a person in contempt : To contemn him ; to treat him with disregard ; To despise him.

Such a person is said to *fall into* contempt.

**Content.** 1. He enjoyed himself to his heart's content (adv.) i. e. so as to be fully satisfied.

**2.** To content oneself with a thing or doing a thing : To satisfy oneself.

**Contrary.** 1. On the contrary : (conj.) : (This phrase corroborates a denial) : Quite oppositely.

I do not hold that there is no difference : on the contrary I think some differences are striking.—G. C. WHITWORTH.

Harmony attacheth to bliss, Motion to action—Inertia, verily, having shrouded Wisdom, attacheth, on the contrary, to heedlessness.—BESANT'S Translation of the Gita).

**2.** For one knows to the contrary : (adv.) Perhaps.

May be, possibly.

**3.** Contrary to (reason or expectation) : (prep.) Against [But, in contrariety with : in contrast with.]

**Cook.** Too many cooks spoil the broth : A task or work in which men in superfluity are engaged is clumsily performed or fails in the result.

**Contribute.**—1. Sir Rashbihari Ghose contributed (V. T)



= subscribed) one lakh of Rupees to the Hindu University Fund.

2. This will not *contribute* (V. I.) to my comfort : minister to it, or help to bring it about.

3. *To lay under contribution* : (V.T) To exact contributions from.

When the big scheme was formed, the Indian princes were *laid under contribution* —NATION.

This collection of stories of unknown origin was greatly *laid under contribution* by our earlier writers.

**Cope.**—1. *To cope with* a person or antagonist : To oppose him *successfully*. To contend with him with *equal* strength.

Man is beset by two great enemies *with* whom he knows not how to cope. The first is Physical Evil ; the second is Death.—ECCLES HOMO.

2. *Coping-stone* : The headstone of a building. The top-course of masonry.

In the Psalms was laid the *coping-stone* of American Independence.—PROTHERO. Cp. Key-stone.

**Coquet.** To *coquet with* a matter or proposal : To dally or trifle with it.

There should be no *coquetting with* these recommendations, as they are calculated to block future progress.—CHRONICLE.

Cp. To dilly-dally. To shilly-shally. (V. I.)

**Core.**—1. He is *true to the core* : faithful and loyal ; constant.

Cp. *Staunch to the backbone*.

So, an Englishman *to the core*. (i. e., through and through) ; (conservative) to one's heart's core.—TIMES.

2. His affairs are rotten *at the core* (adv.) i. e., in the innermost part.

**Corn.** To *tread on a person's corns* : Fig. To hurt his feelings. To annoy him where he is most sensitive.

Cp. To sting or cut (him) to the quick. To touch or hit him on the raw.

**Corner.** 1. To *turn the corner*. (V. I.) To pass round it into another street. (*Fig.*) To pass a critical point in illness ; To get over a difficulty.

**Cp.** To turn over a new leaf.

2. To *drive a person into a corner* : To push him into a position of great difficulty from which there is no escape.

**Cp.** To take the shine out of (V. T.) To be in a cleft stick. (V. I.)

3. A *hole-and-corner* (adj.) transaction, i. e., underhand.

4. *Corner-stone*. (*Fig.*) That on which any system is founded ; that which is of the greatest importance.

It was not long before that principle became a *corner-stone* of the Constitutions.—PROTHERO.

**Counsel.** 1. To *take counsel with* a person : to consult him.

2. To *keep one's own counsel* : To keep silent as to one's opinions or purposes. To keep one's secret : To be reticent. So, to keep *another's counsel* : not to give out his secret plan or opinion.

Ros. Believe what !

Hamlet—That I can keep *your counsel* and not *mine own*.—SHAK.

3. *Counsel of perfection* : good advice impossible to carry out ∴ not universally binding.

**Count.** 1. To *count for* : Be worth, e. g. These performances do not *count for* much.

Laws in themselves have never *counted for* much.—SIR S. P. SINHA.

2. Do not *count upon* me or *upon* my support : i. e., expect confidently.

If his opponents have *counted upon* his humiliation, they are *sadly* mistaken.—I. E.

3. To *count up* (the items or figures) : To add them together.

4. To *count out*: To count while taking from a stock  
e. g. money is *counted out* on a banker's table.

Also, to adjourn (a meeting) when on counting it is found that the quorum or sufficient regulation number of members is not present.

**Counter.** 1. This *goes counter* to my instructions: is against. So, he takes delight in *acting counter* to my orders.

**Many reforms run counter to old-standing prejudices.**

He (Christ) determined thus to *run counter* to the traditional theory of the Messiah.—ECCE HOMO.

Our history furnishes frequent instances of the sense of Parliament *running directly counter to the sense of the nation.*—J. WILKES.

**Countenance.** 1. To *keep one's countenance*: To maintain one's gravity or composure: To refrain from laughing.

Always keep your countenance, but never your word.—HUMORIST.

2. To keep a man in countenance i. e. to prevent his countenance from falling; To give him support; To countenance him.

**3.** To put a man out of countenance: To disconcert him. To put him to shame. Behave so as to make his countenance fall. [out of countenance (adj.) = confounded; abashed; not bold or assured].

**Cn.** To sneer down.

**Country** 1. *Country house*: a villa; a *maisonette*; a *pied-a-terre*. So, a country-lodge.

**2. To appeal to the country:** Have recourse to a new general election of the members of Parliament. [The country = the entire body of electors].

**Cp. Referendum.**

**Coup.** [A notable or successful move].

1. *Coup-d'œil* : a general view].

**2. Coup d'état :** A sudden stroke of policy : a violent or illegal change in government. A sudden act of state of a revolutionary character and carried out by force.

In 1853 the French National Assembly was overturned by Louis Napoleon and by this *coup d'état* he became Emperor.—TIMES.

**3. Coup de grace :** A finishing stroke ; a final or fatal blow.

**4. Coup de main :** A sudden vigorous attack.

The problem will not be solved by short cuts and by a series of *coups de main*.—MR. ASQUITH.

**Course. 1. Matter of course :** a thing that is *natural*.

**2. As a matter of course :** (adv.) Naturally.

We shall make a point of training our students to realize the essential unity of all religions, while clinging especially, *of course*, to their own.—

**3. In course :** (adv.) According to *ordinary* progress of things. So, *In due course* = At the proper time.

**4. To run one's course :** To end or complete it.

The sun rejoices as a giant to *run his course*.—PSALMS.

**5. His course runs smooth :** In his career he does not meet with difficulties.

The *course* of true love never runs smooth.

**Court.—1. To pay court to** one whose favour is sought : To bestow attention on.

**2. A statement or the person making it is said to be out of court** when not entitled to be heard.

[See the quotation under "once" (1)].

**Courtesy.—1 By courtesy** (adv.) By favour ; not of right.

He has been residing in that house by *courtesy* for the last 20 years.

**2. Courtesy-title :** one held by courtesy, having no legal validity.

**Cousin.**—1. My *first cousin* or *cousin-german* = child of my uncle or aunt. Also described as *cousin once removed*; similarly, my *second cousin* or *cousin twice removed* is the child of my parent's first cousin, and so on.

Goldsmith calls a very remote relation as "a cousin of the fortieth remove."

**Cp.** Cater-cousin. (*Shak. M. V.*)

2. To *call cousins with* (a person): To claim kinship with him.

**Cp.** To sponge or live upon other people. To play cousins with. (To live on others): To be a hanger-on. Hence, To cozen (to deceive).

**Coventry.** To *send an obnoxious person to Coventry*: To discard him *as a companion*; To refuse to have any dealings with him.

**Cp.** To boycott [an eponymous word used as V. T. from the treatment accorded to Captain Boycott, Irish land-lord in 1880]. Also, To "cut,"

**Contra.** To birrell [an eponymous word] (V. I.) To indulge in easy familiar and graceful style of conversation).

Other allied words used under modified circumstances: Ostracise, Black-ball, Rusticate.

**Cp.** Look the other way.

**Cow.** *Cow-house*: Byre.

**Coy.** A *coy and cosy* place: (adj.) Snug and secluded.

**Crab.**—1. To *catch a crab*: To be struck with the handle of the oar while rowing and thus to *fall backwards*.

2. The project *turned out crabs* i. e., ended in failure,

[Note the plural].

**Crack.**—1. *Crack of doom*: end of future time i. e., Doomsday (Day of future judgment): The thunderpeal of doomsday.

What! will the line stretch out to the *crack of doom*?—*SHAK.*

2. To *crack a joke*: To utter it *with smartness*.

Her husband began by *cracking jokes* at his girl-wife's endeavour.—

Cp. To cut a joke.

3. To *crack up* a thing: To praise it highly.

The vice-chancellor then *cracked up* the new splendid buildings of the College.

4. *Crack hand* (pred. adj.) at anything: First rate; excellent. [See A—1].

5. To *crack a whip*: To make a sharp sudden noise with it.

6. *Crack-brained* (follow): crazy.

Lord Lyttlton only wondered that it (Baxter's Serious Call) had been penned by a *crack-brained* enthusiast.—RUSSELL.

**Cram** —1. To *cram* (a doctrine) *down the throat* (of the hearer): To induce or compel his belief in it.

2. The house was *crammed to overflowing*, i. e., filled overfull.

**Credat.** *Credat Judæus*: The Jew (who is superstitious) may believe it, but I will not.

Cp. Tell it to the marines.

**Credit.** [Note the following uses].

(a) This performance will *do you credit*. (b) It will *reflect credit on* you. (c) It will *redound to your credit*. (d) You will *get the credit of it*.

Cp. To take credit for a thing. [No article before "credit."]

To take the credit of it. (Note the article here).

(Be it said) to one's credit.

It is much to Lord Clarendon's *credit* that he was able in such troubled times to vindicate the law without appealing to the legislature for any extraordinary coercive powers.—TIMES.

**Crest.** *Crest-fallen*: (adj.) In a depressed state; dejected; dispirited.

Cp. Cowed down; Singing small.

The moderates felt abashed and *crest-fallen* at being thus betrayed.

**Crocodile.** *Crocodile tears*: affected tears (This is in allusion to the old fiction that crocodiles shed tears over their victims).

\* \* \* As the mournful crocodile  
With sorrow snares relenting passengers —SHAKESPEARE.

**Cp.** Judas' kiss: "Organised hypocrisy."

**Crop.**—1. To *crop out*: (V. I.) To appear above the surface (geology); To come to light or show itself.

"His spite *crops out* whenever he speaks about me."

2. To *crop up*: To appear *unexpectedly*.

3. To *come a cropper*: (V. I.) *Lit.* To get a heavy fall (as from a horse).

*Fig.* To fail *badly* in some undertaking.

**Cross.** 1. *Cross-bred*: hybrid (a). Hence the noun "cross-breed."

2 To *cross out or off* (a word or passage): To cancel it.

3. To *cross a cheque*: To draw two paralld lines across it signifying that it must be paid *through a bank only*.

4. To *cross one's path*: (*Lit.*) to meet with one.

So, A man I am crossed with adversity.—SHAK.

(*Fig.*) To thwart him or his plan, or interest.

**Cp.** To stand in one's way.

5. *Our letters crossed each other*: Passed each other on the way 'i. e., one had been despatched before the other was received.

6. They *are at cross purposes*, i. e., misunderstand each other. So, let us not *act at cross purposes*, i. e., have conflicting plans though having the same object in view.

**Cp.** To pull different ways.

**7.** To *cross-examine* (a person or witness) = To examine him *on details* with a view to check his former statement or to elicit suppressed facts.

So, *Cross questions and crooked answers*: (n) a game with questions and disconnected answers. Snipsnap. A wrangling in high words.

**Cp.** Family jars.

**8.** *Cross-grained*: (*Lit*) applied to wood or timber having the fibres transverse or irregular.

(*Fig*) applied to a person of harsh disposition or rough temper; perverse.

**9.** *Cross-tempered*: Cantankerous, quarrelsome, pugnacious.

**Crow.** **1.** I have a *crow to pluck* with you: i. e. an unpleasant matter to settle with you. To find fault with you.

I have words with you.

**2.** In a *crow-line*, i. e. straight line, (resembling the flight of the crow).

So, As the crow flies, (*adv.*) **Cp.** In a bee-line.

**3.** To *crow over* a person or his misfortune. To utter an exultant cry. To triumph or exult over.

**4.** *Crow's feet* (pl): The wrinkleless brought on by age at the outer corner of the eye.

**Crown.** **1.** His efforts were *crowned with success*: fully rewarded.

**2.** The *crowning point* of one's career: That which completes or perfects it.

**3.** (*And*) to *crown all* (*adv.*): Above all; as putting a finishing touch to all these (just mentioned).

He was *learned*, had a good income, was blessed with good children, and to *crown all*, was in excellent health.



Similarly, *A sorrow's crown of sorrow is remembering happier things.*  
—TENNYSON.

**Cry. 1.** *To cry off* (V. L.) To withdraw from a bargain ;  
To back out.

**2.** *To cry quits* with a person - To declare to be on even terms by retaliation of a wrong, or by repayment of money due, Hence, to agree not to proceed further in a quarrel.

**3.** *To cry down* (V. T.) To decry, to dispraise, to disparage, to condemn ; to denounce ; to declaim.

**4.** [Contra] : *To cry up* (V. T.) : To praise highly ;

Cp. To extol to the skies,—To crack up. To applaud to the echo.

**5.** *To cry shame upon* (a person or his act.) i. e. To protest against ; To condemn.

**6.** *To follow in full cry* : [See Full.]

**7.** *A far cry* : a very long distance.

*It was a far cry from Scotland to the heat and dust of Cawnpur.*—  
SIR J. MESTON.

*But from Archbishop Howley to Archbishop Temple is a far cry.*—  
RUSSELL.

**8.** *A crying evil, shame or scandal* is one calling for remedy, vengeance, or punishment.

In the first half of the 18th century the irregular and clandestine weddings, celebrated without banns or license in the Fleet Prison, had been one of the *crying scandals* of the middle and lower classes.—RUSSELL.

So, *crying needs* (as of the human heart).

**9.** *Much cry and little wool* : Great miscalculation and disappointment.

*Shear swine, all cry and no wool,*—HUDIBRAS.

Cp. Tall talk (i. e. braggadocio, rodomontade).

**10.** *To cry out before one is hurt* : (Fig.) To complain without cause.

**11.** To *cry oneself hoarse* [A proleptic use]: To cry so much as to become hoarse. "Cry" which is (V. I.) has acquired the transitive force being followed by the adjective adjunct "hoarse."]

Non-official Indians have *cried themselves hoarse* over the need of more agricultural, industrial and commercial schools.—LEADER.

**Cud.** To *Chew the cud* (of): To reflect on; To ruminate over.

\* \* \* Pacing through the forest,  
Chewing the cud of sweet and bitter fancy.—SHAK. (A. Y. L.)

Meanwhile we in Darjeeling are reduced to *chewing the cud* of recollection and making remembrance dear by praising what is past.—STATESMAN.

**Cudgel.**—1. To *take up the cudgels* for a person: To engage in a contest on behalf of him: To defend him *enthusiastically*. To hold the brief for him.

2. To *cudgel one's brains* (for a thing): Try to call (it) to remembrance.

**Cp.** To *Fillip one's memory*: To exercise one's wits.

**Cue.**—1. To *give one the cue*: To throw a hint how one should act. (Cue: *Literally* the last word—the "catch-word" in the player's acting copy of the speech preceding that which the player himself is to deliver.)

2. To *take one's cue from* another: To act according to a hint received from him.

Smart Society *takes its cue* in every department of life from the centre ~~round~~ which it moves.—RUSSELL.

3. The speaker was not in *his proper cue*, i. e., in fit turn or temper of mind.

**Cum.**—(Take the statement) *Cum grano salis* (Latin adv.) (*Lit.*) with a grain of salt.

(*Fig.*) Making allowance for *exaggeration*. With caution, reserve, or doubt.

**Cup.—1.** *His cup is full* = His happiness (or misery is) complete.

All friends shall taste the wages of their virtue and all foes the cup of their deserving.—SHAK. (K. Lear.)

So, *His cup runneth over*: has more than enough of such happiness.

**Cp.** Say, No more tears, Lord God !

The measure runneth over.—MRS. BROWNING.

Similarly, *To drink the cup of humiliation to the dregs*. To be completely humbled (by misery) or disgrace.

**2.** He said so *in his cups*, i. e., when tipsy or intoxicated.

**3.** *A cup (adv.) too low.* (Pred. adj): Ill at ease ; in low spirits.

**4.** *The cup that cheers but not inebriates*: a drink of tea.

**Curl.—1.** A *curl of the lip* is an expression of scorn.

**2.** The *curled darlings*: The pampered young men that owe everything to fortune and nothing to themselves: Panjandrums.

**Cp.** Mollycoddle. Milksop. C

**Curry.** To *curry favour with* (generally a person of rank or influence):

To ingratiate oneself with him in a *mean* or *sordid* way.

He (Lord Beaconsfield when he grew older) manifested less and less of the apostolic virtue of suffering bores gladly, and though always delightful to his intimate friends, he was less and less inclined to *curry favour with* mere acquaintances.—G. W. E. RUSSELL.

**Curtain.—1.** The *curtain* (screen separating the stage of a theatre from the space occupied by the audience) *falls* or *drops*: The performance is ended.

*Fig.* end of one's existence on this theatre of the world.

It all reminds me that the signal has been given to *ring the curtain down*.—SIR. H. HAWKINS.

2. *The curtain rises* : The performance is about to begin.

3. The curtain is said to be *drawn back* when the objects behind it are revealed.

We will *draw the curtain*, and show you the picture.—SHAK. (T. N.)

4. *And drawn forward* to conceal them.

5. *Curtain lecture* : reproof given in bed (behind the curtains) by a wife to her husband.

**Custody**.—1. *I have now the custody of the orphan* : care or guardianship.

2. The orphan is now *in my custody* : care or guardianship. [Note the prepositions.]

**Cut**.—1. *A short cut* : a passage that shortens distance.

So, the verb to *cut short* : to shorten by cutting ; (*Fig.*) to interrupt (a person)

The problem will not be solved by *short cuts* and by a series of *coups de main*.—MR. ASQUITH.

2. *To cut across* (V. T.) To pass over or through *in the direct way*.

To *cut down* expense : reduce or retrench it or curtail it.

3. To *cut in* (V. I.) To enter a place *abruptly* ; To join in a conversation unceremoniously.

4. To *cut a joke* : To joke. **Cp.** To crack a jest.

5. To *cut a knot* : To take short measures with any thing.\*

[The reference is to Alexander the Great's *cutting* the Gordian Knot instead of undoing it in the ordinary way. See Gordian].

6. To *cut a person* or to *cut him dead* : To refuse to have intercourse with him.

**Cp.** To boycott. \*To send to Coventry.

So, To *cut out* a rival is to supplant him.

7. To *cut according to cloth*: adapt oneself to circumstances.

8. To *cut off* communication : To stop it.

So, to *cut off supplies*.

Turkey is now *cut off* from her Asiatic provinces and finds it difficult to get either corn from there or send troops to resist the Russian advance.

Also, To bring to an untimely end.

Sir Henry Maine *has been* suddenly *cut off* in his 66th year in the plenitude of his powers, in the ripeness of his wisdom.—TIMES,

9. To *cut capers*: To leap or dance in a frolicsome manner; To frisk about.

9A. To *cut a dash or a figure*: To make a display or brilliant show.

10. A *cut and dried* opinion, policy, or rule: one prepared beforehand; ready-made. [Metaphor from timber that after being cut is dried and so seasoned for use].

[N. B. Beware of using *dry* for *dried*].

At any rate Lord Chelmsford will go to India without any preconceived *cut and dried* views.—MAIL.

Without possessing any *cut-and-dried* political scheme, he (Dickens) seems to have wished power to be in the hands of a few wise, strong and good men.—PIONEER.

So, his work is *cut out* for him, i. e., prepared.

It is not possible for Hamlet like persons of no consequence to *cut out* a path for himself.—DEIGHTON.

Cp. Engineering is exactly the profession that my grandson will *cut up* for.

11. To *cut a person to the quick*: To wound his feelings. [See Quick.] To hit him on the raw.

12. To *cut off* (a legal heir) *with a shilling* &c To disinherit him by making a stated provision in the will that he gets only

a shilling. [This is in proof that the disinheritor is *designed*, not the result of neglect].

**12A.** To *cut out* (a competitor) ; To surpass or supplant.

To *cut out* (a path) : To make or fashion ; To shape or or prepare.

It is not possible for him to *cut out* a path for himself.

His work is *cut out* for him. (Passive form).

**Cp.** He may not carve for himself.—SHAK. (H).

Also, To *cut up* a thing : To cut (it) in pieces [up = (adv) completely] (V. I.) Has not *cut up* well : left a good fortune at death.

**13.** To *cut up rough*. (V. I.) To be affected or annoyed a great deal. To show great resentment. To have one's feeling deeply wounded.

**14.** To *be cut up* : (passive form) : To be sore distressed.

He looked *cut up* dreadfully.—HALIBURTON.

**15.** To *cut a tooth* (or the teeth) : To have it (or them) appear through the gum.

**Cp.** The teeth break through gums i, e., erupt (V. I.)

But, to *cut one's eye-teeth* : An Americanism for learning to cheat.

**16.** *Cut and come again* (n) : abundance for all that come—[This noun phrase denotes great hospitality.]

**17.** To *cut the ground from under one* : To make his position untenable. [Note two prepositions combined].

**18.** A *cut-throat* : a murderer.

But, a person is said to *cut his own throat* when he ruins himself by his own indiscreet action.

**19.** *Cut-and-thrust* (n) : (Lit.) A hand-to-hand struggle, Fig. an onset or contest.

As a guest he is a splendid acquisition, always ready to amuse and to be amused, delighting in the rapid *cut-and-thrust* of personal banter.—RUSSELL.

"Cut and thrust" is an adjective phrase = forcible (applied to manner of expression).

Scott's was a *cut-and-thrust* style.—

So, *cut and thrust* arguments = repartees; sword-play.—

**20.** *To draw cuts*: To decide a matter by lottery in the form of drawing papers or sticks of unequal length.

Cp. To toss up.

**Cynic.** *A closet cynic*: a secluded misanthrope sneering at things. A Mephistophelian.—A Timon.

[*Misanthropy* = hatred of men; *Misogamy* = hatred of marriage, and *Misogyny*, of women.]

## D.

✓**Daggers.** **1.** *To look daggers* or *to speak daggers*.

[In both these combinations the word "daggers" is an adverb. "S" is not the plural ending, but the adverbial suffix as in *needs* (necessarily), *friends* (friendly or in friendship)].

Savagely; fiercely or angrily; in such a manner as to stab the heart as keenly as daggers would pierce the flesh.

I will *speak daggers* to her, but use none—SHAK. (Hamlet).

So, also, "she *speaks poniards*, and every word stabs.—SHAK. (M. A.).

**2.** I am *at daggers drawn with him*: Bitterly hostile towards him.

\* Cp. At open war *with*; Up in arms *against*; In bad odour *with*.

**Dally.** **1.** *To dally with* (a person or any business): To be evasive with; To trifle with.

Cardinal Manning would utter the most startling warnings about the danger of *dallying with grace*.—RUSSELL.

**2.** *To dally away time*: consume it to no useful purpose.

Cp. Dawdle away. While away.

✓**Damn.** 1 To damn any person or thing with faint praise? To praise with significant indifference so as to imply the opposite:—To dispraise or condemn. [The phrase is taken from Pope's famous lines on Addison]

Cp. To give grudging praise.

2. *Damned to fame.* [This conjunction was also favourite with Pope by way of irony; fame = Infamy]

See Cromwell *damned to everlasting fame* (condemned to lasting infamy) —ESSAY ON MAN.

All crowd, who foremost shall be *damned to fame.* —DUNCIAD.

**Damocles.** *The sword of Damocles.* Imminent danger in midst of prosperity.

[D. was a courtier whom King Dionysius of Syracuse treated to a splendid feast but over whose head he caused a naked sword to be suspended by a horse hair.] Hence the moral lesson: danger overhangs greatness and outward felicity.

And let us, my brethren, console ourselves by thinking how miserable our betters may be, and that Damocles, who sits on satin cushions, and is served on gold plate, has an awful sword hanging over his head —THACKERAY.

**Dance.**—1. To *dance attendance upon* (a person of rank &c.) To wait *obsequiously* on; To pay *servile* attention to. To be long kept waiting by.

Cp. To cool one's heels.

2. *Both to dance and pay the piper;* To share in the labour for amusement and to provide the expenses of the entertainment *into the bargain.*

3. To *lead a person a pretty dance;* To cause trouble to him in pursuit of an object quite useless to him.

✓**Dare.**—1. *Dare-devil* (n.) one who fears nothing and will attempt any thing; a desperado, (adj.) Quite reckless (conduct &c.)



2. *I or we daresay.* (A first-person phrase adv.)  
Probably ; Possibly.

According to G. C. Whitworth it has acquired an undiomatic meaning which is very different from its original sense ; and therefore when the latter sense has to be conveyed, English writers usually substitute the phrase "venture to say."

I think a little theology, and a little unction, improves a sermon. *I daresay* I am utterly wrong.—CANON AINGER.

✓**Dark.**—1. *To keep (V. T.) or leave a person in the dark:* not to allow him *the light* of knowledge or information (about an event).

To keep him in ignorance.

Though Mr. James said and wrote to Mr. Oaten what was proper, he *left* the students entirely *in the dark* as to what he was doing.—MODERN REVIEW.

So, to be *in the dark* (V. I)

2. *To keep (V. I.) dark:* To remain in the dark.

To keep (V. T.) a thing *dark*, i. e. secret.

3. A *dark horse* (n.) *Lit.* One whose antecedents were not at all known, but which wins a race quite unexpectedly. (*Fig.*) used of any person who without giving any promise *suddenly* achieves distinction in a competition.

Just at present he (Sir Syed Ali Imam) is more or less in the position of a *dark horse* to the bulk of Congressmen —LEADER.

(p. And though mine arm should conquer twenty worlds,  
There's a *lean fellow* beats all conquerors—T. DEKKER.

4. *At dark*, i.e., at night-fall or at night.

5. (to look at) The *Dark side* of things: Their view making a person cheerless.

[Light and sun-shine are the symbols of cheerfulness].

Pessimism is a tendency to look upon *the dark side* of things.

**Contra:** Optimism.

6. *The dark ages*: The period from 500 to 1500 A. D. during which learning made little progress in Europe.

. Cp. The Middle ages.

7. To *darken a person's door*: To pay him a visit (and thus intercept the light passing through the door of a room.)

[ This phrase is usually seen in *negative* sentences].

Lear swore that nothing should persuade him again to *darken their* (daughters') doors.—K. DEIGHTON.

8. (To take) *a leap in the dark*: a rash step.

Cp. A blind bargain.

9. To *darken counsel*: To make perplexity worse.

Cp. To make confusion worse confounded.

✓ **Dash**—1. To *dash hopes*: To disappoint or frustrate them.

2. To *dash down or off* (a letter, draft, or sketch): To write it *rapidly*.

Generally, to dash off any work is to execute it with careless rapidity.

3. The motor car *dashed against or upon* the Maharaja's four-wheeled vehicle = collided with it.

4. He bequeathed this magnificent sum by *a dash of the pen*, i.e., one stroke of his pen.

**Date**.—1. The book is *out of date* (adj.): obsolete; not in use.

So, a fashion is said to have *gone out of date*.

Autocracy and bureaucracy are *out of date*.—MRS BRESANT.

2. In the present edition the book has been brought *up to date* (adv.), i.e., so as to meet the latest requirements or the present day syllabus of the universities.

Quite according to the times. Abreast of the times.

So, the book is a thoroughly reliable and *up-to-date* (adj.) guide.

✓ **Day.**—[In combinations *Day* is used to denote *Time* generally without reference to the specific limit of 24 hours' duration, as, All the days of my life ; In the days of Manu &c. ; usually in the plural form].

1. A person (or a thing) is said to *have had his (or its) day*, when he (or it) is no longer in demand, or is considered old-fashioned.

Autocracy and Bureaucracy *have had their day*. Now they are out of date, unfit for survival and must vanish away.—MRS. BESANT.

So, our day is gone (Shak), i.e., All that made our life worth living has passed away.

**Cp** At discount ; Laid on the shelf ; Past one's prime ; Behind the times ; A back number (noun).

[NOTE the use of the perfect tense "have had" in the phrase and contrast it with the present tense 'has' in the proverb 'Every dog has his day' (i.e., every one will at one time or other have his good time.—a reference to future luck, or no one is *always* unlucky.)]

One's **day** : his time of good luck or prosperity.

[See 5A infra]

2 *Day by day.* (adv.) : Reckoning forward from one day to another ; with repetition.

The world has no memory for small errors ; they wane and perish while the pearl which they encrust and perhaps conceal grows *day by day* more truly orient, and increases with value as generation after generation vanishes away.—TIMES.

So, *Day after day ; From day to day ; Every day.*

3. I met him *the other day* : (adv.) Not long ago.

4. *The order of the day* : (n.) What forms the chief characteristic of the (particular) day's event or proceedings ; Prevailing state of things ; Programme.

They retreat on London where "outlet for outlet" is *the order of the day*.—RUSSELL.

In India Repression seems to be *the order of the day*.—WARR.

Greece has extricated the blood-stained question of Armenia from the

meshes of diplomacy, and placed it on *the order of the day* for definitive solution.—GLADSTONE.

5. No one can work *all day long*: [no def. article before *day*]: (adv.) Throughout the length of 24 hours; The whole day.

Cp. The livelong day; (Happy) as the day is long.

6. *To carry the day*; *To win the day*; So, *To lose the day*.

[In these phrases "Day" = victory or success]

7. *This day*: (adv.) Today. [The omitted preposition is "on" not "at" in this sense.]

7a. *At this day* or *at the present day*: (adv.) In recent times. [Here "day" implies time generally without restriction to 24 hours. Fig. Metonymy, i.e., from particular to general].

Fetichism has been practised more or less by all primitive races and is confined *at the present day* to a few of the savage tribes in Africa.—CIC.

7b. *To this day*: (adv.) Even in *these times*.

The abominable custom continues *to this day*.—IBID.

Cp. Men of the day; men of rank and influence *at any particular time*.

Contra. In the past. In past times. In days of yore: In the brave days of old.—MACAULAY.

7c. *One of these days*: (adv.) Erelong; Before long.

It is not unlikely, though a member of the Council, he may at a mere wink of the executive fall into the clutches of the Police *one of these days*.—CHRONICLE.

Also, one of these *fine days*.

Cp. One fine morning,

[Note the use of these phrases in utterances of prediction and promise.]

7d. *At this time of day*: (adv.) At so late a date; In this stage of progressive civilization.

It is unnecessary *at this time of day* to trace in detail the history of a great controversy so fresh in every memory that can reach back for 20 years.—RUSSELL.

[Note the singular "day" without def. article].

Cp. It is late *in the day*.

7e. *This day week*: (adv.) i.e., of the week counting backward or forward from *this day*.

So, *this day fortnight*; *this day month*; *this day year*.

8. This happens *day about*: (adv.) on alternate days.

9. *To keep one's day*: To be punctual.

10. *My days are numbered*. [From the Bible]: I have only a short time to live. I have *soon to end my days*.

Cp. One's time is drawing near.

11. *To have seen better days*: To have been better off in the past. [Note the present perfect as denoting past time and see "Have been" *infra*]

Cp. I am *fallen on* evil days. (i.e., in misfortune).

12. *Sufficient unto the day is the evil thereof*. [A Biblical expression]. We have too much misery to contend against *now* to think of what awaits us in the future. There is no use anticipating troubles.

We forget how many mortals breathe their last in every minute.—*Sufficient unto the day is the evil thereof*—TIMES.

13. *In the day-time*: Not at night.

14. *To burn day light*. (SHAK): To use artificial light before it is dark. To waste time.

Cp. To waste one's substance: (To be spendthrift.)

15. *Day-dream*: Reverie.

Cp. Castles in the air; Fool's paradise.

NOTE.—*Day-long* (work, labour etc): (adj.) Lasting throughout the day.

*All day long*: (adv.) [see *Supra* (5)].

But, *All the week through*, and *All the year round* are the appropriate combinations.]

✓ **Dead.**—1. In the combinations "*Dead drunk*," "*Dead*

*tired*" the word "dead" is an adverb = completely; absolutely (tired out); "weary to death"

So, *Dead against*, *dead asleep*: so asleep as to resemble a dead person. *Dead loss* i.e., as of a man dead. *Dead hours* (those of the night);

2. *Dead and gone*, i.e. quite dead.

[N. B.—In Shakespeare the single word "gone" (p. p.) is used for the combination, e. g. "Portia, art thou gone."]

5. To be *dead to shame* or any tender feeling: hardened against or unappreciative of.

Contra. To be alive to.

4. *Dead lift at a thing*: Exertion to lift it *though too heavy*.

So, *a dead pull at a thing*. Also, *help at a dead lift*.

Cp. \* Manna in the wilderness.

A strong pull, a long pull and a pull altogether.

5. The race ended in *dead heat*, i. e. equality.

Cp. A drawn game; a drawn battle; a neck and neck race; a Tie.

6. A law or rule becomes a *dead letter*: obsolete; no longer given effect to. •

p The May-Laws are now little more than the *ghosts of their original selves*.—TIMES.

7. To make a *dead set at* a person or thing, i. e. pointed attack on: (*Fig.*) a determined effort for.

8 A *dead-head*: a person who goes to an entertainment (as theatre) or who travels in a railway carriage without paying for it; a sponger.

9. Things are said to *come to a dead lock*, when they are reduced to such a *confused* state as to render progress impossible;

Cp. At a stand-still;

Impasse (n.) (Fr. = a blind alley).

10. *Dead weight* : a heavy or an oppressive burden.

11. To wait for dead men's shoes : To look forward to the property of a person ~~at~~ to his position when he is dead.

12. *The dead bones* may be said to *stir with life*, not "heave" with it, when interest is renewed in a matter altogether forgotten.

12a. *Let the dead* (adj.) *past bury its dead* (n.)—LONG-FELLOW.

Do not waste time by brooding over a matter which cannot be recalled (e. g. failure, misfortune, bereavement &c.)

Cp. Let by-gones be by-gones. Past cure is still past care.

To mourn a mischief that is past and gone

Is the next way to draw new mischief on.—SHAK.

He robs himself that spends a bootless grief.—IBID.

\* \* I never yet did hear

That the bruised heart was pieced thro' the ear.—IBID.

✓ **Death**.—1. *Done to death* by slanderous tongues : Death being the result of constant brooding over foul and unjust aspersions.

So, he will *be the death of me*—(used in a jocose way) kill by over-hilarity,

Cp. To convulse with laughter ; To set the table in a roar.

2. Sick unto death : as sick as could possibly be, or to the utmost limit.

So, tired or weary *to death*.

3. To run (an analogy, simile &c.) to death : To apply it too closely ; To force it.

4. *To be in at the death* : (Fig. from fox-hunting = to see the fox killed) = To be present at any enterprise (when ended).

**Debate**.—*Debatable ground*.—(Lit.) The borderland in

dispute between two parties. (*Fig*) Any question or problem which is subject of dispute.

It was this sternness of conviction this faith in his own infallibility that rendered Guizot unwilling to meet his adversaries on that *debatable ground* which must always lie between the best defined boundaries of right and wrong.—TIMES.

✓ **Debt.**—1. To *run into debt*: To incur it. [Beware of using *debts* (which is an abstract noun) in the plural number.]

✓ **2. To pay the debt of nature**: To die. [Birth and death are two correlative natural processes, one implying the other. The moment one is born, he incurs an obligation to Nature which is discharged by death only.]

Cp. "To every man upon this earth

Death cometh soon or late.—MACAULAY (Horatius).

The Hindus believe the correlation from both points. "It is as sure that a man (born) will die, as that a man (dying or dead) will be re-born."  
—BHAGWAT GITA.

✓ **Decline.**—1. Decline (n.) of life: Last part of life as it takes its natural course. [Decline = falling off].

Cp. "The vale<sup>of</sup> years"; The down-hill of life

" " " " " My way of life

Is fallen into the scar, the yellow leaf—SHAK. (Macbeth).

✓ **2. To decline** (an invitation, request &c.) *with thanks*  
= To reject rather *scornfully* (Ironical)

[ N. B. Newspaper editors often use this combination with reference to any correspondent's letter which they refuse to publish.]

**3.** The practice is *on the decline* (adj.) i. e., declining or drawing towards its close.

**Deep.**—[*Deep* in many combinations is used as adverb = *deeply*].

1. A *deep-laid* plot or scheme: secretly and elaborately worked out.



2. A *deep-seated* antipathy: seated in the depth or innermost recess of the heart.

So, a *deep-rooted* prejudice.

3. He reads *deep into the night*: in and up to the very late hours of the night.

4. *Still waters run deep*: When the waters of a stream are still, it is an indication that the depth there is great. Stillness is indication of depth. (*Fig.*) Gravity of countenance is the mark of thoughtfulness and wisdom. Hence, real feeling or knowledge is not showy.

5. To be in *deep water*: To be in a scrape.

6. A subject or matter is *beyond one's depth*: (adj.) such that his capacities cannot reach or grasp it.

7. A person is *out of his depth*: cannot stand in the water on account of its depth; In *too deep water*: (*Fig.*) engaged on too hard a task.

**Default**—1. In *default of*: For want or failure of.

Goods thrown into the sea and sunk belong to the crown in *default of* other claimants.

2. To *make default*: (V. I) To fail to appear in court; or to fulfil an engagement; or to neglect or fail to pay.

The judgment *went by default*, i. e. given on failure of attendance of one party.

He *made default* to pay the tax on the assigned day and was fined double the amount in consequence.

**Defiance.** [This noun is joined with several verbs and certain prepositions to be specially noted. The compound transitive verb thus formed = To defy.]

1. To *bid defiance to*.

The poorest man in his cottage *bids defiance to* all the force of the crown.—PITT.

2. To set at defiance.

3. To say or act in defiance of.

Cp. To set at nought. To beard the lion.

✓ **Degree.**—1. *By degrees* (adv.): gradually. *By moderate advances.*

There is a method in man's wickedness,

It grows up *by degrees* — BEAUMONT & FLETCHER.

To be of no church is dangerous. Religion, of which the rewards are distant, and which is animated only by Faith and Hope, will glide *by degrees* out of the mind, unless it be invigorated and reimpresed by external ordinances, by stated calls to worship, and the salutary influence of example — S. JOHNSON.

Cp. Step by step. Contra. *Per saltum*.

2. To a *high degree* (adv) highly; [used after the adjective it qualifies].

This compliance on your part is gratifying *to a degree*.

3. *To the last degree* (adv): Extremely, Excessively.

This is also contracted into "To a degree."

The reception was courteous *to the last degree*

✓ **Demand.**—1. The book is *in demand*: (adj. used only in the predicate.) much sought after.

Cp. In request.

Contra: a drug in the market.

2. Pay Rs. 100/- *on demand* (adv): when demand is made.

✓ **Depend.** *Depend upon it* (adv) assuredly, i. e. you may be sure.

If you fail to join within a week, *depend upon it*, you lose the appointment.

**Dernier.** *Dernier ressort* (Fr.) One's last resource; desperate expedient. One's last shift.

This array of troops proving unavailing, the meek-tempered Middleton, as a *dernier resort*, menaced these Begums\* ministers with a confinement in the fortress of Chunargarh.—R. B. SHERIDAN.

Cp. Pis aller.

**Derogate.**—1. This companionship will *derogate* (V. I.) from your dignity, i. e. have the effect of lowering your honoured position.

Cp. To detract from.

2. This is *derogatory* to your dignity.

3. This was *in derogation* of your character.

**Desert.** After one's deserts or according to one's deserts (*adv.*) as one *deserves* to be recompensed for his acts.

So, he has got his deserts.

**Note** the plural. But the singular is used by Shakespeare. "Use every man *after his desert*, and who should escape whipping? Use them after your own honour and dignity: the less they deserve, the more merit is in your bounty".—HAMLET.

**Deuce.**—1. To play the deuce (*devil*) with (V. T.) To spoil or ruin.

So cold a climate plays the deuce with votes.—LORD LYTTON.

The fumes from the factories have played the devil with our trees.—SIR H HAWKINS.

2. ~~The deuce (or devil) is in it if I cannot~~; a strong asseveration=I can.

3. Here is the deuce to pay, i.e. trouble to be expected (n).

So, There will be the devil to pay = great annoyance in store.

**Devil.**—1. You rascal, go to the devil: off with you. Be ruined.

2 (To be caught) between the devil and the deep sea. [These are equally frightful dangers.] In a dilemma.

Cp. Between two fires; Between Scylla and Charybdis.

3. *Give the devil his due*—Be fair and just in giving one his right or what he is entitled to *even though* he be of bad character or inimically disposed.

4. He has got *the devil of a temper*, i.e. a devilish temper. [Fig. Hendiadys.]

5. *Devil-may-care* (adj.) fellow : one very reckless. Rol. licking. So, a devil-may-care song is one sung in a reckless manner.

6. *The devil take the hindmost* ; Ill luck must await one who most lags behind.

7. *To beat the devil's tattoo* : To drum idly with the fingers upon a table, book, &c.

**Diamond.**—1. He is a *rough diamond* : a person of ungainly exterior but having valuable inward qualities (of mind and heart) : one of intrinsic worth but rough manners.

Contra : Whited sepulchre ; Dead-sea apple.

2. *The diamond wedding* : Sixtieth anniversary of marriage.

[N. B.—The 25th anniversary is the *silver*, and the 50th the *golden* wedding.]

3. *Diamond cut diamond* : (noun) Two persons rivalling each other in sharpness, wit, or cunning.

They are playing the game of *diamond cut diamond*.

[The phrase is also used adjectively as "Diamond cut diamond strokes of policy on the part of the British Prime minister and the German Emperor."

**Die.**—1. *The die (n.) is cast* : (Fig.) The decisive step has been taken. There is no opportunity for drawing back. [This expression is used when a course has been *irrevocably* decided and taken].

So, a thing is said to be *upon the die*, i. e. at stake ;

depending upon an uncertain chance. (Pred. adj.)

Cp. The Rubicon is crossed ; Our boats are burned.

2. *To die* (V. I.) [Note the following uses of the prepositions after the verb]. A person *dies of* illness, hunger &c. He *dies by* violence, *by* sword, or *by his own hand*, *from* a wound, *through* neglect ; *on* scaffold ; *in* battle, *in* poverty, *for* a friend or a cause.

So, *To die in* one's bed.

Cp. *To die of* a rose in aromatic pain.—POPE.

3. *To die hard* : To remain obdurate or *impenitent* while dying ; or to die *after a hard struggle* or to struggle hard against death or difficulties.

It is a feminine weakness that *will die hard*.

4. *To be dying* (p. adj.) *for* (or to do something) : Have a great desire.

Now, Luttrell, we were all *dying to know* how old you are.—RUSSELL.

5. *To die game*, [Here *game* is an adv. see *Game*].

✓ 5A. *To die down* : (*Fig.*) to cease to exist ; To disappear.

With the improvement of trade and the relief of taxation chartism gradually *died down*—E. CYC.

To let the flame of the colonies' ardour *die down* was to gamble with disaster.—TIMES.

So, *To die out* ["out" has the force of completion].

Dodo gradually *died out* because of its inability to stand against the animals imported into the island (Mauritius) by settlers.—ISID.

5B. *To die off* : To be removed by death ["off" implies removal].

The young clerks below him *died off*, as if there were a plague among them, but the old fellows above his head for the reversion of whose places he was anxiously waiting lived on and on as if they were immortal.—DICKENS.

6. *To die by inches*, i. e. to waste away slowly and steadily.

So, To die away :

7. To *die in harness*, i. e. while still at work (Fig. from horse).

Cp. Blow, wind ! Come wrack !

At least we'll die with harness on our back.—SHAK.

8. To *die in the last ditch* i. e. while desperately defending something.

9. *Never say die* : Maintain courage instead of giving in.

**Differ.**—1. Let us *agree to differ* : Come to the definite understanding that we shall not be able to agree (on some point.)

2. This is a *distinction without a difference* : The distinction is not real ; it is only in name. The two things between which the difference is made are identical, or one and the same.

An act hath three branches ; it is to *act*, to *do*, and to *perform*. Albany fights not against Lear, but for Britain, or more probably saves his conscience by a *distinction without a difference*.—DARINGTON.

Cp. To resemble with a difference.

Tom's contributions to Social Journal resemble Freddy's, but *resemble them with a difference*.—RUSSELL.

Cp. Six of one and half a dozen of the other ; Tweedledum and Tweedledee [see Tweedle].

3. To *split the difference* : To come to a compromise.

4. It *makes a great difference* : It is very important.

**Contra.** Not much difference.

A youngman of twenty or so has acquired habits of speech which cannot easily be altered, and for him it *makes not much difference* whether the teacher is Indian or English.—HOMERSHAM COX.

**Dilemma.**—1. To be on the horns of a dilemma [see Horn].

2. So, To be landed in a dilemma.

**Dint.** (Rose to the top of the profession.) *By dint of* (perseverance, energy, ability &c.) = by the force of or by means of.

✓ **Dirt.**—1. To *fling or throw dirt at* a person is to defame, or abuse, or slander him.

2. To *eat dirt*: (V. I.) To submit tamely to insult or humiliation. To put up with it.

3. *Dirt-cheap* (adj.): As cheap as dirt; also, (adv.) At a considerably low price.

Cp. Dog-cheap.

4. To *have the dirty end of the stick*: *Fig.* the wrong part.

Cp. To get the wrong sow by the ear.

✓ **Discount.**—(a) The Government securities are *at a discount* (pred. adj.): obtainable at a lower price than their face value (i. e. *par*).

2. (*Fig.*) A person is said to be *at a discount* when he is not held in the same estimation as formerly; *in* disfavour. *Falling into* disfavour.

The Indian bureaucracy has come to know that its grand quintessential sublimation of political wisdom and virtue is already *at a discount*.—B. CHRONICLE.

Cp. He has had his day. Not in the swim. Past one's prime.

**Discretion.**—1. To surrender *at discretion* (adv.): Unconditionally, i. e. to the absolute will of the conqueror; without stipulating for terms beforehand.

2. The matter now lies *at the discretion of* the judge; it is to be settled by the will of the judge.

**Dispense.**—1. To *Dispense with* (V. T.): To do without; To permit the neglect or omission of (e. g., a ceremony or oath); To excuse.

No other biography is so simple or can so well afford to *dispense with* details.—ECCLE HOMO.

2. *Dispensations of Providence*:—Distribution of good and evil in the Divine Government.

**Dispose**.—1. To *dispose of* (V. T.): To get rid of (as opponents, dependents &c.)

2. To *dispose of* an affair: To regulate; To finish.

So, To *dispose of* a claim: To settle.

The liberal party *disposes of* certain questions only in a liberal spirit.

3. To *dispose of* a thing or property: To part with by selling.

The title of Baronet was sold and two hundred patents of that species of knighthood *were disposed of* for so many thousand pounds.—HUME.

4. At *one's disposal*: (adj. or adv.) Within his possession or control.

I paid Ali Imam the greatest compliment *at my disposal* by appointing him Vice-president of my Council.—LORD HARDINGE.

5. Man proposes and *God disposes* (V. T. used intransitively in a general sense.) He only directs the result (of man's actions); determines the course of events.

Cp. There is a Divinity that shapes our ends  
Rough-hew them how we will.—SHAK. (H).

**Do**.—1. To *do away with* (V. T.): To abolish (a practice or custom). To banish (cares, thoughts etc.).

2. To *do for*: To serve as a substitute for; To answer in place of; To serve as.

This letter will *do for* a recommendation.

This spot will *do well enough for* dying on.—SHAK. (Deighton).

3. A person is said to *be done for* when he is ruined.  
[ This is the restricted sense in the passive form].

Cp. To be cleaned out-

4. *Do this* Bengali passage *into* English: Translate it.

To *do up* a debtor or an enemy; To ruin him.



6. To *do up* a parcel is to tie up and pack.

So, To *do up* a building is to make it tidy.

The Bank house has been calling in the most crying manner to be *done up*.—SARAH TYTLER.

7. *I am quite done up* after such a long walk. i. e. Fatigued or exhausted.

8. To *do a thing over*: To put a coating of paint upon it. To perform it again.

9. *I have done with* that matter: Finished it; ceased to have part or interest in it.

If you fall in the battle, you will *have done with* worldly affairs and the plots now laid against you will necessarily come to an end.

10. *A to-do* (n): much ado; bustle; fuss.

His mother, inside the vehicle, with her maid and her furs, her wrappers and scent-bottles, made such a *to-do* that you would have thought she never had been in a stage-coach before.—THACKERAY.

11. *Up and doing* (pred.): actively performing the work in hand.

Let us then be *up and doing*.—LONGFELLOW.

Cp. Up and stirring. Busy as a bee.

12. To *do well or ill* by a person is to behave well or ill towards him.

Do to others as you would be *done by*—(Here *as*=well or ill)—This is the golden rule of human conduct.

**Dog.** 1. *A dog in the manger*. Metaphor from one of Æsop's Fables—He cannot eat the hay himself and yet refuses to allow those to eat who can): Hence, a selfish man who prevents others enjoying what being useless to him he cannot enjoy himself.

[N. B.—The compound word is also used as an adjective.]

2. To *go to the dogs* (V. I.): To ruin one's course in life.

Cp. To go to the bad. To go to pigs and whistles,

✓ 3. To give or throw to the dogs: (V. T.) To throw away or abandon as useless.

So, "*Has not one word to throw at a dog*"—(SHAK.) is unsocially or superciliously taciturn.

4. The dogs of war (as different from hunting dogs) "Famine, sword and fire"—(SHAK. H. V.) Havoc and rapine—"The hell-hounds of war"—W. PITT.

5. To lead a dog's life: (V. I.) To have a miserable time of it, Be worried. (V. T.) To cause (one) to have such time. To worry him. So, To die a dog's death: To end one's existence in shameful misery.

6. To help a lame dog over the stile—generally, to befriend a person of broken fortune and in distressed circumstance.

Cp. A friend in need is a friend indeed.

✓ To let sleeping dogs lie.—[see Sleep] Do not meddle with matters that are not unsatisfactory. Do not disturb things.

Cp. Let it well alone. *Laissez Faire*.

**Dolce.** *Dolce far niente* (Italian): Delicious idleness—(Lit., sweet do-nothing). [often as adjective to qualify *Life* or course of existence].

**Doom.**—1. *One's doom is sealed*: His fate is irrevocably decided.

Cp. Death stares one in the face.

2. *Crack of doom*: [see Crack].

**Door.**—1. *Within doors*: (adv. or pred. adj.) in the house.

So, *Indoors* = within the house;

2. *Out of doors*: In the open air, abroad.

3. *This hypocrisy is next door to dishonesty*, i. e. Bordering

upon it or closely resembling it. Almost.

So, he lives *next door* (adv.): in the next room or house.

4. To *lay at one's door* (V. T.) To accuse him of; To charge him with.

All failures must be *laid at the door* of Mr. Asquith and the other liberal ministers.—INDIA

Irreverence and other kindred faults are *laid at the door* of our secular training.—SIR J. MERTON.

5. This charge *lies at your door*. (V. I.): is one that you are accused of.

6. *To open a door to* (V. T.) Give access to.

These irregularities will *open a door to many malpractices*, i. e. make them possible.

**Double.**—1. A person is said to be a *double first* (n.) when he has taken first class honours at a University in two subjects.

So, To *take a double first* is to gain such distinction.

2. A *double entendre* (Fr): A phrase or expression having two meanings one of which is concealed and usually bad.

[The English equivalent is a *Double entente*—a pun or quibble.]

Cp. Be these juggling fiends no more believed  
That palter with us in a *double sense*.—SHAK. (Macbeth).

3. A *double-edged* weapon is one which cuts by both edges.

So, a *double-edged* argument is one which is applicable both ways, i. e. which tells both in favour of and against a person or subject.

Cp. Thus I am *doubly armed*; my death and life

My bane and antidote are both before me.

This (the sword) in a moment brings me to an end,

But this (book on the Immortality of the soul)

Informs me I shall never die.—ANDERSON. (Cato)

4. To *work double tides* (Adv.) i. e. both night and day.

[Tide = Time]; Hence, to redouble one's efforts.

5. *In double quick time* = very rapidly.

6. *Doubly sure* [see Assurance]

Cp. A double blessing is a double grace.—SHAK.

7. To *play double or quits*: (Fig., from playing for a stake). To risk one's *all* in getting out of a difficulty.

Cp. Bottom dollar.

8. To *double one up* = (V. T.) To render him powerless.

9. *Double-dealing* (n) Acting two different or contrary parts *deceitfully*. Duplicity. (Paltering with one's conscience.)

So, *double-faced* = insincere.

A *double-tongued* or *double-mouthed* person is one who makes contrary declarations on the same subject to different persons from deceitful motives.

Cp. *Arriere pensee*. Mental reservation.

**Doubt**.—1. In *affirmative* sentences the word whether noun or verb is followed by a noun-clause beginning with any of the three conjunctions *that*, *if*, *whether* e. g.

I doubt whether he will pass. I have grave doubts if (or that) he will pass.


2. But in *negative* sentences, the following noun-clause may begin with the conjunction *but* or the combination *but that*, e. g.

I doubt not but (or but that) he will pass. I am certain of his success.

3. The prepositions after the noun *doubt*:

I have doubts *on* this subject or *in* this matter.

I have grave doubts *as to* an event or result.

 **Dove**.—Do not flutter the doves: (Fig.) Do not alarm quiet people. [Dove is a quiet innocent bird.]

The flutter in the official doves is doubtless due to the dangers in-

herent in the scandal [Simla Exodus] being noised abroad in England.—STATESMAN.


The official announcement that H. E. the Viceroy and Lady Chelmsford intend to spend next Christmastide at Bombay has made *much flutter in plutocratic dovecots*.—CAPITAL (Bombay Correspondent).

**Cp.** To cry wolf.

**Down.**—Note that all combinations with "down" imply (literal or metaphorical) motion to a lower place; "I *got down* at the Howrah Station" i. e., alighted there from the carriage. Money is paid down i. e., taken out from the purse and placed on the counter of the shopkeeper = paid immediately. Don't hit a man when he is *down*, i. e., in a fallen posture ]

*Fig.* of time: from earlier to later times, e. g. The history is brought down to the present time.

1. To be *down upon* a person (*Lit.* 'To pounce upon him: (*Fig.*) To assail him with rebuke; treat him with severity.

 He is *down on his luck*: He is dispirited by misfortune.

**Cp.** Down upon his marrow bones.

3. He is *down in the mouth*: Despondent, sad. Downhearted.

**Cp.** Heart-sick, Down cast eyes = Dejected look.

4. (The argument was smashed) *Down to the ground* (adv): completely. (Figure from opponent felled to the ground].

5. Your *shoes are down at heel*: Their heel part is crushed down.

So, a *person is down at heel* when he wears such shoes or is untidy in his person [*Fig.* from particular to general].

6. To *let* (a person or thing, or custom) *go down the wind*: To discard or give up.

7. (To go) *Downhill*: (adv) in the descending direction.

So, the down-hill (n) of life : life's decline, its latter part.

Again, a down hill (adj.) work, i. e. as easy as to go down a hill.

Contra: an uphill work.

8. To *strike root downwards* is to penetrate into the lower strata of society.

The worst mischief of these colossal extravagances is that they *strike root downwards*, and visibly affect the general sense of proportion and the estimate of what is really worth having.—RUSSELL.

So the *downward-filtration* theory regarding Education.

✓ **Dozen.**—1. *A baker's dozen* = Thirteen in number instead of twelve. Also, *a long dozen*.

✓ 2. He talks *nineteen to the dozen* (adv): too long and too much without interruption; glibly; volubly.

N. B.—Mark the singular, and note plural forms in—

Three dozen (adj.) mangoes; some dozens (n.) of people; dozens (n.) of times.

**Drag.**—1. To *drag in* (V. T.) a matter or subject = To introduce it rather *forcibly* or unnecessarily or irrelevantly.

[This phrase is also emphasized by the additional adverbial combination "by the head and shoulders" which implies *great* force and abruptness.]

2. Time *drags on*: (V. I.) passes very tediously.

3. The struggle *dragged its slow length along*: went on at a very slow pace.

A needless Alexandrine ends the song

That like a wounded snake *drags its slow length along*.—POPE.

4. A thing *acts as a drag* on a project or enterprise: Hinders its progress.

Cp. Wet blanket. Throwing of cold water.

**Draw.** 1. To *draw a person in*: (V. T.) To entice him.

2. The day *drew in* (V. I.): closed in.

3. The days *draw in* (V. I.) become shorter day by day.

**4.** To *draw on* (V. T.): To receive from (as a source of supply) Thus, to *draw on futurity* is to gain time.

The higher grades and branches of the public service *draw upon* the splendid series of the municipal and national technical and professional schools which train men for every special department of municipal activity.

The articles are treated as quarries to be *drawn upon*.—FOWLER.

**5** To *draw* (V. I.) to an end or close i. e. make way or move *towards*.

Another year is *drawing to a close* as it began in toil bloodshed and suffering, but I rejoice to know that which you are striving for *draws* (V. I.) into sight—*King Emperor's* (message of 1915.)

**6.** To *draw oneself up*: To assume a stiff attitude.

**6A.** The troops *drew up*: (V. I.) i. e. formed themselves in regular order or in battle array.

**6B.** To *draw up with*: To overtake (V. T.)

**6C.** Who has *drawn up* the petition? (V. T.): drafted or composed it in due form.

**7.** To *draw rein*: To pull at rein to stop the horse  
(Fig.) To check one's course.

**Cp** To draw up. (V. I)

**8** To *draw off* (as mind) (V. T.) To abstract. (V. I.) with draw, to retreat.

Thus the cloud gradually *drew off*, and I again enjoyed life.—MILL.

**9.** A *drawn game or battle* is one in which neither party wins.

**Cp.** Tie (equality of score in any competition or in a game.

**9a.** Will the war *end in a draw* i. e. a drawn game.

**10.** To *draw a person out*: to induce him to talk and thus reveal his character and opinion.

Curlye was very great. Monckton Milnes *drew him out*.—WILBERFORCE.

**11.** To *draw the line* i. e. (of demarcation.)

To mark the limit beyond which not to proceed.

Consanguinity gradually effaced the *line of demarcation* which separated the noble from the merely rich.—RUSSELL.

**Dree.** [This archaic word (= endure) occurs in the Scotch phrase *To dree one's weird* = To resign oneself to one's lot or destiny; hence, to accept the inevitable without repining. To acquiesce in the inevitable.

Cp. "Turn a manly breast to adverse fate and remember that better men have so fared"

Also, "The witch is in it."—W. D. HOWELLS (American).

**Dregs.**—1. *Dregs of the people*: The ragamuffins. The mob or the rabble.

Cp. The riff-raff; Ragtag and bobtail.

2. *Lowest dregs of vice*: crimes of the deepest dye.

**Dress.** To be *dressed out or up*: clothed elaborately and pompously.

Cp. (*Fig.*) Varnish right and puzzle wrong.

**Dribble.** The debt was paid *by dribble* i. e. in small petty sums.

**Drink**—1. To *drink deep* [deep (adv) = to excess] Indulge in liquor to excess.

Little learning is a dangerous thing

*Drink deep but taste not the Pierian spring.*—POPE.

Cp. Profundity *vs.* smattering.

✓ 2 To *drink to* a person = To salute him in drinking; or to wish good to him in drinking.

So, to drink a person's health = To wish *while drinking* that he may remain in health.

Similarly, To drink success to a man or (the opposite). To drink damnation to him. [Notice the insertion of the objective after *drink*.]

3. A *drinking bout*: a fit or spell of drinking; Booze.

Cp. On the fiddle.



**N. B.**—To *drink* (V. T.) takes as its object the liquid which is drunk, otherwise it is intransitive. Even then it may be made to acquire the force of V. T. conjoined with an adverbial adjunct as, he drank himself to death. He drank himself out of the situation etc. The object in such cases is a reflexive pronoun. [*Fig.* Prolepsis]

**4. *Drink-money*:** money given to buy liquor for drink. (*Fig.*) paying one's footing in a club or society; Fee for admittance to a trade or society.

**✓Drug.** A *drug in the market*: an unsaleable commodity; a thing not in demand.

**Contra.** Much sought after. In great demand.

**✓Drum.—1.** To *drum out* a soldier: To expel him from a regiment by beating a drum. Hence, to drum out any person from his post or service = To cashier him.

**2.** To *drum a lesson into* one, i. e. to instill it into him by persistent repetition.

**Dry.—1.** *Dry bones*: Subject in which no life exists and no interest is taken. (Figurative use in the Bible).

Between 1870 and 1880 there was a great stirring of the dry bones at the Universities.—RUSSELL. [Don't substitute "heave" for "stir".]

**2.** A *dry reception* is one that is cold and unfriendly.

So, *dry thanks*.

**3. *He sucked me dry*, i. e. (*Fig.*)** got every thing insidiously from me so that I have nothing left, just as a sponge sucks up water from a pot and leaves it dry.

**Cp.** To *sponge on* a person; a sucked or squeezed orange.

**Note**—This is the figure *Prolepsis*:—A grammatical device whereby a thing is represented as already done, though in reality it is to follow as a consequence, e. g. "India was bled white"—LORD HARDINGE.

**Cp.** To wash a blackamoor white.

**✓A. *He died a dry death*:** not by drowning or bloodshed.

**✓Duck. 1.** To *make ducks and drakes* of one's money

or property. To make play thing of it as if valueless. Hence, to squander most recklessly.

[Beware of disturbing the order of the two nouns.]

2. To score a *duck's egg* (at a game or examination), i. e. something resembling it, viz., a zero or cypher ; hence. nothing,

Cp. A round O.

✓ 3. A *lame duck*—a person who fails to pay his debts especially on the Stock Exchange. A defaulter. (Fig.) A disabled person.

[Beware of confusion with "Lame Dog"]

**Dudgeon.** *In high dudgeon* (adj) : very much angry ; full of resentment and ill-feeling ; also (adv) after such verbs as *do, say, speak* &c.

*In high dudgeon* she retired to her room and played Patience on the bed—RUSSELL (on cards.)

**Dumps.** 1. To be *in the dumps* (pred. adj.) : sulky, gloomy, in bad temper or in low spirits.

Cp. In the doldrums ; in the sulks ; in the suds ; in the glout.

2 *In doleful dumps* : (adj) sad and sulky.

**Dunghill.** Mr. Joe is a *cock on his own dunghill* : He is tyrannical and overbearing in his household, or office.

**Durance.** *Durance vile* : (Endurance of) irksome restraint or imprisonment.

In durance vile here must I wake and weep,

And all my frowzy (slovenly) couch in sorrow steep.—BURNS.

Cp. Under duress [i. e. forced] restraint or compulsion.]

✓ **Dust.** 1. To *dust one's jacket* : To chastise or beat him.

✓ 2. To *dust the eyes of a person* : To deceive him ; To take him in.

✓ 3. To *throw dust in a man's eyes* : To blind him as to

the true character of something ; To mislead or deceive him ; To lead him astray.

[Some good writers use *into* instead of *in*, as it ought to be, the verb *throw* implying motion.]

✓ 4. To make or raise a dust : To create turmoil or excitement.

✓ Differentiate To kick up a dust = carry on a valueless discussion ]

✓ 5. To bite the dust : To fall wounded to the ground in a contest or be slain in it.

6. To be humbled in the dust : To suffer great humiliation. [Some writers use *to* instead of *in*.]

6A. To lick the dust : [See Lick]

✓ 7. To shake off the dust of one's feet : To take one's departure in rage.

8. The dust of the balance : a thing of no value or weight.

Birth, breeding, rank, accomplishments, eminence in literature, eminence in art, eminence in public service—all these things still count for something in society. But combined they are only as *the dust of the balance* when weighed against the all-prevalent power of money.—RUSSELL.

Up. A feather in the scale ; a drop in the bucket ; a drop in the ocean ; A negligible factor or quantity.

9. Fit for the dust-bin or dust-hole : Dirty and useless.

**Dutch.** 1. A Dutch auction : one at which the seller starts with a high price and comes down gradually till a bidder or purchaser is found ; Hence, a mock auction.

2. Dutch courage : Boldness inspired by intoxicating spirits ; Hence, temporary artificial courage.

3. Double Dutch : Gibberish ; unmeaning or unintelligible talk.

✓ 4. Then I am a Dutchman . This is the consequent clause (Apodosia) humourously used by Englishmen after an If-clause (Protasis) to denote the absurdity of the latter.

"If he can succeed in his examination, then I am a Dutchman."  
[Affirmative.]

Cp. Or I am a Dutchman (the last clause in a disjunctive sentence.)

He will pass or *I am a Dutchman*—i. e. I am not a Dutchman ∴ he will not pass.

**Dwell.** To *dwell on or upon* a subject: To occupy a long time with it; hence, to be tedious over it; To write or speak *at length upon* it.

Cp. To expatiate on.

**Dye.** 1. A crime of the blackest dye: a monstrous wickedness. A flagrant offence. A flagitious, or atrocious or villainous act or conduct. So, a rogue or scoundrel of the deepest dye: An arrant knave.

B. To dye (a material) in the wool, i. e. while it is in raw state so as to get a more lasting result, i. e. fast colour.

Similarly, To dye it in grain.

## E.

**Ear 1.** To have a person's ear: To obtain favourable and attentive hearing from him.

2. To give ear to a person—To listen to what he says.

Give every man thine ear, but few thy voice. — SHAK

Contra: To turn a deaf ear to.

3. To give one's ears to do a thing—To make any sacrifice for it. [Note the plural.]

4. To prick up one's ears: To assume an expectant attitude.

5. He is over head and ears in debt: (adv) deeply

(immersed) or overwhelmed

Cp. up to *the* eyes.

✓ 6. To *set* persons *by the ears*: To make strife between them. To cause them to quarrel.

He was for ever *setting* cabinets *by the ears* by untimely announcements of what they considered to be secrets.—TIMES

~ So, to be *by the ears* (pred adj.) = quarreling.

[“The” has the force of pronoun = their. But do not use the pronoun.]

Cp. To *set* (v. T.) at variance; To be (v. I.) at variance.

To egg on to quarrel. To set at loggerheads.

7. To be *all ear* (pred. adj.) Fully attentive. Cp. all attention.

✓ 8. These words are *not for ears polite*, i.e. vulgar.

✓ 9. To *make the ears tingle*. = To cause anger.

10. *Come in at one ear and go out at the other*: To be forgotten; leave no impression.

11. They *sent me away with a flea in my ear* (see Flea)

✓ 12. I have *a word for your ear*: i.e. something to say in private.

13. To *earmark* (v.t.) *Literally*. To mark the ear of sheep and cattle for the purpose of identification. (*Fig.*) To assign to a definite purpose.

Some of the contributions were *earmarked* for special and immediate purposes.—TIMES.

✓ 14. *Out of ear-shot* (adv or pred.-adj). Beyond the hearing distance.

‘What a lovely woman this is’ said Mrs. Bellamy with enthusiasm to Miss Lee, as soon as Philip was out of ear-shot.—HAGGARD.

**Earnest.** *In earnest* (*Pred. adj.*): in sober reality (as opposed to what is feigned.)

(*Adv.*)—seriously i. e. not jestingly. *Cp.* No laughing matter.

**Earth** 1. Earthworm : (Fig.) a low, base, or groveling person.

[Earth = this world as opposed to Heaven or Hell.]

2. *On earth* : [used after interrogative adverbs "why," "how" &c. to intensify their meaning = *Ever* (*adv.*)]

You ask yourself *how on earth* they came to hear of him (Prof. Walter Raleigh)—TIMES OF INDIA.

✓ 3. *Creatures of or on this earth* : (*adj.*) living.

To every man *upon this earth*

Death cometh soon or late.—MACAULAY.

**Ease** 1. To be *at ease in one's inn* (*pred. adj.*) i. e. quite comfortable; so, to take one's ease = make oneself comfortable.

Shall I not take mine ease in mine inn ?—SHAK

✓ 2. *Ill at ease* : (*Pred. adj.*) uncomfortable in mind. In disquietude.

3. *To ease one of* (his purse) To rob him of it. To snatch it from his grasp [used *facetiously*]

✓ **Easy** 1. *Of easy virtue* : (*adj.*): of loose character ; lewd.

So, *of easy conscience*.

2. *To take it easy* : (*v. I.*) To be quite unconcerned, also, Not to hurry—but to proceed comfortably.

[Easy = easily as in the phrase: *To come easy*.]

"To show an unfelt sorrow is an office  
which the false man does easy"—SHAK.

*This comes easy* to the hypocrite.

3. *Free-and-easy* : Neither strict nor stiff, unceremonious.

4. Easy circumstances : Affluence,

5. Easy come, easy go :—What comes easily also goes easily. What is gained without exertion or difficulty is soon spent recklessly.

Cp. Light come, light go.

"Least too light winning make the prize light"—SHAK.

[NB—A problem is said to be easy of solution, and a plan easy of execution, not for] ✓

✓ Eat 1. To eat off the same trencher i. e. to eat together as friends or boon-companions—[ off is prep ]

Hence the noun "trencher-man"

✓ 2. To eat away (V T) To destroy slowly and gradually—as worms do paper, books &c.

3 To eat up Consume completely.

If the wars eat us not up, they will.—SHAK.

Fig in the passive form as in the phrase—To be eaten up with pride = absorbed.

4. To eat one's words : To retract a former assertion in a most humiliating manner.

Cp. To eat humble pie i.e. to submit to anything humiliating or to make an apology of a degrading character,

Also Cp. To eat the leak.

5. To eat a person out of house and home : To eat to such an extent as to cause him to leave his house and ultimately become homeless.

["Eat" is intransitive in the general sense; Here it has acquired the force of a transitive verb being followed by the consequential adverbial phrase "out of house and home"; a *prolepsis*]

Hence, to ruin him by eating all he has.

"O you Gods ! what a number of men eat Titon  
And he sees them not.—SHAK.

✓ 6. To *eat one's heart out*. [Here also "eat" is transitive being followed by the consequential adverb "out"]

To brood over one's sorrows and disappointment ;

To suffer in silence without giving vent to the feelings.

✓ 7. My friend is now *eating his terms*, i.e. Studying for the bar.

8. To *eat the air* : To imbibe what is unreal or empty e.g. false hopes or false promises. Hence, to be tantalised or to be deluded with false hopes.

"I *eat the air* promise—crammed."—SHAK.

9. *Eating-house*. Luncheon-bar ; an ordinary ; a restaurant.

**Ebb.**—1. At a *low ebb* (Pred. adj.): decaying ; on the decline.

"There is a class of men in every community in whom both natural and Christian humanity is at the lowest ebb —SIR J. SHELLEY.

[Here "a" is changed into "the" on account of the adjective in the superlative degree.]

"The blow seems irreparable at a time when real learning is at so *low an ebb* in England."—TIMES.

"At the end of the disastrous American war the military power of this country was almost at its *lowest ebb*."—J. REDMOND.

1A. *On the ebb*: (adj.) e. g.

It is to their own sloth that men *on the ebb*, men whose fortunes are running out "owe their further fall."—DEIGHTON.

2. *Ebb and flow* : Flowing of the tides backwards and forwards.

(Fig.) Ebb and flow of fortune : its vicissitudes, prosperity and adversity.

NOTE the verbal combination in the following quotation.



"We'll wear out

In a walled prison, packs and sects of great ones,  
That *ebb and flow* by the moon."—SHAK.

i.e. are unstable like the tides that are governed by the moon.

**Ecce :** *Ecce Homo* (Lat). Behold the man [reference to the picture of Christ wearing a crown of thorns—JOHN XIX5.]

[This is the title of an excellent treatise written by Sir J. Seely.]

**Echo**—1. To cheer a person *to the echo* (adv.). Most heartily or enthusiastically.

2. To laud or applaud a person *to the echo* or *to the very echo*: (Adv.), so loudly that the words should actually give back an echo resounding the applause.

I would applaud thee to the very echo,  
That should applaud again.—SHAK.

**Eclat.** With *great eclat*: (adv.) with general applause; with conspicuous success. Also, *with eclat*.

Raja Nobo Krishna performed his mother's shrad *with great eclat*.  
[Beware of using *in* instead of *with*, also of inserting any article.]

But, '*with the usual eclat*' is the accepted idiom.

Cp. With pomp and circumstance.

**Eclipse.** Under an *eclipse* (pred. adj.) *Figuratively* used of a person who has lost his good name and reputation.

Cp. Under a cloud. Blown upon.

**Edge**—1. *Edge-tool*: (Lit.) any instrument having a cutting edge. (*Fig.*) something very dangerous to deal with.

Ill-jesting with edge-tools.—TENNISON.

So, to play with edge—tools. [Beware of writing *edged-w.*]

Cp. To play with fire.

✓2. *To edge one's way* (V. I.) *To move little by little.*

So, to edge in (V. I.) *To get in by degrees.*

3. *To take the edge off a person* : *To sober or tone him down.*

✓1. *To set the teeth on edge* : *To cause an unpleasant tingling or grating sensation in them.*

The fathers have eaten sour grapes, and the children's teeth are set on edge.—BIBLE.

(Fig) *To produce a feeling of dislike.*

Cp. *To make the ears tingle* ; *To make the blood boil.*

✓0. *To edge on a person* (to do a thing) : *To urge, To incite.* Cp. *To egg on.*

✓Effect.—1. *In effect* (adv.) *Really ; practically ; For practical purposes ; Virtually.*

When we say that a thing seldom happens we are *in effect* affirming that in most cases it does not happen.—WHITWORTH.

Cp. *To all intents and purposes.*

2. He said something to *that effect*, i.e., the purpose and general intent of which was the same.

3. *To take effect* (V. I.) *To produce the result that was intended or desired ; Become operative ; To operate.*

*To give effect to* (V. T.) = *To make operative, To put into practice.*

4. *To carry into effect* and *to bring into effect.* (V. T.) ,  
*To accomplish ; To bring to pass.*

✓Egg.—1. *To egg on* (a person) = *To urge or incite him.*


In respect to the Marwaris, the more you try to *egg them on* to do anything the more stubborn they become.—COMMERCE.

Lord Palmerstone had persuaded himself that the French Minister at Athens was plotting against English interest there, and was *egging on*

the Greek Government to disregard our claims.—RUSSELL.

**2** *To have all one's eggs in one basket; (Fig.)* To risk one's all on a single venture: To place all one's money in the stock or Shares of one Company.

**3.** *Teach your grandmother to suck eggs. (Facetious.)*  
Offer advice to persons more experienced than yourself.


 **Eke.**—**1.** *To eke out: (V. T.)* To add to; To enlarge; To supplement a deficiency by something or with some addition.

A nickname is an *eked-out* name.

*I eked out my income by odd jobs.*

The meaning of this eloquent harangue was *eked out* by divers nods and winks.

**2.** Also, to make the best use of; To contrive to make (as livelihood); or contrive to support (as existence.)

The obedience to routine led the authorities to *eke out* the hospital accommodation with rickety old barracks infested by vermin.—STATESMAN [N.B.—The phrase is used of something already in hand.] 

**Elbow 1.** *At one's elbow* (Pred. adj.) close at hand, near.

**2** *Out at elbow* (Pred. adj.) Putting on worn-out or shabby coat or garment. Hence, poor, indigent.

**Cp.** *Out at heels*=putting on untidy shoes.

also, In needy circumstances.

**3.** *Elbow—grease (collog):* Hard work with the hands and arms.

Energetic and continuous hard labour as rubbing, scouring &c. Hence, being diligent.

Success depends on elbow-grease.

**4.** *Elbow room:* Room to move or extend the elbows on each side. (Fig.) Plenty of room for action.

**Element** *In one's element:* (Fig.) in proper sphere where one's activity can work (pred. adj.)

As a speaker on public platform Sir Robert Peel was peculiarly in his element.—RUSSELL.

**Cp.** Quite at home ; also (remotely) in smooth water.

**Contra.** Out of one's element.

**Elephant.** *A white elephant*; (*Fig.*) A very burdensome possession on account of the great cost necessary to its maintenance, e. g. carriage and horse of a poor man. A gift that causes the recipient more trouble and cost than it is worth.

[From an old-time custom of the Kings of Siam who presented a white elephant to a courtier it was intended to ruin.]

A college maintained by Government with its extravagant expenditure in the name of efficiency and the reluctance of its authorities to add to their responsibilities by adding as many students as possible is often in the nature of a *white elephant* without an adequate return or an enormous outlay —ED. REVIEW.

**Cp.** Frankenstein's monster.

**Eleven.** *At the eleventh hour* (adv.) At a rather late stage. [Taken from the parable in Math xx]

Germans hope to snatch an *eleventh hour* (adj.) triumph by cutting Great Britain's sea-communications.—OBSERVER.

It is with joy, with thankfulness, and enthusiasm that I now, at this *eleventh hour*, a candidate without an address, make my appeal to the heart and the mind of South-Lancashire.—GLADSTONE.

Differentiate "In the nick of time."

**Ell.** [An ell =  $4\frac{1}{2}$  inches.]

Give him an inch (i. e., a little) and he will take an *ell* (too much)

**Cp.** To throw a sprat to catch a whale.

**Embargo.** (V. I.) To be under an *embargo* } Restraint  
(V. T.) To lay an *embargo* on } authoritatively imposed.

**Embryo.** *In embryo*; (while yet) in a rude or undeveloped condition ; (adj.) in embryonic or rudimentary state.

A little bench of heedless bishops here,  
And there a chancellor in *embryo*.—W. SHERSTONE.

**En.—1.** *En bloc* (i. e., In block) [adv]: wholesale ; In a lump.

2. *En masse*: In a body, e. g., The boys left the class *en masse*.

3. *En rapport* (with): In harmony. In sympathetic communication or correspondence.

The speech was *en rapport* with the spirit of the age.

4. *En route* (adv): On the way [Followed by the prepositions *to*, *from* *for*.]

**End.—1.** Stand *on end*: (adj.) upright.

Each particular hair will stand *on end*

Like quills upon the fretful porcupine.—SHAK.

2. For years *on end*: In succession: without intermission continuously ; together. (adv.)

The type of submarine employed is a big vessel requiring no base for supplies and operating for weeks *on end* in deep water.—D. T.

3. *In the end* (adv): finally ; after all.

Cp. In the long run.

4. He has *no end* of money, i. e. much or inexhaustible supply of it.

So, there is *no end* of visitors i. e., many, as if not to end [*Fig. Litotes*.]

[But, there is *no end* to this affair, quarrel etc. Also in the affirmative sentence: There is *an end* to your suit.]

Note the prepositions in the combinations:—

Put an end to an uproar: End it or stop it altogether. Make an end of his business. There is no end to this quarrel.

5. Neither *ending* nor *mending*, said of a prolonged trouble or sufferings, when no signs of their end or of a change for the better are visible.

6. *End and aim* : objective ; goal in view ; ideal.

O happiness ! Our being's *end and aim*,  
Good, pleasure, ease, content, whatever thy name.—POPE.

Cp. Delight in God's work and labour in His Service

Make the *perfect happiness of active life* on earth.

All other bliss is but a dream that close with death—PROTERO.

7. To make both ends meet. [see Both]

The peasants in India can hardly make both ends meet.—NATION.

[one end is necessary substance—the demand ; and the other its supply.]

Beware of substituting "two" for "both"

Cp. To live from hand to mouth. To keep the pot boiling.

8. *World without end* (adv.) For ever.

9. The *end-all* : (n.) What ends all ; conclusion [See Be-all.]

10. An *endless chain* : (Lit) one whose ends are joined together ; (Fig.) A begging letter for charitable purposes sent to one person, who forwards it to another and so on, until it gets back to the originator.

**Engrained.** An *engrained rogue* : An inveterate rascal : one steeped in villainy ; a thorough-paced scoundrel.

Cp. An arrant knave. "A villain all through and over.

So, *Enslaved* to a habit, passion, prejudice or superstition.

**Enough.**—1. *Enough and enough*. [The repetition indicates excess, i. e., excess of enough or more than enough.]

Cp. Enough and to spare (adj) ; Enough and too much.

2. *Enough is as good as a feast* [*Enough* (n.) = sufficiency *Feast* = more than sufficiency] whatever is equal to or satisfies the demands is as serviceable as its excess.

Cp. Blissful content.

3. *Oddly enough* (adv. Conj.) : certainly it is very odd that. *Oddly enough*, he fell among thieves.

[A paradigmatic phrase, like *curiously enough*].

**Entente.** *Entente cordiale.* Friendly understanding between nations as that existing between England, France and Italy.

**Enter.**—1. To enter (V. T.) an army, profession, or college : To join it, i. e. to become one of its members.

2. To enter (V. T.) a person's presence. To induct oneself before him.

It was with a feeling of very special interest that I entered the Cardinal's presence.—RUSSELL.

3. To enter (V. T.) the lists : To go into the arena of combat. (Fig.) To join in any combat or controversy. To compete(with).

Cp. To break the lance (with.)

4. To enter (V. I.) into a business : To engage or embark in it as a beginning.

5. To enter (V. I.) into the feelings of a person : To sympathize with him.

The player has entered so thoroughly into the pathos of the scene, that he has not turned pale, nor are tears ready to fall from his eyes.

6. To enter on or upon a work : To begin it ; To undertake it. So, to enter on or upon a subject : To treat or deal with it.

Also, to enter upon a career or profession.

Let us require what course Christ adopted when he entered upon his public career.—ECCE HOMO.

7. To enter upon a landed property : To assume formal and legal possession of it.

**Entre.** *Entre nous* [Fr. as between ourselves] Let what I am going to say be kept as secret or treated as confidential.

**Epoch.** An epoch-making event : one which begins an era in history, life, progressive science or art. Very memorable.

200 patents of that species of knighthood were disposed of for so many thousand pounds. This was truly *epoch-making*.

Maine's "Ancient Law" was, in the strict sense of the word, an *epoch-making* book and it appeared at the fortunate moment.—TIMES.

Count Zeppelin's invention must be regarded as an *epoch-making* event.

[NOTE the distinction between "Epoch" and "Era"; The former is a period of time of *such importance* that succeeding years are numbered from it; while the latter constitutes distinctive periods associated with some historical event or personage. An *epoch* is a point of time; An era is a succession of time.]

**Equal. 1.** *Equal to the occasion* (emergency &c): Able to act in the emergency; Having sufficient strength and ability to face it.

So, *equal to doing* a thing.

Thy purpose firm is *equal to* the deed.—YOUNG.

Frail human nature is hardly *equal to* such a load of goodness.

S. Bethel, *equal to the occasion*, read aloud the writ in very distinct tones.—RUSSELL.

His legal friend, driven from the mere outwork of facts, had taken refuge in the citadel of law; he was *equal to the occasion*.—SIR H. HAWKINS.

[BEWARE of using the verb "rise" before equal.]

**2.** To be on an *equality with* (a person), i. e. on equal terms with him in any matter.

**Equation.** *Personal equation*; The time taken by an observer in noticing phenomena. Hence, the influence on events from the particular nature of the individual person concerned.

**Errand.** To go or run on errands. To perform short journey, as an *errand-boy* does, to carry message &c.

Also to do *errands*. Note the plural.

Samuel Morley *did* personally, by enquiry, by visits, by gracious acts



of friendly attention, *the errands* of mercy which most men as busy and rich could have delegated to an almoner.—RUSSELL (on Plutocracy.)

So, do not *send him on any errand* to-day,

**Escutcheon.** *A blot on one's escutcheon* : a stain on his reputation.

**Espirit.** *The esprit de corps* : Regard for honour and interests of the body, i. e. the society, community, company or institution (body corporate) to which one belongs.

In the absence of a sound residential system, the Indian lads lack the *esprit de corps* and determination to maintain the honour of the institution to which they belong.

**Eve.** *On the eve of* an important event : (Time) just before.

The demonstration at the Belgachia Villa *on the eve of* Lord Ripon's departure from India was unique of its kind.

The country is *on the eve of* a revolution.

In the most literal sense of the words, we are *on the eve of* an epoch in history.

**Even.—1.** Now I am *even with* him. Have my revenge on him. Also, on even or equal terms with him, e. g. the debtor with his creditor when the debt is discharged.

**Cp.** To be quits with.

**2.** Even-handed (adj.) : Equally balanced ; Impartial.

This even-handed Justice

Commends the ingredients of our chalice

To our own lips.—SHAK. (Macbeth.)

**3.** Even-minded : (adj.) of uniform disposition—Equable.

**Cp.** Level minded.

**4.** A letter of *even date*, i. e. of the same date.

**Event.—1.** At all *events* : (adv. conj.) whatever the event may be ; whatever may happen ; In any case.

Whatever changes had lately been made had produced *at all events* some measure of free discussion, public opinion, popular representation, and a free press.—TIMES.

It is difficult to conceive of the House of Commons without Mr. Bright as one, *at all events*, of its potential members.—IBID.

**2.** In the *event* of (prep.) [A device for contracting an adverbial clause into a prepositional phrase]: If it should happen that.

In the *event* of his dying intestate, the entire property goes to his three daughters.

**Cp.** In case of (illness, death, resignation etc.)

**3.** Sir Robindra Nath's visit to Rangoon was *quite an event*, i. e. an important thing.

**Ever.** **1.** *Ever and anon*: (adv.) [does not express as great a frequency as the words suggest]; Time after time.

*Ever and anon* a pamphlet issued from the pen of Burke.—H. MORLEY.

**Cp.** Now and again: Every now and then.

Differentiate "Time and again."

**2.** *For ever and a day* (adv.). For all future time.

**3.** *For ever and ever*: The repetition only emphasizes "For ever."

**3A.** *For ever more*: (adv.) At all times; continually; eternally.

**4.** It is *ever so* much easier: (adv.) very; To an unlimited extent.

Though Serajudowla had tyrannized over his Indian subjects *ever so much*, Olive would not have joined in their conspiracy.—1. E.

**Every.** **1.** *Every now and then* (adv) From time to time.

So, *every now and again* [see *Ever supra*].

**2.** He is *every bit* (adv.) superior to you, i. e. in every respect. [This is used in affirmation; but in negation the phrase is "not a whit." e. g. He is not a whit inferior to you.]

**Evidence 1.** *In evidence* (Pred adj. = evident): Seen actually; conspicuous.

The condition of things in Prussia at this time was extremely critical. The reactionary party were strongly *in evidence* —TIMES

"As the door was open, I entered"—here "So" is not *in evidence* in the principal clause, (protasis,) because "as" in the introductory adverbial clause (apodosis) has the meaning of *cause*.

At one time the usual frontal attacks in a mass are carried on with reckless savagery in Alsace. At another time similar attacks of a furious character have been much *in evidence* in Flanders.—I. REVIEW.

**2.** To turn *King's evidence* (V. 1.): To prove facts against one's accomplices. To turn informer, To peach.

No conspiracy case can be established in court unless at least one conspirator become approver or turn *King's evidence*.

**Evil. 1.** The *evil* = the Devil.

**2.** An *evil tongue* = Slander.

**Cp.** To speak evil of a man = To slander him.

**3.** The *evil eye* = Malicious influence of one's look. *you shall not find me, daughter, evil-eyed unto you—Shak.*

**4.** One's *evil spirit* or *genius*: a person who powerfully influences one for ill, or works for one's damnation.

**5.** To fall upon *evil days*. To meet with misfortune and unjust criticism.

**EX. 1.** *Ex-Cathedra* [Lat.] = From the chair; with the authority of a professor or a learned man.—usually *adv.* as the letter was dictated *ex-cathedra*.

But, an *ex-cathedra* (adj.) statement is one made authoritatively, i. e. dogmatic. So, an *ex-cathedra* decision or order.

2. *Ex post facto* (Lat<sup>s</sup>=after the deed is done). (adv. or adj.) as a law enacted to punish a past deed or one to have a retrospective effect.

3. A case is heard in court *ex parte* (adv.) i. e., from one party only. So, an *ex parte* (adj.) statement is made by one party without any chance given to the opposite party to refute it.

4. *Ex-officio* : (adv.) [Lat] By virtue of office.

The Principal of a College is *ex officio* chairman of its Provident Fund Association.

**Example.—1.** To *make an example of* a person is to punish him so as to hold him up as an example not to be imitated but to be deterred from.

2 - To *take example by a person* : to copy him or follow his example. To follow in his wake.

**Exception.** 1. To *take exception to* (an act or proceeding)= To object to (it). To find fault *with* or challenge.

He (Pitt) told Shelburne that a phrase he had used in one of his speeches could not be *taken exception to*, as he had tried it on paper three times before employing it in public.—LORD ROSEBURY.

2. To *take exception at* (a remark or retort) = To be offended at. To feel resentment at.

**Expend.—1.** Money is *expended* on an object and in doing something.

2. *At one's expense* : (adv.) By bringing discredit on him.

Some of Lord Malmesbury's own political friends could not refrain from little pleasantries *at his expense*—TIMES.

Those who knew Lord Houghton best suspected that he himself originated the joke *at his own expense*—RUSSELL.

So, to laugh at one's expense or At one's own cost.

In Europe each student is supposed to be competent to follow a lecture

and make his own notes and to supplement them by his own reading. If he cannot do this he has to employ a private tutor at his own expense—

**Extent.**—To some extent = In some degree.

**Cp.** In a manner.

So, To a great extent.

His (Samuel Morley's) wealth was immense and to a great extent of his own making; yet his chief enjoyment was not in buying—still less in hoarding—but in giving.—RUSSELL (as Plutocracy).

**Extreme**—1. *In the extreme* (adv.) as much as possible,

The test (whether a man is or is not good) which is actually applied by society is known to be unsatisfactory in the extreme—ECCE HOMO.

Virtuous and vicious every man must be,

Few in the extreme, but all in the degree.—POPE.

The characters are life-like in the extreme—TIMES.

[The noun *extreme* does not always mean the absolute extremity. So both the forms *an extreme* and *extreme* are idiomatic—The Press law was strained to an extreme in the case of New India.]

**2.** *To go to extremes*: Go too far; use extreme measures. To hold the strongest possible views as ultra-radicals do.

**Cp** Carry (principles &c.) to the uttermost.

**3.** The last extremity: The utmost depth of misfortune. The utmost straits or difficulties. Also, death.

**4.** *In extremes*: (pre adj.): At the point of death; In a hopeless condition.

**Exult**—To exult over a person or in his misfortune. = To rejoice exceedingly at.

**Cp.** Triumph over. To crow over.

**Eye**—1. *With an eye to* (Prep.): with a view to; the attention being directed to.

Before envelopes were invented letters were always written with an eye to the position of the wafer or seal.

If children are to be taught and trained *with an eye to* the realities of life and existence, the accessible world is the laboratory to be used for that purpose.—REVIEW OF REVIEWS.

“Young barristers might visit the place *with an eye to* business.—SIR H. HAWKINS.

Men *with a sharp eye to* their own pecuniary advantage.

2. To have an *eye to* something :—To have it as one's object.

Dr. C. always *has a good eye to* the main chance i. e. to whatever conduces to his own interests e. g. money.

So, *To give an eye to* = (V. T.) attend to.

3. To *keep an eye upon* (V. T.) (a suspected person): To watch closely or carefully.

4. To see (a matter) *with half an eye*, i. e. at a glance or with great ease.—The meaning lying on the surface.

Cp He that runs may read ; It needs no ghost to tell us.

So, *if you had half an eye*, (not wholly blind or dull) you could detect the trick.

5. To *see eye to eye with another* : To agree entirely with him. To have the same view of a matter as another has.

The Aga Khan does not *see eye to eye with* the Congress men in regard to the defence of the country. — I. J. E.

The popular representatives and the Government of India have been unable to *see eye to eye* on many questions of policy and administration.—

[W. B.—The idiom can only be used of two persons or parties who take the same point of view of any matter ; or negatively, who do not take the same view.]

6. To make one *open his eyes*: To enable him to see and understand what was not *suspected* before : To make him stare with astonishment.

Hence ; *eye-opener* = any enlightening or surprising circumstance.

7. *Up to the eyes.* (Pred. adj.) = as busy as possible. Deeply engaged (in some matter or business) (adv.) completely; fully—e. g. The estate is mortgaged *up to the eyes*, i. e. beyond any hope of redemption.

Cp. Over head and ears (in debt).

8. To *throw dust in one's eyes* = To mislead or deceive him. [Beware of using *into*]

8A. To *cut one's eye-teeth* = To gain worldly wisdom.

Cp. Wisdom—tooth (which is a molar and does not come out until a person is adult.)

9. The temple was beyond his *eye-shot*, i. e. seeing distance  
[*Ear-shot* is similarly used as = Hearing distance.]

10. He is an *eye-sore to me* : one whose very sight annoys or disgusts me.

DIFFERENTIATE:—This is a sight *for sore eyes*, i. e. welcome.

11. "An eye for an eye": Like "a tooth for a tooth" is the Law of Retaliation—*Lex talionis*.

The Spanish and Portuguese nations were indebted to his (Earl of Clarendon's) unceasing exertions to enforce the impolicy of carrying out the *lex talionis*.—TIMES.

Revenge is the badge of barbarism ; civil society imposes conditions upon it, demands that *not more than an eye shall be exacted for an eye*, not more than *a tooth for a tooth*, then takes revenge out of the hand of the injured party and gives it to authorized public avengers called kings or Judges—ECCĒ HOMO.

12. *Green eye*—Jealousy.

O, beware, my lord, of jealousy

It is the *green-eyed* monster which doth mock

The meat it feeds on,—SHAK (Othello).

13. The *mind's eye* : Intellect, Perception; Imagination.

14. In the *wind's eye* : (adv.) Right *against* the wind.

## F

**Fabian:** *Fabian policy* (or *tactics*): Cautious delay.

[Like the generalship of Fabius Maximus (Roman History B. C. 200) who, by avoiding a direct engagement with the Carthagian commander Hannibal for whom he was no match, wore out his troops.]

**Face.** 1. (To meet) *face to face*: (adv.) In front of each other [Generally used of two persons facing each other, and *Fig. of things.*]

Before God's tribunal there is no evading of justice; there the deed is seen in its real enormity, and we cannot escape being brought *face to face* with our own sins to give evidence against them.

In these years we are being brought *face to face* with the sternest realities of life and history.—SIR J. MESTON.

Cp. *Tete a tete* (Fr. = Head to head).

2. *In the face of*: (Prep.) Despite; in opposition to; In direct antagonism with.

Most men, *in the face of* such a calamity (loss of eyes) would have been overwhelmed by their feelings and plunged into irremediable despair.—T.

So, To *fly in the face of* (God, conscience, fact); To *act in direct opposition to*; To disobey or disregard *openly*; To resist.

2A. I will never look you *in the face* again: (adv.) as steadily confronted. [Here "look" (V. I) has acquired the force of V. T. being followed by adverbial adjunct.] Look at you with a steady front.

3. *On the face of it*: (adv.) Apparently; Judging by appearance; With reference to what is apparent and manifest.

The story is absurd *on the face of it*.

Cp. Our colonies were then a speck *on the face of* the globe.—J. WILKINS (Face = surface).

3A. He made this remark *to my face*, i. e. fearlessly in my hearing.



So, to threaten one *to the* (i. e. *his*) *face*—i. e. in a bold manner and confronting him [“The” has pronominal force.]

4. To *pull or make a long face* : (V. I.) To look melancholy. But, *to make a face or faces* = To make a grimace.

5. To *set one's face against* a thing = To oppose it with firm determination.

6. To *put a good face on a matter* : To make it look well. To make the best of a thing as it stands.

Cp. Be of good cheer, i. e. don't be down-cast.

Also. To save appearances.

So, *to put a bold face on a charge* : To meet or brave it with effrontery.

7. To *face about* (V. I.) To turn round.

8. To *save one's face* : To forbear from shaming oneself openly.

9. To *face the music* : To meet a difficulty boldly; not to quail at a critical moment.

**Facile.** *Facile princeps* : (Lat. adj.) : Easily first, i. e. indisputably the first.

**Fact.**—A matter of *fact* : (adj.) as actually existing ; not depending upon inference or conjecture.

[The whole phrase is often used adjectively as = prosaic or unimaginative (to qualify persons)]

**Fag.**—*The fag-end* [corrupted from *flag-end*] : *Lit* the end of a web of cloth which flags or hangs loose. Hence, the latter or *meaner* part of anything : inferior or useless remnant ; Rump.

The opening scene in Shakespeare's *Macbeth* is the *fag-end* of a witches' sabbath.

So, the *fag-end* of a magazine article ; the *fag-end* of a college session ; the *fag-end* of one's life &c.

I could be well content to entertain *the lag-end* of my life with quiet hours.—SHAK (H. IV).

**Fail**—1. I will attend the meeting *without fail* (adv.) i.e. certainly = as a matter of certainty = For certain; without minding hindrances.

2. The boy *failed* (V. I.) *to pass* the examination; or *failed in* the examination: was unsuccessful.

[N. B.—‘Failed in passing’ is not idiomatic. ‘A failed candidate’ ‘a failed B. A.’ are grammatically wrong.]

3. A *thing fails* of its intended effect: does not produce the desired result.

So, They *failed* of their object. [Statesman]. Cp. To fall flat.

**Fair**—1. *A fair and square* (conduct etc.): free from suspicion or trickishness. Above board.

2. He is *in a fair way* to succeed: Has every chance of success.

I was soon *in a fair way* to achieve the greatest goal of human endeavour—a comfortable independence—SIR H. HAWKINS.

3. He *bids fair* (V. I.) to succeed: Is likely.

4. To *speak a person fair*: To speak fairly *about* him.

[N. B.—In this sort of combination “speak” (V. I.) is forced to be transitive with adverbial adjunct.]

*Speak me fair* in death.—SHAK. (M. V.)

5. To come or arrive *a day after the fair*: (adv.) too late, i. e. when all festivities enjoyed in a fair are over.

6. I want a *fair field and no favour*: competition on equal terms and without partiality to any party.

Cp. Fair play (= Just treatment of competitors).

7. A *‘fair spoken’* person: (adj.) Using fair speech; courteous.

[An idiomatic use for “fair-speaking”; the grammatical rule is to use present participle instead of the past in this sense]

Cp. Plain-spoken (= using plain speech)

8. *Fairy tale*: A romance; a story with scenes and incidents remote from every day life.

Cp. Picturesque falsehood.

9. *A fair-weather sailor*: not good when the sea is boisterous.

President Wilson never was intended by nature or by profession and culture to be aught but a *fair-weather sailor*. For storms and cyclones the states require a President of the strength and nerve of Roosevelt.—Indian Review.

So, a *fair-weather friend* is one not good in need. This is contrasted with "A friend in need is a friend indeed."

Cp. Summer friend. Feast won, fast lost (SHAK).

10. *Fair and softly goes far in a day*: [The words *Fair* and *softly* are used as nouns = fairness, i. e., civility (complaisance, affability) and softliness, i. e. gentle moderation]. These two good qualities enable a man to advance considerably on the path of success.

[For the use of *fair* as noun Cp. Shak. (Macbeth) "Fair is foul and foul is fair"]

**Faith**.—1. In *faith* = truly.

"But what, in *faith*, makes you from Witenburgh."—SHAK (Hamlet).

2. Good *faith* = honesty of Intention. Freedom from deception.

2a. In good *faith* (adv.): honestly. In real honesty; with perfect sincerity. *Bona fide*. (n. and adv.)

3. *Bad faith* = Intention to deceive. *Mala fide* (n. and adv.)

So, in *bad faith* (adv.): dishonestly; fraudulently.

4. To pin one's *faith* upon (a person) or to (a thing). [See Pin]

5. To break *faith* with one: To violate the promise made to him. To violate plighted troth.

**Fake.** To *fake up* (an American slang much used in advertisements) = To make presentable; To contrive out of poor materials. To fudge.

[The noun *fake* is used to denote a dodge or a cooked report; a sham.]

**Fall.—1.** To *fall away*: (V. I.) To lose flesh.

Confined to bed my friend has much *fallen away*,

(*Fig*) To desert allegiance, faith or duty.

2. This man has *fallen away from* me: no longer adheres to me.

3. To *fall behind* = not to keep up. To recede; To give way.

4. The speech *fell flat* on the audience: failed to produce the intended effect.

5. A ship *falls foul* of another (V. T) i. e., collides with it [used figuratively of men as = To attack or quarrel with.]

6. A debt *falls in* (V. I.) = becomes due.

A lease *falls in* = runs out: its term has expired. An annuity *falls in* = terminates or lapses (when the annuitant dies.)

7. To *fall in with* a person = To happen to meet him (as if *accidentally*.)

At Marsellies Garibaldi *fell in with* Mazzini —TIMES.

But, To *fall in with* his views = To agree or comply with them.

It is now just 50 years ago, within a week or two that I happened to be taking a holiday abroad, as a young man from college, and to *fall in with* an American family, a gentleman a little older than myself and his lady companion—DEAN MERIVALE.

Also, to find.

8. To *fall off*. (V. I.) To be detached from something.

(*Fig*.) To decline or deteriorate from former *excellence*.

Love cools, friendship *falls off*, brothers divide.—SHAK. (K. LEAR.)

So, the noun *falling off*. "O Hamlet! what a *falling-off* was there."—SHAK.

Also, to be reduced in value; as Govt. securities *fall off* in consequence of the war.

9. To *fall out* (with a person) = To quarrel with him.

Undoubtedly friends *fell out* and were reconciled in antiquity as amongst ourselves—ECCLE HOMO.

'Tis certain creatures, once *fallen out* with fortune,  
Must *fall out* with men too.—SHAK. (T. & C)

Also, to happen; to turn out; to prove.

\* \* \* it so *falls out*,  
That what we have we prize not to the worth,  
Whiles we enjoy it; but being lacked and lost,  
Why, then we rack (reckon) the value.—SHAK (M. A. N.)

9a. To *fall over*: (V. I.) To fall like a thing too heavy at the top.

Also, (V. T. with prep) as the dew lap of oxen *falls over* their throat.

10. A scheme or plan *falls through* (V. I.) = proves abortive; comes to nothing; miscarries; fails utterly; slumps (slang)

Cp. To fall to the ground.

11. To *fall to* (V. I.) = To commence eating or fighting with vigour.

Before me smoked a most appetizing *risotto*, I made room for Vecchi on my right and bade him *fall to*.—GL GARIBALDI.

N. B.—To here is an adverb, not a preposition; So it is not followed by an object.]

12. To *fall short* (V. I.) [See Short].

13. To *fall upon one's feet or legs*. To get well out of a difficulty; To be lucky enough.

[A cat when thrown from a height *falls on its feet* and thus escapes hurt]

**Cp.** To bear a charmed life. To have the devil's luck.

**Fame.**—1. *Unknown to fame* (adj.) obscure.

A youth *to fortune and fame unknown*.—GRAY.

**N. B.**—Differentiate “damned to fame.”—POPE

2. *Temple of fame*. In this phrase “Fame” is personified as a Deity.

Ah ! who can tell now hard it is to climb

The steep where *Fame's proud temple* shines afar.—BEATTIE.

**Contra** : House of *ill fame*, i. e. Bawdy-house.

**Family.**—1. *A person of family* : one of noble lineage.

2. (Live with us) *In a family way*; (adv) : without ceremony, familiarly.

3. (She is) *in the family way* : (adj) pregnant; with child or big with child. Gravid.

4. *Family jars* : clash of interest or opinion : discord among members of the same family.

5. *Familiarity breeds contempt* : If you be uncereemonious to those who are not your equal, they are sure to hold you in scorn.

So, upon familiarity will grow more contempt—SHAK. (M. W. W.)

**Fan.**—1. To *fan the embers* of something : (Fig) To stir it up to activity (as a dying controversy).

**Cp.** To rake up the past.

The nation is not ashamed to *fan the flame* of the quarrel.—DEIGHTON.

**Fancy.**—1. To *take a fancy to* or *for* : To have a liking for ; To like.

*Taking a fancy to* Kent's appearance and manner, Lear engaged him as one of his retinue.—DEIGHTON (Shak).

[Fancy = individual inclination].

2. To catch the fancy of = To please.

3. The patrons of the fancy: Those who encourage boxing, prize fighting, pugilism and similar sports.

**Far**—1. *By far* (adv.) very much; In a great degree; Out and away.

If a divine revelation be the first of blessings, then the imposture that counterfeits it must be *by far* the greatest of all evils—ECCLE HOMO.

**Note**—The phrase is followed by an adjective of the superlative degree. It may be followed by the comparative degree as well.

Personal accounts occupy *by far* the greater parts of the Ledger.—A, FIELDHOUSE.

**Cp.** A world too wide (adv). Out of sight.

2. *Far between*: (Pred. adj.) Infrequent. [The interval being long]. At long intervals.

What though my winged hours of bliss have been,  
Like angel—visits, *few and far between*—CAMPBELL.

Occasions for their coming into direct collision are neither few nor *far between*.—DICKENS.

3. He is *far and away* the best boy of his class: (adv.) Incomparably. Pre-eminently. **Cp.** Out of sight.

[Beware of using "by" before the combination in imitation of "by far."

**Note** the combinations "*far better*" and "*far the best*" ]

4. *A far cry* (n): a long distance.

From Archbishop Howley to Archbishop Temple is a *far cry*—RUSSELL.  
It was a *far cry* from Scotland to the heat and dust of Cawnpore.—

5. The matter is *far gone*: has advanced much in the course of its progress.

6. *So far* (adv.): up to the present time.

The Limitation Act has been *so far* amended twelve times,—J. E.

[Differentiate this from "*till now*" which suggests a change of condition].

7. *As far as* }  
*So far as* } (adv.) To the extent that  
*In so far as* }

8. *Far<sup>be</sup> it from me* (to take part in this ugly transaction )  
 :may this *never* be the case with me.

9. The reason is *not far to seek*: one has not to go far to get it ; it is most easily *get-at-able*. [See Seek ]

10. *Far-famed*: known *far and wide* (widely:)

11. *Far-fetched* (comparison, illustration, explanation etc.) [adj.] *Lit.* brought from a *remote* place ; *Fig.* Strained with great effort.

12. *Far-reaching* (effects, results etc.) [adj.]: continued over a great *distance* or a long period.

13. *Far-sighted* (person): seeing the distant results of any course of action. *Prescient*; *Sagacious*.

**Farthest.** *At farthest* or *at the farthest*: At latest.

The University Examinations will take place in the first week of April at farthest, i. e. will not go beyond that.

**Fast**—1. To *play fast and loose* [*Fast* i. e., firmly at one time, and *loose* at another] To act with *reckless inconstancy*, or *inconsistency*, so as to be *unreliable*. To say one thing and do another. To stickle.

*Play fast and lose with faith ?*

*So jest with heaven*—SHAK. (K. JOHN).

*Cp.* To blow hot and cold ; To keep off and on.

2. *Fast bind, fast find* } Lock up  
 A proverb never stale in thrifty mind—SHAK (M. V.) } what you  
 would not  
 lose.

**Contra** *Feast-won, fast lost* ; one cloud of winter showers,  
 These flies are couched.—SHAK.—

3. *Fast by?* (Prep. or adv.) *close beside*.

All sunk beneath the wave,

*Fast by* their native shore !—COWPER.



4. *Fast handed* (person): stingy; *Hard fist*ed; niggardly.

**Fat**—1. *To live on the fat of the land*: To have the best of everything.

**Cp** To live in clover To live like fighting cocks

**Contra** To live on husks

2 *The fat is in the fire* There is a great bustle and confusion There will soon be an explosion

**Cp** The devil to pay. Breakers ahead

3. *A fat job*: one that yields abundant return.

4. *A fat head* = a stupid person, a block head, a dolt, a thick-skull

**Fate**.—1. *To seal one's fate* To decide finally and irrevocably his ultimate condition

2 *The Book of Fate*: one in which the destinies of all men are supposed to be written.

Heaven from all creatures hides the book of fate,

All but the page prescribed their present state — POPE

O God! that one might read the book of Fate — SHAK.

**Cp** *Fatalism* The thesis that individual character and volition have no influence on the course of human destiny the greatest man is only a creature of circumstance, as much as the most insignificant.—We all act our parts in obedience to forces which have been acting from all eternity, and the sense of personal freedom is only an invincible illusion. **TOUSTOU** (*War and Peace*)

**Contra** Free Will.

**Father**—1 *To father a thing* (e. g. book, criticism etc) upon a person: To think that it originated with him. To fix the paternity of it upon him.

**Cp** To palm off, To foist off.

2 *Thy wish, Harry, is father to thy thought*: Thou thinkest so or believest this because thou wishest it true.

3. *The child is father of the man.* (Wordsworth) [Fig. Metonymy the concrete for the abstract] : Childhood begets manhood, i. e. lays down the lines of his development; indicates what sort of man he will become.

(p. Just as the twig is bent, the tree is inclined — POPE.

**Fault.**—1 He is generous to a *fault*: (adverbial adjunct): as going beyond the limits of praiseworthy moderation; hence, excessively; [*To* = resulting in].

2 *At fault*: (Pred. adj.) Puzzled; Perplexed; not knowing how to proceed in an action (like a dog when it has missed scent of the game).

Also, (like the following) worthy of some blame.

3. *In fault*: (Pred. adj.) To blame; deserving of censure.

Yet he was kind, or if severe in aught,  
The love he bore to learning was *in fault* — GOLDSMITH.

4. *To find fault with* (V. T) To blame, To censure; To be displeased with; To take exception to; To challenge (a thing as conduct, remark etc.)

Hence, a *fault finder*. (one who cavils)

Cp. To pick holes in.

**Feather**—1. *To feather one's nest*: To accumulate wealth for oneself especially while serving others. To enrich oneself.

You had a most excellent situation and a kind master to whom you owed a debt of the deepest gratitude and your allegiance as a faithful servant; instead of which you paid him by *feathering your nest* with his silver spoons.—SIR H. HAWKINS (Reminiscences).

2. *A feather in one's cap*: [See Cap].

3. She appeared at the ball *in full-feather*: elaborately dressed.

Cp. In full fig.

4. She left the room *in high feather* : (adv.) exultingly.

5. *To fly the white feather* : To betray signs of cowardice.

If we did not dissolve, we should be *showing the white feather*.—

[See the quotation under "In season."]

6. *Birds of a feather* : People of one sort.

7. *A feather in the scale* : any thing too light:

A feather would have turned the scale, and a feather did turn it—DICKENS.

Cf. Dust in the balance.

**Feel**.—1. *To feel the pulse of* (V. T.) *Fig.* To cautiously ascertain the sentiments of individuals or communities).

2 *To feel one's way* : To grope it out.

**Fellow**.—1 *Fellow-feeling* : Sympathy (i. e. a like feeling)

A *fellow-feeling* makes one wonderful kind—GARRICK.

2. *The right hand of fellowship* ; (a Biblical expression) mutual association on equal and friendly terms.

[The right hand is the sign of such association.]

**Fence**.—1 *To be or sit on the fence* : To be undecided, or not to commit oneself in respect of two opposite parties, policies, opinions. *To take no sides* ; *To straddle*.

2 *To fence with a question* (or questioner) *To parry arguments*. *To equivocate* ; *To prevaricate* ; *To quibble*. *To give an evasive answer*.

**Ferret**. *To ferret out* (V. T.) : *To search out with perseverance and cunning*.

The Social Journalists of the time set privacy at defiance, and paraded under a thin disguise of asterisks and initials, every secret scandal and domestic tribulation which they could *ferret out*.—RUSSELL.

**Festina**. *Festina lente*. (Lat.) *Hasten slowly*—Be not overhasty.

Note the conjunction of the two contradictory terms—*haste* and *slow*.

**Fetch.** *To fetch and carry* (V. I.) : To run backwards and forwards with things. Hence, to do *menial* services. To become a servile drudge.

He *fetches and carries*, and runs messages and does odd jobs—RUSSELL.

**C.** To serve a person hand and foot.

I knew nothing—not so much as the little boy who *runs and fetches* in the stable.—SIR H. HAWKINS.

**Few.**—1. *A few* (n. and adj.) [This is opposed to *none*] = some. Mostly used in *affirmative* sentences. *A few* of my friends lent their support to this cause.

☞ The distinction between this combination and the single word “few” (without the indef. article *a*) is rather perplexing to Indian students. “Few” is opposed to “many” i. e. = not many, and is to be considered as a *negative* word, making the sentence in which it occurs *negative* from a logical point of view. Hence “Few” = only a “few” or hardly any [“Emphatic” form].

“Few” of my friends lent their support to this cause = many did not, *only* a very small number did. This implies the *opposite of an expectation*, as *few* educated Hindus have the boldness to openly countenance widow—marriage. So, the visitors were *few* i. e. not many = much less than the *expected* number.

*Few, few* shall part where many meet—CAMPBELL.

*Few and short* were the prayers we said.—WOLFE.

2. *Not a few* = many (adj.)

3. *Few and far between* (adj.) [See Far].

**Note**—Beware of using the word *few* as attributive adjective to the noun “number”. It is allowable to write “Honest citizens are *few* in number,” but not “the number of such citizens is *few*.”

**Fiddle.**—1. To *play first fiddle* : To take the lead (in any thing).

[Note the omission of the def. article before the superlative *first*]

2. So, to *play second fiddle* = To act in a subordinate capacity,

3. *Fiddle de dce* (Int) = Nonsense !

Also, Fiddlesticks !!

**Field.** [Fig. — Concrete for the abstract 'competition in.'

1. *To hold the field* = To maintain the ground against competition or opposition. So, *To keep the field*.

1A. *To take the field* : To enter into competition. To commence any active military or political operation.

2. *Fair field and no favour* = Justice against partiality.

**Fig.** 1. I do not care *a fig* (*adv.*) for his remarks : At all.

2. He appeared in the assembly *in full fig*, i. e. in full dress ; So, the pp. adj. *Figged out* = dressed up.

3. *Under one's vine and fig tree* (Pred. adj.) Safe at home.

**Fight.** 1 I always *fought shy of him* (V. T.) : Avoided (out of suspicion, fear and the like) ; kept aloof from.

2. *To show fight* = Not to yield *tamely*.

3. *I shall fight it out* : Settle the dispute by fighting.

[It is indefinite for disputed matter.]

4. *To fight to the finish* = To finish with.

The foregoing reference to abject surrender applies only to the infantry's refusal to fight to the finish with the bayonet.—PIONEER.

It is not vengeance that inspires the British determination *to fight to the finish*.—LLOYD GEORGE.

When he has *finished with his poetry*, he is too tired to write a good letter.—TIMES.

**Figure.** 1. *To make a figure* (V. I.). To have a prominent appearance.

The old Jail of Edinburgh *makes a figure* in one of Scott's novels.

2. *To cut a figure* : To make *oneself* celebrated or notorious. To appear to advantage or disadvantage.

[In both these combinations the "figure" often takes a specific adjective, e. g. brilliant, sorry, poor etc.]

**3** A *Figure-head* (Fig.) A person who allows his name to give standing to an enterprise, but undertakes no responsibility. A nominal leader without real authority. A dummy, a non-entity. Cp. A lay-figure.

**Fill.** **1.** To *fill in* (an unfinished document e. g. a cheque); V. T. To add what is wanted to complete (it)

We cannot *fill in* the gulfs which divide races, creeds, or even classes from each other.—MR. I. CURTIS

**2.** To *fill out* (a letter &c): V. T. To enlarge to the proper limit.

The Secretary *filled out* the chairman's memo of the resolution.

Also, (V. I.) To become so enlarged.

He is a mere lad whose figure has not yet *filled out*.

**3.** To *fill up* (as a hole): (V. T.) To fill completely.

**Filthy.** *Filthy lucre*: (Lit.) Dishonourable gain—(Facetiously used in the Bible [1 Timothy] as equivalent to money.

It is very rarely that a policeman of Japan succumbs to the influence of *filthy lucre*. Cp. Golden calf. Mammon.

**Find.**—**1** To *find oneself* (V. I.): To provide for one's needs.

In that critical stage of my boyhood I *found myself* out of the pittance of a private tutor's fee.

**2.** To *find out*: To discover (something) which has been intentionally concealed or kept hidden.

To *find out a problem* is to discover the solution of it.

To *find out a person* is to discover his true character or to detect some fault in him.

**Note.**—A mistake is not "found out" but simply "found".

- Fine.**—1. *One fine morning* } (adv.): sometime or  
 2. *Some fine morning* } other; sooner or later.

At last *one fine morning* two glass coaches drove up to Miss Willises' door.—DICKENS.

So, *one of these fine days*. (adv.) [used in prophetic utterances].

3. He *has a fine (or good) time of it*: He is now in prosperous circumstances. {"It" is indefinite}.

4. *In fine* (adj.): Finally; In conclusion; In short; To sum up.

Cp. Is this (the skull of a lawyer) the *fine of his fines* (i. e. the end of all his legal practice)?—SHAK (Hamlet).

**Finger.**—1. To *have a finger in the pie*: To take part in any matter; to be concerned or to participate in an affair, [generally used of a *meddle-some* person]

The Treasury *has its finger* in every departmental *pie* except the Indian one, for no minister and no department can carry out reforms without public money, and of public money the Treasury is the vigilant and inflexible guardian.—RUSSELL (on Officialdom).

We are always willing to allow other people to manage their own affairs so long as we ourselves *have no finger in the pie*; but when we have, we prefer to manage those people's affairs ourselves.—MR. POLAK.

So, No man's *pie* is freed.

From his ambitious *finger*.—SHAK (Hen viii).

2. To *burn one's fingers*. [See Burn].

3. To *have* (some knowledge or practice) *at one's fingers' end* or *tips*: (V. T.) To know quite familiarly. To be thoroughly versed in.

Lord Shaftesbury *had the Latin poets at his fingers' ends*.—RUSSELL.

Sir William Hartcourt *had Shakespeare and Pope at his fingers' ends*.

Cp. Down to December 1815, English politicians who were favourable to Home-Rule might be counted on the *fingers of one's hand*. (i. e. were very few),

4. To *arrive at one's fingers' ends*: (V. I.) To be in sore straits. To be greatly impoverished.

5. *The finger of God* = [Finger = Direction] : Heaven's direction of a course of action believed in by the pious. Divine agency.

When Bernard heard the story of the two brethren who were sent to him, he exclaimed, "*It is the finger of God.* Would that I could behold this exalted spectacle"—PROTHERO.

To heirs unknown descends th' unguarded store,  
Or, wanders, *heaven-directed* to the poor.--POPE.

6. To *lift a finger*: To put oneself in motion (for defending a person). Cp. To strike a blow.

So, to *stir a finger* = To make the least effort.

7. To *look through one's fingers at*: Pretend not to see.

8. His *fingers are all thumbs*: He has clumsy fingers: He is clumsy.

9. To *turn (or twist) a person round one's little finger*: To cajol him. To completely control his opinions or actions.

Cp. To lead by the nose. Under the thumb of.

10. An opportunity *slips through one's fingers*. is not grasped or seized.

He (Napoleon III) felt his power to be *slipping through his fingers*.  
—TIMES.

[Beware of substituting "hands" for "fingers" and note the plural].

**Fire.**—1. To *fire up* (V. I.) To become highly excited or angry; To take fire.

Cp. To fly into a passion.

2. To *go through fire and water*: To confront or encounter all sorts of danger and peril.

Cp. To go all lengths.

Also, To ride the whirlwind and direct the storm.



3. A cannon-ball *hangs fire*: fails to explode. (*Fig.*) makes no progress (as a question or scheme).

So, To miss fire = Fail to go off.

4. At last the dacoits *set fire* to the house: kindled it.

So, *set* (the house) *on fire*: The Germans set the city on fire.

To *set the Thames* (or any chief river of a country) *on fire*: To do some remarkable or unexpected thing [See *Set* (4)].

5. He is a *fire-brand*, i. e. mischief-maker by *inflaming* factions.

6. A *fire-eater*. (*Fig.*) a very quarrelsome person.

A cantankerous member of a meeting.

7. To *heap coals of fire on the head of person*. (See *Coals*)

8. To *pour oil on fire*: (*Fig.*) To add to excitement while deprecating it. Cp. To add *fuel* to the fire.

Every rumour of the dark plots of Mr. Asquith and Balfour *added fresh fuel to the fire* of their virtuous indignation. —STATESMAN.

9. No *smoke without fire*: A rumour is not without some foundation.

**First.**—1. *First and foremost*: most prominent in position or importance. Before any one or anything else.

So, The first pot-hook in the crane.

2. (To obtain information etc.) *at first hand*: (adv.) direct from the original source or without the intervention of an agent; Directly. [See *Hand*].

3. *At first* (adv.) In the beginning.

4. *First aid* (n.) assistance given *at once* to the wounded in street or other accidents, and in cases of sudden illness *before a doctor arrives*.

5. *At first sight or view*: (adv.) *Prima facie*.

So, *At first blush*; or on the first blush of the matter.—DICKENS.

**6.** A hero of the first order.—Most valiant and doughty.

So, A star of the first magnitude, (i. e. size); (*Pig*) A problem of the first magnitude, i. e. of the greatest importance.

**Firm.** He is *firm of purpose*: (adj.) very resolute.

**Fish.**—1. *Neither fish nor fowl*: (*Pred.*) Neither one thing nor another.

*Cp.* *Sui generis*.

Similarly, "Neither fish, flesh, nor red herring"—DRYDEN

Difficult to place in any category. A non-descript.

**2:** He is *like a fish out of water*: The position in which he is situated is most uncongenial and distasteful to him.

*Cp.* *Out of one's element*.—(adj.)

**3.** Here was a *pretty kettle of fish*: Confusion and muddle.

**4.** All is *fish that comes to his net*: He is not very scrupulous in taking whatever he can lay hold of.

*Cp.* All is grist that comes to his mill.

**5.** To *make fish of one and flesh of another*. To judge or treat by a differential standard or with bias.

**Contra.** What is sauce for the goose is sauce for the gander.

**6.** To *fish for compliments*: To seek to obtain praise indirectly.

**7.** I have *other fish to fry*: other business more important to attend to.

**8.** To *fish out* (V. T.): To draw out as from water. •

Hamlet thought Polonius had been sent to *fish out* his secret; so he calls him 'a fish-monger'—COLERIDGE.

**9.** There is *as good fish in the sea as ever came out of it*.

Ample provision against scarcity.

**10.** To *fish in troubled waters*: To contrive to get some gain or advantage out of a disturbed situation.

The interview of the German Emperors at Salzburg stimulated the audacity of those reckless men who *fish* for profit and popularity in *troubled waters*.—TIMES.

**Fist.** 1. *He writes a good fist*: His handwriting is good.

He is a good calligraphist. **Contra**: Cacographist.

2. *Fist law*: Might is right.

**Fit.** 1. *To fit out* (a ship or expedition): To equip; To supply with necessaries.

2. *To fit up* (a house, room, or the like): To furnish with things suitable. (V. T.)

3. *To fit in with*: To correspond exactly with: [*Fit* is V.I.]

We will contrive that our leisure shall *fit in with* yours.

4.—*To fit on* (a garment): To try it on.

5. *To give one a fit*: To surprise him or outrage him.

But, *to give one fits*: To defeat him easily.

6. (He reads, works &c.) *By fits and starts*: (adv.) Spasmodically. Irregularly. Desultorily. Immethodically

A woman's fitness comes *by fits*.—SHAK. 'Cp. By snatches.

7. "When *the fit* was on him.": when he was subject to this passing humour or caprice.

8. *This is in the fitness of things*: This is exactly what is right and appropriate.

**Fix.** To be *in a fix* [This is a popular expression for being in a dilemma—i. e. any position which presents a choice of evils]; unable to do any thing; cornered. Non-plussed.

**Flag.** 1. *The white-flag*: Indication of *truce*.

[Differentiate white feather.—[see feather].

2. *The red flag*: Indication of *danger*: Warning that danger is ahead.

3. The *black flag*; the *pirate's* ensign.

4. The *yellow flag*: Indication that the ship is in *quarantine*.

**Flame.** 1. To *fan the flame*: To make it more intense.

2. To *add fuel to the flame*: To irritate by aggravations.

He is gone and who knows how he may report

Thy words by *adding fuel to the flame*.—MILTON. (*Samson*).

3. An *old flame* of one: a jocular phrase for one's former sweetheart.

**Flare.** To *flare up*: (V. I.) To burst into a passion. To become *suddenly* angry or excited.

So, To *flare out*.

Cp. To foam with rage.

**Flash.**—A *flash in the pan*: an abortive short attempt. Any sudden outburst which accomplishes nothing. An ambitious project which ends in failure.

Cp. To end in smoke. The mountain brought forth a mouse

**Flat.**—To *fall flat*: [V. I.] (*Fig.*) Not to succeed; fail to be interesting. [See Fall].

**Flea.**—1. A *flea-bite*. (*Fig.*) a trifling inconvenience or pain; a mere trifle. A pin-prick.

2. (To send one away with) a *flea in his ear* an annoying hint or reply. A biting remark. A sharp reproof or repulse. Home-truth; Home-thrust.

**Flesh.**—1. *In flesh* (Pred. adj.): fat.

1a. *In the flesh*: (Pred. adj.): Alive; in life.

How many fine gentlemen and ladies who never saw *Pickwick* or Sam Weller *in the flesh* have laughed at their portraits by Charles Dickens —TIMES

This proclamation of the world beyond must not be made to those still *in the flesh*.—DREIGHTON.

2. He is *losing flesh* every day, i. e. growing thin.

3' *Flesh and blood*. *Lit.*, the whole body. *Fig.* [Concrete for the abstract]. Human nature with its emotions and infirmities. Also, Family relationship.

4. *One's own flesh and blood*: his near relatives, or his descendants.

5 *The flesh*: (concrete for the abstract) sensual pleasure.

There were times, for he (Antony) was still young, when his enthusiasm failed, his courage flagged, and the temptations of the world and *the flesh* swept over him with all their storms —PROTHERO.

So, Sins of the flesh: sensual appetites; unchastity.

5a. *Ills to which flesh is heir*. evils from which no human being can escape. The sure destiny of man.

\* \* and by a sleep to say we end  
The heart-ache and the thousand natural-shocks,  
That *flesh is heir to*; 'Tis a consummation  
Devoutly to be wished.

6. *Flesh-pots or the flesh-pots of Egypt*.

[The allusion is to the Bible *Ec xvi 3*—the children of Israel grow<sup>1</sup> ing weary of the plain food].

(*Fig.*) Luxurious food: High living Plenty of provision.

In religion she (Mrs Annie Besant) was wandering in the wilderness, conscious that for her there could be no return to the *flesh-pots of Egypt*.

W STEAD.

They (the Benedictines) chafed at their sojourning "in the tents of Kglur," sickened of the *flesh-pots of Egypt*.—PROTHERO.

Thackeray's admirable description of Mr. Newcome's villa is drawn from the life; In Egypt itself there were not more savoury *flesh-pots* than those at Clapham."—RUSSELL.

As among the stiff-necked people of Israel, so among the Englishmen of India, there is still a large class which hankers after the *flesh-pots of Egypt* and the worship of golden calves.—SIR P. MONTA.

Op. The loaves and fishes.

7. To *make one's flesh creep*: To cause fright or horror.

The description of Count Ugolino's sufferings *makes our flesh creep*.

**Cp.** To make one's blood creep—[See Blood]

**Flight**—1. A *flight of stairs*: a series of them.

2. The culprit *took to flight*: (V. I.) ran away. Fled. Decamped.

So, he *betook himself to flight*. To '*take flight*' is also common

Elmund craftily induced Elgar to *take to flight*—DIGHTON.

3 To *put* (the enemy) *to flight*: (V. T) cause him to flee; To rout him

**Fling**—1. To *fling* (away) from a person or place:  
V. I To leave suddenly in token of displeasure or anger.

2 To *fling over* (a person): (V. T) To withhold assistance from.

**Cp.** To throw overboard.

3 To *have a fling at* (V. T): To jeer at.

Kent shrewdly gauges the characters of Lear, Cordelia and the two hags and is sturdy enough to *have his fling at* the rashness of Lear—SHAK (Character Sketches).

4 To *Take one's fling*. To enjoy pleasure to the fullest extent of one's opportunities,

So, to *have one's fling*. [Fling = Full indulgence in any impulse]

Democracy has now *had its full fling* for more than thirty years—

**Flint**.—1. To *set one's face like a flint* (against): To take a firm and determined attitude.

Against this time-serving spirit Cardinal Manning *set his face like a flint*—ROBART.

**Cp.** To put one's foot down.

2 To *wring water from a flint*: To work miracles.

3. To *skin a flint*: To be very miserly or avaricious.

Hence the noun, a *skin-flint* = a niggard; a hard fisted person.

**Flotsam.**—*Flotsam and jetsam.* (a jocular expression) = Odds and ends. [Flotsam = wreckage found floating. Jetsam = goods thrown overboard to save a vessel.]

For these last two stories I by no means vouch.—They belong to the *flotsam and jetsam* of ephemeral gossip. —RUSSELL

**Flux.**—*Flux and reflux* (of the tide): Ebb and flow.

**Fly**—1 *A fly in the ointment*: (a Biblical phrase); (*Fig*) whatever spoils the excellence of anything.

**Cp.** A crumpled rose-leaf.

2 *A fly in amber*: a curious relic.

3 *A fly on the wheel*: Boaster of one's influential or important position

I was early taught that though I might be a *fly on the wheel* of official hierarchy, I was in the eyes of the people a representative of the government and entitled as such to rights and privileges on no account to be foregone.—SIR H. COTTON.

4. *To fly at* (a thing). To rush on; To fall on *suddenly*.

5. He *flies at a higher game*: cherishes loftier or nobler ambitious So, *To fly high* = B: ambitious.

6. *To fly out against.* (V. T.) To burst with impulsive roughness or harshness against (persons).

7. *To fly in the face of* (a superior person, a rule, command, etc) To disobey *openly*: To defy. [See FACE.]

To think God's love is dependent on the amount of our love for Him, is to *fly in the face of* every word He has said about it.—BALF.

**Cp.** To tempt (or provoke) Providence

8. *To let fly a missile*: To discharge it.

9. A *flying rumour*: (n) on dit (Fr.)

Cp As they say. Idea afloat; news stirring. It is bruited.

10. (To come off) *with flying colours* (adv): Triumphantly; exultingly.

Cp To acquit oneself with credit.

**Fogey.** An *old fogey*: an old man behind the times or with antiquated notions.

Cp —A back number; a fossil, i. e. incapable of further development

**Foist.** 1 To *foist* in (V. T.). To insert (any thing) surreptitiously.

2 He *foisted off* that writing upon you = fathered it upon you. [see father]

Cp To palm off

**Fold.** 1 To *fold a person* in one's arm To embrace him.

2. To *fold one's arms*: To remain idle.

So, To *fold one's hands* To sit with folded arms.

**Folk.** *Folk lore*: Rural legends regarding beliefs, traditions, customs, and superstitions of the people

**Follow.** 1. To *follow up* (V. T.) an advantage (as success): To pursue it closely or steadily. To add to it by further action. To add another blow.

The British troops *followed up* their success at Cawnpore by a vigorous march on Lucknow.

It seems the United States are powerless to *follow up* their demand for the many outrages on the sea by any strong and courageous action as might have been expected.—I. REVIEW

Cp. • To keep on. i. e. to continue and pursue.

[Note. Unless in this sense it would be unidiomatic to use the adverb "up" after "follow"—"To follow up an example" is wrong]



2. To *follow suit*: (V. I.) [a phrase borrowed from card playing] (*Lit*) To play a card of the same suit as the first played,

(*Fig.*) To follow an example, or the line of conduct adopted by a predecessor. °

Behar has done her duty and other provinces ought to *follow suit*.

The army has already done something, and the fleet should *follow suit*.

3. To *follow out* (any measure etc.) = To pursue to the end.

The Christian scientists endeavour to *follow out* the idea that prayer and faith are the true and only necessary healing powers —

4. To *follow the lead* of a person: To be guided by him; To follow his example.

5. To *follow in one's footsteps*: To do as he has done.

**Fool.**—1. To *fool away* (V. T.) money or time: To expend foolishly.

[Similarly, the verb "To fool" which is intransitive acquires the force of a transitive verb being followed by an adverbial adjunct, (e g) He *fooled me out of* Rs 100/ cheated me to that extent. He *fooled me into* subscribing my name to the project: I did it foolishly by yielding to his cajolery—So, To *fool one to the top of one's bent*:]

2. To *be a fool for one's pains*: only to show one's folly by having taken trouble for nothing or to no purpose.

3. He *made a fool of me*: Made me appear as if I had been a fool; caused me to appear in a ridiculous light; (Played tricks on me). So, I *made a fool of myself* = behaved foolishly.

**Op** To make a dupe of one. [See note under *Make*.]

4. A *fool's bolt* is soon shot: (Taken from Shakespeare) His stock of argument is soon exhausted.

He soon speaks and is soon silenced.

## Fool

5. (On) *A fool's errand*: a vain search.

6. *A fool's paradise*: A foolish insecure state of happiness. Illusory happiness.

**Cp.** Castle in the air.

**Foot.**—1 *To foot it* [*It is indefinite*]=To walk on foot; To journey; also to dance.

1a. So, *To come or go on foot* i. e. by walking.

2. *To set* (an agitation, inquiry, or movement) *on foot* To start; To originate. To put in motion.

So a movement is said to *be on foot* if it has been started already.

**Cp.** To set a-going.

His Tory opponents *set on foot* a rumour that he was an Atheist.

3 *To put the (or one's) best foot foremost.* (*Lit*) To walk as fast as one can. (*Fig.*) To adopt all the means at command. Also, to make the best display possible.

Canning College *put her best foot foremost* on the evening of the celebration of her jubilee.—I. D. T.

4. *To tread or trample one under foot*: To oppress him.

5 *To carry one off his feet* To cause great excitement in him. To over-enthuse him.

6. *To have one foot in the grave*: To be near death. To have only a short time to live.

7. *To put one's foot down*: To take up a firm position especially in the matter of refusal.

8. *At one's feet* (adv.) In obedience; In a suppliant attitude; as his disciple or subject.

In fact the cause (of progress) which in 1871 seemed to *have the whole world at its feet* is in 1901 defeated discredited and despised.—RUSSELL.

Irving's splendid figure and sonorous voice heightened the magnetism that he exercised. Fashion *fell at his feet*.—PROTERO.

I had the honour to *sit at Prof. Tawney's feet* for four years in the Presidency College [See Sit].

The Apostle Paul was brought up *at the feet of Gamaliel*.

So, To *have the ball* (i. e. success) *at one's feet* (i. e. as subject) = To see one's way to success; In a fair way to command success.

9. (To walk, move, advance) *At a foot's pace*: (adv.) Slowly; With mincing steps.

Cp At a snail's pace. At funeral pace.

10. To *measure another's feet by one's own last*: To judge others by oneself as standard

11. He *put his foot on my neck*: crushed me.

Cp To trample one under foot [Note the singular number.]

12. To *fall on one's feet* [See Fall] To get well out of a difficulty.

13 *A foot-pad*: an unmounted high-way man.

**Footing**—1. To *pay one's footing*: To pay a customary fee on entering a club, society, or a new profession or trade.

Cp Drink-money.

2. *On a footing of equality*: In the same condition (relatively to one another)

Cp On an equal footing [Take care not to omit "an"]

**For**—1 *For all that*: (Conj.) Nevertheless, yet, still. *In spite of that*.

These signs and wonders were never foundations. The truth of the Christian religion cannot be dependent upon them. But they may be facts of nature *for all that*.—OW, LODGE.

The rank is but the guinea's stamp,

The man's the gowd (i. e. gold) *for a' that*.—BURNS.

N. B.—Instead of the pronoun "that" a clause may be used as) *For all you say I cannot change my opinion*.

Cp. All the same.

**2.** The arguments *for and against*, i. e. The *pros and cons* of a question.

**Force**—**1.** To *force one's hand*: To compel him to, an act *against his liking*.

**Cp.** To force (a statement or doctrine) down one's throat.

**2.** The law will *come into force* (V. I.): become operative or be brought into operation; take effect.

**Fore**—**1** (I'o be) *to the fore* (Pred. adj.): conspicuously present. Alive; not lost or worn out.

This will not be as long as I am *to the fore*.

**Cp.** In the foreground.

**2** To *come to the fore*: To be taking the leading part.

**Cp.** To come to the front.

**3.** *Fore and aft*. (n. The full length from stem to stern (in a ship). Also, (adv): all over a ship.

**Foregone.** A *foregone conclusion*: A decision or inference arrived at *beforehand* without examining evidence.

But this denoted a foregone conclusion.—SHAK (Othello.)

He waited the result with intense anxiety, although the vote was a *foregone conclusion*.—TIMES (on Napoleon III).

**Forelock**—To *take, time or occasion by the forelock*: To seize an opportunity *promptly*. Not to let a favourable chance slip. To let no opportunity escape.

[Time is represented as an old man with a single lock of hair on the forehead.]

**Cp.** To strike the iron while it is hot.

**Forestall.**—To *forestall the market*: To buy up goods before being displayed at a stall in the market with the intention of selling it again at a higher price.

**Forewarn.** '*Forewarned is forearmed*': A timely warning serves as a signal for taking adequate measures for averting an evil.

**Cp.** The wit in the repartee:—A witty Bostonian going to dine with a lady was met by her with a face of apology. "I could not get another man" she said, "and we are four women and you will have to take us all in to dinner" *Forewarned is four-armed*" said he with a bow.—R.

**Forget—1.** *To forget oneself*: To behave in a manner unworthy of oneself. *To lose control of one's temper.*

Ug me no more, I shall forget myself,—SHAK T. C.

**2** *Forget and forgive*: cease to think of the past, and, if any remembrance of it comes, condone it.

*Forget and forgive*; I am old and foolish—SHAK, (K, Lear).

**(p.** Kiss and be friends.

**Forlorn.** The *forlorn hope*: A detachment of men appointed to lead in an assault or perform other service *attended with uncommon peril.* (*Fig*) A last but almost hopeless attempt.

The War correspondent now marches with the van, goes out with the *forlorn hope*, sits down in the thick of the fight with his note book, and takes ten men's share of the bullets.—BESANT.

Mr. Bright only appeared as a candidate well knowing that he was fighting on a *forlorn hope*.—TIMES.

**Fortune—1.** *Try one's fortune*: Take some risky step

**2.** *To make one's fortune*: Prosper. To have one's luck in bonanza.

**3.** *To make a fortune*: To become rich.

**4.** *To marry a fortune*, i. e. a rich heiress

**5.** A *fortune teller*: one who predicts persons' coming lot, what their future lives will be.

**6.** *Dame Fortune*: Fortune personified as a worshipful Lady.

7. *Made tame to fortune's blows.* (adj.) whom fortune has humbled to endure anything.

**Cp** Fortune's buffets,

**Fossil.**—Words are *fossil thoughts*: Remains of expressed thinkings of most ancient period.

**Foul**—1 *Foul play*: Treachery.

2. Through *foul and fair* i. e. everything good, bad, or indifferent.

3 To *run foul* of (V. T.) To rush upon or attack.

To *run against*; To *collide with*. To *stumble over* or upon.

Also, *to fall foul of* = To assault; To quarrel with.

**Found.**—*All found*: [an adverbial contracted phrase often occurring in advertisements] With all necessities provided.

Wanted a **Man and Wife**. Man useful indoors and out \* \* Wife plain cook (good) to undertake kitchen offices, dining-room, and hall (wash cloths), Joint wages £50 *all found*,

I had given him a situation under Government,—*livery and all found*,

**Fountain.**—*The pitcher is broken at the fountain*: Euphemism for death taking place.

**Fours.**—1. To go or run *on all fours*: To crawl or run on the *hands and knees*. To *scramble*.

2. (*Fig.*) The quotation is not quite *on all fours*, but it is near enough, i. e. exactly, analogous or coincident; Even, as a parallel case.

**Free.**—1. *Free of* (Pred. adj.): Delivered from the liability *usually* pertaining to the subject.

The work will be despatched *free of postage*

Interest will be paid *free of income tax*. The charges are *free of carriage*.

Ordinary articles of food used at meals should be *free of all excise and custom duties*.

So, he is *free of his money* = open handed ; Free-handed = liberal.

2 *Free from* : Released from *some external grip*.

He is free from fever. The company is not yet *free from* losses.

Under the Free-trade system trade is *free from* restrictive duties.

3. *Free and easy* : Unceremonious. Regardless of forms and conventionalities.

4. I gave him a *free hand*: allowed him to act as he liked.

5. A *free thinker* is one who rejects authority in religious belief. An unbeliever.

An infant *freethinker*, a baby philosopher, a scholar in petty-coats — a man, when he grew up, who knew almost every thing except *himself* —  
MRS. OLIPHANT ON J. S. MILL.

6. A *free lance*! one unattached to any party.

7. A *free mason* : A member of an organization (called Free and Accepted masons) for mutual assistance, good fellowship, and social enjoyment, having elaborate ritual and system of *secret signs*.

Hence, Free masonry (*Fig*) = Instinctive but concealed sympathy.

There is a *free-masonry* of hatred in India which may at any time have dangerous consequences.---Times.

8. *Free Will* : [See Will]

9. I did it of my own *free will* : (adv.) Quite voluntarily, i. e. without constraint of any kind.

10 To be or make (*V. I*) *free with* : To intermeddle with. To use liberties with.

Cp. To help oneself to.

To *Take freedoms* i. e. undue familiarity.

But, "He has the *freedom* of my Library" means that he has the unrestricted use of it.

All who advertised their faith in the gospel of Imperialism were offered the *freedom* of every provincial government house.

**French.**—*French leave*: No leave.

*To take French leave*: To go away *secretly* and without notice; (generally,) To do any thing without permission as entering a place, garden, institution &c.

**Fret** 1. *To fret and fume*: To be hot with rage.

*Frets*, call you these? quoth she: I will *fume* with them.—SHAK.

2. *To strut and fret*. To walk with pompous fussiness of an actor.

Life is but a walking shadow, a poor player,

That *struts and frets* his hour upon the stage.—MACBETH

**Friday.** *Man Friday*: [This name was given by Robinson Crusoe to his servant,] hence, any submissive or servile attendant. Factotum.

Cp. Man of all work.

**Friend** 1. *To be friends* with a person: To be in good or friendly terms with him. So, *To keep friends* with him.

2. *To make friends*: To become friendly (usually after a separation or rupture.)

"The poor advanced makes friends of enemies" (SHAK.)

(Not with.) i. e. finds his former enemies quickly *turn into* friends. [See Make].

**Note.**—In both the combinations "s" is not the plural suffix but is an adverbial suffix: Friends=in friendship; friendly, Just as *needs*=necessarily. Cp. Hail-fellow-well-met (adj) with.

He is hail-fellow-well met with every body, *makes friends* with all and sundry. [See the quotation under Rise. (7)].

3. *A Friendly society*, also called Benefit society is an association for mutual relief during sickness, old age, widowhood &c.

**Fro.** *To and fro* (adv) backwards and forwards.

**Front** 1. He had *the front* (i. e. effrontery) to say so in my presence: Audacious impudence; Brazenness.



**2.** *To come to the front*: Become prominent or conspicuous.

**Cp.** To the fore. *To the front* is used as pred. adj.

Mr. Banerjee was again *to the front* and did valuable service.—LEADER.

**3.** So, *To go to the front* = join troops in campaign.

{The front = The scene of war}.

[Note. In senses other than the military the preposition *on* is used instead of *to*.]

**4.** He stood *in front of me* = Before me; confronting me.

Note the omission of "the" before *front*.

**5.** The *head and front* (of a charge): The chief part or principal item.

The very *head and front* of my offending

Hath this extent; no more—SHAK (Othello).

**Cp.** The gravamen of a charge,

**Fry.** **1.** *Small fry* = (Fig) Insignificant people, children etc. The rabble; The riff-raff.

**Cp.** The tag-rag and bob-tail.

**2.** *Out of the frying pan into the fire.* (adv.) or (Pred. adj.) From one evil to another which is *worse*.

From bad to worse.

**Cp.** From Smoke into smother. Also, Go farther and fare worse.

**Full.** **1**—(To pay) *In full* (adv): Fully; without deduction or abridgment.

**2.** *To the full*: (adv.) To the utmost extent.

'I am fed to the full.'

In the earlier part of the century 'The Satirist' and 'John Bull' were to the *full* as impertinent and as personal as the 'sassy cuttings' of to-day.—RUSSELL.

So Full—blown; Full grown.

3. *Full to the brim*: Full to overflowing.

4. *In full fig*: [See Fig]. In full dress.

Cp. In Review order.

5. *Full-dress*: one which etiquette requires to be worn on occasions of ceremony and the like. So, a full dress rehearsal. A *full dress debate*: one arranged for beforehand in which important speeches are delivered.

*In full flourish*: enjoying the height of prosperity and vigour. In bonanza.

6. *Full of years and honours*. (Pred. adj.) Old and having honours *in full* (from the Bible); Also, (adv) as after *die*. Cp. Having one's fill of.

[Note the prepositions in ——"The vessel is *full of* water" and "the vessel is *filled with* water."]

7. He is of *full age*: Has attained majority (21 years from a legal point of view).

8. *In the fullness of time* (adv.) In the proper and destined time.

The greatest career of our modern days has come to an end *in the fullness of time*.—TIMES

A self government, though remote at present, is none the less sure to come to pass *in the fullness of time*.—STAR.

9. *Full cry*: (*Lit*) The hounds collectively that have caught the scent (of the game in hunting) and sing in chorus. Hard chase.

(*Fig*) any hot pursuit (collectively made).

10. (The market, festivity, merriment or the like is) *in full swing*: (Pred. adj.) at its greatest activity. *Having free course*. Working freely.

**FUN**. 1.—To make fun of a person: To deride him.  
It was easy enough to make fun of the methodee, but they deliberated

England from the tyrannous bondage of conventional ugliness.—RUSSELL.

**Op.** To make game of.

**2** To *poke fun* at a person: To *assail* him with ridicule.  
To chaff him.

Sydney Smith never tired of *poking fun* at the sanctified village of "Clapham" and its serious inhabitants, at missionary effort and revivalist enthusiasm.—RUSSELL.

**Further. 1.**—The force of (any thing) *could no further go*. Had exhausted itself.

Three Poets, in three distant ages born  
Greece, Italy, and England did adorn;  
The first (Homer) in loftiness of thought surpassed,  
The next (Virgil) in majesty, in both the last (Milton.)  
The *force of nature could no further go*;  
To make a third, she joined the former two.—DRYDEN.

So Surely the force of incongruity *could no further go*.—RUSSELL.

Towards the end of the century the last word had been said on this subject (art of painting). Representational art *could go no further*.

**2** Go *further, and fare worse*. (adv.) From bad to worse:

**Future. 1.**—In future: (adv.) In time to come.

This kind of breach of discipline will not occur *in future*.

**2.** In the near future.

A resolution is sure to take place *in the near future*.

[Note the definite article when *future* is defined by an adjective].

## G

**Gain.—1.** To *gain upon* (a competitor): V. T. To overtake *by degrees*.

**2.** To *gain over* (a person): V. T. To coax or wheedle.  
[over connotes change from one side to the opposite].

3. To *gain time*: (V. I.) To obtain delay by pretexts.

4. To *gain the ear* of a person: To be heard favourably by.

5. To *gain ground* (V. I.) To advance; To progress.

[Followed by the adverbial adjunct "upon" a person or a thing" = To get closer in pursuit.]

**Gall.**—1. Let the galled jade wince, our withers are unwrung: [See Withers].

2. *This is gall and wormwood* to me: (Fig.) This stings me bitterly. It exceedingly annoys me.

**Gallery.**—1. To *play to the gallery*. To act or conduct oneself with a view to win applause of the lower order of people. Hence, to work for popularity.

When Mr. Goschen is not *playing to the gallery* he can discuss his political opponents and their sayings and doings as dispassionately as a microscopist examines a black-beetle —RUSSELL.

Cp. To use clap-trap or platforma (i. e. platform oratory)

**Game.**—1. You are *game for this thing*: (Pred. adj.) You have spirit to do it.

2. You are *game to the last* (Pred. adj.): indefatigable.

So, *game to the back bone* = firm ∴ indomitable.

3. To *die game*. To maintain a bold spirit to the end.  
[*game* is used adverbially = like a game cock]

4. *The game is up*: All is lost; success is impossible.

Cp. The bubble has burst.

5. *The game is worth the candle*: The results or the objects aimed at justify cost and trouble.

Cp. Worth powder and shot.

6. You *have the game in your hands*: you are sure to win. [Beware of substituting *on* for *in*].

7. To *make game of a person*: To make fun of him. To

jeer at him. To ridicule him. [no article before *game*]. To humbug him.

8. To *play the game of a person*: To espouse his cause or quarrel: To advance his schemes *unintentionally*.

But, to *play the game* (absolutely) = To observe the rules; To behave honourably. [See *Play*].

To *play a game*: To be engaged in a scheme or pursuit which is followed up like a game.

9. Two can *play at that game*. Another person can equally take this course of action; can retaliate.

I do not use harsh words, which are easily employed and as easily retorted. It is a *game that two can play at* —GLADSTONE.

Cp. To pay a man in his own coin.

**Gander.** *What is sauce for the goose is sauce for the gander.* Like things require like treatment.

[This expression is used whenever an argument used by one is turned against him]. If you put a pressure on one class to make it train itself properly, you must put pressure on other to the same end.—ARNOLD.

**Gasp.** *The last gasp*: The death struggle.

So, a thing is said to be *at its last gasp*. [Beware of using *in* for *at*].

**Gather.**—1. *Gathered to one's fathers*: (Pred. adj) dead and gone.

When a noble lord, whose unconscionable longevity had sorely taxed the patience of his family, was at length *gathered to his fathers*, his eldest son's wife was cheered by the thought that at last she would be able to have a groom of the chambers as well as a butler.—RUSSELL (on Hedonism).

When he is *gathered to his fathers*, no eye will dim with a tear, no heart will mourn for its last friend. —A. TROLLOPE.

2. To *gather oneself together*: To collect *all one's power* for a strong effort.

Cp. To pull oneself together.

[Note the use of "together" in connection with the same singular "oneself"]

3. The harvest is gathered in (adv.): collected and stored.

4. A rolling stone gathers no moss: [A proverb].

(Fig) A person who always changes his calling makes no money.

4a. A sore gathers head: swells. (Fig) To acquire strength. [Differentiate, Come to a head].

5. Gathering clouds: Signs of the times; Warning; omen. Clouds in the horizon;

Cp. Coming events cast their shadows before.

Gauntlet—1. To throw down the gauntlet: To issue a challenge; To defy.

Germany threw down the gauntlet to all European powers.

Cp. To fling down the glove.

2 To pick or take up the gauntlet: To accept the challenge, which has been already issued.

Mr. Morley never obtrudes his own opinions, never introduces debatable matter, never dogmatizes. But he is always ready to pick up the gauntlet, especially if a Tory flings it down.

[In both phrases gauntlet (Fr.) = a glove].

3. To run the gauntlet. (Lit.) To undergo a particular kind of military, naval, or school punishment which consisted in making the offender run through a lane formed of two rows of men armed with knotted cords with which they struck him as he ran. [Gauntlet (Scand) = Lane running].

(Fig) To go through much and severe criticism or ill treatment from different quarters.

The Huguenot leaders, with their families and followers, left Noyers to run the gauntlet of their enemies.—RUSSELL.

**Gaze.** To *stand in a gaze*: To stand gazing; To look steadily and wonderingly.

The President's calm assumption is that India has been *standing at a gaze* during the last decade. — *TIMES OF INDIA*.

**Cp** To gape with wonder.

**Geese.** *All his geese are swans*: (*Fig.*) He sets too high an estimate on his own possessions.

All the bureaucratic geese are swans.

**Cp.** He thinks his penny silver.

**Gentle.**—1. *Gentle and simple*: High-born and low-born; Gentry and common people.

The miller's daughter could not believe that high gentry behaved badly to their wives, but her mother instructed her "O child, men are men: *gentle or simple*: they are much of a muchness. — *GEORGE ELIOT*.

**Cp** The inward delicacy and gentle feeling which we acknowledge as the only true criterion of the class (Lady or gentleman) may be found under the smockfrock of a ploughboy as well as beneath the mantle of an earl. — *TIMES*

2. *Gentle-folk*: people of good position and family.

**Cp.** "Genteel Society" (=the upper classes).

Also, "The shabby genteel"; genteel misery (Poverty due to pretending to live in a better or more expensive style than one is able.)

3. *Gentlemen at large*: Persons having no occupation.

**Get**—1. To *get along*: (V. I.) To advance, To progress.

2 *Get along with you!* (Exclamation): Be off; nonsense.

3. To *get at* (V.T.): To find. I could not *get at* a surgeon. To reach.

He was not tall enough to *get at* that book on the top-most shelf.

Also, To have access to (a man of rank)

**Cp.** Get-at-able (Pred. adj.) = accessible; come-at-able;

Also, To try to impose upon; To bribe; as the jury have been *got at*.

4. To *get on* (V. I.) [*on* denotes forward *adv*]: Advance towards success in life.

Also, To mount (a horse). Contra: To get off.

5. To *get on* with a person: To find it agreeable to bear him company.

6. To *get under* (as fire): V. T. To subdue.

7. To *get quit of*: To be freed from (as debt)

So, To *get rid of*: To disengage oneself from (as encumbrance).

The English nation had been convinced that slavery was a curse that must be *got rid of* at any cost —RUSSELL.

8. To *get round* (a person): To cajole: To circumvent, To talk (him) over.

9. To *get over a person*: To manage to be in his good graces

10. To *get over* a difficulty or some obstacle = To surmount it.

11. To *get over an illness*: To recover from it. [Also used figuratively].

12. To *get over a task* = To finish it.

Cp. To *get done with*. So, To *get through* a book or a meal

13. To *get in* debts = To collect them.

Cp. To gather in.

13a. To *get into* debts: To incur them. .

I never *got into debt* and never wanted; but I had to be frugal and avoid every unnecessary expense. — SIR H. HAWKINS

14. To *get off* (V. I.) To escape.

15. To *get up a subject*: To study and learn it.

Also, to organize (as a party); To prepare (as a memorial).



**16.** The laundress washes and "*gets up*" linen: makes it fit for new wear.

**17.** To get the *better* (n. ascendancy) of: (V. T.) (See Better.)

**18.** To get (a subject) *by heart*: To commit (it) to memory; To con (it).

**Cp** To learn by rote.

**Ghost.—1.** To give up the ghost. (V. I.) To die.

A canopy most fatal, under which

Our army lies, ready to give up the ghost.—SHAK J. C.

**2** It needs no ghost to tell us: is so manifest and clear.

There needs no ghost, my love, come from the grave,

To tell us this—SHAK (Hamlet).

**Cp** To see with half an eye.

**3.** He has not a ghost of a chance: There is not the least likelihood of his success: none at all.

[Beware of using "the" for "a".]

**Gift.—1.** I would not have this at a gift, i. e., even gratis.

**2.** To look a gift horse in the (gab or) mouth: To pick flaws in a gift; To find fault with the donor of a gift.

**Gild.—1.** To gild the pill [The druggists often coat bitter pills with gold-leaf to make them attractive.] (Fig) To soften down an unpleasant necessity. To tone down what is unpleasant. So, To sugar the pill.

**\* 2.** To take the gilt off the gingerbread: To strip a thing of what makes it superficially showy and attractive; To disillusion.

"Eurasians" replaced by "Anglo Indians".—"Now" cried some of them, "we have come into our birth-right"—The gilt, however, is wearing off the gingerbread.—STATSMAN.

3. *Gilded youth*: Young men of fashion having plenty of money to spend foolishly; Panjandrums; wealthy young spend-thrifts. "Swells."

Cp Jeunesse doree; young men about town.

4. *Gilt-edged securities*: stocks and shares of public companies or corporations in which to invest money is very safe.

The advantage of the New Loan are better than any thing yet offered to the investing public in the form of *gilt-edged security*.—COMMERCE.

**Gird**.—1. To *gird at*: To jeer; To gibe at; To sneer at.

2. To *gird up the* (or one's) *loins*. So prepare for vigorous action.

**Give**.—1. To *give away* a property, i. e. To transfer it.

2. To *give away* a bride (at marriage): To act the part of her father.

3. To *give oneself away* = (colloquial) To let slip some thought which was intended to keep secret. To do an act or utter words showing intention not meant to be divulged.

Cp To betray oneself.

3a. To *give oneself up* (to a thought etc) = To devote oneself.

4. To *give oneself out for* (a doctor): To let others know him to be (a doctor)—which is not true.

["For" may be changed into "as"]. Cp. To pose as.

5. To *give forth or out* (a rumour): To spread; To publish. [Usually in the passive form with "it" as nominative.]

"Tis *given out* that sleeping in my orchard

My custom in the afternoon,

A serpent stung me—SHAK (Hamlet).i. e. currently reported.

Joseph Smith *gave it forth* that he had discovered the book of Mormon (containing supposed Divine revelations)—CRO

**Cp** *On dit.*

**6** To *give out* (V. I.) To fail ; To run short.

The natural strength of our people *was giving out*—I. REVIEW.

When no new grievances are added the fuel often *gives out* —STATESMAN.

**7.** To *give back* (V. T) To return ; To restore.

**8.** A woman *gives birth to* a child, i. e. brings forth.

**9.** To *give* (a person, a thief etc) *chase*. (V. T.) To pursue.

**10** To *give ground* (V. I.) To retire before an enemy.

**11.** The hounds began *to give tongue* (V. I.) i. e., To bark.

**12.** To *give in*. (V. I.) To yield. To cease fighting or arguing.

But the Englishman will *give in*, and gracefully too, when convinced of the opponent's truthfulness and sincerity of purpose.—I. REVIEW.

**Cp** To *give way* To climb down. To throw up the cards.

**12a** To *give in to* (a thing) = To yield assent to it.

Also, (V. T) as he *gave in* his resignation, i. e. tendered it. He *gave in* that paper, i. e. handed it in.

**13** To *give the lie to* a person (V. T.): To charge him with falsehood ; to contradict him flatly.

**14.** To *give over* (a habit etc.) = (V. T.) To abandon.

So, in the passive form, A person is *given over* to a wicked course of life.

Also, a patient is *given over* by the doctor when his recovery is considered to be hopeless.

His friends, like physicians, thrive, *give him over*.—SHAK (T. A.)

**15** To *give place to* : To retire so as to make room for.

16. To *give up*. (V. T.): To resign (as office or appointment.) To relinquish (as habit plan, belief, claim, possession).

Also, to renounce hope of seeing (as a person) Also, To part with or To hand over.

But, to *give oneself up*: To surrender (as to police custody.)

17. To *give way*. (V. I.) To yield (to a person or thing).

The longest night at last *gives way* to the brightness of day.

Usually, To yield to force so as to *break down* (as a rickety conveyance on the road).

The branch on which her foot rested suddenly *gave way* — DICKENS.

18. He is *much given to* carping. (Pred. adj.) Addicted to or disposed to (any kind of pursuit)

19. *Give-and-take* (adj.) policy: making fair exchange or mutual concession.

Cp. Meeting half way.

They were a well matched fairly balanced, *give and take* couple. — DICKENS.

Office in India had not redeemed his (Sir Richard Temple's) natural plainness by the infusion of those outward humanities which grace the men who live in an atmosphere of *give and take* (n. = fair exchange). With Temple's class it is mainly *take*. — E. NORTON (Looker-on),

So, Where only merit constant pay receives,

Is blest in what it *takes*, and what it *gives*. — POPE.

20. I will *give (you) a piece of my mind*: reproach or scold.

**Glance.** — 1. To *glance over* a subject: To pass quickly over it. To read cursorily (a matter, book, etc.)

Cp. To skim the surface of.

2. To *glance at*: To look briefly at; Hence, to make a passing allusion to.

**Glass.** Those who live in *glass houses* should not throw stones (*Fig.*) Persons having flaws of character should not scandalize others. Aspersions provoke retort (or *tu quoque* = *Lat*, you too.)

**Glitter.**—All that *glitters* is not gold :

[Grammatically, the emphatic **All** in a *negative* sentence = some or even most. In Logic such a sentence is *particular negative*. Some glittering things are not gold. Showy outside appearances are *sometimes* deceptive.]

**Cp.** *Gloss of novelty* · specious appearance or external show of a thing that is new may mislead.

**Glove.**—[See Gauntlet.]

1 To be *hand in glove* (adj.) with a person : Intimate.

Also, *hand and glove*.

2. To *handle* one *without gloves* : (V. T.) To deal roughly or mercilessly with him.

3 *Glove-money* : A *douceur* ; "a tip."

**Gloze.** To *gloze over* a fault : To palliate or extenuate it. To explain so as to hide or excuse it.

**Glut.**—1. To *glut an appetite* = To oversatisfy it. To sate it.

2. Certain goods *glut the market* : oversupply it so that they become unsaleable.

Hence the noun, *A glut in the market* = Supply exceeding demand. **Cp.** A drug in the market. It goes a—begging.

**Gnat.** To *strain at a gnat* : To be scrupulous about trifles.

**Go.** [There are certain familiar combinations with "go" as noun.]

1. Here is a *go* : an embarrassing state of affairs.

2. *It is no go* ; (adj.) Impossible, nothing can be done.

3. It is *all the go* : It is in fashion.

4. *On the go* : (pred, adj.) In a state of decline.  
Going out.

4a. A *go ahead* person is one very active and pushing : a rusher.

4b. *To go back upon* (one's words) : To fail to keep them.  
[See Back.]

I do not suppose that the house or the country are *going back upon* what I have said in their name and on their behalf.—MR ASQUITH.

In this country it is not only the official element which is loth to *go back on* the published word —TIMES OF INDIA.

5. *To go by* : To pass away unnoticed.

Hence, the noun "the go-by" in the phrase *To give one the go-by* = To refuse to notice or recognise him.

5a. *The time has gone by* when you might have helped him : an opportunity has been lost.

[Mark the passive form in : He (Christ) seems to have considered that *the time* for these methods *was gone by*—ECON HOMO.]

So, *By-gone time* : one that is past. Also this thing has *gone by* = happened in the past.

6. *To go down with* (the public or any body of men) : To be believed or accepted by.

Having a bluff, off-hand manner which, passed for heartiness, and considerable power of pleasing when he liked, he *went down with* the school in general for a good fellow enough.—T. HUGHES.

7. *To go in for* (a thing) : To be in favour of it ; To make it an object of pursuit or acquirement.

8. The light has *gone out* : become extinct (V. I.). So, (fig.) Life is said to have *gone out*.

9. *To go through* (any work, task etc.) : To perform thoroughly ; To sustain to the end. (V. T.)

**10.** To *go through* (*V. I.*) *with* : To execute *effectually*. To complete.

To return would be as great labour as to *go through with* the business to the bitter end.—DAUGHTON

**11.** It *goes without saying* : is too obvious to mention : is accepted without question.

**12.** It is a *gone case with him* : There is no hope for him.

\* The following are instances of the transitive use of "go" followed by cognate objects.

**13.** He will *go all lengths* in his denunciation of the Press Act : will undertake all possible risks.

**13A.** To *go the length of* (doing) : To go so far as (to do), venture upon.

**14** We *went* a troublesome journey : There were troubles on our way.

**14A.** So, *go one's way*.

The shepherd and the sheep *went their several ways* in mutual disgust.

**14B.** But, To *go on one's way*. To proceed further.

The cyclone which visited Calcutta on Thursday last (21. 9. 16.) has *gone on its way*—STATSMAN.

**15.** This will *go a long way towards* success ; Be much effective in bringing about the desired result.

So, To *go an errand* ; To *go a drive*.

**God.—1.** A *god send* : A piece of good fortune coming *unexpectedly* : an unlooked for acquisition in time.

At this juncture the advent of Rabindranath Tagore has proved a *god-send*. It is a matter of congratulation that the thoughts of Tagore have found their way to the minds of thinking Japanese.—PROF. HIROSE.

**2.** I wish you *god-speed*, i. e. success or good fortune. I wish that God may speed you.

Some 2000 people, including the Vicar of the parish, gave me *god-speed* on my journey home.—SIR H. HAWKINS.

3. To *make* ~~god~~ *god* of (a person): To deify; To apotheosize.

**Gold — 1** *The golden age*: the period (in the early ages of the world) when men were peaceful, happy and innocent. (*Fig*) the period when anything (e.g. literature) is at its best.

The *golden age* of English Society is covered by the twenty years of Queen Victoria's married life.—RUSSELL.

**2** *The golden rule*. one that is *par excellence* valuable  
e.g. Do to others as you would have others do unto you.

Precept is fairly matched against precept, and what the law of love and the *golden rule* did for mankind was to place for the first time the love of man as man distinctly in the list of virtues —ECCE HOMO.

The golden rule of golden silence —MR. POLAK.

Never to put one hand to anything in which I could throw my whole self; and never to affect depreciation of my work whatever it was, I find now to have been my *golden rules* —DICKENS.

**Cp.** Live and let live.

**2A.** *The golden mean*. The excellent rule of avoiding extremes. The middle course. \*

You should tread the *golden path of the happy mean* —LORD RONALDSBAY

**Cp.** *Via media*; *Juste milieu*

**3.** To win *golden opinions* (of the people) High respect.  
I have bought *golden opinions* from all sorts of people —MACARTHUR.

**Cp.** Report *speaks goldenly* of his profits.—SHAK.

**4.** You have lost a *golden opportunity*. one pre-eminently favourable or auspicious. So, *golden days*.

These were the *golden days* of booms and dividends. There has been many a slump since and the weakest have naturally gone to the wall. R.

**5.** *The golden-calf*. [See Calf.]

**6.** *Golden wedding*: *Fiftieth* anniversary of one's marriage.

The Cardinal wrote to Mrs. Gladstone on her Golden Wedding.

**So, Diamond wedding** is the sixtieth anniversary.



**7. The golden bowl is broken : Death takes place.**

\* \* \* and then one flicker more of reflecting thought, one gentle request, one yearning look on her who'll 'come no more,' and the silver thread is loosed, *the golden bowl for ever broken*.—SHAKESPEARE CHARACTERS.

**Cp.** "the pitcher is broken at the fountain."—[See Fountain.]

Also, life's poor play is over.

**8. The golden season of life : The prime, flower, spring-tide, or seedtime of life.**

**Cp.** The hey-day of youth.

• **Gone.—1. Past and gone : [emphatic of *past*.] Gone by.**

**2. It is a gone case : (pred) . hopeless one.**

So, Othello's *occupation is gone* : (Shak) he has nothing left to occupy himself with; or keep himself engaged in. Lost past any hope of recovery.

**Good. 1. As good as dead : (adv.) Practically, virtually the same as.**

*As good* almost kill a man *as* kill a good book ; who kills a man kills a reasonable creature (God's image) ; but he who destroys a good book kills reason itself.—MILTON.

A miss is *as good as* a mile. Nod is *as good as* wink to a blind man.

**1A. As good as one's word : precise in promise-keeping. .**

**2. As good as a play : Very interesting.**

**3. What is the good of calling a meeting : It will bring in no beneficial result. (Lat.) Cui bono.**

[With "the" before "good", *of* is the right preposition introducing a description of the good in question].

**4. There is no good in calling a meeting.**

[Here it is denied that there is any good in a thing ; so the proper preposition is "in", not "of".]

**Cp.** There is no use in making protests.

**5 (said or uttered) In good earnest : (adv.) In sober reality ; in all seriousness.**

6. *In good time* : (adv.) Neither too soon nor too late. Betimes ; Also, opportunely. Cp. *In due course*.

7. *Be so good as to send* : Be good enough to send ; Be pleased to send. Please to send.

[Some writers omit "to" after *as*]

8. Things are *in good train* : (Pred. adj.) going well.

Cp. *In gear* (= in working order.)

9. (To go away from a place, or to come to a place) *For good* (adv.) Permanently. Not to return at all.

9A. So, to leave a place *for good and all*. (adv.) [The same as above but more emphatic] For the last time ; finally.

The real line of progress is to render the Government more and more able to settle Indian problems *for good and all*.---STATESMAN.

To miss the golden opportunity that now offers means your loss *for good and all*.---IBID

10. He is *good for that sum* : able to pay it. Solvent as regards that amount.

10A. In my bank account I have one thousand Rupees *to the good* i. e. to my credit.

Contra. To the bad : to my debit.

11. The agreement *stands good* : remains firm or valid.

12. To *take a thing in good part* : To be pleased with it instead of being offended by it

13A. To *make good* (a loss or deficiency.) (V. T.) To compensate for, To supply, To repair.

Our part at home is to *make good* by adequate measures the great losses which the offensive must necessarily entail upon it.---TIMES.

B. To *make good* (an expense) : To pay.

C. To *make good* (a promise) : To fulfil ; To suit the action to the word.

Cp. To be as good as one's word.

**D.** To *make good* (a purpose): To effect.

**E.** To *make good* (a statement): To verify or demonstrate.

**F.** To *make good* (a charge): To substantiate To establish by evidence.

**G.** To *make good* (a position): To gain and hold.

**14.** *Goodness gracious!* an interjection denoting surprise or indignation.

**15.** *Goodness knows:* (adv) In all conscience (the statement may be made). Also, I do not know.

**16** *Good cheer* Food.

Not a place as formerly where every passenger must stop and taste of his wine and *good cheer* — LAMB

**17.** A *good-for nothing* fellow (adj) idle and worthless  
A *good-for nothing* woman is playfully called a "baggage."

**18** *The good man* The head of a family.

[Correlative The good wife]

**Goose - 1** The *goose that lays the golden eggs*: The source of one's wealth and income.

**Cp** *Ques* a Milk-cow.

**2** *Gooseberry eyes* Goggle eyes, i. e. those that give dim sight.

**3.** *A wild goose chase*: A foolish pursuit after something which is impossible of attainment.

(**p.**) (A fool's errand or) a sleeveless errand.

**Gordian.** To cut the *Gordian knot*. [See Cut]. (*Fig.*) To solve a problem in a *told and unusual* manner, as by force or by evading conditions.

The statesmen of the Dominions' methods of *cutting the Gordian knots* of bureaucracy are as stimulating as they are effective. — INDIAN.

**Grace**—1 *To be in one's good graces* (or in *the* good graces of one): To enjoy his favour, or friendship. To be liked by him.

**Cp** To stand well with one

2. To submit *with a good grace* (adv.) Gracefully; as if willing With at least an air of graciousness.

So, To *do* a thing with a good grace.

**Cp** To make a virtue of necessity.

**Contra** *With a bad grace*: (adv.) In an unwilling or ill tempered manner.

3. *Take heart of grace* To cheer up (V. I.) and try again.

The forces of tyranny, discovering with joy that the Reform Act had not, after all, demolished them, *took heart of grace*, and rallied themselves for a struggle to regain their lost ascendancy.—G. W. E. RUSSELL.

[No article before *heart*].

4. *In this year of grace* (i. e. of our Lord) or *in the year of grace* 1916.

(Ironically used) when Christianity has been so long established.

**Grain**—1. *Against the grain*: (adv.) *Lit.* Against the fibres of wool. *Fig.* (applied to persons); contrary to one's bias or natural temper, unwillingly or unpleasantly.

**N. B.**—The article "the" instead of the possessive.

The verb "go" usually combines with the phrase as the opposition of the grain is not felt until movement *against* it is attempted.

I had rather have a little and do what I like, than acquire a great deal by working *against the grain*.—J. PAYN.

To be disloyal goes *against the grain* of the Hindus.

2. *To stroke against the grain* = To rub the wrong way.

**Cp.** Against the hair.

2A. *Across the grain.*

Anything in the nature of muzzing the press *strikes right across the grain* of my whole being.—LORD CHELMSFORD

3. To take a statement *with a grain of salt*: adv. with some deduction or doubt. [Lat. *Cum grano salis.*]

Cp With grains of allowance.

4. To dye *in grain*: (adv.) in the fibre or raw material (Hence), deeply; thoroughly, indelibly. [No article before *grain*.]

**Grapes.** 1. *The grapes are sour* usual ejaculation of a person who in disappointment disparages a thing because he cannot attain to it.

2. *Sour grapes*: such disparagement

**Grapple.** To *grapple with a question or problem* or situation: To tackle it.

I have put at the disposal of the senate an experienced and able officer to assist the University authorities in *grappling with* the tremendous additional work.—LORD RONALDSHAY

**Grass.** 1. *A grass-widow*: originally, a grace-widow; a widow by courtesy: Now, a wife temporarily separated from her husband

2. *To let the grass grow under one's feet*

To waste time; To dawdle about.

But just like herself Mrs Annie Besant has not *let the grass grow under her feet* because the Congress session has come to a close.—LEADER.

Mark the plural *feet* as also the negative form]

Contra. To make the most of one's time

**Grave.** 1. *To have one foot in the grave*: To be very near death.

Cp To have short time to live. Not to be long for this world.

2. This would *make* (some dead person) *turn in his grave*: pain him if he were alive.

This paper's (Statesman's) writings of recent years may well cause good old Robert Knight to turn in his grave — LEADER.

**Great** 1 *The great* : (pl n) The distinguished persons of rank, position, wealth, and influence.

2. *The great unpaid* : Honorary Magistrates and other officers of rank receiving no stipend or salary.

3. *The great unwashed* (Facetiously used) : the working classes many of whom are engaged in very dirty work. The rabble.

Cp \* \* \* clubs upstairs

To which the unwashed artificer repairs — COWPER.

4 *Great and small* (n). great persons and small persons *promiscuously* — High and low

[Note the omission of "the" before the combination]

C . All and sundry.

5 *The greatest good of the greatest number* : The basic principle of Bentham's Ethics, i.e. utilitarianism. The test of a virtuous act is its tendency to do good.

**Greek** 1 *On the Greek kalends* : (adv.) Never.

[The Greeks had no *kalends* : the first day of each month among the Romans].

Unfortunately the phrase "when the ground has been prepared" is synonym of the *Greek kalends* with the bureaucrats all over the world. — INDIA

2. *A Greek gift* : one intended to harm Cp. White elephant.

3 *When Greeks joined Greeks, then was the tug of war*. This expression is used when an equally violent encounter takes place.

[Quoted from Nathaniel Lee's Alexander the Great].

Note the omission of the article before 'Greeks'.

4. *It was Greek to me* : unintelligible as a foreign tongue.

Note — The idea is now more commonly expressed in the form "It was Hebrew to me."

**Green.**—1. *Green* old age, i. e., undecayed. So, *green* memory is one fresh and vigorous.

2. A *green hand*: a person quite new to a work. An ignoramus. A novice.

**Cp** A greenhorn. A tender-foot; An acolyte.

3. *The green-eye*: Jealousy. [See Eye.]

**Grey.** *The grey mare is the better horse*: The wife is superior to the husband and so rules him.

[The proverb is vulgar.—LORD MACAULAY]

**Grief**—1. *To come to grief*: To meet with disaster or failure. To come to a bad or sad end. (V. 1.)

Some exploitations have *come to grief* from various causes.

Leaseps *came to grief* over the Panama Canal.—Cyc.

It is in the nature of despotisms to foster such divisions (religious and social) and a free system of government which seeks to build on such quicksands will surely *come to grief*.—MR. LIONEL CURTIS

2. *To grieve at a thing*: To feel deep sorrow for it.

Since no man can carry with him to the grave any thing that is his, why should we *grieve at* learning it when young?—So, Timothy vi 7.

**Grin.**—1. *To grin and abide*: Endure pain with stoic heroism; To make the best of any *unpleasant* circumstance.

Also, to *grin and bear it*.

2. *To grin a ghastly smile*. (cognate object) To smile in a most scornful manner so as to show the teeth.

**Grind.**—1. *To grind one's teeth*: To be intensely irritated or very much disgusted.

2. *To grind at a subject*: To study it hard.

Also, to be laboriously engaged in teaching it.

**Cp** Gerund-grinding; (mechanical instruction in Latin).

3. *To bring or hold a person's nose to the grindstone*: To oppress or punish him.

4. To *keep* one's nose to the *grindstone*. (V. I.) To keep at continuous hard work.

5. To *turn the grindstone*: To play into another's hands.

6. An *axe to grind*: [See *Axe*].

**Grist**—1. To *bring grist to the* or *(one's) mill*: [grist = corn or grain for grinding]. To bring profitable business into one's hands. To add to one's income.

2. *All is grist that comes to his mill*: He utilizes every thing.

Exercise was invented by the doctors to *bring grist to their mill*.—MR. CHAMBERLAIN.

**Gp** All is fish that comes into his net.

**Gristle** *In the gristle*. (Pred. adj.): Immature.

Infants have gristle for bone.

A people who are still, as it were, but *in the gristle*, and not yet hardened into the bone of manhood.—BURNS.

**Grope**—1. To *grope in the dark*: To search *blindly*.

2. To *grope one's way*: To find it *by feeling*.

(Fig.) To give a proposal or theory a trial.

**Gross**. (Satisfactory) *In the gross*: (adv.) in a general way irrespective of particulars On the whole.

**Ground**—1. To *break ground* (V. I.) (Fig) To commence any operation. To enter upon an undertaking.

2. To *gain ground*: (V. I.) To advance in any work or operation.

3. So. To *lose or give ground*: To retreat; To fall back. (Fig.) to decline.

4. The project *fell to the ground* (V. I.) Failed: came to naught.

So, all my hopes were dashed to the ground.



5. To cut the *ground* from under one's feet: To anticipate and frustrate his plans suddenly.

6. To be on delicate ground (pred. adj.): dealing with a matter about which one cannot be too careful or adroit.

7. To stand one's ground: (V. I. with cognate object.) To maintain one's position (literally or figuratively) firmly.

So, To shift one's ground To hold one's ground.

8. You are entering upon the forbidden ground, i. e. a matter or subject that must not be dealt with.

**Grow.**—1. To grow up: To advance to full stature or maturity. Hence, the adj: a grown up (child): an adult.

The fear implanted in the mind of a child is difficult to get over even when the child grows up.—SPECTATOR.

Contra To grow downward; To be diminished in size.

2. To be grown over: overgrown (with): Covered by the growth (of any thing).

3. (Two or more things) grow together: (V. I.) Become united by growth. Also, to grow into one; To coalesce.

4. This habit has grown upon him: Exercises very great influence over him.

So, a person or thing grows upon one when he or it is much admired or prized by him.

**Grundy.** What will Mrs. Grundy say or think?—What will be the general trend of opinion on the part of my friends and neighbours as to my action or word? [This occurs in Tom Mortons comedy "Speed the Plough"] From her individual character the name Mrs. Grundy has acquired a general acceptance—public fault-finders (Figure synecloche). Then from concrete to abstract (Metonymy)—public opinion.

Cp. (1) What will the world say; ~

(2) Dare we defy public opinion?

(3) 'This will astonish the Browns.'

(4) A sort of Mrs Harris.

**Guard**—1. To be *on one's guard against* a thing: To guard oneself against it: To be watchful lest there be a sudden attack or surprise. (Pred. adj.)

Men were *on their guard* against them (the publican and the prostitute), their power for evil was circumscribed as far as it could be, and justice was satisfied by the punishment of infamy.—ECCO HOMO.

So, To put a person *on his guard*. (V. T.)

2 I was *on guard* that night; (pred. adj.)—actually acting as guard or sentinel.

[Note the omission of the possessive pronoun before 'guard']

3. To be *off one's guard*: (pred. adj.) In an unguarded state; Not attentive to the danger ahead; careless, negligent or incautious. Unwary.

Lady Macbeth was *thrown off her guard* by the suddenness of the announcement—CL. P. EDITOR.

So, to catch a person *off his guard* (i. e. unawares.)

**Gulf**.—1. A *great or wide gulf* is fixed between us. An impassable dividing line; an insurmountable barrier; a complete and permanent separation.

There is a *great social gulf* between Mr Bose and Hindus of the old type. There is a *wide gulf* between desire and attainment.—S. P. SINHA

2 To *bridge a gulf*. (Fig) To bring about reconciliation. To repair the breach; To heal the difference.

Sir James must have felt how he could have succeeded in *bridging the gulf* a few months ago if he wanted to and if he had the requisite sympathy with the Hindus.—NEW INDIA.

Cp. To make it up,

**Gun**.—1. A *great gun*: A person distinguished in any department. Cp. A Big wig,

2. It (*indef. for wind*) blew *great guns* (*adv.*): violently.

3. To *stand to one's guns*: To maintain one's position firmly. To persevere.

So, To *stick to one's guns*. Cp. The hold one's own.

Cp. It blew a heavy gale.

**Gutter**.—1. A *gutter hilda*: a neglected child playing in the gutter. Also, a *gutter snipe*.

Cp. A street—Arab.

2. A child *out of the gutter*: (*adj.*) Low born; of mean parentage.

3. To *take out of the gutter*: (*V. T.*) To remove from poor and low environment.

## H

**Had** —1. You (*or he*) *had better* abandon the project. } These  
2. I *had rather* abstain from voting. } two are

grammatical surprises to the Indian student with whom "had" is the auxiliary of the pluperfect tense which ought to take the p. p. of the principal verb after it. Joined with the comparative forms "better" and "rather" the auxiliary is to be taken as—"would" first contracted into 'd and then enlarged into "had." (1) It *would* be better for you (*or him*) to abandon the project; (2) I *would* rather abstain from voting. When the preference is meant to be that of the speaker, "rather" is the proper word; otherwise, "better."

If that gentleman desires to perambulate this court, *he had better* take off his boots.—SIR H. HAWKINS.

\* **Hail**.—1. This gentleman *hails from* Madras: Is an inhabitant of.

2. *Hail-fellow*: (*n.*) an intimate companion or friend.

3. *Hail-fellow-well-met*: (pred. adj.) Too intimately familiar (with).

The ease with which he himself became *hail-fellow-well-met* with any body made him sometimes sorry, sometimes angry, at Arthur's reserve and loneliness. — T. HUGHES.

**Hair**.—1. Resemble to a hair: (adv.) Exactly; to a nicety. So, To a hair's breadth.

2. To *split hairs* (V. I.): To be oversubtle in making distinctions. Hence the adj. "Hair-splitting" (argument), and the noun "Hair-splitter."

3. *Both of a hair*: (pred. adj.) Both alike (as twin brothers).

**Cp.** Birds of a feather; Men of the same kidney.

4. They work from sunrise to sunset *without turning a hair*, i. e. without showing the least sign of fatigue, exhaustion, or discomposure.

So, he heard the retort, but did *not turn a hair*: was not in the least ruffled or disturbed.

[Note—this use is in *negative* sentences only.]

5. *Take a hair of the dog that bit you*: Drink a little more as *curative* of the effects of heavy drinking.

6. A *hair-breadth* escape: a very narrow one.

For forty years Jacques Roger had *escaped* often by a *hair's breadth* the pursuit of the soldiers who had tracked him like a wild beast. — PROTHERO.

**Cp.** A close shave; a narrow or near squeak.

7. *Against the hair*: against the grain. [Which See].

**Half**.—1. He is *half-asas* over: (pred. adj.) [colloquial] Pretty far gone is drunkenness.

**Cp.** Half-drunk, i. e. tipsy.

2. *Half-hearted*: (adj.) wanting in zeal and earnestness; lukewarm;

3. *Half-truth*: (n.) a statement which is partly true or which tells only part of the truth.

The simple story was evolved at last from the lies and *half-truths* which had for so many years imposed upon a great number even of the intelligent and educated classes of the community.—SIR H. HAWKINS.

4. *Half-the-battle*. [See Battle].

5. *Better-half*: wife [See Better.].

6. He is too clever *by half* (adv.): far; much; that is, he is *far too clever*.

7. To cut a thing *in half* (adv.): so that the two parts may be *equal*.

[But, **Note** that when the two parts are named as "halves" in the plural number the preposition "in" is replaced by "into". *To cut a thing into halves* = To halve].

8. *Do by halves*: (adv.) Imperfectly.

Things done *by halves* are never done right.

9. To *cry halves*; To claim an equal share.

10. To *go halves or shares with a person* in any thing: To agree with him for the sharing of it equally: To halve it.

11. To meet one *half-way*: (adv.) *Lit.* at half the distance. *Fig.* To effect a compromise by giving way equally or by mutual concession.

With all the will in the world to please him (Cardinal Manning). I could not even meet him *halfway*.—RUSSELL.

12. *Half a loaf is better than no bread*: (*Fig.*) A compromise is a desirable thing. **Contra** All or nothing.

**Hall**.—*Hall-mark*: The official stamp affixed at Goldsmith's Hall and Government Assay offices to articles of gold and silver as a *mark of their genuine quality*. (*Fig.*) any thing which *guarantees* excellence of quality.

What right has any one to seek to cheat fortune and be esteemed as honourable when not stamped with, not bearing, the *hall-mark* of merit.

His pithy sayings bear his own *hall-mark*.—*PROTERO*.

The scheme has received the *hall-mark* of approval on the part of financial experts.—*MALVILLE*.

**Halloo**.—1. To call *halloo*: (V. I.)<sup>\*</sup> To shout. (V. T.) To shout to.

2. *Don't halloo till you are out of the wood*: Be careful not to shout exultingly too soon; the difficulties are not over yet.

*Cp.* There's many a slip between the cup and the lip.

Also, he laughs best who laughs last.

The Ides of March are not gone.—*SHAK.*

**Halt**.—1. The *halting foot of justice*: Justice that is slow in its course is sure to overtake the wrong-doer in the long run.

*Cp.* The mills of God grind slowly.

2. To *halt between two opinions* = To hesitate; fail to come to a decision.

The fool followed the fortunes of the unhappy king with no *halting step*.—*SHAK*'s (*Characters*).

Gloucester *halts between two opinions*, as witness his correspondence with France whilst declaring Allegiance to Cornwall.—*IBID.*

**Hammer**.—1. To go at a thing *hammer and tongs*: (adv.) With great vigour and energy.

*Cp.* With might and main. Also, tooth and nail; hip and thigh.

2. A thing comes under the *hammer*: is sold by auction. (V. I.) So, to bring a thing to the *hammer*: To put it up for sale by auction. (V. T.)

**Hand**.—1. *At hand*: (adj. and adv.) Near as regards both time and place.

A great revolution was *at hand*.—*MARSHMAN* i. e. about to happen soon.—[*Time*].

I kept the medicines in a portable box that I might have them *at hand* (i. e. close by) when needed [place].—*DR. SINGER*.

I have one hundred Rupees *ready at hand*, i. e. in present cash.

[**Note.** Omit "ready" and "at" is converted into "in" or "on" *on hand* = ready or available.]

**2. At first hand:** (adv.) From the original source (literally the producer or seller.)

[**Note** the omission of the article before the superlative].

So, *at second hand*: (adv.) as old or used; from an intermediary.

Ceylon was proposed as a country where most tropical products could be started *at first hand* (i. e. on the spot)—STATESMAN.

Those who will not accept counsel *at first hand* cheap will buy repentance *at second hand* dear.—LILLY.

**Note** that the preposition "at" is allowed to be omitted in many instances.

*At the hands of* or *At one's hands*: (adv.) From him, as coming from (a giver). [**Note** the plural.]

You have deserved well *at my hands*.

Christians could claim *at the hands of* Jews the rights of fellow-citizenship in the ancient theocracy.—ECCLE HOMO.

**4. For one's own hand:** (adv.) *On* one's own account; (To fight) for one's self or one's own interests.

**5. In hand.** [*Lit.* Held in the hand]: (adv.) Ready at hand; *In* one's present possession; *At* one's disposal.

I have no money *in hand*.

A bird *in hand* is worth two in the bush.

[**Hand** = possession. *Fig.* Metonymy (concrete for the abstract.) *So* balance *in hand* (difference between credits and debits of an account) *On hand* is also used (*Fig.*) A matter or subject *in hand*, i. e., under discussion]

Also, *In few or many hands*: persons as possessors.

\* Is the concentration of vast wealth in *few hands* a benefit to the community?—RUSSELL.

**6A. In the hands of:** (Held, as it were, in the hand) *At the disposal of*; *under the control of.* [*pred. adj.*]

The fair name and the reputation of the University must at all times be in *the hands* of the undergraduates.—LORD RONALDSHAY.

6. The estate is on *my hands* : (pred. adj.) Under my care and management.

**Contra** : *Off one's hands* (ended so far as one's concern goes). None will take the lame mare *off my hands* even as a gift, i. e. free me from that burden.

7. *Off-hand* (adv. or adj.) : Without previous preparation. Then and there.

The speech was delivered *off-hand* (adv.)

He had a frank *off-hand* manner (i. e. free and easy) [adj.]

He refused me *off-hand*, adv. Flatly ; Point-blank.

8. *Out of hand* : (adv.) Without delay ; at once.

J. S. Mill was rather in a hurry to set about his object to reconstruct human society on the single principle of Utility at once, and do it *out of hand*.—TIMES

Also, To be *out of hand* (adj.) : Not under control.

[hand = controlling hand].

The police-men were *out of hand* : broke from control.

Again, To get a thing *out of hand* : (adj.) Finished ; off one's hands.

9. *On the one hand*.....*On the other hand*. [These two are adverbial conjunctions, each introducing a clause, and the two clauses denoting contrast—no similarity]. From two contrasted or opposite points of view. [See Other.]

The first phrase is sometimes omitted, when *substituted* by a conjunctive clause.

If we owe any thing to Bentham and his lieutenants that we should not have but for them, *on the other hand*, they have thrown a good many stumbling-blocks in the way of legislative reform.—TIMES.

10. *Ready to one's hand*. (adj.) : Fit for immediate use without exertion on his part.



When a Prime Minister in difficulties, looking about for men to fill the minor offices of his Administration, sees among his supporters a clever and comely youngman.....he sees 'a junior Lord of the Treasury ready to his hand.—RUSSELL.

11. *On all hands*: (adv.) By all persons wherever they may be; From all quarters. [not confined to two directions only.]

The present collection will be welcomed *on all hands* as a genuine interpretation of current literature and philosophy.—I. REVIEW.

So, admitted on all hands; deprecated on all hands &c.

*Cp.* (Abused) right and left.

12. I could not *keep my hand* in Calculus: maintain my skill by practice: keep up my previous acquirements. [*Hand* = practice].

So, *my hand is out* = I am out of practice.

I have got *my hand* in logarithms: become quite familiar with them by practice.

13. In my difficulties this great personage *took me by the hand*: took me under his protection and patronage.

14. *To take a work in hand*: To attempt or undertake it

The Principal of the College *took the unruly boy in hand*:

Took notice of his conduct meaning to deal with him.

*Note* the preposition "in" as no movement from one place to another is implied.

But, to *take the law into one's hand*, and to *take over a matter into one's hands* imply transference.

15. To give one's hand *upon* a promise: To pledge oneself to fulfil it.

But, To give one's *hand* to a person: To pledge oneself to marry that person. ["giving hand" is a sign of promise.]

So, To ask *the hand of*: To ask in marriage.

**15A.** To *set one's hand to* (a writing) : (V. T.) To sign ;  
To subscribe one's name to.

**16.** You *bore a hand in* that affair : Took part in it.

So, To *have a hand in*.

**17.** To *lend a hand to* : (V. T.) To assist.

Also, a helping hand.

**18.** To *hold one's hands* : (V. I.) To refrain from taking  
any action. To cease from further proceeding.

The president cajoled the opponents into *holding their hands* (i. e. withholding their votes) and the resolution was carried.

**19.** The police could not *lay hands on* the culprit :  
(V. T.) seize. To grasp or take.

**CP.** To lay or take hold of (a thing).

**20.** To *show one's hand* [From game of cards] : To let  
out or expose one's intention or purpose.

**21.** I mean to *wash my hands* of this ugly affair : i. e.  
to renounce all connection with it ; Take no *further* interest  
in it. To decline responsibility of it. [Beware of using "from."]

**22.** The office-master dealt with the clerks *with a  
heavy hand* : (adv.) oppressively.

**23.** The U. P. Municipalities Bill was passed *with a  
high hand* : (adv.) Haughtily ; Imperiously ; without taking  
other people into consideration ; without observance of the  
rules of procedure etc. Arrogantly.

So, To carry a measure *with a high hand*, and the adj.  
High handed.

**24.** *Hand in hand* : (adv.) with the hands joined.

*They hand in hand*, with wandering steps and slow,

Through Eden took their solitary way.—MILTON.

England and India have to work *hand in hand* for centuries to come (i. e. *Fig.* in union, harmony, and agreement.

As time and progress go *hand in hand*, measures will be taken to equip the Benares Hindu University with the Faculties of Law, Medicine, Engineering, Commerce, and Agriculture, thus keeping pace with the march of time.—LORD HARDINGE.

I warn you, father, that as surely as you must one day stand before your maker, so surely shall your children be there, *hand in hand*, to cry for judgment against you.—DICKENS.

**24A.** A thing goes *hand in hand* with another: keeps steps with it.

**24B.** To join hands = unite. Also, To extend the hand of fellowship.

I would to God we could join hands upon a subject of the kind which interested you much two years ago.—GLADSTONE.

(*Lit.* and *Fig.*)—Higher education should *advance hand in hand* with the growth of the peoples' conviction of its value.—SIR JAMES MESTON.

**25.** He has come out (of this affair, inquiry, trial etc.) *with clean hands*: (adv) with innocence; without any stigma of guilt or shame. [Mark the plural.]

**26.** A *hand-to-hand* (fight): (adj.) close.

The last six weeks of Lord Beaconsfield's life were a *hand-to-hand struggle* with death.—NINETEENTH CENTURY.

The Minister settles himself on the Treasury to spend the remainder of the day in a *hand-to-hand encounter* with the banded forces of the Opposition.

**Cp.** At close quarters; cut and thrust.

**27.** (To serve a person) *Hand and foot*: (adv.) (*Fig.*) with every possible diligence.

**Cp.** Fetch and carry.

But, to bind him *hand and foot* (adv.) is literal enough: in the hand and in the foot.

28. *My hands are full*: I am fully occupied; I have a great deal of work to do.

29. *Your letter came to hand yesterday*: was received by me. [no possessive before *hand*.]

30. A *hand-to-mouth* existence: (adj.) precarious: uncertain; so, "*hand-to-mouth*" shifts..

So, *To live from hand to mouth*: (adv.) precariously; without means to provide for the morrow. [whatever is earned by the hand is expended on meal only.]

Cp. *To live by one's wits*.

31. *Hand and glove*: (Pred. adj.) Intimately familiar.

As if the world and they were *hand and glove*.—COWPER.

This man is *hand and glove* with every one.—M. EDGEWORTH.

The phrase "*Hand in glove*" is also used.

Cp. *To be catarcousins*.

32. The property has *changed hands*: passed into the possession of different owners.

33. *To hand down* (a story, document etc.): To transmit in succession as from father to son.

34. *To win hands down*: (adv.) easily.

35. *Hand over hand*: (adv.) rapidly: at quick paces.

(Literally. With each hand successively passing over the other as in climbing a rope).

My friend the Doctor made money *hand over hand*.

Having inherited a large fortune he spent money *hand over hand*.

36. *The hand of God*: Providential interposition in the nick of time to assert justice and punish the wrong doer; as when a venal judge is carried off by cholera on the morning of the very day when the death-sentence is to be pronounced by him against an innocent person.

The good which a certain providential conjuncture, or rather *the hand of God*, extends to you—H

*Cp. Deus ex machina. Differentiate "Finger of God".*

**Handle**—1. To give a handle to or for (Suspicion, scandal, and the like): To furnish an occasion for.

2. A handle to one's name: a title as Rai Bahadur, Maharaja, etc.

Many people sacrifice conscience to please the powers that be, and thus get a handle to their name. [see Hard money].

**Handwriting.** The *hand-writing on the wall*: announcement of a coming disaster. [allusion to the literal writing on the wall of the palace of Babylon by a hand that the King (Belshazzar) actually saw. *Daniel V. 5-31.*]

*The writing on the wall* should arouse every thinking American to the greatest problem the world has ever faced—the transport of the new American army.—SIR JOSEPH MACLAY.

*Cp.* Warning voice; (also) clouds in the horizon.

**Hang**—1. To hang about (V. I.): To loiter.

2. To hang back: (V. I.) To show reluctance to act on in going forward. To be tardy.

3. To hang behind: (V. I.) To lag behind.

4. A firearm hangs fire: is slow in going off.

(Fig) used of any plot or scheme when it is slow in execution.

5. Time hangs heavy on one's hands: passes slowly.

[N. B. no article before "Time"] one being inactive and feeling dull and weary.

6. To hang on to a thing: To stick closely to.

6A. To hang on the lips of (an orator or speaker): To listen with rapt attention to.

7. To hang up (a matter): To defer or put off indefinitely. To keep undecided.

**Cp.** To postpone *sine die*.

8. The fate of student—suspects in India *hangs by a thread*: is most precarious.

The life of Lord Salisbury's Administration *hung by a thread*.—RUSSELL.

**Cp.** To tremble in the balance; To stand on a volcano.

9. *Hanger-on*: (n) Follower or dependent; a parasite; henchman; satellite; Toady [from the verb "Hang on" = depend on a person for living.]

13. He has a *hang-dog look about him*: sneaking appearance.

**Hap.** *At or by haphazard*: (adv.) any how; By mere chance.

Our political institutions grew to be what they are *by haphazard* and without design—RUSSELL,

["Haphazard" is also used as an adjective = random or undesigned—]

**Happy**—1. *Happy man be his dole*: may he be happy, i. e. live a pleased and contented life.

2. *Happy despatch*: Suicida. Harakiri (Japanese practice)

3. The relations between Englishmen and Indians are *not of the happiest*: Euphemism for "unhappy." [A paradigm.]

**Cp.** any thing but happy.

**Hard**.—1. *Hard by*: (adv.) close by. [used of time as well as place].

Gracious my lord, *hard by* here is a hovel—*Shak* (K. Lear).

*Hard by* a fletcher had laid his whittle down,

Virginus took it up and hid it in his gown.—MACAULAY.

*Hard by* you wood, now smiling as in scorn,

Muttering his wayward fancies he would rove.—GRAY.

No sooner is a temple built to God, than the devil builds a chapel *hard by*.

**Cp.** It (the marriage) followed *hard upon* (i. e. close after)

2. *Hard bargain*: an agreement or compact made without concession.

He drove a hard bargain with me.

3. *Hard cash*: specie; gold or silver coin, as opposed to Paper Currency, Bank notes.

4. *Hard and fast* (adj.) *rule*: very strict or rigid formula.

The division of mankind into castes in India alone has become stereotyped into a *hard and fast* system in which birth has become the chief factor.—

So, *hard and fast lines*: orders or customs rigidly adhered to.

5. *Hard-faced*: having a stern face. But *hard-favoured*—having coarse features.

6. *Hard fisted*: stingy; grasping. Cp. *Close-fisted*.

7. *Hard-hearted*: unfeeling, callous, inexorable, adamant.

7A. *To hit one hard*: [See *Hit*.]

8. *Hard lines*: Hard case; severe trouble; misfortune; Hardship.

That was *hard lines* for me, after I had given up every thing for the sake of getting you an education which was to be a fortune to you—  
GEORGE ELIOT.

Cp. *Rough* (on): Peck of troubles.

9. *Hard up*: (pred. adj.) In pecuniary want; Impecunious; without funds; resourceless.

Freddy is unusually *hard up*.—RUSSELL.

Also used attributively, e. g. *hard up* relations and friends.

10. *Hard up for* (a thing): At a loss how to find.

11. *To be hard put to it*: To be in difficulties. [*It* is indefinite for state of things generally].

12. *It will go hard with me*: subject me to great hardship.

13. *Closer doth bear me hard*: His bearing or attitude towards me is one of stern unfriendliness.

Hence, the extended adverbial clause in the expressions:—

*It shall go hard but I will do this* } I am quite sure to do this,  
*It shall go hard if I do not do this* }  
 or unless the difficulties be too great to be overcome.

14. *To run a person hard*: To pursue him closely. To press him with jokes, sarcasms, and ridicule.

Hence, *Hard pressed*, *Hard-pushed*: *Hard set* (adj.): in a strait or difficulty.

Cp. Pressed with one's back to the wall,

15. *To die hard*: To die after a hard struggle for life; (*Fig.*) To die impenitent. [See *Die*].

[“Hard” in compounds and combinations generally connotes trouble, difficulty, pain, harshness and the like. E.g. *Hard labour*, *Hard life*, *Hard times*, *Hard weather*, *Hard-earned* (money) = earned with difficulty or with hard work; sometimes contracted into “hard money.” *To main hard*, *To work hard*, &c., so, *hard work* = *Elbow grease*.]

The pleasure of being called ‘My Lord’ or ‘Sir George’ is surely most unsubstantial that mankind can enjoy, and our readiness to spend *hard money* for titles of honour should surely redeem us from the reproach of being an unimaginative people.—RUSSELL.

**Hare**.—1. *To hold with the hare and hunt or run with the hounds*; or *To hold with the hounds and run with the hare*: } : *To act deceitfully* between two parties; *To play a double and deceitful game*. *To act with duplicity*: *To keep in with both sides*.

Leadership is based on sacrifice: Nor can a leader be always both *running with the hare and hunting with the hounds*.—G. S. ABUNDANCE.



2. A *hare-blained* child: rash and wild so as constantly getting into trouble.

**Harness.** To *die in harness* (as jaded and over-worked hacks do). To remain at one's occupation until death separates them. To die at one's work. [Trappings of horses = Harness.]

The happy-go-lucky Judges of the Indian High Courts, to whom the present rule of compulsory retirement at sixty years of age did not apply would rather *die in harness* than give up their unusually fat salaries.—B, C.

**Cp.** Few die and none resign.

Lord Clarendon would have wished to *die*, as he has died, in *harness* and to be to the last a Minister of England.—TIMES.

At least we'll *die with harness on our back*.—SHAK (Macbeth) (Here Harness=armour.)

**Cp** Great men should drink with *harness on their throats*—SHAK. (T. A.)

**Harp.** To *harp on one string*: To dwell too exclusively upon one subject so as to weary or annoy the hearers. To tire as a bore does by tedious iteration. To bore.

Also, to *harp on the same string*.

**Harum.** A *harum scarum* (adjr) obild; Flighty, rash.

He was a wild *harum-scarum* youth riding at full gallop down the street to the peril of the public.—TIMES.

This *harum-scarum* conduct has been his ruin. **Cp.** Hare-brained.

**Haste.**—1. To *make haste* (to do this): Be quick.

He that *maketh haste* to be rich shall not be innocent.—BIBLE.

The widow, the curate, and the orphan *made haste* to be rich; and all London quivered with the South African fever.—RUSSELL.

2. *The more haste the less speed*: Excessive or undue precipitancy retards progress and causes delay.

So, *Most haste is worst speed*.

**Cp.** (Lat) *Festina lente*. Hasten gently

Also, *make haste* (and do this).

**Hatchet.**—1. To *bury the hatchet*: To cease from hostilities. To be on friendly terms.

**Contra.** To dig up the hatchet.

2. To *throw the hatchet*: To exaggerate.

**Cp.** To draw the long bow.

3. To *throw the helve after the hatchet*: To add new loss to that already incurred.

**Cp.** To throw good money after bad,

To throw the handle after the blade.

To burn the candle at both ends.

**Have.**—1. *Have done*: (imp. mood.) stop.

2. I *have done with him*: ceased to deal by him.

3. I will *have at you*: make attack upon. But I will *have at this thing with you* i. e. attempt.

Such people there are living and flourishing in the world—faithless, hopeless, charityless—let us *have at* them, Dear friends, with might and main.—THACKERAY.

4. Those are days that *have been*: are past; are no more. [See Be.]

[Note the peculiarity—the present perfect form in lieu of the past or preterite.] So, the past preterite is used in the following quotation to observe the rule of sequence of time :—

*The time had been* when many a friend would have crowded round him in his affliction, and many a heart-felt condolence would have met him in his grief. Where were they now !—DICKENS.

5. (I will) *have it out with you*: settle the matter in dispute with you (by altercation, revenge, blows etc.)

[Note the indefinite use of "it" for dispute or quarrel.]

**Havoc.**—1. To *cry havoc*: (V. I.) *Fig.* To order general destruction without mercy. To declare that no quarter should be given. [See the quotation under "Dogs of War."]

This quarry (pile of corpses) *cries on havoc*—SHAK (H.)

## Havoc

## Hazard

2. *To play havoc or To make havoc* = To cause general destruction.

The French are playing havoc with their superior artillery. — I. REVIEW.

**Hawk.** *To know a hawk from a heron* (hernshaw or handsaw): To be in full possession of one's senses: (From the sport of hawking)

I am, but mad north-north-west: when the wind is southerly I *know a hawk from a handsaw*. — SHAK (Hamlet.)

[Note the *Fig. Metonymy*—From particular to general.]

**Cp.** To be wide-awake.

**Hay.**—1. *To make hay while the sun shines*: To seize the favourable opportunity.

The American shipowners are trying to *make hay while the sun shines*—They seem to be charging exorbitant freights.

**Cp.** (*Lat*) Car-pe-diem (*lit* enjoy the day).

To line one's nest while feathers fly.

2. *To look for a needle in a bottle (or bundle) of hay*: [See Bottle.]

3. The naughty imp *made hay* of my things: threw into confusion.

**Hazard.**—1. *At all hazards*: (adv.) whatever the risk may be.

1A. *At hazard*: In a game at dice or similar other games where the chances of gain or loss are most uncertain.

One night at New-market the fifth Duke of Bedford lost a colossal sum *at hazard*.

In olden times it was the common practice to make divination by certain references *at hazard* to pages, lines, or verses of the Bible.

2. I will *run the hazard* of a statement: (V. T.) venture on.

3. *To stand the hazard* of the die. — SHAK.

CP Hit or Miss (adj.)

**Head.—1.** *Above one's head*: (adv.) Beyond his comprehension.

If the lectures are *above his* (school pupil's) *head* he has to resort to text books and memorizing.—SIR J. MESTON.

So, talk *over one's head*.

**2.** The danger *hangs over my head*: Is impending.

**3.** He bought that property *over my head*: (adv.) in disregard of my prior or *superior* right.

So, A person is promoted *over the head* of another,]

The Council of state will even pass them (certain measures) at the bidding of the Governor-General *over the head* of the Legislative Assembly.

**4.** The old man *has a head on his shoulders*: Is discreet enough.

Beware of substituting "over" for "on".

**5.** To *take a thing into one's head*: To conceive the idea of it.

**6.** A person *keeps his head* in a disturbance or turmoil: Remains calm; Is not flurried.

**Contra**: To lose one's head; To be *off one's head* = (crazy).

Lord Clarendon lost his head in Ireland.—TIMES.

**6A.** To *keep one's head above water*: [*Lit.* Not to sink or be plunged down]. *Fig.* To remain free from debt.

**7.** I cannot *make head or tail* of what you say: (V. T.) understand [Note the Singular number without indef. article.]

**7A.** *Heads I win, tails you lose* [A lottery expression from the image of head on one side of coin]. If the coin falls (often being tossed in the air) with the head-side I win, if with the opposite or tail side, you lose. [used of contingency in which one party must win, and the other must lose which ever way the event may be.]

**Cp.** Cross or pile. (obverse or Reverse).

**8.** A horse is said to *eat his head off* when he gives little work.

[Used figuratively of a person making no exertion to earn his livelihood.

**9.** To *talk a person's head off*: To talk (V. I.) so as to weary him. To bore him.

**10.** To introduce (a thing or irrelevant matter) *by the head and ears*: (adv.) Forcibly.

He dragged in that story by the head and ears.

**10A.** He is *over head and ears* in debt, love etc: (adv.) deeply (immersed); Completely.

**11.** To *give a horse his head*: free him from restraint by loosening the reins. [Head = freedom.]

So, (Fig.) To *let a person have his head*.

**12.** To *make head against* (any opposed force, e. g. current etc): (V. T.) To advance or press forward in spite of (the resistance); To resist successfully.

**Cp.** To buffet the waves,

So, To *make headway*: (V. I.) To advance; To progress.

For a time they suffered much persecution, but gradually *made head way* by their zeal and sincerity.—TIMES.

**13.** The *boil came to a head*: (V. I.) gathered; developed purulent swelling.

["Gathered to a head" is also used.]

(Fig.) A matter, discussion or plot *comes to a head*: takes a serious development or a critical turn; reaches the culminating point.

The estrangement between Her Majesty and her ex-premier (Mr. Gladstone) *came to a head* during the prominence of the Eastern Question in 1876-79.—RUSSELL.

So, (V. T.) To *bring a matter to a head*.

14. The *head and front* of a matter : (n.) That which gives the greatest *prominence* or importance to it. [See Front]

15. To turn a thing *head over heels* : (adv.) Topsy-turvy. Upside down

16. To *lay heads together* : (V. I.) Confer ; consult together.

**Heap.** *All of a heap.* (adv.) Completely ; altogether.

He was struck *all of a heap*, i. e. thrown into complete mental prostration.

On that firing the general went down *all of a heap*.—HAGGARD.

**Hear**—1. To *hear a person out* : To give him a hearing until he finishes.

2. *Within hearing* : (pred. adj.) near enough to hear or to be heard. So, Hearing distance.

**Heart.**—1. *Heart-ache* : anguish of mind : deep sorrow.

2. *Heart burning* : Discontent and jealousy ; secret enmity.

This introduction of a foreign element into the office caused great *heart-burning* among the junior clerks.

3. *Heart-whole* : (pred. adj.) Not affected with love ; Having the heart unengaged. Most sincere.

3A. *Heart-sick* : (pred. adj.) depressed and despondent through continuous trouble. Cp. Out of heart.

4. He took up the matter *Heart and soul* : (adv.) With energy and devotion.

Mr. Bright flung himself *heart and soul* into the corn (league) agitation.

Cp. Nothing loth.

4A. *Heart in hand* : (adv.) With right good will,

Enthusiastically. Cp. Heart and hand,

5. *After one's own heart* : (adj.) Just as one would desire or like to have ; To one's great liking ; Dear.

In Dante Gladstone found a poet *after his own heart*.—RUSSELL.

5A. *Nearest one's heart* : (adj.) dearest to one.

Of all Shakespeare's Fools Lear's Fool was *nearest his heart* —DOWDEN.

[“ Nearest ” though an adj. has a prepositional force.]

5B. A thing *lies nearest to one's heart* : affects him deeply.

6. *At heart* : (adv.) In his inmost disposition, He is charitable *at heart* i. e. charitably disposed. [No article or possessive]

Cp. *At bottom*.

7. *To have a thing at heart* : To take warm and sincere interest in it.

I always *had at heart* the welfare of the graduates turned out by the college.

8. *Cannot find it in my heart* (to do etc.) : To be not willing or disposed. *Cannot prevail on myself to do etc.*

Purist as I am, I *cannot find it in my heart* to condemn the winner (in a bet).—RUSSELL

9. *In heart* : (Pred. adj.) in good spirits. [No article or possessive]

Contra. *Out of heart* : in low spirits.

So, *In one's heart of hearts* : In the inmost recesses of the heart. In the inmost feelings though secret or hidden.

*In his heart of hearts* he was afraid that he would fall into the clutches of law.

Give me that man

That is not passion's slave, and I will wear him.

In my heart's core, ay, *in my heart of hearts* SHAK (H.)

10. To get, learn, or say a thing *by heart*, i. e. from memory. To commit it to memory ; To con it. To memorize it; To reproduce it from memory.

To learn Psalter *by heart* was, in monastic life, the first duty of a novice.—PROTHERO,

11. To have one's heart in his mouth : To be violently frightened. So, one's heart leaping into his mouth : greatly alarmed or startled.

Also, with one's heart leaping within him.

On the hilltop, in the crisp mountain air, respite from his cares, surrounded by the simplicities of life and the charms of nature, the old man's heart leaped within him (Anselm) — PROTHERO

12. It does my heart good = rejoices me.

1<sup>st</sup> A. To set the heart upon a thing : To long for it earnestly ; To strive for it.

13. To take heart (or courage) : (V. I.) To feel encouraged or confident.

Cp. To Cheer up.

14. To take heart of grace : To feel one's courage revive, (as if by the grace of God )

Cp. To pluck up courage.

15. To take a thing to heart : To be keenly or deeply affected by it.

Cp. To eat one's heart out = To pine away from vexation. (V. I.)

16. To lay a thing to heart : To think it over seriously.

You have not learned the lessons which a wise man would lay to heart.

'Hide thy life' was a precept which English aristocracy laid thoroughly to heart. — RUSSELL.

As to the difference in use between "shall" and "will" lay to heart the Irishman's excited cry :—"I will be drowned in the Thames, and no body shall save me!!" [The auxiliaries wrongly interchanged gave the sense just opposite to the speaker's intention]

[Note the omission of the article or the possessive in the above].

17. To carry or wear one's heart upon his sleeve : To show one's feeling openly, i. e. to every one, to all and sundry. To lack proper reserve.

But I will wear my heart upon my sleeve  
For daws to peck at. — SHAKESPEARE.



18. I am *heartily* sick of this affair : *very* much tired of it ; quite disgusted with it.

**Heaven.** 1. *In the seventh heaven* : (pred. adj.) In a state of extreme happiness. [Habitation of God and his angels.]

Also, in the third heaven.

Cp. Bowers of bliss ; Garden of the Hesperides.

2. *By heavens* or *Good heavens*. (Interjection). What a great surprise.

**Heavy.** 1 *Heavy metal*. (*Figuratively* used for) formidable opponents.

2. *Heavy in hand* : (adj.) *Lit.* used of a horse that bears or hangs on bit. (*Fig*) of a person that is lacking verve, energy or enthusiasm ; hard to entertain ; hence, dull.

Also, *Heavy on hand*.

3. *Time hangs heavy on one's hands* : passes slowly.

4. *Heavy-laden* : (pred. rdj.) weighed down with trouble sorrow, weariness, and the like.

So, a heavy fate, heavy-hearted, heavy news &c. (*Fig*)  
Heavy sky = lowering sky.

**Hedge.** 1. *To hedge in* (ground, land, garden &c.) : To surround with hedge : To hem in.

So, *to hedge off* : To separate by fencing. To fence off.

2. *To hedge a bet* : To bet on both sides as a safeguard against great loss.

**Heel.**—1. *At, on or upon the heels of* : (adj or adv.) : (as a fellower) following hard ; (as sycophant) attending closely.

Cæsar with a senate at his heels.—Pope.

2. *To tread upon the heels of one* : To follow close behind him.

One woe doth tread upon another's heels,—SHAK, I. e. misfortune never comes single.

- \* Thus grief still treads upon the heels of pleasure.—CONGREVE,  
Joy treads upon the heels of sorrow.

So, To follow at or upon the heels of.

We followed closely at his heels with the hope of outstripping him—

Cp. To follow as a shadow ; To hang on the skirts of.

Also, To come upon the heels of one.

3. To turn on one's heels : To turn sharply round (V. I.)

4. To take to one's heels : (V. I.) To run away quickly.

To flee. To abscond.

Cp. Take to flight. To show a clean (or light) pair of heels.

5. To get the heels of one : To outstrip him.

So, To show one's heels to another.

6. To be down at heel : [note the singular] (adj.) Lie. slipshod. Hence, in decayed circumstances.

Cp. Out at heels.

7. To lay (a person) by the heels. (V. T.) To imprison him. So, To clap a person by the heels.

(Fig.) in the passive form (pred. adj.). Prostrated.

8. Heels over head (or head over heels) : (adv.) upside down as in a somersault. Topsy-turvy.

9. To heel over, (V. I.) To lean over (as a ship) to one side.

10. To cool one's heels (V. I.) To be kept waiting for a long time.

So, To kick one's heels (= To stand waiting).

Help.—1. There is no help for it : This cannot be remedied or prevented.

2. To help a lame dog over the stile,—Be friend in need.

**Helter.** (To<sup>o</sup> run, go, fly) *Helter-skelter*: (adv.) In hurry and confusion.

Cp. Higgledy—piggledy.

**Hen.**—1. *Hen-hearted*: (adj.) pusillanimous. Cowardly.

2. *Hen-pecked* (husband): (adj.) dominated over by his wife.

Cp. The grey mare is the better horse. Also, Petty-coat Government.

3. To *sell one's hens of a rainy day*: (Fig.) To sell one's wares at a considerable disadvantage or loss.

**Here.**—1. (Scattered) *here and there*: in several or various places.

Gold is found more or less in all parts of the world, though only *here and there* in such quantities as will pay for its getting,—CRC.

2. *Here, there, and every where*: (Pred. adj.) Ubiquitous (Lat.) *Hic et ubique*.

3. *Here and every where* i. e. every where; all about.

4. (Negative) *Neither here nor there*: (Pred. adj.) of no importance; not to the point.

How we arrived at these results is *neither here nor there*.—LORD CHELMSFORD.

5. *Here today and gone tomorrow*: denoting uncertainty.

**Hermetic.** *Hermetically sealed* or (closed): (adj.) closed air-tight by fusing the edges or apertures together.

[From Hermes, an Egyptian of the 2nd century, supposed to have written 42 books devoted to religion and the occult sciences which were always kept under secret guard.]

He had been eight years upon a project for extracting sun-beams out of cucumbers which were to be put in phials *hermetically sealed* and let out to warm the air in raw inclement summers.—GULIARVA'S TRAVELS.

**Herod.** To out-hered *Herod*: To outdo Herod in fury or wickedness. [See Out].

**Hesitate.**—1 To *hesitate* to do a thing: To be reluctant.

2. To *hesitate* in doing a thing: To be indecisive about it.

[This gerundial form connotes indecision of the act; but (1) the infinitive form does not.]

**Hew** *Hewers of wood and drawers of water*: Workmen in the primitive stage of the world. Hence, labouring men generally; Drudges.

Indians can no longer be treated as *hewers of wood and drawers of water* for the foreign conquerors.—Mr. CHAMBERLAIN.

Our administrative and military talents must gradually disappear owing to sheer disuse, till at last our lot as *hewers of wood and drawers of water* in our own country is stereotyped.—G. K. GOKHALE.

**Hey-day.** The *Hey day* (of youth, enjoyment, prosperity, and the like). The period of fullest vigour; Flush.

In the *hey-day* of youthful ardour how many faults we commit.

Now is the *hey day* of the self-advertiser, the charlatan, and the pretender.—ROSELL.

Cp. The spring-time of life.

**Hic.** *Hic jacet.* (Lat. = Here lies): Beginning of most inscriptions on tombs-stones. Hence, epitaph.

[Fig. from part to the whole]

May no rude hand deface it,

And its forlorn *hic jacet*.—WORDSWORTH.

Cp. *Hic sepultus* = Here buried; (Lat) *In memoriam* = In memory of.

**Hide**—1. A *hide-bound person* is one intensely bigotted, obstinate, and stupid; narrow minded. [*Lit.*, used of animals having the skin morbidly tight on the body]

A top-heavy bureaucratic hierarchy, Byzantine in method, if not in spirit, *hide-bound* by precedent and theory, detached from practical conditions, mechanical, and doctrinaire.—FROWER.

Cp. *Pachydermatous* = Thick skinned; (Fig) not sensitive to ridicule, rebuff, abuse, or sarcasm.

2. To *hide one's diminished head*: To keep out of sight for shame.

.....At whose sight all the stars

Hide their diminished heads.—MILTON.

**High**.—1. On *high*: (adv.) In or to heaven or any lofty position, e. g. Jehovah sits *on high* or looks from *on high* (n.)

The lark mounts up *on high*.—SHAK.

2. (A ship is taken) *High and dry*: (adv.) to a high place so that water does not touch it; out of the reach of the current or waves. *Fig.* used of persons as pred = out of the current of events.

3. *High days and holidays*: Festal days; galadays.

4. *High jinks*: Rollicking or uproarious fun: Boisterous play or jollity. Horse-play.

Cp. Saturnalia (= boisterous revelry).

5. *High life*: The style of living of the upper classes.

Hence, High living = Feeding upon rich and expensive food

So much for *High Life* at the close of the 18th century.—RUSSELL.

Contra. Plain living and high thinking = Frugal and philosophic life

6. *The high and mighty*: (n.) men of rank and power.

Also, (adj.) arrogant. So, *High and low* = people of all conditions (n.) All and sundry.

7. *High road*; main public road: one much frequented. (*Fig.*) He is *on the high road to ruin*, pursuing a course which is *sure* to bring on ruin. So, a *high way*.

8. A person is *in high spirits* (pred. adj.); elated or hilarious.

9. *It is high time that (you should etc.)*; Full or complete time; The time is far advanced for action, e. g. *It is high time to go*.

*It is high time* that we should be setting out.

It is *high time* that Parliament began to take the affairs of India seriously.—M. GUARDIAN.

[ Note the subjunctive past "began" in the clause introduced by "It is high time" in the last quotation.]

It is *high time* for the allies to take steps to protect themselves against such an eventuality (a war of commerce)—PIONEER.

10. *High words were exchanged* between us: very angry or heated altercation; Wrangling.

Cp. Cross questions and crooked answers.

11. A *high-falutin* (style): Bombastic; Too pretentious.

Next comes "The History of a crime" of the *high falutin* order,—  
ED. REVIEW. Cp. Euphuism.

S., High-flown. High-sounding (language): Heroics (n).

12. To be *on the high horse* } To be overbearing;  
To *mount or ride* one's *high horse* } To assume a lofty  
tone or manner. So, *To be on the high ropes*.

Cp. To stand on one's dignity.

13. (To carry things) *with a high hand*: (adv.) Haughtily.

In an oppressive or overbearing manner; In an inconsiderate manner. [See Hand]

S., *High-handed* (adj.) e. g. A *high-handed* act of Royal Prerogative.  
All the *high-handed* acts of Charles I.—PROTERO.

14. (Come down or fall from one's) *High estate*: rank or position: great possessions.

The great man having *fallen from his high estate* you see his former favourites at once quit his side —DRYDEN.

Hilt. He proved his case *up to the hilt*: (adv.) completely; thoroughly, (i. e. to the furthest degree of *hilt*, the handle being one end of the sword or dagger).

Hip.—1. (To smite) *Hip and thigh* (adv.) Unsparringly;  
(To overcome) completely, i. e. with great slaughter.

2. To *have a person on the hip*: To catch him at a disadvantage. To have advantage over. [*Fig.* from wrestling.] -

If I can catch him once upon the hip,

I will feed fat the ancient grudge I bear him.--SHAK.

Now infidel, I have thee upon the hip.--SHAK (M. V.)

3. *Hip, hip, hurrah*: Exclamation for introducing united cheers.

**Hire.** This set of furniture is on *hire* (pred adj): *ready* to be hired,

**Hit.**—1. To *hit off* (characters quality etc.) (V. T) To imitate to a nicety. [*From to hit a likeness.*] To describe by characteristic hits, i. e. strokes.

The collocation of words happily *hits off* the special quality of his (Birrell's,) conversation—Russell

No doubt Mr. Gladstone *hit off* the truth of the whole matter when he wrote &c.—STATSMAN.

2. We do not *hit it off* together: (V. I.) Agree; Suit each other.

But alas, 't is seldom or never

These two *hit it off* as they should,

The good are so harsh to the clever,

The clever so rude to the good.

So, I do not *hit it off* with him so well as you do. Shakespeare writes "Let us *hit together*," [*It is indefinite.*]

**Cp.** To be of one mind

3. To *hit upon* (a plan, method, or expedient: (V. T.) To get at (a thing aimed at.) To find or discover as *by an accident*.

I can never *hit on*'s name.—SHAK.

4. To *hit out*: To strike out with the fists.

Give me a chap that *hits out* straight from the shoulder.—BANKS.

5. I am *hard hit*. (Passive. Pred. adj.) deeply affected by some trouble (as pecuniary losses etc.); Severely hurt. To hit hard—To strike home; To give home—thrust to.

**Cp.** To *hit or doubt (one) in the eye* : I. e. in the part where he is most sensitive.

Every high-handed act (on the part of Germany) *hits* Russian pride on the raw and hastens the reaction which must come sooner or later.

6. To *hit the right nail on the head* : To say or do the right thing : To guess aright ; Express the exact truth. [See Nail.]

7. To *hit one below the belt* : [See Belt.]

8. *Hit or miss* (stroke, attack, guess etc.) (adj.) : haphazard ; reckless. Also, (adv.) recklessly ; regardless of the result. **Cp.** Sink or Swim.

8a. To *make a hit* (V. I.) Be Successful ; and *to make a miss* = (V. I.) fail.

The slap-dash (impetuous) man frequently *makes a hit* where the methodical person, wedded to rules and axioms, *makes a miss*.—STATSMAN.

**Hobby.** To *ride a hobby* : To follow a favourite object or pursuit. [Fig. from children's riding *hobby horses* at fairs].

A pet theory (= fad)

**Hobson.** *Hobson's choice* : an option in name, but compulsion in reality ; a forced election ; compulsory acceptance of an offer. This or nothing. That or none. No choice at all.

[The reference is to a Cambridge inn-keeper who compelled each customer to take the horse which stood nearest the stable door.]

**Cp.** First come, first served.

Also, Martial Law : "No law at all, but the will of the general."

**Hocus.** *Hocus-pocus* : [Latin imitation]. used as noun, adjective, and V. T. A juggler's trick (n.), deceiving by trick (a). To deceive by tricks (v.)

It appears that the old system of *hocus-pocus* is still to be carried on.

The law is a sort of *hocus-pocus* science that smiles in your face while it picks your pocket ; and the glory of it is of more use to the professors than the justice of it.—CH. MACKLIN.



**C.** "Blind Plaintiff, lame Defendant, share"  
The friendly law's impartial care,  
A shell † for him, a shell for thee, †(i. e. of the disputed oyster).  
The middle is the lawyer's fee.

[This is contracted into the simple word **Hoax**.]

**Cp.** Mare's nest.

**Hog.** To go *the whole hog*: To do any thing thoroughly.

My friend's motto for success is "go the whole hog"

**Cp.** To go all lengths.

As well be hanged for a sheep as for a lamb. (i. e. sin boldly).

**Hoist.** To be *hoist* with one's own petard. The expression is taken from Shakespeare's Hamlet iii. 4:—

For it is the sport to have the engineer

*Hoist with his own petard* Blown into the air by his own engine  
of destruction. i. e. Beaten with the weapons invented by him.

[Note the peculiarity "Hoist" used as p. p]

... .. He is caught.

The wood cock's head in the noose,—Marston (The Malcontent)

**Cp.** 'Vengeance is mine', Shylock had said to himself, and lo! that vengeance has recoiled upon his own head—CHARACTER SKETCHES.

And, in this upshot, purposes *mislook*

Fallen on the inventor's heads.—SHAK (Hamlet).

Also, **Cp** Frankenstein's monster. To be caught in one's own mousetrap. Curses come home to roost.

**Hold.**—1. To *hold back* (V. T): To keep in abeyance; To postpone: To restrain. (V. I) To hesitate; To refrain.

The most eminent psychologists had been advising Government on the most torturous methods of arousing a sense of shame among all who *hold back* (from the War Loan recruitment).

2. To *hold by*: (V. T.) To adhere to (a choice, purpose etc.)

Learn, if you can, to *hold by* or *get back to*, some regard for simplicity of life.—GLADSTONE.

*I hold by nothing here below*  
*Appoint my journey and I go.*—SHAK.

So, To *hold to*.

3. To *hold forth* : (V. I.) To speechify ; To orate [used rather contemptuously].

Itinerant quacks *hold forth* to audience by mounting on benches and platforms.

Their scholars had *held forth* upon the equity of the claim.—TRUMB.

4. To *hold good* : (V. I.) To be valid or applicable ; To apply.

The rule *holds good* in all cases There is no exception to it.

5 To *hold off* : (V. I.) To be aloof. Not to join in any movement.

Pray, do not *hold off* in this emergency.

6. To *hold on* : (V. I.) To continue or last ; To retain grasp on something.

7. To *hold out* : (V. I.) Not to succumb ; To remain firm ; Against such arguments Cæsar is unable to *hold out*.—DEIGHTON.

Also, (V. T.) To offer (hope, inducement, prospect etc.)

8. To *hold over* : To retain or reserve for future use ; To postpone.

We *hold over* the report for our subsequent issue.—ADVOCATE.

8A. To *hold one's own* : To maintain one's position in a competitive struggle.

As the mountaineers *held their own* against trained soldiers, they grew strong in their conviction that God was on their side.—PROTHERO.

So, these grand old crusted superstitions *held their own*.—RUSSELL.

9. To *hold to* : To cling or adhere to.

If he (Lord Churchill) *holds to* his position, the tax must be on its last legs.—GLADSTONE.

10. To *hold up* [V. T.] (to ridicule, abhorrence, opprobrium etc.) : To exhibit.

Every Irish Viceroy is denounced and *held up to the opprobrium* of a fickle and excitable mob. — *Times*.

The object of satire is to *hold up* vice or folly to ridicule and reprobation.

**Cp.** To show up. Also, (V. I.) To keep up one's fortitude.

It is very difficult for a person to *hold up* under such scathing banter.

Again, The weather *held up*, i. e. kept fine.

**11.** To *hold with*: To side with; To stand up for; as in the phrase, "To *hold with* the hare and run with the hounds."

**12.** Not *hold water*: Bear close examination. [Note the application in *negative* sentences].

This your argument will not *hold water*.

How can the equality theory *hold water*? [Here the sentence being Interrogative, the expected answer is in the *negative*.]

**N. B.** No adjective should be placed before "water" as *any*. **Cp.** That argument won't wash. **Contra.** To pass muster.

**13.** To *hold* (any progressive march or movement) in *check*: To control or restrain: To impede the progress of.

**14.** To *hold* (an enemy, opponent etc) in *play*: To keep so engaged or occupied as to divert attention from the real objective.

I with two more to help me will *hold the foe in play*. — *Macaulay*.

**15.** *Neither to hold nor to bind*: (pred. adj.): so highly excited as to be beyond control.

The ringleader of the rebellious students was *neither to hold nor to bind* because an insinuation was made by the Principal against his veracity.

**Hole.**—1. I have got that cunning friend in a *hole*: in an embarrassingly difficult situation. [From *fig* sense of hole = mean abode]

**So,** To *drive into a hole*: To penetrate.

**2.** To *make a hole in*: To perforate: To rend.

Cross examination can make a *hole* in the triple-plated coat of fraud, hypocrisy and cunning.—SIR H. HAWKINS.

3. This statement is a mere *hole to creep out of*: plea or subterfuge. A make-believe.

4. To *pick holes in*: To find fault with.

Our own friends, nay, even sometimes our very selves are cross-examining old watch-words *picking holes in* time-honoured flags.—RUSSELL.

But, To *pick a hole in a person's coat or character*.

Cp. To cavil at.

5. A round peg in a square hole }  
or A square peg in a round hole } These two expressions are used as predicate of a person not fitted for the situation he holds.

Cp. He is out of his element. Not at home. Also, Horse—marines.

Home.—1. (To be or feel) *at home* with a person (pred, adj): Familiar. (*Fig*) On a subject.

Though there was something like half a century's difference in our ages, I *felt* at once and completely *at home* with him.—RUSSELL.

Also, To be at ease as if in one's own house.

Hence, To *make oneself at home*.

2. I shall be *at home* between 8 and 9 a. m. tomorrow, i. e. prepared to receive visitors.

Generally, *to be at home to others*: accessible to them.

3. To *bring (a thing) home to*: (V. T.) To impress upon.

His terrible punishment makes him (Gloucester) more considerate for others, and also *brings home to* him the heinousness of the bags (Lear's first two daughters)—CHARACTER SKETCHES.

4. To bring a *charge home* to a person: To prove it positively against him; To convict him of it. So, to bring a *truth home* to a person is to convince him of it.

That the British Power .....should have resorted to the arbitrary step of interment must be held to be proof of its inability to bring *home* to Mrs. Bessie and her followers charge levelled against them.—I. MARSH.

4. To *bring* oneself *home* again : (V. I.) To regain lost something or status.

5. To *come home* to : (V. I.) To affect a (person) deeply as by touching his conscience or heart—the seat of emotion : To move affectionately.

As life's evening closes round us no words *come home* to us with swifter surer flight than those of the Psalms.—PROTHERO.

6. *Drive your blows home* to one : Press him with questions so that he cannot escape answering definitely.

7. The thrust went *home* : (adv.) To the point aimed at. Hence, a *Hom-thrust* = any thing said to the point ; a close pointed remark.

Also, *Home-truths* : Unpalatable truths about oneself.

'A candid friend' is always glad to tell home-truths.

8. *Home-sick* : (adj.) Having depression of spirits caused by absence from home. Hence, the noun "*Home-sickness*" = Nostalgia. "The anguish of emigrants"

**Homer.** *Homer sometimes nods* : Even the best writer at times makes slips or descends below his ordinary level.

**Honour.**—1 This performance will *do you honour* : win for you general esteem.

2. The citizens came out to *do him honour* : show their due respect for him.

3. To *do the honours* (of the table or the house) : To act the part of the host (or hostess) at an entertainment.

[Note the plural as distinguished from (1) and (2)].

Given to hospitality, Lord Shaftesbury *did the honours* with stately grace—G. W. E. RUSSELL.

3A. He passed his M. A. Examination *with honours* (adv.) In a pre-eminently successful manner ; with distinction.

So, the *honours* of the evening rested with him.

4. A *debt of honour*: one incurred by betting or gambling not recoverable by law, yet binding as involving the debtor's self-respect or his respect from the society to which he belongs. Honorary obligations depending upon honour though not legally enforced.

4A. A *word of honour*: a verbal promise which cannot be broken without social disgrace.

Hence, *upon my honour* (I say), (adv.). on the *pledge* of my own reputation as an upright and truthful man.

So, He is *bound in honour* to do this: it is his moral duty.

Cp To be *on one's honour* to do this: To be under moral obligation.

5. That is a *point of honour* with me: That is a matter to which I scrupulously adhere from a delicacy of feeling or *sense of duty*. That vitally affects my honour.

The traditions of Government require Ministers to vote. It is a *point of honour* for each man to be in as many divisions as possible.—TIMES.

6. A public meeting will be held *in honour of* (a person or event) i. e. to celebrate or do honour to. [See (1)]

{ The Corinthian games were held *in honour of* Neptune.

7. He *is an honour* to his profession, i. e. reflects honour on. (The profession) is held in high respect because of his connection.

8. *More honoured in the breach than the observance* (adj): more honourable to break than to observe.

But to my mind, though I am native here

And to the manner born, it is a custom

*More honoured in the breach than the observance.*—SHAK.

Contra: In the 19th century, some of the gravest of your social offences had clustered round the institution of marriage which was almost much *dishonoured in the observance as in the breach.*—RUSSELL.

**Hope.** To *hope against hope*: To continue to expect when the circumstances are against it.

Who against hope believed in hope.—Rom IV. 5

**Horn.**—1. *The horn of plenty*: The symbol of abundance.

[The allusion is to Jupiter's gift to Amalthæa in return for her having fed him while young with goat's milk.—The horn was to yield her in plenty everything she desired.]

**Cp.** Cornucopia, i. e. overflowing store.

2. *To draw in one's horns*: (*Fig.*) To repress one's ardour. To restrain one's pride. Also, To pull in one's horns.

[The allusion is to the behaviour of a snail in retracting the horns, i. e. feelers or tentacles *when alarmed*]. **Cp.** To draw back,

So, *To lower one's horn*: To humiliate one's self.

**Cp.** To hide one's diminished head. To strike sale,

**Contra**: To lift up *one's* horn on high.—Psalm Lxxv.

His horn is exalted. [Mark the singular form in the two cases.]

3. *To show one's horns*: To betray one's devilish nature.

[The reference is to the picture of the supposed Devil having horns, tail and cloven feet].

**Cp.** The cloven foot.

4. *To be on the horns of a or the dilemma*: (*Fig.*) (pred. adj.) occupying a position which presents two evils.

[Dilemma in logic is an argument from two alternative propositions each of which is equally conclusive against an adversary.]

Half the logic of misgovernment lies in one sophistical dilemma, viz, 'If the people are turbulent, they are unfit for liberty; if they are quiet, they do not ward liberty.'—MACAULAY.

**Cp.** To be in *fix*: Between Scylla and Charybdis.

So, I am landed in a dilemma i. e. confronted with two equally difficult alternatives.

5. *To take the bull by the horn.* [See Bull.]

**Hornet.** To bring a hornet's nest about one's ears : To stir up a host of enemies or hostile critics. So, a wasp's nest.

The victorious party had brought a nice hornet's nest about their ears.—  
HUGHES. [Mark the plurals and the singular "nest"]

**Hors.** (To be laid etc,) *Hors de combat*. Fr. (pred. adj.) Lit. outside of the combat [Hors = outside]. Disabled ; out of the fighting trim.

Success is no longer to be estimated by the territory captured but by the number of enemy placed *hors de combat*.—German optimism.

Cp. Lay by the heels.

**Horse.—1.** A *horse laugh* : A loud coarse laugh.

Cp. Sardonic laugh.

**2** *Horse-play* : rough and boisterous amusement ; Rollicking.

Horse-play loses its relish after childhood.

**3.** *Horse-leech* : a horse-doctor ; a farrier.

**4.** To *flog or mount a dead horse* : To attempt to revive interest in a worn-out cause ; hence, 'To waste energy.

The attempts to revive the agitation over the partition of Bengal are like *flogging a dead horse*.—TIMES.

**4A.** To *work a dead horse* : (V. l.) To work for wages already paid.

**5.** A *dark horse* has won. [See Dark.]

**6.** On one's *high horse* : (pred. adj.) Puffed up.

**7.** To *put the cart before the horse* : [See Cart].

**8.** To *look a gift-horse in the mouth* : To find fault with a gift. Hence, to be ungrateful to the donor.

[The word "gab" is sometimes used for "mouth"]

**Host.—1.** He is a *host* in himself : (pred. adj.) possessed of great skill, power, resources and the like. [Host = any great number].



2. To reckon without one's host. To estimate beforehand the *Landlord's* bill without consulting him. (*Fig.*) To misjudge a situation rashly; To overlook a possible difficulty or opposition.

Napoleon had *reckoned without his host* as regards the position to be assumed by the South German nationalities.—*LONDON NEWS.*

**Hostages.** *Hostages to fortune:* wife, children, and dependants, because they are liable to be lost.

He that has wife and children has given hostages to fortune for they are impediments to great enterprises either of virtue or mischief.—*BACON.*

[Hostage is any person handed over to an enemy as a pledge for the performance of certain conditions 'Fortune' is the enemy here.]

**Hot—1.** *In hot water:* In trouble, disgrace, or scrape (especially when brought about by one's own doing.)

2. He will make it hot for me: make the position uncomfortable for me. ['It' is indefinite for the situation.]

So, He will make it too hot for me: cause the above situation by persecution.

3. I will give it him hot: reprimand him severely.

4. *Hot-bed:* 1st, a bed of earth heated by fermenting substances used for growing early plants. (*Fig.* used in a bad sense for) any place that favours the rapid growth and development (of disease, vice, corruption, intrigue, sedition.)

5. *A hot-spring:* one which spouts forth boiling water: a geyser.

**Hour—1.** *The small hours:* The early hours after midnight such as one, two, three o'clock in the morning.

This voluminous writing kept me up to the small hours.

2. *At the eleventh hour:* (adv.) [See ELEVEN.]

3. *In an evil hour:* At a cursed or unfortunate moment; acting under an unfortunate impulse.

How doth the little busy bee

4. To keep "good (or early) hours: To be at home regularly before the usual hours of retiring to bed.

So, To keep bad (or late) hours.

[The good hours are times for getting up and going to bed

5. To improve the shining hours: To make good use of favourable opportunities.

How doth the little busy bee  
Improve each shining hour,  
and gather honey all the day,  
From every opening flower!—WATTS.

Also, To improve the occasion—Employ it to good purpose (Lat. *Carpe diem*).

C. To make hay while the sun shines.

6. The man of the hour, or the question of the hour (adj.): of importance at the particular period. ["Hour" for a period of time. [Fig. less for the greater.]

House.—1. To keep house: [House = household].

To maintain a separate household or to manage its affairs. [Note—no article before House.]

2. To keep the house: To remain in the house; not to go outdoors.

3. To keep a good house: To provide liberally for eating and drinking.

4. To keep open house: To welcome friends and other callers at meal times. [Note the omission of the article].

5. To bring down the house: To elicit enthusiastic applause at a public meeting, theatre, etc.

6. A house divided against itself: centre of dissension.  
[The house is a house divided against itself.—I. HAYES.  
The house is divided against the state and its interests.]

**7.** (To get <sup>up</sup>) *Like a house on fire*: (Adv.) With very great rapidity or very rapidly; so as to make a rapid progress.

**8.** *To cry or proclaim from the housetops*: (V. T.) To announce to the public.

That I was brought up in poverty and educated myself with earnings from menial work can be *cried from the housetops*—i. e. There is nothing disgraceful in it; on the contrary, there is much in it to be proud of.

**9.** *To set one's house in order*: To set matters straight.

The Government are doing all in their power *to set their house in order*.

**Cp.** To put (matters or things) to rights.

**Contra**: To turn the house out of window.

**10.** *House warming*: A merry making when a family enters a *new* house.

**Hue.** *A hue and cry*: A loud clamour against an offender who is being pursued.

*A hue and cry* hath followed certain men into this house.—SHAK.

Fly, run, *hue and cry*, villain, I am undone—SHAK (M. W.)

Hence, *to raise a hue and cry*.

**Hum.—1** *To hum and haw* (V. I.): To make a drawling sound in speaking.

**2.** *To make things hum*: To cause them to go on briskly or to be in a state of activity.

**Cp.** "The busy *hum* of men"—MILTON (L. Allegro).

So, *Humdrum* (existence): adj. Droning or monotonous.

**Humble.** *To eat humble pie*: (V. I.) To have to take a humble tone. To make an abject apology. [From the *humble* allotted to the servants. Pies are made of the *humbles* i. e. heart, liver, and kidneys].

The tyrant is making France eat humble pie! France is humiliated.

**C.** To eat one's words; To eat dirt.

To eat the *look*; To bite or lick the dust.

**Hundred.** *Great hundred* or *Long hundred*, i. e. 120.

**Hunt.**—1. To *hunt down*: (V. T.) To follow up until captured or beaten.

The regiment earned ill repute for their cruelties in *hunting down* persons suspected of sympathy with Monmouth in the rebellion of 1685.

**Cp.** To bring to bay.

2. To *hunt out*: (V. T.); To find by search.

3. To *hunt up* (a word, or its meaning etc.): (V. T.) To search for.

**Hurly.** *The hurly-burly*: (n.) a great tumult, uproar, or commotion. [A reduplication of *hurly*.]

When the *hurly-burly* is done,

When the battle's lost and won --SHAK (Macbeth).

Amidst all this *hurly-burly* Pitt maintained a stately and cautious reserve. —RUSSELL.

**Hurry.**—1. He did it in a *hurry*: (adv.) with undue haste.

2. To *hurry up*: (V. I.) To make haste.

3. To *hurry off*: To decamp (V. I.)

**Hush.** To *hush up* an affair (or a rumour) which is disgraceful or discreditable: To suppress it; To keep it concealed, or to procure silence about it.

Hence, *Hush money*, i. e. bribe paid to purchase such silence.

**Cp.** To burke inquiry, publicity &c. (i. e. to smother it).

## I

**I.**—1. *Dot your i's and cross your t's*: [a familiar formula for being *scrupulously* accurate.]

Make your meaning clear by filling in details.

While Sir Henry Cotton sat for Nottingham, *Rees dotted all the i's and crossed all the t's* of that now defunct statesman. — E. NORTON. (Looker-on)

It is in the same heroic spirit that the Bengal Conference must address itself to the duty of *dotted the i's and crossing the t's* of the Delhi pronouncement. — STATESMAN.

2. *I* for one do not believe this, i. e. Let others believe, I don't. (I, independently of others.)

If Government is to work out his (the individual man's) vocation for him, *I* for one am not sanguine as to the result. — W. E. GLADSTONE.

[Note the restricted use only in the first person singular.]

**Ice** *To break the ice.* [See Break]

**Ichabod.** To cry *ichabod*: To lament that the glory has departed.

Nobody even in England believes today that a word of the charge of Macaulay [the Bengalees are a timid race quite unfit for military purposes] was founded in truth. The *dark Ichabod* has been wiped off our face for ever. — SIR K. G. GUPTA

When the Reform Bill of 1832 received the Royal Assent, the Lord Bathurst of the period, who had been a member of the Duke of Wellington's Cabinet, solemnly cut off his pigtail, saying, "*Ichabod*, for the glory is departed" — G. W. E. RUSSELL.

There is a comparative paucity of modern specimens which display quite the high artistic standard of the more antique exemplars, but that there is no cause to cry *Ichabod* was amply shown by these examples of contemporary arts and crafts of which the permanent section mainly consists. — D. TELFORD.

**If.—1.** *If I only knew!* This exclamatory use of an adverbial antecedent clause without being followed by the expected consequent principal clause (apodosis) means "I wish I knew."

2. *As if*: A contraction for "As the case would be if etc." A supposition contrary to fact. [see *As*].

We make guilty of our disasters the sun, the moon, and the stars; as if we were villains by necessity; fools by heavenly compulsion. — SHAK.

3. *As if you did not know* (used without the antecedent clause, i. e. protasis): you know quite well.<sup>1</sup>

**Ilk.**—1. *of this ilk* or *of that ilk*: (adj) of the same place (used after the name of a land-owner to denote that his surname and the name of his estate are the same), e. g. Burleigh of that ilk, i. e. Lord Burleigh.

2. *Men of that ilk*: similar; of that sort or set. [Rather vulgar]. Cp. *Of that kidney*.

**Ill.**—1. *I am ill of fever*: (adj. pred.) Out of health as suffering from. Also, *I am taken ill*.

2. *I am ill at ease*: (pred. adj.) not perfectly at ease, i. e. uneasy or embarrassed.

When he goes out among crows and other birds, they hunt him and strike him with their beaks and he is *ill at ease*.—B. ANSELM.

Cp. *Malaise* (noun) = Mal + ease.

3. *It will go ill with you*: produce results unfavourable to; cause misfortune to.

4. *He took my remarks ill*: was offended by them; resented them.

But, in the passive form with personal nominative *I was taken ill* = I fell sick.

*I was now living in Bond street and for the first time in my life was taken seriously ill*.—SIR H. HAWKINS.

4A. *There is ill-blood between us*: animosity, great enmity.

4B. *He has done me an ill-turn*: disservice; unkind or injurious act; harm.

5. *Ill-natured* or *ill-tempered* (adj.) cross, peevish, surly; waspish; Cantankerous.

6. *Ill-timed* (request, application remark etc.): (adj)

made or presented at an unsuitable time ; Inopportune. Mal-a-propos. (Fr.)

7 *Ill omened or ill-starred* (movement, project, adventure etc). Inauspicious, unlucky, unfortunate. So, ill-fated.

8. *Ill weeds grow apace* (prov.) : Influence of harmful and mischievous men works rapidly

9 *It is an ill wind that blows no body good* : An event, however disastrous *generally*, proves advantageous to *particular* individuals, e. g. an epidemic puts money into the pockets of doctors, A great famine in one country enriches merchants of another. Periods of heavy Income Tax give unprincipled assessors occasion to take large bribes. The Great War has profited Japan. Bank-failures are occasions for huge remuneration to Liquidators.

Except wind stands as never it stood

It is an ill wind turns none to good —TUSSEER.

Ill blows the wind that profits no body —SHAK.

~~For~~ Indian students for the first time coming across this idiomatic proverb not only fail to catch its meaning, but are apt to give it the exactly opposite sense. The error arises from the negative character of the sentence disguised as affirmative. The following logical analysis may take off the delusion. —The expression is an E proposition equivalent to

No every-body doing good winds are ill winds (E).

Contrase No ill winds are every-body-doing-good —(E).

Obverse All ill winds are not every-body-doing-good (A)

i. e. some-body doing good.

N. B. The peculiarity of this paradigmatic expression lies in the *affirmative* principal clause of a complex sentence being qualified by a *negative* adjective clause with the relative pronoun. Other examples are :—

" It is a long lane that has no turning "

The night is long that never finds the day.—SHAK.

(p). Every cloud has a silver lining. [applicable to individual units]

**Contra :** Every partial evil is universal good.—FORB.

**Impose.** To *impose upon* a person : (V. T.) To practise deception upon him. To illude. A person easily *imposed upon* is facetiously called 'a gudgeon.' [From the sense of this combination we have the noun *Imposture*. But when the combination is not real, as in the third quotation, the noun is *imposition* :

It is one of those antitheses which make non-sense wear the aspect of sense and so *impose on* the unwary.—RUSSELL.

There is no quackery in medicine, religion, or politics which may not *impose* even on a powerful mind, when that mind has been disordered by pain or fear.—MACAULAY.

Let it continue the Hardinge policy of trusting in the people and *imposing* upon them the sobering responsibilities of Self-Government.—CHAMBERLAIN.

**Improve.—1.** To *improve upon* a thing : To make (it) better by additions or amendments. To better ; To meliorate.

Davenant's impertinence led him to believe that he could *improve upon* Shakespeare.—DRAUGHTON.

It will be strange if I do not *improve upon* the lesson.—IBID.

You have *improved* so *upon* the old days.—A. TROLLOPE.

**2.** To *improve the occasion* : To point a moral or lesson from.

Holmes, who was one of the best boys in the school, began to *improve the occasion* —HUGHES.

**Cp.** To improve the shining hours. [See Hour].

[Note. "To improve" does not necessarily imply something *previously wrong* as "to amend" does.]

**In —1.** *In as much as* : (conj.) Since ; because ; Seeing that ; considering that.

**Cp.** In that. (For the reason that).

**2.** I was *in for it* : (pred. adj.) : committed to it.

["It" is indefinite for an unpleasant situation]. Also,



Engaged in competition. [It = race, prize etc.]

I am *in for* the prize and will not draw back.

**3.** To *be in with a person*: To be *intimate* or *too friendly* with him.

So, To *keep in* (V. I.) *with a person*: To continue intimacy with him.

I am in this indelicate position because I *have been* too long *in with* that unprincipled atheist.

**4.** The *ins and outs* of a thing: (noun) All the details and intricacies of a matter. Items.

In those scanty and imperfect fragments not a little may be learnt of the *ins and outs* of his mind.—TIMES.

Cp. The turnings and windings. Nooks and corners.

**5.** (If you are) *in for a penny*, (you are) *in for a pound*: It is all the same whether the responsibilities of the situation accepted are small or great. Things once begun must be concluded at all costs or at all hazards.

Cp. As well be hanged for a sheep as for a lamb.

**Ingratiate.** To *ingratiate oneself with a person*: To introduce oneself to his good-will or kindness.

**Inch.—1.** He is *every inch* a king: (adv.) even in little matters.

**2** The allies are gaining ground *by inches*: (adv.) Little by little; Bit by bit; slowly. So, He is dying *by inches*.

Cp. By inchmeal. Make him (Prospero) *by inchmeal* a disease.—SHAK.

(P. O. our lives' sweetness!

That we the pain of death *would hourly die*,

Rather than die at once.—SHAK,

**3.** *Give an inch and take an ell* (i. e. 45 inches) Give a little and take (45 times as) much.

Cp. Give a sprat to catch a herring, or to Throw a sprat to catch a whale.

**Indian.**—1. (To walk) in *Indian file*: in single file, i. e. each person following another in a long row. †

2. *Indian Nabob*: A wealthy East Indian, who having resided in the Orient returns to England with great competence and *irascibility* of disposition.

*The Indian Nabobs*, as they were called, became a recognised and powerful element in society and their habits of "Asiatic luxury" are represented by Chatham, Burke, Voltaire, and Horne Tooke as producing a marked effect upon the social life of the time.—RUSSELL.

**Initiative.**—1. I took the *initiative* by subscribing Rs. 200 to the Building Fund of the school: I took the introductory or first step To begin a work.

**Cp.** To take the lead. Beware of using the verb "give" instead of "take."]

2. To *have the initiative*: To possess the power or right of taking the lead.

In Switzerland the citizens *have the initiative*. in legislation.

3. *On the initiative of*: Under the lead taken by.

In the neighbourhood of the town he (Jesus) was acknowledged as Messiah by a few adherents *on the initiative of* Peter.—MOD. REVIEW.

So, *on one's own initiative*.

**Inquire.**—1. We *inquire* (*V. I.*) into a matter: Put questions about it and thus find what it is in all its bearings. To make search of it; To investigate; To sift.

2. To *inquire of* a person (*about* or *after* a thing): To seek information from him.

[The above are the intransitive uses of the verb—But note the following transitive use as *exception*. Let us *inquire* the method of his working]

**Insinuate.** To *insinuate oneself into another's favour*: To gain it by *subtle* or *artful* means. [See Ingratiate.]

**Cp.** To creep into favour; To worm oneself into favour. Similarly, To *insinuate a person into an office*: To introduce him gradually and *artfully*.

**Insist.** *To insist on a thing* (V. T.): To demand it persistently. [The prep "on" is the means of converting a noun-clause with "that" into a phrase.]

The abolition of fees should be *insisted on as a necessary condition* of aid.—H. D. TAYLOR.

Her Majesty *insisted on a categorical answer*.—RUSSELL.

**Cp.** To be a stickler for.

**Instance.**—1. *At the instance of*: (adv.) as an urgent demand from.

Palmerstone's contumacy was the last straw and he was *at the Queen's instance* dismissed from the Foreign office.—RUSSELL.

2. *For instance*: (adv) as an illustrative example. e. g.

**Intent.** *To all intents and purposes*: (adv.) In all applications and senses; (Hence) Practically; Virtually; really.

Rumania, *to all intents and purposes*, is more or less in concert with the *Entente Powers*.—L. REVIEW. **Cp.** As good as.

**Interest**—1. I secured the office *by interest*: by means of my *influence* with some person in power.

2. *To make interest with a person*: To make personal interest bear with him.

3 *To repay an injury with interest* [Fig. from discharge of a debt]; with something *in addition*.

4. *To be interested in a matter*: concerned in it; private advantage being involved in it.

[Differentiate between "*In one's interest*" and "*To one's interest*." The use depends on the connecting verb—e. g. Government will *in their own interest seek* the co-operation of the people; But Government will *find it to their own interest to* etc. The latter connotes advantageous consequence as clearly realized.] \*

**Interval.**—1. *At intervals*: (adv.) Now and then; (also) Here and there.

2. *By a long interval.* By a long time or space. (*Lat* Longo intervallo).

The "Concise Dictionary" stands first—and by a long interval—among all the one volume English Dictionaries hitherto published.—ACADEMY.

**Invidious.** To make invidious distinctions: To act towards some persons with special favour and thus cause offence to others; To give offence by injustice.

Similarly, It is not *invidious to mention* (certain names).

**Iipse.** *The ipse dixit:* (*Lat*) "He himself said it": (n.) A confident or authoritative assertion without reason or argumentation. Dogmatism.

What a number of innocent <sup>\*</sup> people are being interned on the mere *ipse dixit* of the C, I D. officers!!

**Ipsso** *Ipsso facto* (adv.) By the fact itself. By that mere fact. [This is applicable to most immediate inferences of logic.

He is a loyal subject of the king, *ipso facto* the charge of disloyalty brought against him is absurd.]

**Iron.**—1. *The Iron age:* (*Lit.*) The period when primitive man made and used weapons and implements made from iron.

(*Fig.*) Period when cruelty, oppression, outrage, and the like prevail = the *kali yuga* of the Hindus.

2. To put a person in irons: (V. T.) To put fetters on him.

3. He has many (or too many) irons in the fire: i. e. is engaged in (too) many undertakings.

Trying to do too many things at once.

4. He ruled with a rod of iron: with great severity. So, *Iron law.*

Carlyle's insistence on the moral dignity and destiny of man created new standards as the tests of economic questions, and humanized the iron laws of supply and demand.—PROTHERO.

5. *To strike while the iron is hot*: Act with promptness and energy at a good opportunity; To avail oneself of a favourable opportunity.

**Cp.** To take time by the forelock.

6. *The iron entered into his soul*. [A Biblical expression taken from Prov. v.] Great grief, sorrow, or trouble had come upon him.

[An interchange of the substantives of the original passage 'His soul entered into the iron' i. e. fetters=The soul loses its freedom in the enjoyment of eternal bliss by being forced into bondage.]

**Irony.** *Irony of fate*. [From *irony*, figure of speech where the real meaning is contradictory to the expression]

An occurrence or result contrary to and in-mockery of a pre-ordained destiny calculated upon the supposed justice of natural or divine law. An ordaining of the very contrary of what was expected.

The Pandits know what the word frog in the well stands for as it was coined in their own mint and it is a *sad irony of fate* that the best illustration of the idea should, at the present day, be furnished by themselves. M. R.

It has often struck me as *curious irony of fate* that Europeans should now and then come forward to instruct us in the nobleness of loving learning for learning's sake.—JUSTICE A. RAHM.

**Issue.**—1. This is the point *at issue*: (adj.) in dispute; disputed.

2. We are *at issue* on this point: (pred. adj.) of different opinion; disagreeing.

3. The matter will be disastrous *in the issue*: in the final result. **Cp.** As things turn out.

4. I join *issue with you* (V. T.) Take opposite views (on a point in debate), one affirming the positive and the other upholding the negative.

We are compelled to *join issue* with the President of the congress.—

Dr. Pusey had read more than any body there (in Theology), and it is hard to *join issue* with a man who knows, so to speak, more of the country to be fought over,—TIMES.

So, we *joined issues* (V. I.). We *took issues* [plural number]

**Ivory.** (Dreams, hopes etc.) *pass through the ivory gate* : Not come true ; are falsified. [Allusion to the old belief that there are two gates in the nether world—one of gold and the other of ivory—through which all dreams pass to the Upper World.]

Their (the Liberals') dream of an independent majority had *glided away through the ivory gate*.—TIMES OF INDIA.

**Contra** : The gold gate.

## J.

**Jack.** A familiar substitute for the common Englishman's name John : much used to form colloquial compounds as *Jack-a-dandy* for dandy, *Jack-daw* for daw.

1. A *jack-in-office*. A vain *petty* official : a consequential sort of fellow in the discharge of his *petty* duties.

**Cp.** A fly on the wheel.—also, 'To give oneself airs.

2. A *jack of all trades* : One that can turn his hand to any kind of business ; A dabbler in many kinds of work.

**Cp.** The proverb "Jack of all trades, master of none."

*Facetiously* substituted by "Versatile."

Also, "The Admirable Crichton" [assassinated when only 22 years of age.]

3. A *Jack with a lantern*, or a *jack-o'-lantern* : An ignis-fatuus,—Will-o'-the-wisp.

4. A *jack-daw in peacock's feathers* : One appearing in borrowed plumes. [Taken from a well-known fable.]

**Cp.** An ass in lion's skin. (One dressed in borrowed robes.)

**5.** *A jack pudding*: A clown: a buffoon. A merry-andrew.

**Jacket.** **1.** *In jackets*: (Pred. adj.) (Fig.) in infancy, mere boy.

Canning and Gladstone were politicians while they were *in jackets*.—TIMES.

**Cp.** In petticoats.

**2.** *To dust one's Jacket*: To beat him.

**Jeunesse** *Jeunesse doree* (Fr.): young men "about town" remarkable for their luxurious habits. Panjandrum [used as plural.]

**Cp.** The Gilded youth.

**Job.** **1.** *Job lot*: A miscellaneous collection of goods bought as speculation.

**2.** *Job-price*: cheap price.

**3.** *This was a bad job*: An unfortunate state of things or business.—so, a hopeless job. A tough job.

**Contra**: a good job = a lucky affair.

**4.** The man was employed for doing *odd jobs*: occasional pieces of work of miscellaneous kinds.

**4A.** *To do a person's job*: To ruin him.

**So,** *To do the job for him*. To kill him.

**5.** *Job's comforter*: One who pretends to sympathize with you, but attributes your misfortune to your own misdeeds.

[The reference is to the Book of Job in the Bible. The Patriarch Job was *typical of patience* under trying circumstances and great afflictions. His three friends coming to comfort him in his distress only reproached him. Hence, *Job's comfort* = Really no comfort but aggravation of sorrow causing bitterness and irritation.]

**Cp.** Patience on a monument,

Sovereign o'er transmuted ill.

**John.** **1.** *John Bull*: The typical figure of an Englishman, "bluff, big, and burly". [From Arthbutnot's History of that name.]

Ignorance of his neighbours is the character of the typical *John Bull*. 'Fat man with a white hat in the two-penny omnibus.'—LORD PALMERSTONE.

**2 Johnny-raw:** (a) A new hand in any business, a novice; a greenhorn; an acolyte. [a nickname.]

**Joint. 1. Out of joint:** (Pred. adj.). Utterly disordered or dislocated; disorganised; also, anomalous. [Metaphor from a bone which has slipped from its proper juncture with another bone, or from clock mechanism].

The time is *out of joint*, O cursed spite,  
That ever I was born to set it right.—SHAK (Hamlet.)

**Cp.** We are fallen on evil times.

**2. To put one's nose out of joint:** [see Nose].

**Joke. 1.** The remark was made *in joke*: (adv.) jocosely, in jest; not in earnest; with no serious intention.

**2. A practical joke:** A trick played on some one to the injury or annoyance of his *person*, e. g. Pinching, secret removal of the paper which is being written upon.

Even *practical jokes* are very capital in their way, if you can only get the other party to see the fun of them.—DICKENS.

To play *practical jokes* = 'to bullyrag.

**3. To crack a joke:** To make a witty or laughable remark.

**Judas. 1. Judas' kiss:** A betrayal under the semblance of friendship. A treachery during friendship.

[From the false disciple who betrayed Christ].

**Cp.** Punic faith = faithlessness.

**2. Judas' hole:** A peephole in door; a small hole for peeping into a room without the knowledge of those within it.

**Cp.** Eavesdroppers stand *under the eaves* to listen to secrets.

**Judge. 1.** We *judge* (V. T.) a person *by* his acts, i. e. form an opinion about him. We *judge* a matter *on* its merits.

**Cp.** To decide on.



**2.** Two persons were commissioned to *judge* the cause (V. T.) i. e., to try it.

**3.** We do not feel competent to *judge of* these questions i. e. To decide them ; We are no good judges of them.

**N. B.**—"on" must not be used for "of"—But change the verb into the noun and we have "we do not feel competent to pass judgment on these questions."

**3A.** This is a *judgment* on you for speculating too much, i. e. God's judgment or divine punishment,

**4.** To *sit in Judgment upon* a person : To judge or criticise (used in an adverse sense )

**Jump.** **1.** To *jump at* an offer or a bargain : To embrace it eagerly (rather colloquial) ; so, To *jump at* an opportunity : To seize it eagerly.

**2.** To *jump to a conclusion* : To form an opinion hurriedly. [The prep "at" is also used instead of "to"]

**3.** To *jump (V. T.) a claim* : To seize upon it *by force*.

**4.** *At one jump.* (adv.) Instantaneously. In less than no time. In a trice.

**Cp** At one fell swoop —SHAK.

**Justice.** **1.** To *do one justice*. [Here "do" is a double object verb]. To give him what is his due ; To accord him a fair treatment ; To show due appreciation of him.

Hence, the adverbial expression : *In justice to him*.

**2.** To *do oneself justice* : To perform a thing worthily of his abilities.

**3.** *Justice's Justice* : an expression used in derision of the justice administered by Justices of the Peace which at times is revolting to common sense.

**4.** *Retributive justice* : A misfortune viewed as punishment dealt by God ; Divine visitation.

This is personified by *Nemesis*, a female Greek Divinity—goddess of revenge.

Death remains the fatal bar to all complete satisfaction, the disturber of all great plans, the *Nemesis* of all great happiness, the standing dire discouragement of human nature.—ECCLES HOMO.

Shamefaced Liberals found themselves dogged by the inexorable *Nemesis* which waits on the abandonment of political principles,—RUSSELL.

**Cp** The Furies. The Eumenides of the Greeks, represented as three in number whose work was to carry out the vengeance of the gods upon countries, peoples, and individuals. Hence, the avenging spirits: "she was haunted by the furies of her husband's blood."

## K.

**Keel.** To *keel over*. (V. I.) To capsize [*Fig* from a ship turned with *keel upward*]

**Keep.** [This verb is essentially transitive; so its intransitive use in the sense of "remain" is really striking e. g.

To *keep from* drinking: to abstain from it. Keep in good health. Keep in touch with; keep together; keep aloof.]

1. To *keep in* with a person: To remain on friendly terms with him.

2. To *keep in* one's feelings: To restrain them (V. T.)

3. To *keep off* (V. I.) To stay at a distance.

4. To *keep off*. (V. T.) blows &c.: To ward off; To hinder from approach; e. g. Umbrellas keep off rain.

5. To *keep on* (V. I.) To continue to advance. ["on" implies continuity.]

6. To *keep out* the enemy: To hinder them from entering or taking possession.

7. You must *keep to* your promise: adhere to it strictly,

**8.** To *keep under* (as fire &c.) V. T. To hold in subjection.

**9.** To *keep up* (V. I.): Not to fall behind.

Also, To retain one's spirits. Not to be despondent. Not to let one's spirits sink.

**9a.** To *keep up appearances*: [See Appearance.]

**Cp.** Keep up your mathematics = maintain your knowledge of it in efficient state.

**10.** To *keep company with* a person: To associate with him.

**11.** To *keep one's counsel*: [see Counsel] To conceal it; not to divulge the state of one's affairs by talking about it; Not to disclose matters that ought to be kept private. To be reticent.

**Cp.** To keep dark. Also, tell me without *keeping any thing back*.

**12.** To *keep life together*: To preserve it from being utterly extinct.

It is possible to *keep life together* when the internal heat falls so low as 75.2° F., —Cyc.

**13.** These newly arrived people *keep to themselves*: remain aloof from others; shun society. So, To *keep oneself to oneself*.

**14.** To *keep* an army of 200 000 men *on foot*: To maintain. So, (Fig.) To *keep* a movement *on foot*: To prevent it from collapsing or falling down.

**15.** To *keep body and soul together*: [see Body].

**Cp.** To keep the wolf from the door.

**16** *Keep-sake* (n.) Remembrance; souvenir.

A present to be kept for the sake of the giver, i. e. as a remembrance of him.

In days gone by each Secretary of State received on his appointment a silver inkstand, which he could hand down as a *keep-sake* to his children.

**Keeping.** *1.* *In keeping* (with): [adj.] consistent; harmonizing.

The decoration was in keeping with the occasion.—RUSSELL.

**Contra:** *Out of keeping.*

**Key.** *1.* To *key up* a person: To stimulate him to do something, or to some condition [*Met.* from Musical instrument.]

He has cooled down a little and requires to be *keyed up*.

*2.* To *get or have the key of the street*: To be shut out for the night; To be homeless or without shelter.

*3.* *Gold key*: The badge of chamberlain's office.

*4.* *Golden or silver key*: *Douceur*; Bribe.

*5.* *Key-stone*: The stone at the apex of an arch which locks the whole together. (*Fig.*) the central principle underlying anything and governing all its operations and details.

*6.* *Key-note*: [*Fig.* from the fundamental note of a musical scale]. The prevailing tone or idea.

Autonomy is the *key-note* of England's true relation with her great colonies: it is also the *key-note* of India's destiny.—SIR H. COTTON.

Moderation is the *key-note* of the Gita, and the harmonising of all the constituents of man, till they vibrate in perfect attunement with the *One*—the supreme self.—ANNIE BESANT.

*7.* *Key word*: A clue—a word that serves as a guide to find out a passage or explanation.

The three agencies of Positivism are Industry, Education, and Womanhood; and the three spheres are Family, Country, and Humanity. They are the *key-words* of the final religion of mankind.—F. J. GOULD.

Sympathy is the *key-word* to success in holding the loyalty of and doing service for the Indians.—KING EMERSON.

**Note.**—*Key* in its *literal* sense is followed by the *prep.* of as *key of a lock, of a box, of a door* etc.

But, in its *figurative* sense of explanation and solution of

difficulties it is followed by "to" as *Key to Smith's Conic Sections*.]

**Kick.** 1. *To kick one's heels* : [See *Heel*].

2. *To kick the beam* : [From the scales of a balance].

To weigh the lighter, causing one extremity of the rod of the scale to fly upwards.

The latter (scale) quick flew up, and *kicked the beam*.—MILTON.

If the whole world were placed in one scale, and my mother in the other, the world would *kick the beam*.—SMILES.

**Contra** : *To turn the beam* : cause the beam of the balance to bow owing to the greater weight in one scale.

\* \* thy madness shall be paid with weight

Till our scale *turn the beam*.—SHAK. (*Hamlet*).

3. *To kick over the traces* (V. l.) [Met. from horse].

To be violently unruly ; To be recusant, or insubordinate ; To get beyond control.

4. *To kick up a dust* : [*Lut* to raise dust by kicking].

To create a disturbance. So, *To kick up a fuss or a noise*.

5. *To kick against the pricks* : To *huff oneself* by useless resistance.

It is hard for thee to *kick against the pricks*.—ACTS ix 5.

**Cp.** To go on a forlorn hope. To tempt providence.

6. *More kicks than halfpence* : rude and harsh treatment instead of even the gentlest kindness.

**Cp.** Monkey's allowance.—C. KINGSLEY.

7. The child is *alive and kicking* : (adj.) stirring in the womb of a pregnant woman.

**Kidney.** 1. *Men of that kidney* (adj.) : Having the same nature or temperament.

A man of my *kidney*.—SHAK (*M. W.*)

So, *men of your kidney* ; *men of the right kidney*.

Cp. Of that ilk or sort.

**Kill.** 1. To *kill off* (V. T.) an enterprise or industry.

To destroy completely. [Beware of writing "out" for "off."] Cp. Die *off* and die *out* (V. I.)

1A. To *kill time* : To be doing something for the sake of merely passing the time away. To occupy oneself so as to make it pass without too much tediousness. To waste time. Hence, a *kill-time* (adj.) occupation.

2. *Killing* praise : overwhelming.

So, killing kindness. (*Facetiously* used).

3. To *kill* a person *with* kindness : To harm him fatally with mistaken kindness.

4. To *kill or cure* : To take such measures as will make matters worse or be completely successful,

Cp. To end or mend. To make or mar. To sink or swim.

5. To *kill two birds with one stone*. [See Bird.]

**Kind.** 1. The rent is *paid in kind*, i. e. not in money but in articles of natural produce or in goods.

2. I was bent upon repaying his insolence *in kind*, i. e. with insolence. Cp. To pay a person back in his own coin.

**Kiss.** 1. *Kiss and be friends* : Formula for reconciliation. Forget and forgive.

2. To *kiss the dust*. (V. I.) To yield abject submission. Also, to be slain.

3. To *kiss the ground* : (V. I.) To prostrate oneself in token of homage ; Also, To be brought low.

4. To *kiss the rod* : To take a punishment *submissively*.

**Kite.** To *fly kites* : (a commercial slang, kite = a paper representing fictitious value) To run up bills. To maintain

credit by means of accommodation bills accepted by surety friends without consideration. (*Fig.*) To make experiment to gauge public opinion.

**Kith.** *Kith and Kin* : (n) friends and relations. Acquaintances and Kinsfolk,

I should have liked to refer in greater detail to the distinctions which have been won by *your kith and kin*—LORD CHELMSFORD (to the veterans of Rawalpindi.)

**Knee.** 1. To *bow the knee* : To bend the knee in token of respect : To kneel down. To genuflect. To worship (*Fig.*) To submit.

Lord Russell had never *bowed the knee* to the potentates of the Press.

2. *On one's knees* : (adj.) In kneeling posture (sign of worship or supplication).

3. *On the knees of the Gods* : (Pred. adj.) Depending on circumstances beyond human control, or on other circumstances turning out favourably.

4. To *bring a person to his knees* : To reduce him to submission ; To humiliate him.

**Knife.** *War to the knife* : Most relentless struggle.

War, war is still the cry. —“ *war even to the knife* ” —BYRON.

**Knit.** 1. To *knit the (or one's) brow* : To contract it into folds or wrinkles (a sign of displeasure or anger).

He *knits his brow* and shows an angry eye —SHAK.

The widow likes him not, she *knits her brows* —IBID.

2. To *knit hearts or souls* : To join or bring them into union. So, *To knit up*. [Hence, the noun “knot” = union.]

**Knock.** 1. To *knock* (V. T.) a person *about*. To strike (him) *repeatedly*. Hence, To treat roughly.

2. To *knock about*. (V. I.) To roam about having no definite object in view. To stroll idly. (*Fig.*) To lead an irregular sort of life. To live a vagabond.

3. To *knock* (V. T.) a person *down*: To fell him with blows. "A knock down"—such a blow. Hence, the noun and the adj. a *knock-down* argument (overwhelmingly convincing). Also, (at an auction) to declare (V. T.) a property as sold to a person by a knock with the auctioneer's hammer.

Cp. To knock the bottom out of an argument—To overthrow it completely.

4. To *knock* (V. T.) a scheme, a belief, or delusion *on the head*: To put an end to it; To render it abortive.

5. He *knocked off work*: (V. T.) discontinued it. Also, to accomplish (something) *readily*. (V. I.) In the general sense, the objective being implied; as, it is time to *knock off*.

6. To *knock on*: (V. I.) To make good progress (with any work or matter in hand).

7. To *knock under*: (V. I.) To yield complete and abject submission.

No agitation however vigorously conducted about the Home-rule will compel the Government to *knock under*.—Cp. To *knuckle under*.

8 To *Knock up*: (V. T.) To overcome (a person) with fatigue. To wear (him) out.

[generally used in the passive form, *e. g.* I am quite *knocked up* with our days' continuous railway journey].

Also, To arouse (a person) by knocking or rapping at his door.

**Knot.** [Noun from *Knit*].

1. A *wedding knot*: A bond of marriage. The nuptial union.

2. To *cut a knot*: To undo it in a bold extraordinary way.

As, Alexander cut the *Gordian knot*—[see *Gordian*]

Ordinarily, a Knot is undone, unravelled, untied.

Cp. To unravel the tangled skein.



Hence, (*Fig.*) To solve a difficulty or intricate question in a bold (rather forcible) manner.

**Know.** [V. T often followed by a noun clause or an infinitive noun phrase introduced by such interrogatives as *how, when, where* etc].

1 For *all one knows* : (adv) To the utmost of one's power.

2 I *know about* the matter : [Transitive converted into intransitive in general sense]. I have general information about it.

**Note.**—the prep. "of" may be used instead of "about". To *know of* a fact : To be aware of it.

3. He has part in the affair *not that I know of* (adv.) i. e. not so far as my knowledge goes.

4. I *know better* than that : I do not believe it as I am in possession of fuller information. So, I *know better than to* subscribe to the fund : I am cautious enough *not to* subscribe.

**Cp.** To think better.

5. My friend *knows what is what* : Has good knowledge of how things go on in this world. Is shrewd and sagacious.

**Cp.** To be wide awake. To know the time of day. To know the ropes.

6. *There is no knowing* [usually followed by an interrogative noun clause]. No one yet knows (when and how this war will end).

**Knuckle.** 1 To *Knuckle down* : (V. L.) To give in. To submit to a person. To *Knuckle under*.

2. To *rap one's knuckles* : To reprove him severely.

## L

**Labour.** 1. A *lost labour* : any fruitless exertion ; a sleeveless errand.

**Cp.** A wild—goose chase.

**2. In labour** (adj.) suffering pains of child-birth; in travail.

*A mountain in labour* : great exertion ending in failure.

*The mountain laboured and brought forth a mouse* The Government of Bombay, after twelve days of travail, has brought forth an acknowledgement "The Government are unable etc"—NEW INDIA.

**Laissez.** **1. Laissez-faire** (Fr = Let act) n. State of abstention from interference with social, commercial, or other matters. Non-interference

**2. Laissez-alley** (Fr = let go) Absence of restraint; perfect ease or freedom of manner or action. [see Let alone.]

'Divine discontent with actual conditions inspired men with the ambition of social service. They protested against "Laissez-Faire and Laissez Aller"—RUSSELL.

**Lamp.** **1. To smell of the lamp** : To suggest laborious preparation at night.

c g. Demosthenes's prepared orate style of speech.

**Cp.** To smell of oil : To bear marks of nocturnal study.

**2. To pass on the lamp** } To do one's part in advancing  
To hand on the lamp } knowledge or any cause.

[The allusion is to the race run by the ancient Greeks in which the runners carried torches.]

**Lance.** *A free lance* : a politician or writer with no party allegiance or bias.

**Cp.** To sit on the fence.

**Land.** **1. He is in the land of the living** : (adj.) alive.

**Contra** Beyond the veil.

**2. A land-shark** : A sharper : A lawyer or any other person who acquires land by grasping means or in an under-hand manner. So a *land grabber*.

**3. A land-mark.** (Fig.) Any prominent or distinguishing feature of a locality.

With Mr. Pirie's departure, a *land-mark* of Lucknow is being taken away.—SIR J. HEWETT.

Also, any striking event ; as *Landmarks* of Ancient History.

4. The *Land of the Leal* : Heaven (Lit. of the faithful).

5. *The land of the rising sun* : Japan.

6. The *landed interest* of a country : the interest of the great landowners or of the landed aristocracy.

7. A vessel *makes the land* : approaches it from the sea.

Cp. Landfall : approach to land from the sea.

8 *See how the land lies* : Find what the state of affairs is.

The mistake was due to our failure to *see how the land lay*.

Cp. See how the cat jumps. (colloq.)

**Lane.** *It is a long lane that has no turning* : [A paradigmatic construction similar to that of "It is an ill wind that blows no body good (see ILL)]. However long a lane may be, it must have turning." Hence, (*Fig*) Change is sure to take place.

Cp. The old order changeth.

**Lap** 1. To be *in the lap of the gods* : (pred. adj.) only within their power. Beyond human control.

2. *In the lap of luxury* : Having every comfort and enjoyment that abundance of money can buy. So, a person is said to *Loll in the lap of luxury* when he spends time idly and in luxury.

Cp. Purple and fine linen. Bed of down.

**Large** 1. To be *at large* : (pred. adj.) Not under constraint. Freed from confinement. "He was set *at large*."

1a. So, He is a gentleman *at large* : Roaming about at will. Not being tied down to any occupation.

1b He scatters imputation *at large* : (adv.) without particularizing any body ; generally. So, He has the sympathy

of the people *at large* i. e. as a body or whole. The public at large; society at large.

**2** The matter was narrated *at large*: (adv.) Fully; with all details.

**Lrk.** **1** To rise with the lark: To leave the bed just as the day breaks.

*Rise with the lark* and with the lark to bed.—J. HURDIS.

So, stir with the lark tomorrow, gentle Norfolk.—SHAK (RICH.)

**Cp.** It was the lark, the herald of the morn.—SHAK.

**2** To catch larks: To have great fun or amusement.

By robbing Peter he paid Paul and hoped to catch larks if ever the heavens should fall.—RABELAIS.

**Cp.** To be on the spree.

Hence, the conjunctive sentence denoting *unlikeliness*: If the sky falls we shall catch larks.—(Fig.) unlikely cataclysms are not worth providing against.

**3** To stow larks: To cease to indulge in frolic and sprees.

**Last.** **1.** The thing was done *at last*, i. e. after much delay.

[Note the omission of the Def. article before the superlative.]

**2.** I shall be *the last to do this*: the *least likely* to do it.

So, deformity belonging to a woman is *the last thing* that one expects. (i. e. the least likely).—DEIGHTON.

**3.** It is a thing of *last importance*: most important.

[Note the omission of the article before the superlative]

**4.** To be on one's *last legs* (pred. adj.): Near death or ruin. At the end of one's resources.

The coal tax must be on *its last legs*.—GLADSTONE.

**Cp.** Tottering on the brink of the grave. At the last gasp.

**5.** Let the cobbler stick to his *last* [Last (n) = A wooden block upon which shoes are made]. Let no one meddle with

things beyond his province, viz. his knowledge or power of apprehension.

6. *The last cast* : the last chance or effort.

7. *Last but not least* [A parenthetical adverbial phrase joined with "and"]. Though last in order of mention or occurrence, yet not of least importance.

*And last (but) not least* an extraordinary woman, Irish by birth, English by marriage, and Indian by adoption, has been caught in the meshes of this Act. (The Press Act) — A. MAJUMDAR

A definite distribution of responsibility, the dismissal of incompetent subordinates *and last but not least*, the installation of the waste-metre system will enable the board to maintain a full supply in the future — GOVT GAZETTE.

[Note. "Least" is here an adverb, not an adjective and therefore cannot take the article]

8. *The last word* (in controversy, argument &c.) A final reply to an adversary.

Differentiate Parting word. Cp. Parthian shaft.

**Late.** 1. It is *rather late in the day* (to do some thing): Too late. Not practicable in this progressive period.

Cp. At this time of day [no article]

2. I will come to that matter *later on* (adv.) At some other time (future).

3. He *keeps late hours* : (a) stays out of house late at night. (b) sits up until very late.

Cp. To work late (and early).

Differentiate "Lately" and "latterly." Both mean "recently"; but the latter implies comparison by suggesting a *change* from a previous state of things. This ceremony was performed lately; but, "His health has failed him latterly". (the word "failed" suggests comparison with previous good health; so, In these latter days = At this late period of world's history.

4. *Of late* : (adv.) Lately.

His importance has risen *of late*. — GEORGE ELIOT.

*Of late* Moslem leaders have realized that if the advance of the country is to be real neither community can afford to stand off—REVIEW.

5. *Of late years* : (adv.) : In the last few years.

6. *Better late than never* : A good thing should not be abandoned altogether, though unattended to at the proper time.

7. *Soon or late* : (adv.) some time or other,

To every man upon this earth

Death cometh soon or late—MACAULAY (Horatius).

**Laugh.** [The verb is intransitive but it acquires the force of a transitive verb being followed by an adverb or adverbial adjunct as in 2 & 3.]

1. To laugh at a person : To ridicule him.

2. To laugh a thing off : To treat it lightly.

3. To laugh a person to scorn : To treat him with bitter contempt.

Our castle's strength

Will laugh a siege to scorn (i. e. defy)—SHAK.

4. To laugh a person out of something : To cause him to give it up by ridicule ; so, To laugh him down.

5. To laugh on the other (or the wrong) side of the mouth To weep. To feel grieved or disappointed after exhibiting an exultant spirit.

6. To have the laugh on one's side : To get the advantage after defeat.

7. To have or get the laugh of (an assailant) : To turn the tables on him.

8. To laugh in one's sleeve : To laugh to one's self, i. e. so as not to be observed by means of maintaining a demure or serious look. To feel inward satisfaction. To be secretly amused.

9. He laughs best who laughs last : Do not indulge in premature exultation. (A proverb)

**Cp.** Don't halloo till you are out of the wood—DUKE OF WELLINGTON.

**10.** *It is no laughing matter*: This thing should not be treated lightly. It is no subject for laughter.

**11.** *A laughing stock*: an object or butt for jokes and ridicule; one provoking scornful hilarity.

Chauvin's extravagant devotion to Napoleon I made him a *laughing stock*.—TIMES.

If we build the constitution on footmen's hair powder we shall be the *laughing-stock* of Europe—DISRAELI.

**Laurel.** **1.** *To reap or win laurels*: To gain or achieve victory, distinction. [From the crown of bay-leaves formerly bestowed on victorious generals and others.]

**2.** *To rest on one's laurels*: To remain *satisfied* with honours already gained.

**3.** *Look to your laurels*: *Beware* of losing pre-eminence.  
[Note the plural in each.]

**Law.** **1.** *To lay down the law*: (V. I.) speak as one having authority; To be dogmatic and presumptuous; To hector.

Gladstone argued his point where he would have been fully justified in *laying down the law*.—(G. W. E. RUSSELL. **Cp.** Cock-sure.

**2.** *To have or take the law* of (any person) [V. T.] To prosecute in a court of law.

**3.** *To take the law into one's hands*: To redress one's wrong by force, i. e. without appealing to law: To punish directly—instead of complaining to the ministers of law.

When the students are too much provoked, they *take the law into their hands*.—MOD. REVIEW.

**4.** *He is a law unto himself*: obeys no one's commands but his own.

The true mystic, the mystic materialised as he is called, is a *law unto himself*, for the inner law has replaced external compulsion—MRS. BESANT.

5. The Hindus are a *law-abiding* people: (adj.) respectful of authority and obedient to the laws.

6. Necessity *knows no law*: over-rides the sanctity or inviolability of law. When a person is in extreme want or indigence, he does not care if he is constrained to become a law-breaker. Cp. To make a virtue of necessity.

7. A *law of the Medes and Persians*: a firm and fixed law.

The thing is true according to the law of the Medes and Persians, which altereth not. Dan vi. 12.

Cp. Procrustean law. Contra: the law of children.

**Lay.** 1. To *lay about* (a person): (V. T.) To strike or hit (him) out on *all sides*. (V. I.) To act with vigour.

So; To *lay on*: (V. I.) To deal blows *violently*.

2. To *lay aside* (a scheme, project): (V. T.) To abandon; To discard; To throw up.

Be not the first by whom the new are tried,  
Nor yet the last to *lay* the old *aside*.—POPE.

3. To *lay by* (money &c): (V. T.) To keep for *future* needs; To save. Also, To put out of use *for a time*.

Cp. To *lay away* (= To store); To *lay up*; To *lay in*.

3A. To *lay by the heels*: (V. T.) To confine; To imprison. Cp. To *lay fast*; To *lay hors-de-combat*.

4. To *lay down* (one's arms, life, or office): To resign.

Tale of gallant lives which have been *laid down* in defence of liberty and the Empire.—LORD CHELMSFORD.

4A. To *lay down* (a principle or proposition): To declare.

4B. To *lay down* (the law): [see Law.]

5. To *lay hold of* (or on): (V. T.) To seize, catch, or grasp.



During the last few years the impulse of Social Service has *laid hold* upon the dwellers in towns.—RUSSELL.

6. Let us *lay heads together* : Have a conference. (V. I.)

7. I cannot *lay my hands upon* that book : Find.

But, *To lay violent hands on*—To murder.

8. *To lay in* (arms, provisions, and the like). (V. T.) To collect and store as provisions against an approaching necessity, danger &c.

9. *To lay it on*. [“It” is indef. for any thing] : To go beyond limits. To exaggerate. To charge an exorbitant price.

So, *To lay it on thick* : To flatter grossly.

Every one likes flattery ; and when you come to Royalty, you should *lay it on with a trowel*.—MATTHEW ARNOLD.

10. *To lay on* (water, gas etc.) : (V. T.) To supply by means of pipes leading from a main reservoir.

11. *To lay out* (money) : (V. T.) spend or expend.

Alnaschar *laid out* all his money on a basket of glass ware. Hence, the noun “outlay,”

11A. *To lay out a corse* : To prepare it for burial.

Let him be *laid out* with all honourable formalities.—DEIGHTON,

11B. *To lay oneself out for* (or to do something) : To make preparation for ; To put forth one's best effort in the matter of.

An ambitious, rather servile, sort of man will *lay himself out* to win favour with Government.—DR. SADLER.

I have never *laid myself out* for families ; Children are so mischievous.  
—MISS BRADDON.

12. *To lay a fault to one's charge* : To impute or ascribe it to him. To charge him *with* it. To accuse him *of* it.

So, *to lay* (a fault, blame, charge &c.) *at one's door* or *to one's door*.

13. *To lay siege to a place* : To besiege it.

**13A.** To *lay siege* to a person : (fig.) To worry him with persistent solicitation. To importune him.\*

**14.** He *lays great store* upon your patronage : values highly. Cp. To set store by or on. [see Store].

**15.** *Lay figure* : [Lit, a model for draperies &c]. fig. A non-entity. A person of no importance or without distinguishing character. Cp. Figure head.

**Lead—1.** To *lead off* or *out* (any entertainment or dance) : V. T. To begin, To make a start.

So, To *lead up* a ball (V. T).

Mr. Thornhill and my eldest daughter *led up* the ball to the great delight of the spectators.—GOLDSMITH.

**2.** To *lead up* (V. I.) *to* (a subject) : To direct conversation towards *by degrees*.

So, To *lead up to* any consequence : To bring it about *by degrees*.

**3.** To *lead one a pretty dance* : To give him much useless trouble.

[Differentiate. To *lead the dance or van* = go first.]

**4.** To *lead one a life* : To worry him constantly.

**5.** To *lead a person by the nose* : To make him follow without using his own judgement.

**6.** To *lead the way* (V. I.) To go before and show the way. (Fig.) To set the example.

He tried each art, reprov'd each dull delay,

Allured to brighter worlds, and *led the way*.—GOLDSMITH.

Thais *led the way*

To light him to his prey.—DAYDEN.

Cp. To take the lead. (To act as guide).

**7.** To *follow the lead* of a person : To act under his guidance. (Lead. n. = leadership).

So, the guiding person is said to *take the lead*. To give one the *lead* = To lead him.

[Note the def. article before each.]

8. A *leading question*: one which *leads to* or suggests the answer.

8A. *In leading strings*. (pred, adj. or adv.) under guidance; dependent on another; in a state of pupilage.

India should no longer be held in *leading strings* — WACHA.

Like most persons of a high order of intellect young Harriet Martineau at an early age resolved to walk alone, and not in *educational leading strings*. — TIMES. Cp. Under tutelage.

8B. Men of *light and leading* (adj.) learned and deservedly influential.

Cp. Leading<sup>1</sup>light.

9. A *led captain* = a hanger-on; a toady, a parasite.

Leaf.—1. A tree is in *leaf*: (pred, adj.) with leaves out.

2. (*Fig.*) My days are in the *yellow leaf*;  
The flowers and fruits are gone;  
The worm, the canker, and the grief  
Are mine alone. — BYRON

Sir Frederick Pollock was verging on 50 when he entered Parliament and was actually far gone into the "*serene and yellow leaf*" of ordinary men when he took his seat on the judicial bench; but there was no '*sereness*' or '*yellowness*' in him. — TIMES.

3. The *fall of the leaf* = Autumn when the leaves become withered and fall.

4. To *take a leaf out of one's book*: To follow his example.

France has taken at least one leaf out of Germany's book and is preparing for peace well beforehand. She is making up a statement of her account against the Hun. — STATESMAN.

5. To turn over a new leaf: To begin a different and stetter course of life. To mend one's ways.

That wayward youth has turned over a new leaf.

[The expression is taken from Middleton's Anything for a quiet life.]

Cp. To turn over the new man.

**Leak.**—1. The secret leaked out, i. e. became gradually known; oozed out; transpired.

2. A vessel springs a leak: Begins to let in water; Is found to have one.

["Leak" is figuratively used to denote gradual loss as of persons, electric charge etc]

**Leap.**—1. To take a leap in the dark: To do a risky act of which the consequence cannot be foreseen. To attempt a hazard of doubtful issue.

Cp. To make a blind bargain. To buy a pig in a poke.

Contra. To look before one leaps.

It is an excellent characteristic of the English voter that he looks before he leaps; and if the object which he is asked to clear is very unfamiliar, he will look twice or thrice before the plunge is made.—RUSSELL.

2. (To advance) By leaps and bounds: (adv.) With startling speed; With startlingly rapid progress.

The Great War came and the National Debt advanced by leaps and bounds.—CHRONICLE. Cp. per saltum.

**Lease.** A new lease of life [from God as it were]: Guarantee of an extension of life after recovery from a dangerous illness which caused serious anxieties. Fresh start after a narrowly escaped death.

The Queen went abroad (at Easter 1880) comfortable in Lord Beaconsfield's assurance that the Election would give him a fresh lease of power—RUSSELL.

**Least.** 1. Last though not least. {see Last}

2. *At least* : (adv) Even if a wider statement is desirable.

A respectably connected Hindu girl in Bengal can hardly be married now without a dowry of two thousand rupees *at least* (i. e. as minimum)

Cp At all events.

3. *At the least* : (adv.) when the lowest computation is made. This refers to a degree of quality *irrespective of specific number* as in 2.

4 The ardour did not cool *in the least* ; (adv) in the smallest degree; at all [used in *negative* sentences].

5. *To say the least of it* : [a parenthetical adverbial clause] putting the case *moderately*.

There may be more ministerial decisions arrived at under the new regime but so many of them are either contradicted by other ministers or else have to be revised or withdrawn that the gain is, *to say the least*, doubtful—NEW STATESMAN.

Our rich men, *to say the least*, did not advance the moral struggle of passive resistance as did the poor :—M. K. GANDHI

So, *least of all* : [No def article before the superlative].

She (Queen Victoria) had no contact with political party, *least of all*, one might say, with the party of freedom and progress—RUSSELL.

6. *To take the line of least resistance* : [no def article] (*fig*) To adopt the easiest method or course.

The penetration programme of the Hun has been so complete and successful that we have been induced in the past by always *adopting the line of least resistance* to blindly depend on supplies from Germany—COMMERCE.

If there must be punishment for propriety's sake for some body or other, it is just possible that it will *take the line of least resistance* choosing the weak for its visitation—M. REVIEW.

**Leave.** 1. *To leave off* (a practice, habit &c) : V. T. To discontinue or desist from.

2. The condition of the library *leaves much to be desired* : Is unsatisfactory; demands improvement.

**Contra :** To leave *nothing* to be desired.

**3. Leave it alone :** Don't interfere with it.

The bureaucratic hierarchy will have to be baptised again ;.....to find out what the people want and ought to want ; to value compromise ; to meet one's adversary in the way ; and, above all, to *leave things alone*.

If the House could not appoint a tribunal to judge Lord Hardinge it should *leave him alone*.—MR. BALFOUR.

**Cp** Let it alone. Laissez faire,

**4. To leave in the lurch.** [see Lurch].

**Lee. 1. To make up lee way :** (*Fig.*) To make up for lost time. To struggle out of a bad position. To overtake work which has fallen behind.

[Lee-way = a movement towards the side opposite the wind in deviation of the true course of a ship.]

It is no longer sufficient to administer India .. It is necessary also to satisfy her political aspirations ; and because we were too slow in taking cognisance of the changes that were occurring, the task is all the heavier because there is *lee-way to make up* —MONTAGU—CHELMSFORD SCHEME.

**2. Lee-side, Lit.** The side of the ship *towards which* the wind blows. [**Contra :** Windward, or windy side.]

**Fig.** The sheltered or protected side.

Sheep in mountainous districts will change their feeding ground to the *lee-side* of the hills before the arrival of severe gales and rain.—CRO.

**3. Under the lee of :** (*Fig*) Under the care or protection of (usually a neighbour).

Up and down the ladders, upon the roofs of buildings, over floor that quaked and trembled with his weight, *under the lee* of falling bricks and stones, in every part of the great fire was he.—DICKENS.

**Left. 1. He paid over the left shoulder.** i. e. Did not pay. Generally, To do a thing *over the left* (*adv.*) : In a contrary or negative sense—e. g. This thing will do right enough —*over the left*, i. e. will not do at all.

2. *Left-handed compliment* : (adj.) of doubtful sincerity.

Cp. Grudging praise. "Damn with faint praise."—POPE.

**Leg 1.** He is on *his legs*; stands so as to make a speech.

2. He *stands on his legs* : Is self-reliant (V. I.)

The nation will *have no leg to stand upon* : lost its power of *self-dependence*. So, This thesis *has no leg to stand upon* : is *without support* of cogent reasons. [Note the use in negative sentences.] Cp. To shif for oneself; To paddle one's own canoe.

2A. To *set a person on his legs*. (V. T.) To make him self-reliant. To establish him in a prosperous condition.

3. To make a (or one's) leg—To make obeisance by drawing one leg backward. To Kowtow.

So in they come; each *makes his leg*,  
And flings his head before.—COWPER.

4. *On one's last legs* : [see Last]

5. To *put one's best leg foremost* : To walk at full pace; To go at the top of one's speed—[Cp. To run post-haste-].

*Fig.* To do one's best; To try one's utmost.

6. To *shake a leg*—(V. I.) To 'dance. *Fig.* To move about in a jolly fashion.

He was so bad that father never let him come into the house, where, he said, honesty alone should *shake a leg*.—BESANT.

**Legion.** *Their name is legion* : [Taken from the Bible—My name is legion for we are many [Mark. v. 9] They are numberless.

A procession of the greatest men of the day passes before my eyes; their name would be legion as to numbers.—SIR H. HAWKINS.

The things one would rather have expressed differently are of course *legion*.—RUSSELL.

[BEWARE of using an article before 'legion.' It should be treated in the idiomatic uses as a proper name with reference to the above Biblical passage.]

**Cp.** Their number is legion. They are regiments.

**Length.** 1. *At length* : (adv) At last : after a long period.

We had given him up for dead ; but the news came at length that he was working in the Zululand.

Also, with ample details.

The subject was treated of at length **Cp.** To dwell upon.

2. *I kept him at arm's length* : avoided intimacy with him.

3. *I will go all lengths* promoting this good cause : act thoroughly in the matter ; hesitate at nothing—[“lengths” is the cognate object.]

But he went to greater lengths (in asserting his independence) : went very far or to a very considerable extent or degree (which modesty or prudence should have forbidden).

**Cp.** To go the whole hog.

Also, I will not go the length of asserting that he is actuated by dishonest motives ; i. e. go so far as to assert.

[“Length is cognate object. In this combination it is singular and the def. article is used.]

**Less.** 1. The act was done in *less than no time* : (adv.) very quickly.

2. *None the less* [see None].

3. *May your shadow never be less* (A good wish and prayer) : may you not grow thin.

4. *No less* : Nothing else. Nothing of inferior moment.

I shall be satisfied with *no less* (noun). He is *no less* happy i. e. equally.

5. *The less said the better* : silence or omission of mention should be preferred.

My firm conviction is, that *the less said* about the English aristocracy the better.—RUSSELL.



**Lesson.** 1. To *give a lesson* to a person : To punish him.

2. To *read a lesson* to : (V. T.) To censure, rebuke, or reprove,

3. He *gives lessons in* grammar: Instructs or lectures. So, the pupil *takes lessons*.

4. This is a *lesson* to me : Experience teaches me this (generally said of some thing unpleasant.)

The British Constituent might take a *lesson* from this extremely polite letter-writer : (Learn to his profit the experienced opinion of).

5. To *say one's lesson* : Repeat (as a pupil does) from memory what has been fixed to be learned.

**Let** 1. You cannot be *let off* without further investigation : allowed to go free.

1. A. To *let off* an arrow : To discharge. So, To *let off* a gun : To fire.

2. He *lets on* that he is in debt : Makes others know though it is contrary to fact. Cp. To make believe.

3. To *let a thing alone* : not to meddle with it ; not to touch it ; Leave it to itself.

The official myth that India wants nothing but to *be left alone* should be exploded.—M-GUARDIAN [The idiom consists in the peculiar use of 'let' without being followed by *another verb* in the infinitive mood. It seldom stands by itself as a complete unit] Cp. Leave alone : *Laissez faire* ; Let things slide ; Let things take their course ; Things must run their course.

4. *Let alone* : [Though imperative in form it has really *adverbial* force] Independently of what is far less or more important.

In all that J. S. Mill wrote or said there is little evidence that he knew what an ordinary Englishman *let alone* an English woman, is made of.—TIMES. We must demonstrate that Prussia's Beal was a false god that it could not protect itself, *let alone* the German people.—LLOYD GEORGE.

**5. *Let it well alone*** : [It implies approval of non-interference] Do not meddle *needlessly* matters being already satisfactory. Abstain from trying to improve what is already good lest you make it worse. Cp, Let sleeping dogs lie.

So, To *let a thing SEVERELY alone* or *STRICTLY alone*. The speaker's opinion that non-interference is severe or strict e.g. The authority of caste *left* the people *strictly alone*

**Letter. 1.** He is a man *of letters* : (adj) versed in literature ; literary ; well-read.

**2.** *To the letter* : (adv) with adherence to minute details.

The instructions were carried out *to the letter*. **Contra.** *To the spirit*.

**3. *The Republic of letters***.—Authors and writers as a body.

The Republic of letters is not an unmeaning phrase, and well-connected people have before now written very readable books.

**Level 1** *To level up* : (V. T.) To raise to the level of anything higher. To raise to a higher status. To bring to an equality with a higher standard. So, *To level down* : To lower *do*,

**Cp.** To be levelled *to* or *with* the ground. To be levelled *in* the dust = To be laid low.

**2** *To find one's level* : To reach the right place relatively to others. (*fig.* from water finding its level.)

**3.** *To do one's best* or *to do one's level best* : To take all possible pains. To do as far as lies in one's power. To do one's utmost. To spare no efforts.

The defeated Teuton is *doing his level best* by a variety of the most diabolical means to wreak that vengeance.—**L. REVIEW.**

**4.** They are a *level-headed* lot ; (adj.) well-balanced in mind. Possessing good common sense and sound judgment.

**Cp** Even-minded.

**Liberty.** 1. I *take the liberty* to introduce my friend to you, i. e. I venture to [or *in* introducing]

**Note**—It connotes disregard of rules or a certain degree of license.

2. He *takes liberties with me*: uses too much freedom in dealing with me. Is unduly familiar. So, he *takes liberties with rules or facts*: deals too freely with them [note the plural],

3. You are *at liberty* to say so: (pred adj.) free; nothing can restrain you from it.

4. To *set at liberty*: To set free. To liberate.

[Beware Of using *to* instead of *at*.]

5. A *chartered libertine*: A person *allowed* to do as he pleases.

**Lick.** 1. To *lick the dust*: (a Biblical expression occurring in the Psalms): To be defeated or slain. Also, To act in an abject manner.

Wit that can creep and pride that *licks the dust*.—POPE.

2. To *lick the spittle* of: To be a sneaking flatterer or parasite of the meanest character: To behave as a toady towards. Hence, the noun *Lick-spittle* = Toady.

His heart too great though fortune little,

To *lick* a rascal statesman's *spittle*.—SWIFT

3. To *lick up*: (V. T.) To consume entirely. To devour. Thou *lickest up* mankind devouring all.—GITA.

4. To *lick into shape* (i. e. definite form): (V. T.)

(An allusion to the old notion that a bear-cub is born shapeless and its mother *licks* it into shape.)

To give form or method to: To make presentable or efficient.

Can you *lick* that urchin *into shape* with words of rebuke only,

[Note.—It may take an abstract noun as an object when a particular instance is meant.]

The Press Bill requires to be *licked* into shape to suit the general temper of the people.

[Beware of using the plural "shapes"].

**Lie.** 1. To give the lie to (a person, supposition, statement).  
 • To belie. To contradict [see Give]. The conduct of the missionaries gives the lie to what they say.

There are various gradations of giving the lie 1 as the simple "Thou liest" 2 "Thou liest" in the throat. 3 Thou liest in the throat like a rogue 4 Thou liest in the throat like a rogue as thou art.—DREIGHTON.

2. As far as in me lies (adv) To the utmost of my power.

So far as in me lies I mean to live up to her standard for the future,

3. To lie at one's heart: (V. I.) To be an object of affection, desire, or anxiety (of things, as your health or success &c.)

4. Let it lie by: (V.) remain untouched or unnoticed.

Cp. To give a person the go-by.

5. The woman now lies in: (V. I.) is in child-bed. Hence, a *lying-in* hospital.

6. This motion or resolution of the meeting will lie over, (V. I.) remain for future attention ["over" implies transference to a future time].

**Lien.** In lieu of (prep); instead of; in the place of; in the room of.

The poor servant received a rich embroidered cloth in lieu of his wages.

**Life.** 1. Portrayed to the life (adv.); so as to resemble the original exactly. (Reproduced) faithfully.

Cp. This description of Mr. Jowett's appearance, conversation, and social bearing is *photographic*—RUSSELL. Hence, *A living likeness*.

2. To bear a *charmed life*: one endowed with magical or miraculous power (to escape death).

Let fall thy blade upon vulnerable crests,  
 I bear a *charmed life* which must not yield  
 To one of woman born.—SHAK (MACBETH),

As one by one his companions were killed or captured Alexander Peden (1626-86) alone seemed to *bear a charmed life*.—PROTHERO.

This system (Judicial and Executive power in the same hand) still continues and seems to *bear a charmed life* which defies both natural and violent death.—A. MAJUMDER.

Cp. To fall or lie upon one's feet.

3. (Cannot) *for one's life* (or *for the life* of him) (an adverbial parenthesis): Even if one's life depended upon it [This is a strong assertion made with the negative "cannot." 'Would hardly' &c.,]

Nor could I *for my life* subscribe [ ] name to the memorial.

So, *for one's dear life*: (adv, so as to escape death.

4. It is a *matter or question of life and death* (pred): something on which hangs the question whether one should live or die.

This course may deceive us into something which is a *matter of life and death* with us—DEIGHTON.

5. He is the *life and soul* (of the party or of any movement, organisation): vivifying influence.

6. *To see life*: To acquire experience by mixing freely with *living* men or in society.

7. *Life-long* study, research &c. (adj.): continued for a life time.

Through this influence (poison of a more subtle suggestion) Lord Morley found himself betrayed into opposition of ideas and principles of which he has been the *life-long* protagonist.—B. HOUGHTON.

The true man of the world by his *life-long* struggles fortifies his character in contrast with the hermit who attains merely to innocence.

Differentiate *live-long* day (or night) = whole length of. Throughout the day long as it may be.

So, all our *lives long* (adv) God has been caring for us i. e. through the whole of our lives.

**8. *Life-blood*** : blood without which life would be extinct.

A good book is *the precious life-blood* of a master spirit embalmed and treasured up on purpose to a life beyond life—MILTON (*Areopagitica*).

And shall we be told as a requital that we are "aliens" from the noble country for whose salvation our *life-blood* was poured out.—DUKE OF WELLINGTON.

**Lift.** 1. To *lift one's hand* i. e. as for taking an oath.

2. To *lift the hand* against one : To raise it to *strike* him.

3. To *lift up the hand* i. e. in prayer.

4. To *lift up the head* : To rejoice ; To exult.

And now shall *my head be lifted* above mine enemies—PSALMS.

5. To *lift up one's head* : To recover vigor after prostration.

6. To *lift up one's horn* : To be proud and exulting.

7. To *lift up one's voice* : To cry out in joy or sorrow against oppression.

[Note—all the above combinations with "lift up" are Biblical.]

8. Will you *give me a lift* ? Take me up into your vehicle (usually for a part of the way). (*fig*) give me a helping hand ; Help forward.

**Light.** 1. To *see the light* (V. I.) : To be born. To come into existence.

2. To *make light* of a thing : To treat it lightly i. e. without attaching due importance to it ; To pooh-pooh.

**Contra** : To make much of.

So, to *set light by* a thing: Cp. To set little by.

3. To *come to light* : (V. I.) To be revealed, discovered, or detected.

In our best performances there are latent many errors which in their own time will *come to light*—RUSSELL.

So, To *bring to light* (V. T.) To reveal; To expose; To discover. To detect [Light = Knowledge]

Researches of modern years have *brought to light* much that had been obscure in this doctrine of NIRVANA.

4. To *light up* (V. T.): To illuminate (a place); To throw light upon as by a torch, fire &c.

[Note.—The torch or fire is lighted. "up" would be out of place.]

5 To *throw light upon* (V. T.) To illuminate. To light up.

(fig) To help to explain [see the quotation under *Lines* 7.]

6. To *stand in a person's light*: (Lit.) To prevent the light falling upon him.

(fig) To do something against his interest.

To be the means of frustrating his purposes. To prejudice his chances. To hinder his prospects in life.

So, to *stand in one's own light*.

Boasting of good ancestry he always *stood in his own light* through aversion for hard work.

7. To *light upon* (a thing): (V. T.) To discover by chance.

There be good fellows in the world an (i. e. if) a man could light on them.—SHAK—(T. S.)

8. He did his best *according to his lights*: (adv) according to his (natural or acquired) mental power, [Note the plural.]

9. He appeared *in the light of* a scoundrel: (adv) As; So, To look upon a thing *in the light of* charity.

10. To *place a thing in a good light*: To represent it favourably. So, *in a favourable light*.

11. Persons *of light and leading* [see Lead].

12. He is *the light of my eyes*: one specially beloved.

Cp. I Kept him as the apple of my eye,

**13. Light of heart:** (adj) cheerful. Hence, light—hearted.

So, light of carriage=loose in conduct; A light<sup>e</sup> wife makes a heavy husband,—SHAK.

**14. Light come light go:** What is easily obtained is lost soon.

• **Cp.** Easy come easy go; fast won fast lost.

**Liking. 1.** He is to my liking: one whom I like.

**2.** I have great liking for him: I like him much.

**3.** I took a liking to him.

**Likely. 1.** This is a likely story: credible enough; (adj) like the truth.

**2.** I am likely to be out the station: the probability is that I shall be &c (adv. probably).

[Distinguish between (a) They are likely persons to carry on the propaganda, and (b) They are likely to carry on &c. The latter simply indicates a probable future, the former does something more. They are well adapted for the purpose.]

**3.** In all likelihood: very likely; most probably. (adv.)

[See the note under "possible".]

**Line. 1.** Mathematics is in my line: interests me or concerns me. Contra: out of my line. Novels are out of my line.

**2.** Line of action: course of conduct directed towards an object.

Her (the uninvited woman's) line of action is easier and straighter than that of her invited sister.—RUSSELL.

If all communities would agree upon a common line of action, their action would have an electrical effect.

**3.** He gained success all along the line: at every point. [A line is made up of points].

**4.** It would be hard lines on me; i. e. hardship. Hard case; Bad luck. [see Hard]. **Cp.** Rough on; Peck of troubles.



5. *To bring (V. T.) into line with :*

To continue and connect so as to answer (a common purpose) : To co-operate with.

So, *To fall into line (V. I.)* : To co-operate.

The ideal of an India, self-governing in all its parts, cannot be realized unless Indian States also *fall into line* with constitutional developments in British India.—LORD CHELMSFORD.

6. *To draw the line (i.e. of demarcation) :* To separate by a *fine* distinctive mark. Hence, the line of demarcation.

I wish to *draw* a very clear *line* between the woman who merely goes to races for amusement, and the woman to whom racing is the serious business of life.—RUSSELL.

Consanguinity gradually effaced ~~the~~ *line of demarcation* which separated the noble from the merely rich.—IBID.

7. *To read between the lines :* To detect some hidden meaning.

The journals and newspapers of the time throw (especially for those who can *read between the lines*) a startling light on the hereditary principle —IBID.

8. *The lines are fallen to me in pleasant places :* (A Biblical expression occurring in the Book of Psalms)

I am happy in my worldly circumstances.

So, *your lines are set in pleasant places.*

[Note the plural in (4), (7), and (8)].

**Link.—1.** *A link with the past :* (*Fig.*) A member of a series continued from past time. A thing or person that has been in existence long enough to connect the present with the past.

The real interest of one's early life is in *its links with the past* through the old people whom one has known —RUSSELL.

The general idea of these chapters has been a concatenation of *Links with the past*.—IBID.

**2. To break a link.** To cause disconnection or separation.

Will it be her (Queen Victoria's) proud destiny at length to bear relief to suffering millions, and with that soft hand which might inspire troubadours and guerdon knights, break the last links in the chain of Saxon thralldom?—LORD BEACONSFIELD.

Another link has been broken. Prof. Mukerjee has retired from his 40 years' distinguished service.—C. C. MAGAZINE.

**Lion—1.** The lion's share (of a thing): The whole or a very disproportionately large share or part. [The reference is to one of Æsop's Fables]

Almost all the industries were handicapped because financiers had the lion's share of most enterprises.—I. COMMISSION.

Mr. Hastings, whether he apprehended that Middleton was retarded by any return of humanity or sentiments of justice, or a wish to take the lion's share of the plunder to himself, was exasperated at the delay.—R. B. SHERIDAN. Cp. Benjamin's mess.

**2.** To twist the lion's tail: To insult a person (or nation) in power so as to provoke him (or it) to retaliation.

[Originally, the "lion" was Great Britain].

**Lip—1.** To bite one's lips: To refrain from betraying one's feeling of anger, vexation etc.

The King is angry; see, he bites his lip.—SHAK (R. III)

**2.** To hang the lip: To be sulky.

He hangs the lip at something.—SHAK (T. & C.).

**3.** To hang one's lip: (sign of humiliation).

**4.** To keep a stiff upper lip [sign of fortitude or obstinacy]  
To be resolute against all opposition.

**5.** To lick or smack one's lips: [sign of enjoyment].  
To anticipate enjoyment at the sight of food.

**6.** To make a lip: [sign of mocking]. To push out or thrust forth the lips. To pout.

I will make a lip at the physician.—SHAK.

7. "*Steeped to the lips in misery.*" [LONGFELLOW.] Deeply sunk.

*Steeped me in poverty to the very lips.*—SHAK (Othello)

Cp. Up to the eyes.

**Liquid.** (a) *Liquid principles or convictions*: those not yet well fixed.

(b) *Liquid assets or securities*: Property easily convertible into cash.

**Little.**—1. *In little*: (adv) on a small scale.

2. *Little by little* = *By little and little*: Gradually but slowly.

3. *With little cunning, of little minds*: (Adv.) Meanly; Contemptibly.

**Lists.** *To enter the lists against* (a person): To challenge to a fight or controversy.

*Rather than that this should be the sole result of my deed, let fate enter the lists against me and challenge me to mortal conduct.*—DEIGHTON.

**Live.**—1. *To live down* (an aspersion, or hostility, or any past scandal) = (V. T.) *To prove to be false by a blameless course of life.*

Cp. *To wear down.*

1a. *The patient will not live out the night*: i. e. survive.

*It was unfortunate for his reputation that he (Napoleon III) was spared to live out his life*: (i. e.) survive the successful period of his life.—TIMES.

2. *To live up to* (a standard): *To conform one's course of life to*; *To put to practice.*

*My grandfather assiduously practised living up to the higher ideals of a spiritual life.*

*Such a gift inspired a resolution to live up to it.*—RUSSELL

3. *To live up to one's income*: *To spend it* //

**Loaf.**—1. *The loaves and fishes.* [a Biblical phrase]. (Fig.) the material benefits as inducements to religious profession or public service.

Op. The flesh-pots of Egypt.

2. Half a loaf is better than no bread: compromise is desirable.

**Log.**—1. *King Log:* (Fig) a do-no-work ruler or a faineant superior official. [From Æsop's Fable of Jupiter, and the Frogs]. Contra. King Stork.

2. *Roll my log and I will roll yours:* Let us help each other.

Hence, *Log-rolling* (n): combination for Mutual Assistance especially mutual praise of one another's works by authors in Reviews &c. Also, Friendly co-operation to secure personal ends.

Cp. Mutual Admiration Society.

A few years ago a ridiculous clique of fashionable folks formed a Mutual Admiration Society of a new and original type.—RUSSELL.

**Loggerheads.** *I am at loggerheads with him:* I am at variance with him; am involved in quarrel or dispute with him.

So, *To fall to loggerheads; come to loggerheads and go to loggerheads.* [Note the plural form].

**Logic.**—1. *To chop logic:* (V. I.) To argue sophistically or with an affectation of logical terms and methods.

He can *chop logic* by moode and figures. Op. To bandy arguments.

2. *The logic of necessity:* Its irresistible or compulsive force.

So, *the logic of facts, the logic of events* and the like.

3. *Omar's logic:* Dilemma; Quandary.



4. *The long and short* (of a matter): (n). The total upshot.

(p) The sum and substance. The be-all and end-all.

5. *The long bow*. [See Bow]

6. *By long chalks*: (adv.): By far; very much; considerably.

He is better than your patron, and that *by long chalks*.

Cp. *By long odds*. [see Odds].

7. *As long as*: (or) *So long as*: (conjunctive adv.)

Provided that: If only.

You will be allowed this privilege *so long as* you pay the proper fee.

8. I hope to meet you this day fortnight *at longest* (adv): to mention the most distant date possible.

[Note the omission of the def. article for brevity's sake].

9. *A long-headed person or friend*: shrewd; far-seeing.

10. *To long for*. (V. T.) To desire; To desiderate; To hanker *after*.

**Look**. [This verb is primarily intransitive, so it should not take the place of "see" which is transitive. The following are not exceptions, but they conform to the general rule that the intransitive verb often acquires the force of the transitive when followed by an adverbial adjunct:—

(a) I will soon *look you up*: Call upon you; Pay you a visit.

(b) We should *look facts squarely* and do our utmost to grapple with the situation (i. e. take them fairly and honestly, without prejudice).—LORD HARDINGE

So, I *looked him through*.

(c) If it comes to this I shall never *look you in the face again* i. e. look at you.

(Fig.) To *look death* (or misfortune or any adverse circumstance) *in the face*; To meet it with boldness or at close quarters,

(d) To *look a gift horse in the mouth*: [see Gift].

1. To *look about*: (V. I.) ['About' is adverb = on all sides or in different directions.] To be on the watch.

Also, (V. T.) Look about one. ["about" is prep.]: a formula of precaution.

2. *Look after* those infants: (V. T.) Take care of them. To tend. Also to search for.

Cp. To look to.

3. To *look sharp after* (a suspected person). (V. T.) To watch (him) carefully.

4. To *look back upon*: To call into remembrance (what is past and pleasant).

How pleasant is it to *look back upon* those happy school days.

My reply was confined to nine days. But that reply was a labour fearful to *look back upon* — SIR H. HAWKINS.

Contra: To *look forward to* [see *Infra*]

5. To *look down upon or on* (a person). V. T. To consider as inferior [down = from a higher position to a lower one]. Hence, To regard with contempt. To despise.

Contra: To *look up to* [see *Infra*]

6. To *look for* (something as news, information etc.) V. T. To search for; To seek. (V. T.)

The real strength and stamina of Trade are to be *looked for* amongst the cultivators of the land. — LORD CHATHAM.

To *look for* a needle in a bottle of hay or in a hay stack. i. e. To search for it in vain or uselessly.

Cp. Two grains of wheat hid in two bushels of chaff.

(Fig.) To expect. Hence, any *unlooked-for* occurrence (adj.)

7. To *look forward to*: To anticipate with pleasure. He (Lear's fool) *looked forward to* another reunion this time beyond the grave. — SHAKESPEARE'S CHARACTERS

Hastings had then *looked forward to* a coronet, a red ribbon, a seat at the Council board, an office at Whitehall. — MACAULAY.

We should *look forward* to the time when India will have to take up her own government.—JOHN BARNET in 1877.

Their (Sovereigns') duties cling to them as their shadows—Their words and deeds live after them and must bear a scrutiny to which few could *look forward* with dismay.—FROUDE.

She (the Church) *looked forward* to a time when it should be reconstructed on the basis of the Law of Humanity.—ECCO HOMO.

8 To *look in*: (V. I.) To make a brief call or visit. [*In* is Adverb].

8a. To *look into* (a box, a matter etc): (V. T.) To inspect (it) closely. To examine (it) in detail. [*into* implies inside or depth].

9. To *look on* or *upon*: (V. T.) *Lit.*, To see; e. g. we shall not look upon his like again.

*Fig.* To regard; To consider; To think; To judge.

Montalembert *looked upon* Edmund Burke as the greatest philosophical statesman of ancient or modern times and as a giant in intellect.—RUSSE.

9a. He merely *looked on*. (V. I.) stood as a mere spectator.

Hence, the noun: *on-looker*, or *looker on* = spectator.

10. To *look out*: (V. T.) To search for and discover.

Look-out (n) = Looking out; e. g. keep a good look-out i. e. watch.

8a, To *be on the look-out for* (a shelter, an opportunity etc.) They were always *looking out for* the latest news; they are *quidnuncs* (*Lit.*, what newly

It is a bad look-out for him: portent of his bad luck.

That is *your look-out*, not mine: your own concern, see to that yourself.

10a. To *look over*: (V. T.) To read or examine superficially. Also, to overlook or pardon (a fault)

11. *Look sharp*: (V. I.) [Imp. mood] Make! Lose no time; Bestir yourself.

12. *Look to that orphan*: (V. T.) Take care of



*Look to your manners. Look to it that you get hold of the culprit*

I will *look to you for help*: (V. T.) Expect from. Also I *look to you to help*.

And having *looked to Government for bread*, on the very first scarcity they will turn and bite the hand that fed them.--BURKE.

**13** To *look up*: To search for and find.

I will *look up* the passage in my Milton. I will *look up* the meaning in the Dictionary. I will *look up* the facts in the History of the time.

**14.** I have all along *looked up to you as my benefactor*: venerated; respected or honoured highly.

A group of pupils *looking up to their Guru for guidance &c.*—

**Note** the following combinations.

(a) He sat opposite *looking daggers at me* i. e. most angrily [“Daggers” is used adverbially “s” is adverbial suffix as in “needs” = necessarily.]

So, he *looked compassion* i. e. compassionately: expressed compassion by looks.

(b) It *looks like rain*: it seems as if it were going to rain, so it *looks as if* it were going to rain. The outlook promises rain.

[Beware of using “that” instead of “as if” in this sense].

**Loose**, 1. To *break loose* (V. I.) to throw off restraint.

2 To *let loose* (V. T.) To set at liberty.

Boys *let loose* from school—GOLDSMITH.

3. To *play fast and loose*: [see Fast] To be unreliable [fast at one time and loose at another.]

4. At *loose end*: (pred. adj.) without any definite occupation.

5. On *the loose*: (adj) escaped from restraint. [“Loose” is a noun].

Hence, Leading a loose life.

6. To give a loose to or give loose to (one's feelings): To give free vent or expression.

7. He has a screw loose: There is something defective or wrong with him.

**Lord.** To lord it over. (V. T.) To dominate. To rule with arbitrary sway.

["It" is indefinite. Its force is to convert the noun "lord" into verb as in the expressions:—He stars it in the provinces: she queens it &c].

Mr. Disraeli has been able to teach the House of Commons almost to ignore Gladstone, and at present lords it over him, and, I am told, says that he will hold him down for twenty years,—Bp. WILKINSON.

[N. B.—In the passive form the 'it' is dropped; as, she is lorded over by her husband.]

**Lose.** 1. To lose heart: (V. T.) To be dispirited, dejected, or discouraged. [Heart is the seat of courage]

2. To loose one's heart i. e. love.

3. To lose the day: To be defeated [Day = battle.] So, To lose the game, lawsuit etc.

Hence, It is a losing game: a contest in which defeat seems inevitable,

4. This will lose you your place: Cause the loss of it [an instance of the double object use of the verb.]

5. To be lost in thought: To be wholly absorbed in it; abstracted.

[This is really the passive of 'To lose one's self' = To be so absorbed (in study &c.) as to be unmindful of the surroundings. Also, lose one's way = To be bewildered.]

6. To be lost to shame etc: (pred. adj.) To be insensible to it; not feeling its (healthy) influence. Hardened against,

The population of our street were so dull of apprehension as to be quite *lost* to a sense of the drillery of the proceeding.—DICKENS.

Now *lost to all*: (GOLD-MITH) having lost everything.

**Loss.** To be *at a loss* (for) (pred. adj.) In perplexity, or perplexed; puzzled; poised; unable to find, decide, or determine.

\* Lear's outburst concludes with expressions of insane rage *at a loss* for words to express itself.—DEIGHTON.

Peden himself would have been *at no loss* for explanation [the article "a" is merged in "no"].

**Cp.** At one's wit's end; At fault. In a fog; stumped. In quandary.

**Love.**—1. To *make love to*: (V. T.) To court or woo; To pay amorous attention to.

**Cp.** To make eyes at.

2. To *fall in love with*: To become enamoured of.

3. It is *a labour of love*: a task or work that delights (the worker) or one performed for the sake of love of some body, (not of any selfish end.)

4. *There is no love lost between us*: We have no regard for each other. There has been no love between us, so love is not lost. We dislike each other now.

**Low.** 1. *Low tide*; The lowest point of the receding tide: The level of the ebb'd sea: The time of extreme ebb. So, *low water*.

I am *in low water* now: (pred. adj.) out of funds.

2. *Low-water mark*: The line indicating the above level [much used figuratively.]

The national debt of England reached its *low water mark* in 1899-1900.

**Lump** 1. *In the lump*: (adv) as whole together; as one whole; wholesale.

The goods were put up to sale in *the lump*. Cp. In the gross.

2. The debts were paid in *a lump sum* : as one sum : in the lump, instead of by instalments.

3. He is *a lump of selfishness* : selfish through and through.

**Lurch.** To leave *a friend in the lurch* : To desert him in difficulties. To leave him without giving any help in his embarrassment ; to leave him in forlorn state. To neglect [an unexpected unfair treatment is implied.]

Cp. Leave to sink or swim ; leave out in the cold.

**Lute.** *A rift within the lute* : [see Rift].

**Lynch.** *Lynch Law* : Dealing out of summary punishment on offenders by *private individuals* without appeal to law. [From Charles Lynch a Virginian planter]

Cp. To take the law into one's own hands. Mob-Law.

## M.

**Maid.** 1. *A maid-of-all-work* : a general female servant doing housework of every kind.

Cp. Man—Friday = A male servant who does all sorts of odd jobs.

Differentiate a *Maid servant* (who does domestic work of a rather special kind.)

**Majority.** 1. *To join the majority* : To die [see Join].

“ Yes, I am going to *join the Majority*—and you know I have always preferred *Minorities*.—Lord Houghton.

2. *A maid of Honour* : A lady of rank who attends on a Queen or Princess.

Queen Victoria had eight *Maids of Honour*. Their duties were to read the news papers aloud to the Queen, drive out of an afternoon and play to her in the evenings.

**3. One's Maiden speech :** The first public speech made by a person.

He (Byron) was greatly, indeed, childishly, elated by the compliments paid to his *maiden speech* in the House of Lords.—MACAULAY.

I have become so rusty in the art of speaking that I feel to-night as though I were delivering my *maiden speech*.—EARL OF ROSEBURY.

**Cp.** Debut (= one's first appearance in society or on the stage) ; also To break the ice.

**Main. 1. With might and main :** (adv) with very violent effort : with full force.

Is it not well that men should strive *with might and main* to attain and be contented with only the very best ?—LORD HARDINGE (at Benares).

[Dickens writes "With all one's might and main"]

**2. In the main :** (adv) For the most part ; generally speaking.

If the character depicted in the Gospels is *in the main* real and historical they must be generally trustworthy, and if so, the responsibility of miracles is fixed on Christ.—ECCE HOMO.

A governing class not accountable to the people are sure *in the main* to sacrifice the people to the pursuit of separate interests and inclinations of their own.—J. S. MILL.

**2. (To have an eye to) the main chance :** The chance of making gain ; one's own interests generally.

As the ancients

Say wisely, Have a care of *the main chance*.—BUTLER'S HUDIBRAS

A shrewd eye to *the main chance* was an element strongly marked in her nature.—RUSSELL.

Dugald Dalgetty is conceited, pedantic, and always *with an eye to the main chance*.—SCOTT.

**Make. 1.** [The verb "to make" is essentially transitive—Hence its intransitive use appears very striking to foreigners like the Indians. When combined with prepositions the whole becomes transitive].

1. This line of argument will *make against* your case; tend to injure. *Contra*: To make for.

2. He *makes as if* he inherited a vast sum from his father: pretends that. Cp. To make believe [*Infra*].

3. The refractory boy *made at* his master: advanced with hostile intention towards.

4. To *make away with* (any property or thing): (a) To remove so as to put it out of reach, (b) To squander (as fortune) (c) To murder secretly (a person). Hence, To *make away with oneself*: To commit suicide (which is always done secretly).

5. I *make bold* to say: (V. I.) am emboldened; go so far as; venture. [The *adj.* expresses the manner of acting].

6. To *make for*: (*Lit*): To advance or rush towards, as the bull *made for* the boy. That is the goal they are *making for* (Much in use figuratively): To tend to: To conduce to; To favour. To go towards making.

Crowding the negro back into the alleys and slums will not *make for* a better condition for the white man than for the black man.—LITERARY. D.

There are great barriers *making for* (i. e. going to produce) disunion.

Money cannot make us happy, success cannot—All these *make for* happiness, but none of them will secure it.—LORD AYBURY.

6a. *Go to make*: To make for.

Few men have ever been so richly endowed by Nature with the inspired qualifications which *go to make* an orator.—RUSSELL.

Mathew Arnold combined in singular harmony the various elements which *go to make* good conversation.

(6B.) 1. She *had* all the *royal makings* of a queen.—  
i. e. those royal qualities that go to make a queen. So, he *has* the *makings* of a scholar.

(6C.) 2. To be the *making of*: (V. T.) To cause the success of. To favour the growth or development of.\*

Pandit Bishen Narayan Dar was the making of Ganga Prasad Varma  
Rai Bahadur—D. T.

7. To *make free with* (great names). The *adj.* expresses the manner of acting]. To *treat freely* i. e. without ceremony. Also, (my library): To use *freely*.

8. To *make friends with*: ["s" is not the sign of plural, but adverbial suffix (as in "needs" = necessarily)]. To be established in friendship with. "He will soon be *friends with me*."

8A. To *make off with*: To run away after taking.

9. To *make sure* that; Be sure by ascertaining.

10. To *make sure of* a thing: To consider it as certain; we may *make sure of* finding the culprit.

Also, To *secur* (a person, thing, property etc).

11. To *make up to*: (V. T) To approach (a person). To *accost* (him).

Also, To *become friendly to*: To be reconciled to.

12. To *make up* (for): To serve as compensation (for)

The Bath tries to *make up* by the lurid splendour of its ribbon and the brilliancy of its star *for* its comparatively humble and homely associations.

II. [~~16~~ "Make" is transitive in the following combinations. Sometimes it takes an object by way of periphrasis the two together forming, as it were, one verb. e. g. To *make answer* = To answer; To *make complaint* = To complain; To *make compensation* = To compensate; To *make haste* = To hasten; and so on. To *make war* = To war.]

1. To *make amends* [Amends (pl.) = compensation, atonement. Apply the above rule]. To *compensate* (for); To *atone* (for).

We will *make amends* ere long.—SHAK.

Cp. To *make good*—(Infra).

2. To *make believe*: [See believe (2)]. To *compel belief* artfully in others.

Hence, To pretend. [This (V. T.) combination is followed by a noun clause with "that" as object]

So, we have the noun "Make-belief" = a pretence, a pretext, or a sham.

A formal education which is prematurely intellectual is to slight extent a *make believe*. — DR. FLEXNER.

All so many *make-believes*. — MR. WACHA.

The business-man seems to stand for every thing that is practical, in contrast to the mess, muddle and *make-believe* which are supposed to be the normal outcome of the labours of the politicians. — N. STATESMAN.

3. *Make good*. [See Good].

4. To *make* (something or person) *of* (another).

[Note this peculiar combination meaning "To cause a result (something) by transmuting (another). "of" implies transmutation or change: *Lit*, To change (another, here the 2nd) into (something).]

I can *make* nothing *of* him. (*Lit.*) treat him as nothing (*Fig.*). I am unable to understand him.

Thus conscience *makes* cowards *of* us all — SHAK. = (changes us into cowards.)

Cp, To *make a habit of it*; To *make a fool of me*. To *make light of*, or *make little of a matter*. (To be little it).

If there be any danger of the public *making a fetish of government* by landowners we should at once inquire into the dangers involved in such a system. — STATESMAN.

The great man down, you mark his favourite flies;

The poor advanced *makes friends of enemies*. — SHAK (H.)

To *make a virtue of necessity*; To change what is compulsive into a virtue or meritorious act.

Cp. Finding ourselves too slow of sail, we put on a compelled valour.

The mind is its own place, and in itself.

Can *make a heaven of hell, a hell of heaven*. — MILTON.

Pitt *made peers of second-rate squires and fat graziers*. —

The Gods are just, and of our pleasant vices

*Make instruments to plague us*. — SHAK.

5. To *make out a cheque*: To write it out.



Really, I cannot *make him out* : am unable to understand his character.

I fail to *make out* the distinction : To find out, or exactly understand.

5A. To *make over* : To transfer. [over = From one to another.]

6. To *make up* : (a) To make full ; To complete. To supply deficiency. [*up* implies fullness]. e. g. Rs. 100/- is still wanting to *make up* the requisite amount.

(b) These are the parts that *make up* the whole, i. e. compose.

The term Alphabet is applied to the collection of letters from which the words of a language are *made up*.

So, "make-weight" is a small quantity added to *make up* weight ; (used figuratively of persons).

To *make up* lee way = To *make up* for lost time. [see Lee]

*Make it up to him* : compensate him somehow.

(c) To compensate for (any loss) : To recoup.

Cp. To make good.

(d) Try your best to *make up* the quarrel (or difference) = To settle or adjust ; To reconcile. So, *Make up matters* = Be reconciled.

(e) I have not yet been able to *make up my mind* in this matter : come to a definite conclusion or decision.

(f) It is a *made-up* affair : Fabricated, cooked up ; concocted. (Note the p p. adjective used.)

III.—1. To *make shift* : i. e. to shift = To contrive some means in a case of difficulty. (V. I.) To manage with such means as are available for the time being. [The idea of temporariness is latent].

Hence, the noun *Make-shift* = something devised to serve a present purpose.

Cp. Apology for ; Not the real thing.

2. A ship *makes water* i. e. leaks.

3. He has gone to the closet to *make water* : void urine.

4 This will *make or mar* your fortune : add to or ruin it.

[Note the alliteration] Cp Sink or swim; kill or cure.

**Man.** 1. *To a man* : (adv). Without a single exception ; wholesale.

Refusing to yield, they perished *to a man* in the blazing ruins.—

Ireland they (the Americans) *have to a man*.—LORD CHATHAM.

2. *As one man* : (adv.) In strict union ; unitedly.

In the early periods of the civil wars of the sixteenth century the Huguenots moved *as one man* ; their union was their strength.—PROTHERO.

3 *Man and boy* (adv) From boyhood upwards.

I have been learning Sanskrit *man and boy*.

[Beware of reversing the order of the two nouns.]

4. *A man about town* . a fashionable idler ; a panjandrum.

5. *One's Man-Friday*. [From the name of Robinson Crusoe's servant] Man of all work ; general servant ; factotum. [Differentiate. Maid of all work.]

**Manna.** *Manna in the wilderness*. [Reference to the food miraculously supplied to the Israelites in their journey through the wilderness of Arabia—Exodus xvi.]

(Fig.) spiritual nourishment. Cp. Help at a dead lift.

**Manner.** 1. *To the manner born* : By birth accustomed to the fashion ; destined by birth to be ruled by such a custom.

But to my mind (i. e. in my opinion), though I am native here

And *to the manner born*, it is a custom

More honoured in the breach than the observance—SHAK. (Hamlet.)

Cp. Bred in the bone. Running in the blood. Ingenerate.

2. He practised *all manner of tricks*, i. e. every kind of trick.

3. He has *no manner of right*, i. e. As for right he has none at all.

4. He abused his authority *in a manner*, i. e. to some extent, or in some sense.

5 This can be allowed *by no manner of means* = not by any manner of means, i. e. in no way or on no account.

**Many.** [For its idiomatic use see 4. I.]

1. *For many a day* : during a long period. (adv.)
2. *Many a time and oft* : (adv.) on numerous occasions.
3. *Many-sided* (adj.) : Having many aspects and capabilities. Versatile (Author, genius, mind &c)

Indian thought is unsurpassed in depth and *many-sided* comprehensiveness—S. H. CHAMBERLAIN.

4. He is *one too many*. (pred.) Not wanted! In the way.

**Differentiate**—He was *one too many for us* : proved too clever for us ; over-reached us,—[superiority and comparison are implied]

5. *Many men, many minds* : There is little probability of so many men agreeing. Where so many meet the chances of disunion or difference of opinion are very great.

**Cp.** Too many cooks spoil the broth.

**Mare.** 1. *To find a mare's nest* : To make a discovery which proves only illusory ; a hoax.

2. The *gray mare proves the better horse* : an epithet facetiously applied to a woman who proves cleverer than her husband and thus controls him. [see Gray].

**Cp.** One's better half.

**Marine.** 1. *Tell that to the marines* (or to the horse-marines). The story is simply absurd and ridiculous, not to be believed at all.

**Cp.** Credit Judæus. Also, a cock and bull story. Tale of a tub.

2. *Marine-stores* : A shop where old shop materials are sold. Hence, any shop where all kinds of second hand articles are dealt in. A low class pawn-shop ; a dolly shop.

**Note** the plural form though the meaning is singular.

**Mark.** 1. He is sure to *make his mark* : i. e. to gain a position of influence or distinction ; to rise in the world ; to distinguish himself.

**Sq.** a man *of mark* : (adj.) noteworthy.

So again, He is a *marked man*: i. e. famous for his excellence. [Used also to mean that his conduct is watched *with suspicion* or hostility, as several innocent college students were by the C. I. D.]

2. *God save the mark*: A parenthetical expression by way of apology for meeting any thing very *unpleasant* or *horrible*.

To be ruled by my conscience, I should stay with the Jew my master who (*God bless the mark*) is a kind of devil—SHAK (M. V) I saw the wound, I saw it with my eyes—*God save the mark*.—IBID (Hen iv.)

And I, *God bless the mark*! his Moorship's ancient,—IBID (Othello).

Cp Saving your reverence.

3. *Beside the mark* or *Wide of the mark*: (pred. adj) (*Lit.*) not hitting the mark. (*Fig*) Not to the point; irrelevant; out of place.

The story is ridiculously *wide of the mark*.

To *mark out* (some ground): To trace out the boundaries for it.

The course was well *mark'd out* i. e. planned.

My teacher *marked out* that line with ink, i. e. cancelled it.

The man is *marked out* for deportation, i. e. destined; marked in the list of suspects.

5 To *mark time*: To make no progress (as soldiers do by raising the feet alternately without advancing). To rest partially.

The Banking group *marked time* but premium bonds came into renewed demand.—BULLETIN.

Such men whose day's work is behind and who in future cannot but be expected to *mark time* in office should be selected to be the advisers of the Secretary of State.

It was never my ambition to "*mark time*"; that is unsatisfactory exertion, and leads no whither.—SIR H. HAWKINS.

A decision so noticeably conservative at such a time as might seem to imply that the men at the head of the National Congress are merely *marking time*.—N. STATESMAN.

6. These boys are *up to the mark*: (adj.) up to the standard; Proficient [*'Mark'* is the line between sufficiency and

deficiency]. Having attained the requisite knowledge or proficiency (in). So, I hope you are now *up to the mark*. (Familiarly used = in good health).

Keep the local government *up to the mark*—Mr. POLAK.

**Contra** : Below the mark = Deficient.

*To toe the mark* : (*Lit.*) To touch with the toe before starting in race. (*Fig.*) To meet one's responsibilities without shirking.

• **Ma·ket.** 1. So many things *have come into the market* : are there for sale. (V. I.)

2. I have *put my book on the market* : (V. T.) offered it for sale : published it.

3. To *bring one's eggs or hogs to a bad market* (V. T.) To bring them to a place where there are no buyers—(*Fig.*) To fail in one's schemes, none appreciating them.

4. *Market stall* : A booth or huckster. "

**Mass.** 1. *The masses* : The working class and lower order. The populace. "The ranks".

**Cp.** The rank and file; The proletariat.

*The masses* of the Indian population are quite ignorant of European culture.

**Contra** : *The classes* : Men comparatively distinguished—The rich and the educated.

Mr. Bright had arrayed against him, to use the slang of recent politics, not only *the classes*, but *the masses*.—TIMES.

Hence, a *mass meeting* : a large public meeting of the people in general.

2. *In the mass* : (adv.) In the aggregate.

**Master.** 1. I am *no master of my time* : my time is given to the service of others. I am not free to make use of it as I like.

2. He is a *master-hand* in that line of business, i. e. very great expert. **Cp.** Past-master.

**3** *One's master piece or the master piece*: consummate piece of workmanship. *Chef-d'œuvre* (Fr) \*

I place Lord Beaconsfield's political novels among *the master-pieces* of Victorian literature and I have a sneaking affection for the man who wrote the following passage; "We live in an age when to be young and to be indifferent can be no longer synonymous. We must prepare for the coming hour. The claims of the Future are represented by suffering millions, and the Youth of a Nation are the Trustees of Posterity".—RUSSELL.

England's behaviour (towards India) is a *master piece* of melancholy meanness.—H FAWCETT.

**4** *Master-stroke*: A surpassingly skilful achievement (of policy). Coup.

With the sanction of his Majesty the King Emperor he (Lord Hardinge) an lid by one *masterstroke* of statesmanship the mischief and the injury done by the Partition of Bengal.—I. REVIEW.

**5.** *Master-mind*. A predominant intellect having guiding influence.

So, Master spirit. [see the quotation under "Life blood"].

The choice and *master spirits* of the age —SHAK

**6.** *Masterly inactivity*: an attitude of non-interference *deliberately* assumed for inaction with an eye to an advantage by interference as soon as it may be necessary.

The commons, faithful to their system, remained in a wise and *masterly inactivity*.—SIR J. MACKINT SH.

**Cp** Disciplined inaction.—Fabian policy; *Laissez faire*.

**Match.** *To match*: (adj.). of this kind; similar; Like this or that.

He pronounces *epicler* as if it rhymed with *overseer*\*, and all his pronunciation is *to match*.

So, Envelopes *to match* i. e. of equal size or quality.

**Matter.** **1.** *Matter of-fact* (person, opinion, views &c) *adj.* Not being influenced by sentimental emotion. Unimaginative; prosaic.

This is a *matter-of-fact* business (adj.) i. e. pertains to the sphere of facts or reality, not to opinion or fancy.

**Cp.** A philistine (= German Philster, i. e. a non-university man): a *matter-of-fact* man without liberal culture whose interests are material and common place: one deficient in culture, taste, or sentiment.

Government does not hesitate to decorate even the *philistines* of the country with honorific title — **CHRONICLE**

How to make the English middle class less *philistine* (content with common place ideals) — **M. ARNOLD**.

So, *matter-of-fact treatment* of things (= Pragmatism: Philosophical doctrine estimating any assertion solely by its practical bearing upon human interests.)

**2.** *In the matter of:* (Prep.) As regards. Concerning.

Directions were given to search all the proceedings which had ever taken place *in the matter of* disputed successions. — **RUSSELL**

**3.** *For that matter.* (adv.) so far as that is concerned.

The candidate though highly qualified in other respects is 65 years old and is ineligible *for that matter* (i. e. in so far as his age is concerned.)

The Tsar has given the answer of Russia to the German proposals of peace — and, *for that matter*, to any other proposals of peace, — in an order to the Russian armies — **TIMES**.

**4.** *For the matter of that:* In so far as the higher principle involved in the matter is concerned. Having a view of the higher category in which the matter referred to in the preceding phrase or clause lies.

Sir Stanley Bachelor says that the condemnation of the Civil Service *en bloc* is a condemnation of the Sovereign authority as the Service is an agent of that authority..... What is there to prevent this principle from being applied to the C. I. D. or the Police in general, and *for the matter of that* to the Village Chowkidars? — **A. MAJUMDAR**.

It was no hope of mine to step into a puiene judgeship, *or for the matter of that*, any other judicial position. — **SIR H. HAWKINS**.

**Cp.** Very few people indeed read or are interested in the Calcutta Gazette *for that matter*. — **STATESMAN**.

We can smile at the terror with which Lord Salisbury, and *for that matter*, the British people, once looked upon the aggressions of the Muscovite Government. — **IBID.**

5. *A matter of course* (pred.) or *As a matter of course* (adv.) something to be expected in the natural course or order of events. ['of course' : (adj.) = necessary.]

When this good prelate secured a residential canonry for his eldest son, the event was so much a *matter of course* that he did not deem it worthy of special notice.—RUSSELL.

6. She had something *the matter* with her organ of digestion (adj.) Amiss, wrong.

So, what is *the matter*? i. e. the trouble or disturbance about

**Mauvaise.** *Mauvaise honte.* (Fr.) False modesty, an awkward state of bashfulness.

**Contra** Pushing forwardness

**Mealy.** *Mealy-mouthed* (adj.) soft spoken; smooth-tongued; unwilling to tell the truth in plain words.

**Cp** (Apt) to mince matters

**Mean** 1 He *means well* by me is kindly disposed towards me.

2 (D; this) *By all means* : (adv.) certainly; To a certainty; on every consideration.

**Contra** By no means · By no manner of means.

3 *I means to an end* : something that helps to gain the object in view—

[Note the plural form though the meaning is singular]

Political reform was related to social reform as *means to an end*.

**Cp** A stepping stone.

**Measure—1** To *measure* (a thing) *by* (a standard): To compute length, area, or contents by comparison with (a fixed unit)

(Fig.) I *measured* him with my eye: looked him up and down.

To secure a contented spirit *measure* your desires by your fortune, not your fortune by your desires.—BR. TAYLOR.

So, A chain's weakest link is the measure of its strength.



2 To *take* one's *measure*: (*Lit.*) To measure him for some garment. (*Fig*) To form an estimate of his character and ability. To gauge him

3. He *measured* his own length (on the ground) fell prostrate. (V. I)

4. To *measure* one's strength with another: To bring it into competition with (another's strength).

5. To *measure* swords with a person: To try his skill in the use of the sword (*Fig*) To match one's abilities against him as an antagonist. To break lance with him.

6 *Beyond measure*: (adv.) Immeasurably; Immoderately. Excessively.

At a dinner-party a very pretty girl lately complained to me of "Indy" and was *beyond measure* astonished that I did not recognise the diminutive of indigestion - RUSSELL.

So, within measure = within bounds (moderation) = Moderately.

Cp. To set measures to. (V. T.) To limit.

7. In some measure: To an indefinite degree or extent.

8. To *take* measures: To provide means; To adopt some effective plan or course of action.

9. To *measure out*: (V. T.) To allot or distribute by measure. To deal out (anything) to a person.

**Melt**—1. one's heart melts at another's woe: softens into pity; feels compassion for him.

So, unused to the melting mood. - SHAK.

Melt into sorrow. - BYRON.

2. To *put* a question (or subject) into the melting pot: (*Fig*) To cause it to be considered or debated thoroughly.

After three and a half years of this world-war when political systems and theories of Government alike are in the melting pot, England can no longer delay listening to the just demands of India for fuller self-government. - LADY PRIMROSE.

**Memory**, -1. To *commit* to memory: To hand down

to memory (by writing or repeated vocal recitations). To memorize ; To con.

Cp. To learn by heart.

2. In *memory of* (a person or any event) : (adv.) For the purpose of keeping alive the memory of.

The pillar was erected in *memory of* the Queen's Proclamation.

This college was founded in *memory of* Lord Canning.

**Mend**—1. He is *on the mend* : (pred. adj.) Improving (in health or conduct).

2. *Mend or end*. [a rhyming combination]. Improve or abolish.

Cp. Make or mar ; Kill or cure ; sink or swim.

**Mental**.—1. *Mental pabulum* : *Lit.* Food for the mind. Hence, material for thought

2. *Mental reservation* . Withholding of part of the truth with a view to deceive *Arriere pensee*.

Cp. A White Lie.

**Mention**.—*Not to mention* (something) [See *not to speak of*]. [*Literally*, without mentioning ; Even if omission were made of mentioning so important a thing as this, yet mention is made of it]. An *adverbial* parenthesis introduced by way of rhetoric to give primary importance to a statement as if it were secondary.]

**Mercy**—1. To *cry mercy*. (V. I) To beg pardon.

2. To be *at the mercy of* (a person) : (pred. adj.) *wholly*, in the power of.

The poor fellow, though innocent, was *at the mercy of* the Police.

3. To be *left to the tender mercies of* : exposed to the likely chance of *rough* treatment or usage by (a despot, the roughs, and the like.)

Note the plural—"the tender mercies" (ironically)—cruel handling. Taken from the Book of Proverbs. [A righteous man regardeth the life of his beast ; but the tender mercies of the wicked are cruel.]

**Merry**—1. To *make merry*: V. I. To be hilarious or mirthful. To be noisily gay.

Hence, the noun *merry making*. Festivity; revelry, revels.  
*Gau de a mus* (Let us rejoice)

**Cp.** To feast with mirth. High Jinks.

2. To *make merry* with (a person): To make a laughing-stock of. **Cp.** To make an April fool of.

3. *In a merry sport*. (adv.) For the mere fun of the thing

4. A *merry Andrew*. [From Andrew Borde a facetious physician of the reign of Henry VIII]. A performing clown. One whose business is to make sport for others. A buffoon; a zany **Cp.** A general Jack-pudding.

**Mess**.—1. To *make a mess* of any business, undertaking etc.) To hungle; To muddle. (V. T)

2. *For a mess of pottage* (adv.) [From the Bible] (To sacrifice something higher) in consideration of material comfort.

Esau, Isaac's eldest son, when faint with hunger, had sold his birth right to Jacob for a *mess of pottage*. (A dish of porridge or broth.)

**Met**. To *mete out* (punishment or reward or treatment) (V. T.) To allot.

No recompense I shall *mete out* to you will be sufficient in my eyes—[Cordelia to Kent]—SHAK.

**Cp.** To portion out.

**Mettle**. To *put* (a person) on his *mettle*: To rouse him up to do his best.

**Menum**.—1. (Distinction between) *menum* and *trum*, i. e. mine and thine.

Civilization has invented the false distinction between *menum* and *trum*.—INSER MAN.

2. To *disregard the distinction between menum and trum*: Faciously used in the sense of "To equal."

**Middle.**—1. *In the middle of doing a thing : (adv.)*  
While.

2. *In the middle of (any process) [prep].* During.

Cp. *In the midst of* [used figuratively] = while involved in or surrounded by (difficulties, afflictions etc); contracted into *amid (st)* e. g. The speaker sat down *amid* laughter.

So, *In our midst* = Among us (i. e. in our society, mixed up with us. There are traitors in *our midst*; He fell among thieves.]

Damocles's sword is a symbol of imminent danger in the *midst* of prosperity.

**Milch.** A milch cow: (*Fig*) Source of great profit; especially, any person from whom money is very easily drawn.

Cp. The Pagoda tree.

Railway revenue has been the *milch cow* for every sentimental reform.—W. A. IRONSIDE.

**Milk.**—1. To *milk a he-goat into a sieve*: To attempt impossibilities. So, To milk the ram or bull.

There are numerous parallel phrases out of which the following selections are made.—

- (a) To build castles in the air. (b) To catch a wessel asleep. (c) To make bricks without straw. (d) To make a silk purse out of a sow's ear. (e) To wash a Blackmoor white. (f) To run one's head against a wall. (g) To weave a rope of sand.

(p. To extract sunbeams out of cucumbers [see Hermetically])

2. A *milk-sop*: A soft spiritless effeminate fellow. So, a Milk-and-water fellow: one having an insipid or feeble character; without strength of will. Cp. A molly-coddle,

3. *The milk of human kindness*: [abstract represented by concrete]: gentleness or kindness natural to humanity.

This milky gentleness and course of yours.—K. LEAR.

My (your nature) is too full of the *milk of human kindness*

To catch the nearest why.—LANT MACARTH.

4. *Milk and honey*: abundant means of enjoyment.

A land flowing with milk and honey.—EXODUS III. 8

If not an article of commerce had been brought from outside India, she would be to day a *land flowing with milk and honey*.—I. REVIRW.

5. *Spilt milk*: anything which once misused cannot be recovered—an irremediable loss or error.

It is *no use crying over spilt milk*. Regret is useless now.

Cp. To mourn a mischief that is past and gone

Is the next way to draw new mischief on.—SHAK.

He robs himself that spends a bootless grief.—IBID.

Things without all remedy should be without regard.—IBID.

It were lost sorrow to wail one that is lost.—IBID.

6. *The milk bag*: The udder of female cattle; The dug of animals.

**Mill.** 1. He has *passed through the mill*: acquired experience by severe trials which fits him for certain duties and responsibilities. So, To *put him through the mill*: To give him such experience.

He (a rich fellow wishing to be "somebody") must get himself *harnessed* in some fashion or other *to the mill* of public business.—PIONEER.

2. *God's mill grinds slow but sure*: There is sure retribution at the hands of God for evil deeds though its course is tardy or dilatory; wicked acts can never go unpunished; time will have its revenge though late.

3. He can *see far into a millstone*: (Ironical) Is uncommonly acute.

Cp. Too clever by half.

**Mince.** 1. To *mince one's words*: To restrain them within bounds of politeness.

2. To *mince the truth*: To prevaricate.

Cp. To varnish right and puzzle wrong.

3. He is apt to *mince matters* (V. I.) To palliate or extenuate things (in general),

Cp. Mealy-mouthed.

[For specialization write "*this matter*" or "*this matter*" instead of "*matters*" in the plural].

Thy honesty and love doth *mince this matter*.—SHAK.

4. [The phrase is usually found in conjunction with a negative *Not to mince the matter* : (adv) without making use of palliating terms.

Cp. To call a spade a spade.

**Mind.** 1. To call to mind : (V. T.) To recollect (a matter or circumstances).

2. To keep in mind : (V. T.) To remember.

3. To put one in mind of : (V. T.) To remind him of.

Your words have fortunately put me in mind of something I had forgotten.

4. To my mind : (adv) As I think ; In my opinion.

5. The mind's eye : Mental vision.

A mote it is to trouble the mind's eye.—SHAK.

6. After one's mind (adj pred) : suiting his taste or fancy.

Cp. To one's liking.

7. I am in two minds about that thing i. e. doubt.

8. Mind your business : Let other people alone.

So, To be mindful of one's business.

**Miniature.** In miniature : (adj adv.) On a small scale.

He had erected a mill *en miniature* for the diversion of Edward's infant grandson.—H. MACKENZIE.

Man as microcosm contains in *miniature* the elements of the Universe, the macrocosm.—DEIGHTON.

Home is Society in *miniature*.—SMILES.

Cp. Petty princes ; Petty farmers.

[miniature is a very small portrait on ivory. = (n.) Hence the adj = very small. e. g. a miniature portrait.]

**Miracle.** (Done) to a miracle : (adv.) as if by a miracle ; miraculously well ; surprisingly well.

**Mirage.** *Mirage of life* : The illusive or evanescent nature of its joys, success etc.

Cp. Verily every man at his best is altogether vanity.—PSALM 39.

What shadows we are, and what shadows we pursue.—BUNAN.

**Miss.**—1. To *miss the mark*: To fail to hit the exact point aimed at.

So, To *make a miss*: generally (V. I.) to fail. [see the quotation under "Hit."]

2. A gun *misses fire*: fails to go off. (*Fig.*) fails in one's object.

3. A *miss is as good as a mile*. A failure is a failure even if the mark has been missed by one small point. [*Lit.* one-point miss ranks equally with one-mile miss. It makes no difference whether the distance from the mark is one geometrical point or one mile].

**Modern.** *The modern spirit*: Feeling of discontent with things as they are; dissatisfaction with second hand information and trusting to penetrate to the very roots of objective truth.

**Modus.**—1. A *modus operandi*: A manner of working.

2. A *modus vivendi*: (*Lit.* mode of living) A compromise or temporary arrangement (between disputants pending settlement of the debated matter).

**Moil.** To *toil and moil*: [A rhyming combination]. To drudge; To work hard.

**Molly.**—1. A *molly coddle*: An effeminate man or boy- (n.)

Cp. A milk-sop.

2. To *molly-coddle*. (V.) To treat as invalid; To take overmuch care of one's health. To coddle; To cocker up.

We seem to be running to the other extreme of excessive *molly-coddling* and pampering.—DAILY MAIL.

**Monarch.** *The monarch and the Multitude* [An alliterative combination]. The sovereign and the subject. The ruler and the ruled.

The ideal of Government, is an alliance between the *Monarch and the Multitude*.—B. DISRAELI.

**Money.**—1. He is a man of money: (adj.) wealthy, rich, opulent, in affluent circumstances, moneyed.

2. He is *making money*: acquiring wealth, in the way of becoming rich.

So, you *make your money* by begging: modern miners never dig.—PUNCH.

**Differentiate.** To *coin money*: To gain riches rapidly.

3. *Money makes the mare to go.* [An alliterative proverb] Money is all-powerful.

**Cp.** Nothing comes amiss, so money comes withal.—SHAK.

4. *Money burns in his pocket*: He is wasteful and extravagant.

5. *Money-grubber*. A person sordidly intent on amassing money. Hence, *money-grubbing*.

6. This table is *money's worth*: Fully worth the price paid for it; as good as money.

7. *The moneyed interest*: The class concerned in money as a possession.

**Moon.** 1. *Moon-calf*: A born fool; a dolt; also, any deformed creature (supposed to be born under the influence of the moon)

How now, *moon-calf*! how does thine ague?—SHAK.

2. To *cry for the moon*: To clamour for achieving the impossible [Like a baby crying to have the moon in its grip.]

An impatient idealist who *cries for the moon*—M. MAIL.

2A. To *bay the moon*: To use vain efforts.

**Cp.** To beat the air; To fish in the air; To milk the ram.

2B. *The man in the moon*; our voice in the counsels of government is of hardly more weight and value than that of *the man in the moon*.

3. *Once in a blue moon*: (adv) very rarely or never.

**Cp.** Once in a way.

4. *Moon-shine*: (fig) Show without substance or reality. Empty show, Visionary talk or ideas



The talk about Government's growing desire to respect public opinion is all *moonshine* (i. e. anything but real.)

5. *Moon-struck*: (*Lit.* affected by the influence of the moon) Lunatic; Crazy.

We were never so *moon-struck* as to ask (*cry!*) for the moon and his Lordship (Lord Morley) need have no fear that he has given us something more substantial than mere *moon-shine*.—A MAJUMDAR.

**Moot.** It is a *moot point*: a question which is being debated or liable to be debated.

The enrolment of Indians as Volunteers is a *moot point*.—D. NEWS.

**Moral.** 1 *Moral certainty*: Such as is sufficient for practical purposes.

2. *Moral evidence*: Probability so great as to admit of no reasonable doubt.

3. *Moral courage*: resoluteness to encounter odium rather than abandon the right course.

4. *To point a moral*. [see Point].

**More.** 1. The *more* you read the *more* you will like to read; (*Adv.*) This paradigm is typical of the adverbial force of "the" when followed by a comparative: meaning "by that degree" or "to that extent" i. e. proportionately or commensurably.

Use them after your own honour and dignity,

The less they deserve, the more merit is in your bounty.—SHAK.

Let those love now who never lov'd before

Let those who always loved now love the more.—PARNELL.

The adjective force of the combination must appear striking e. g.

Who wickedly wise, or badly brave.

Is but the more a fool, the more a knave.—POPE.

**Note.**—"More" is usually an auxiliary to make a comparative degree of the adjective word. But when used independently it may be used (1) as noun, e.g. I know more of him than you do; (2) as adjective, e.g. I know more English than my vernacular; More matter with less art: in both uses the meaning is one of Quantity. It seldom signifies quality.

with adverbial force; so, it is wrong to say "I know him more than you do". "More" should be changed into the qualitative adverb "better".]

There are *more* things in heaven and earth, Horatio,  
Than are dreamt of in your philosophy.—HAMLET

2. *All the more* : [see the note under *All*.]

3. To be *no more* : (pred. adv.) Dead and gone. Cassius  
*is no more*—SHAK.

[Here "is" unlike its common use is a verb of complete predication = exists (no longer.) Cp. It is all over with a person.]

**Morning.** 1. *Morning bath* : Tub.

2. *Morning Call* : Visit paid during the *afternoon*.

3. *Morning dress* : Such as is *ordinarily* worn. *Contra* :  
Evening dress : such as is worn *at dinner* in the evening or at  
parties.

**Morrow.** 1. *The morrow* (n) The following day.

2. *On the morrow* (adv.) on the next day.

[When a direct quotation has the word "tomorrow," it is changed into  
"on the morrow" in the indirect narration.]

He said "I will see you *tomorrow*" (direct).

He said that he would see me *on the morrow* : (Indirect).

(fig.) *On the morrow* of a long war : at the time follow-  
ing it. *Contra*. On the *eve* of. Cp. On the neck of.

**Most.** 1. *Makes the most of his time* : utilizes it as  
much as possible; does not lose a moment.

Cp. Not to suffer the grass to grow under one's foot.

It was a merry life while it lasted, and he would *make the most of it*.  
—DICKENS. i. e. enjoy it to the fullest extent.

2. To *make the most of a point* : To strain; To amplify;  
*generally*, To *make the most of it* = use or employ it to the best  
advantage.

3. *For the most part* : (adv.) In the main; usually.

His mistakes are *for the most part* grammatical.

Modern tragedies of religion are, *for the most part*, withdrawn from  
observation, enacted in the privacy of home rather than on the public  
stage.—PROTHESO.

4. *At most* : (adv.) Not more than (numerically taking the highest figure).

There were present twenty persons *at most*.

(adj) No more than, no other than. Nothing short of.

This is *at most* a temporization.

Note the peculiarity in the omission of the def. Article before the superlative.]

5. *The most* : (n) The utmost.

*The most* that could be done was done. Cp. The best.

But differentiate : To do *One's* utmost.

[Dissociated from "the," "Most" is adverb=More than others.

The vocation of a pleader *pays most* or is *most-paying*. Some writers prefer "best" as adverb of quality.]

**Mother.**—1. *Mother-wit* : Native wit ; common sense ;  
Gumption.

**Mount.**—1 To *mount guard* (V. I.) To go on duty as guard or sentinel

Five members of the College staff were told off to *mount guard* in the examination hall.

2. To *mount guard over* (a thing) V. T. To safeguard ; To keep watch against the removal of.

When the whole family set out for Sifola, only two servants were left at home who mounted guard over so much property.

3. Slowly the debt *mounted up* to Fifty thousand Rupees, i. e. rose or increased (V. I.) ; amounted.

**Mountain.**—1. The waves ran *mountain-high* (adv) : as high as a mountain : (rose) to the height of mountains.

2. To *make a mountain of a mole hill* [see "Make—of." under Make.] To convert something insignificant into one of very great importance. To exaggerate *enormously*. (V. I)

Note—some writers prefer "out of" to of.]

3. The *mountain brought forth a mouse* : great exertion yielding nothing significant : grave disappointment was the result. [See Labour].

Cp. The bubble burst. The bubble was pricked. To turn out crabs.

**Mouth.**—1. The report passed from *mouth to mouth* : spread from one person to another. [Fig.<sup>o</sup> Metonymy : no def. article.]

2. He is *down in the mouth* : (pred. adj.) Dejected, Despondent, Dispirited ; Chap-fallen.

3. I *took the words out of his mouth* : said what he had been about to say.

4. The order was given *by word of mouth* : orally ; Not by writing ; *Contra* : In black and white.

5. A dog *gives mouth* (V. I.) barks.

6. To *laugh on the wrong side of one's mouth* : [opposite of "To laugh"]. To lament.

7. To *make mouths* : (V. I.) To make a wry face in derision. [The object of derision takes the prep. "at" before it.]

The singular "a mouth" is also used instead of the plural.

8. To *make one's mouth water*. (Fig.) To cause a person to feel a strong desire for something. [as the sight of savoury food causes the mouth to be filled with saliva].

Outwardly I did not like him for his speculative ventures ; yet his enormous gains at times *made my mouth water*.

You have spoken as if the Government of India, against its will and its letter, were dupes of a little knot of greedy mill-owners who were not satisfied with the profits that might *make any body's mouth water*,—*MR. CHAMBERLAIN*. (Lancashire deputation).

So, To bring water to one's mouth.

**Move.**—1. To *move heaven and earth* : V. I. To exert every possible endeavour. To spare no efforts.

*Op.* To leave no stone unturned, To strain every nerve ; To do one's level best ; To play one's best card.

**Much.**—1. He is *not much* of a scholar : (adj.) no good ; Indifferent.

2. *Much about the same* : (adv.) nearly equal.

Their qualifications are *much about the same*.

*Op.* Much of a muchness (Infra.)

**3.** To *make much ado about* nothing : To make a fuss or hustle about a mere trifle.

**Cp.** A *do-do* (noun)=commotion. Tempest in a teapot.

**4.** *Much cry and little wool* : Tall talk without any corresponding result. Braggadocio. Rodomontade.

**5.** *In as much as* : (Conj.) Since ; Seeing that (see *As*).

**6.** *Much of a muchness* : (pred adj.) Very nearly the same or alike.

**Cp.** Much about the same [Supra]. O child, men's men (grammatically incorrect=men are men) gentle or simple, they are *much of a muchness*.—GEORGE ELIOT.

**Mud.** **1.** To *throw mud at* a person. (V. T.) To speak vilely of ; To make disgraceful imputations regarding. To scandalize ; To besmirch.

If you *throw mud* enough, some of it will stick.—Proverb

**2.** To *stick in the mud* (V. I.) To fail to make progress owing to surrounding difficulties. Hence, the adj *stick-in-the-mud* [unprogressive] person.

**Music.** To *face the music* : To present a bold front in a difficult situation. To accept a difficult position *at its worst*.

**Cp.** To take the bull by the horns. To beard the lion in his den.

**Muster.** **1.** To *muster up* (courage) : (V. T.) To summon up (courage which is dormant) ; To gather.

**2.** Let us *muster strong* : (V. I.) gather *together* in sufficient strength.

**3.** To *pass muster* : (V. I.) To bear examination or inspection ; To pass without censure. To be accepted as sufficiently good or satisfactory.

The higher and middle class *pass muster* for the British people.

Perhaps Tom Garbage drops his visiting card into the letter box of some great house where party is impending, on the off-chance that his name may *pass muster* in a crowd and an invitation card may find its way to his modest dwelling.—RUSSELL.

## N.

**Nail**—1 I have *nailed my colours to the mast*: Resolutely determined to adhere to the course adopted. There is neither surrender nor compromise. Must persist.

• { See the Quotation under "Olive" }

2. To *nail* (a coin) to the counter :

To put (the false coin) out of circulation by its nailing. (*Fig.*)  
To expose the falsity of (statement)

3. You have *hit the right nail on the head*: Touched the exact point: given the true explanation.

**Cp** To hit the mark.

4. To *add a nail to one's coffin*: To hasten his death by painful or annoying circumstance or behaviour on the part of a person most loved.

This misfortune adds a nail to my coffin.

Care to our coffin adds a nail no doubt

And every gain, so merry draws it out.—J. WALCOT.

**Cp.** To bring one's gray hairs with sorrow to the grave.

5. I will *pay* one Hundred Rupees *on the nail* (*adv*): immediately in cash. **Cp.** Pay on the counter.

(*Fig*) This topic is *on the nail*. Talked about, or being discussed.

6. *Hard as nails* (*pred adj*): in robust health; also, very callous or unfeeling.

7. *Right as nails*: (*pred. adj.*) In perfectly good health.

**Namby.** *Namby-pamby*: (*adj*). Affectedly simple; weakly sentimental; mawkish (persons); Insipid or rapid (sentiments, utterances &c.)

There is nothing epicene or *namby-pamby* {about them (youngmen at Oxford now seeking Holy orders).—RUSSELL.

**Name.** 1. To *name a day*: To fix a day for any thing.

2. A lady *names the day*: fixes the day for her marriage.

3. He ran so far as to *call me names*: describe me by

uncouth and uncomplimentary terms [Mark the plural].

4. He has bequeathed a *great name* : i. e. reputation.

So, *Good name*, in man and woman, dear thy lord,

Is the immediate jewel of their souls.—SHAK.

5. *In the name of* : In behalf of ; On the part of ; By the authority of ; Relying on.

O liberty ! liberty ! how many crimes are committed *in thy name* !

A host of zealous reformers has sprung up, whose measures, far from attempting to meet the growing demand, seem to be mainly directed towards reducing the sphere of higher education *in the name of* efficiency.

So, *In the name of* (God, goodness, common sense etc.)  
Invoking as authority.

*In the name of the Law* which is Mercy, depart.—D. TELEGRAPH.

Cp. To call to witness.

6. Their *name is legion* : [See Legion].

**Nap**.—1. To *take a nap* : To have a short sleep, or doze *by day*. Cp. One's siesta.

2. To *catch a person napping* : To take him *unawares*, To surprise him when he is asleep, i. e. off his guard.

They *took him napping* in his bed.—BUTLER.

Cp. To catch a weazel asleep.

**Napkin**. To lay up (talents etc.) in a napkin : [Reference to the Bible—Luke xix, 20]. To make no use of (them). So, To bury in a napkin.

The heritage of freedom cannot be *wrapped in a napkin* ; nor buried in the field of those who are heirs to it.—MR. CURTIS.

**Narrow**.—1 The *narrow house* or *one's narrow home* : [See Bed.] The grave.

So, one's narrow bed ; "one's narrow cell."

2. A *narrow escape* : safe going-off with little margin.

Cp. Hairbreadth escape ;

A close shave. A touch and go. By the skin of one's teeth.

So, He won by a *narrow majority*, i. e. with little margin.

**Nature.**—1. (Wandering) in a state of nature : (adj) naked as when born.

**Cp.** In nature's garb : stark naked; In birth-day suit; sky-clad (facetious).

2. The request came from my superior officer and was in the nature of a mandate : as a sort of ; belonging to the class or category of.

Jousts are in the nature of tournaments.

[See the quotation under ELEPHANT.]

3. (It happens) In the course of nature : (adv.) In the ordinary course of things ; as the common result.

4. To pay the debt of nature : To die. [By taking birth a person takes his lease of life from Nature].

5. To ease nature : To evacuate the bowels ; To pass stool ; or To void urine.

5A. Nature's second course : sleep.—SHAK.

6. Speechification comes natural to him, i. e. is easy and agreeable to him. It is natural in him to speechify.

**Ne.** The *ne plus ultra* : [Nothing more beyond, Lat] (n.) The farthest point attainable. (fig.) perfection ; acme ; culmination The meridian height.

**Neck.** 1. To run neck and neck : (adv.) with the neck of the horses parallel, i. e. even in a race, neither horse being in advance of the other. **Cp.** To keep abreast.

Hence the (adj) "a neck and neck" race : (fig.) keen and very close competition (in any contest as trading or examination)

1A. To win by a neck : (adv.) by the length of head and neck. To make a very close finish.

2. To break the neck of (any task, work, affair or business) To destroy the main force of (it) ; To get through the worst or hardest part of ; To accomplish the main or most difficult part of.

3. To tread on the neck of an adversary . To subdue him utterly.



4. To risk *one's neck*, i. e. life.

5. (To play) *Neck or nothing* : (adv.) most desperately; At all risks, i. e. hazarding one's all on success.

It is *neck or nothing* : (adj. pred.) : a case for desperate attempt.

Cp. Bottom dollar.

6. (To fell one or despatch one) *Neck and crop* (adv.) Bodily : with head first ; Headlong.

7. To carry or drive one *neck and heels* : (adv.) Summarily.

Cp. Bag and baggage.

8. *On the neck of* an event : (prep.) Immediately following. Soon after. Cp. *On the morrow of*. *Contra*. *On the eve of*.

**Need.** 1. You *need not* go : It is not necessary that you should go.

**Note** the omission of "to" the sign of the Infinitive which is allowable only in *negative* and *Interrogative* sentences. In the affirmative "to" is inserted, e. g. It *needs to* be done with care. 'Need' is V. T. governing the Infinitive noun as object

2. *In need* or *at one's need* : in case of urgent necessity as trouble, distress, or any sort of difficulty.

A friend *in need* is a friend indeed — PROVERB. .

He failed me *in my need*.

Deserted *at his utmost need*

By those his former bounty fed.—DRYDEN.

So, *In times of need* :

\* \* \* A blustering band (the Militia)

And ever, but *in times of need*, at hand.—DRYDEN.

3. *If need be* : If it becomes necessary, i. e. the necessity being felt. If necessity arose.

The capital, *if need be*, should be evacuated.—BOLLING.

[Beware of using "need" in the plural number as it is an abstract noun ; "needs" is used adverbially = necessarily or of necessity—where is only the adverbial suffix].

**Nem.** The motion was carried *nem con* : (adv.) No one contradicting, i. e. unanimously. Cp. *With one consent*,

**Neighbour.**—A sum in the neighbourhood of Rs. 1,000 i.e. approaching ; almost.

**Nerve.**—1. To *strain every nerve* : To make all possible efforts. To do one's level best.

I will *strain every nerve* to conciliate all races classes and creeds.—L. H.

2. He did this in a *fit of nerves* : (adv.) while under nervous excitement. Cp. Highly-strung nerves.

3. He *nerved himself* to bear this heavy calamity : regained sufficient strength. Cp. To pull oneself together.

**Nest.**—1. To *feather one's nest* : To enrich oneself (particularly from emoluments derived from agencies for others). [See Feather]. To save a deal of money.

So. To *line one's nest* while feathers are flying.

2. A *mare's nest* : a hoax [See Mare].

3. A *nest-egg*. [Lit. An egg left in the nest to prevent the hen from forsaking it. It tempts her to lay other eggs beside it.] (Fig.) A small sum of money laid by as the commencement of larger savings.

With books and money placed for show,

Like *nest-eggs* to make clients lay,

And for his false opinion pay :—HU DIBRAS.

4. A *nest of boxes* : A set of boxes of gradually diminishing sizes each enveloping the one next smaller.

5. *It is an ill bird that fouls its own nest* : one should not speak ill of home.

**Nettle.**—To *grasp a nettle* ; (Fig.) To tackle difficulty or danger *boldly*.

• Tender-handed *stroke a nettle*

And it stings you for your pains ;

*Grasp it* like a man of mettle

And it soft as silk remains.—A HILL.

Thus did Mr. Lloyd George *grasp a nettle* even in the midst of war.—

**Never.**—1. *Never mind* ; Do not mind at all ; so be not troubled in the least (about the matter).

2. (I paid) *never a farthing*: not a farthing; Not at all.

[An emphatic denial without reference to all time past or even future  
So, never a soul was present=Not even a soul. Never a rupee will be  
subscribed; Never a one=none.]

3. *Never so*: [curiously used for *ever so* in conditional  
clauses the negative giving no meaning]: (adv.) To an  
unlimited extent.

The adder will not hearken to the voice of the charmer, charm he  
*never so* wisely.—THE BIBLE (i. e.) although he charm *ever so* (i. e. very)  
wisely.

4. He will be *never the* better for the change, i. e. none  
the better.

5. *Never more*: At no future time.

6. *Never the less*: (Conj.) Not for all that; Not  
withstanding. Cp. All the same.

7. It is *never too late* to mend: always possible.

**Nicety**.—1. *To a nicety*: (adv.) Perfectly, Precisely,  
Exactly. Even in minute details.

If it (theology) was low, it knew to a *nicety* who were converted and  
who were not.—RUSSELL.

Luncheon suits him to a *nicety*—IBID Cp. (The meat was done) to a turn

2. *Nice and*: (adv.) Satisfactorily.

The carriage is going *nice and fast*.

**Nick**.—1. *In the nick* or *In the nick of time*: Exactly  
at the right moment. Neither early nor late.

The president arrived *in the nick of time*.

[In Shakespeare the word "pat" is used to express this idea—conve-  
niently, of just in the nick.

And pat he comes like the catastrophe of the old comedy.—K. LEARN.

Now might I do it *pat*.—HAMLET. Cp. The psychological moment.

The eleventh hour. (To come up) to the scratch.]

2. *To nick the train*: Just to catch it.

**Night**.—1. *At night*: at nightfall; in the evening;  
Also, during the night.

2. *By night*: (adv.) During the night;

The sun shall not smite thee *by day*, nor the moon *by night*.—PSALM,  
The sun shines *by day* and the moon and stars *by night*.

3. (He worked) *All night long*: For the whole night.

[Note the omission of the article before *night*.]

Hence, the adj. "night-long" [see *Day*.]

4. To make a night of it: To carry festivities and the like) on through the night ["it" is indefinite].

The Prince is *making a night of it* i. e. sitting up feasting—[A slang expression.]

5. *Night-mare*: Fantastically horrible dreams. A feeling of suffocation felt during sleep: An Incubus, to whose agency such dreams accompanied by the oppression of the chest were supposed due. (*Fig*) some over-powering oppressive influence.

This is the hag, when maids lie on their backs

That presses them.—SHAK.

The *nightmare* with her whole ninefold seems to make it the favourite scene of her gambols.—W. IRVING.

*Lit* The horrible apparition. "Ninefold" = her brood of nine.

6. *Night-soil*: contents of privies, cessapools etc. removed at night.

**Nine.**—1. *A nine days' wonder*: A novelty or curiosity causing abnormal excitement only for a very short time.

["Nine" has no reference to the definite period; a favourite number with ancient writers as "ninefold" above, and "nine farrow of the sow" in Shak (*Macbeth*)]

In modern England men of a more flaccid faith are nervously eager to bring their beliefs into harmony with every *nine days' wonder* in scientific discovery.—RUSSELL.

2. *A cat has nine lives*. (Proverb) [See *Cat*]

3. Possession is *nine points* of the law, i. e. *nine* out of the standard *ten* or *nine-tenths*. Nine chances out of ten for a legal declaration in the possessor's favour.

4. He is dressed up to the *nines*: (adv.) Elaborately.

So, To praise a man to the *nines*: lavishly; profusely.

**Noble.** *Noblesse oblige* (Fr): Rank imposes obligations.

I have known men to whom *Noblesse oblige* meant every thing: men who, just because they had great station and great name, felt themselves constrained to place all they had at the service of unpopular causes and to champion the feeble against the mighty.—RUSSELL (on Aristocracy).

In the country, for very shame's sake.....Ladies visit the poor, and carry savoury messes to the sick and teach in Sunday schools. All these things are recognitions, made with greater or less good-will of the principle (*Noblesse oblige*) that property has its duties as well as its rights, and that no one can decently live a life of unmixed self-indulgence and self-seeking.—IBID (Cloaca maxima).

**Nod.**—1. The tower is *nodding to its fall*: inclines forward as indication of its approaching falling down.

3. I have a *nodding acquaintance* with that person, i. e. slight knowledge of him.

(Fig.) I have a *nodding acquaintance* with Political Economy, i. e. a smattering of information on it.

4. "*Nods and becks* and wreathed smiles"—MILTON.  
Marks of recognition and courtesy.

5. *A nod is as good as a wink to the blind*: (Fig.) There is no use in arguing with a person who is determined *not to see into a matter*.

**Noise.**—1. To *make a noise in the world*: (V. I.) To become renowned or notorious. (A fact) widely talked of.

Cp. To leave one's mark. It is *noised abroad* that.

2. *Noisy non-sense*. [Alliteration.] Baldardash.

**Nonce.**—1. *For the nonce*: (Pred. adj.)  
(Adv.) Temporarily. [Lit. For then + once, i. e. the present occasion or purpose.]

I will take Gratiano's advice and be a talker *for the nonce*.—DELETON

Cp. For the time being.

2. *Nonce word*: A word coined for a single occasion  
e. g. Pickwickian.

Many verbs that originated as *nonce-words* have become established with restriction to one of the simple word's senses.—FOWLER.

**None.**—1. *None* the + (a comparative) adjective. [In such combination 'none' is preferred to 'no.']

*None the worse for it*: Not worse to any *proportionate* extent (or on that account).

Sir George Barnes seems *none the worse* for the high and long-maintained pressure upon him in these days as the Secretary of the Board of Trade.—TIMES.

He came away *none the wiser*: knowing no more than before.

**Contra**: All the better for.

So, *None the less* for. **Contra**. *All the more*. [which see].

Progress is *none the less* real, *because* it is slow.

*But* it is *none the less* (i. e. nevertheless) true that those apparent miracles were essential to Christ's success.—ECCE HOMO.

[Note the introductory "but,"]

A self-government, *though*, remote at present, is *none the less* sure to come in the fulness of time.—STAR.

[Note the introductory "though,"]

**Note** also the conjunctive use=nevertheless in:—

The scope of your inquiry is strictly limited. *None the less* there is important spade-work for you to do.—LORD CHELMSFORD.

2. *None so good*; *None too happy*; *None too soon*.  
[None is adv. = Not.]

The ranks of our good talkers—*none too numerous* a body at the best—have been opportunely reinforced by the discovery of Mr. Augustine Birrell.—RUSSELL.

3. *of none effect*: (adj.) Ineffectual; of no effect whatever.  
[The form is emphatic].

There was still some comfort left in the world when a miserable man could by suicide render the tyrant's proud will *of none effect*.

4. His shoes were *none of the best*: (an euphemism for) untidy, slovenly, not good at all.

So, his intellect is *none of the clearest*: [Mark the superlative use in the idiom.]

5. *None of it*, [A deprecatory combination]: Nothing of this kind is fit to be heard, Not a bit of it.

I'll (have) *none of it*: honour is a mere scutcheon.—SHAK.

**Nose**: 1. *Under one's nose*: (adv.) under the immedi-

ate range of his observation ; straight before him. (*fig.*) regardless of his displeasure.

With the unpractical man's blindness to things *under his nose* Brutus opposed Cassius's proposal of putting Antony to death.—DEIGHTON.

**2.** To follow one's nose : (V. I.) To go straight forward (*fig.*) : To be guided by instinct.

**3.** To Keep one's nose to the grindstone [see Grindstone.] So, with one's nose at the grindstone ; working very hard.

**4** To turn up one's nose at (person or thing) : To show disdain for.

**5.** To cut the nose off one's face : To act to one's hurt while trying to harm another.

So, To cut off one's nose to spite one's face : To indulge pique at one's own expense.

**6.** To lead a person by the nose : To make him do just as one pleases.

The rulers of the King—Log type are led by the nose by their Secretaries.

**Cp.** To turn or twist round one's little finger.

**7.** To thrust (or put) one's nose into others' affairs.

To meddle officiously in other people's business.

To be a busy-body. To intrude into something.

**Cp** To put one's oar in another's boat. Paul Pry.

**8.** To put a man's nose out of joint : To disconcert or frustrate him ; To supplant him in a person's favour.

**9.** To pay through the nose : To have to pay an exorbitant price. To be overcharged-

**10.** That matter stinks in my nostrils : is disgustingly offensive to me.

**Not. 1.** Not a hair of your head shall be touched : not even one. [adv. "not" emphasizes "a" which is adj. as all articles are].

**2.** Not a few : many.

So, Not a small amount : a large amount.

[In Rhetoric this is called "Litotes": an affirmation by negation of the contrary, e.g. a man of no ordinary abilities i. e. extraordinary.]

**3** *Not that* &c.: a parenthetical statement against possible opposite inference.

I vote against him *not that* he is a man without influence. *Contra:—*  
*But that*—All the same; never the less. [He is a man of influence, never the less I vote against him.]

**Note.** 1 To *change one's note*: To assume suddenly an altered attitude in the expression of one's views. To become suddenly more or less of an opposite character.

A real statesman (the newly appointed governor) must *change* his *note* regarding the people whom he is called to rule.

**2** To *take note of*: (V. T.) To notice or pay attention to.

**3.** After the meeting is over we shall *compare notes*: exchange our views.

**4.** He is a writer *Of note*. (adj.) Noted, famous; distinguished.

**Nothing.** 1. (Can) *make nothing of* [see Make-of] utterly fail to understand; (hence) To treat as trifle.

Those are so stupid that the prince can *make nothing of* them; they are scarcely fit to blow their own noses.—LORD SKYMORE.

**2.** This is *nothing to the point*: absolutely irrelevant. [Nothing is adv: not at all.]

**3.** *Nothing to*; Nothing in comparison with. [*To* denotes ratio]

The boasted influence of Mathematical studies is *nothing to* Logic.—J. S. MILL.

**4.** There is *nothing for it but* to introduce the compulsory system: The only alternative is &c. [*It* is indefinite]

**5.** It was *not for nothing* (that he made this remark): (adv) to some purpose.



**Now.**—1. *Now or never.* [Elliptical for, "If it be not done now it will never be done."] This is the nick of time. So good an opportunity hem? neglected will not come again.

2. *Now and then* : [adv.] Occasionally. At intervals of either time or (though rarely) space. Now...Now : At one time and at another time.

I seem only to have been like a boy playing on the sea shore and diverting myself in *now and then* finding a smoother pebble or a prettier shell than ordinary, whilst the great ocean of truth lay all undiscovered before me.—SIR ISAAC NEWTON.

A mead here, and there a heath, and *Now and then* a wood [here space is meant but this use is rare]—DRAYTON.

so, *Every now and then* ; *Now and again*.

**Cp.** At times ; from time to time. Intermittently ; upon occasion.

3. *But now* : only a little while ago ; recently.

4. *Till now* (adv.) : up to the present time ; so far. The prep "till" is suggestive of a change of condition after "now."

The Congress was divided into two parties *till now* i. e. the division is at an end now. But it would be wrong to write as above if the split still continues or is likely to continue.

**Null.** The will is *null and void* (adj.) of no legal efficacy ; without validity. Invalid ; Not binding. So, the contract is *void in law* = useless from a legal point of view ; inoperative,

**Number.** 1. *Number one* : A person's self or own interest. "Take care of number one."

2. He is a *back number*, [fig. from newspapers and periodicals]. [see Back.]

3. I told you *number of times* : (adv.) very often.

4. So, times *without number* (adj.) i. e. Innumerable ; numberless ; that cannot be counted.

5. *His days are numbered* ; He has not long to live. [Taken from the Bible. Daniel V. : God hath numbered thy kingdom and finished it.]

**Cp.** Not to be long for the world.

**Nut.** 1. This is a *hard nut to crack* : a difficult problem to solve.

2. He is a *hard nut to crack* : a person difficult to deal with, or to get the better of. A nasty customer.

3. *To be nuts to* (a person) : To delight.

To edge his way along the crowded paths of life warning all human sympathy to keep its distance was what the knowing ones called *nuts to Scrooge* (i. e. things greatly delighting).—DICKENS

Conversely, A person is *nuts on* a thing : He delights in it.

4. *In a nutshell* (adv.) In a concise form. In the briefest possible manner.

He presented the case *in a nutshell*.

The explanation *lies in a nutshell* : may be concisely stated

The volume is a political history of the war *in an ornamental nutshell*

This is the Indian problem *in a nutshell* : people grown fully conscious of their destiny are peacefully struggling for political freedom against a powerful and efficient Bureaucracy.—MR. JINNA.



0. *O dear me!* : an exclamation denoting disappointment and surprise. •

**Oak.** *To sport one's oak* : To shut the outer door (of a set of rooms) so as to exclude visitors [A university phrase] Hence, "a sported oak," in college or university parlance, is a person who remains exclusive.

**Oar.** 1. *I put my oar in no man's boat* : am not officious enough to meddle in other's affairs; Not pragmatic; not busy in the concerns of others.

2. *To lie or rest on one's oars* : To cease temporarily from hard work.

But it is my earnest hope that those who have done so much to bring this scheme [of Hindu University] to fruition will not now ~~rest upon their oars~~.—LORD HARDING.

### 3. To toss oars. [see Toss.]

**Oat—1.** To *sow one's wild oats* : To indulge in youthful frolics or excesses (before becoming steady).

When Mr. Bhupendra Nath Basu became involved in an agitation against the Partition of Bengal he *was sowing his political wild oats*, and even at that time he was a restraining influence and did his utmost to keep the movement within constitutional limits. —STATESMAN.

At Aylesbury the Radical leader had been a man of notoriously profligate life, and when Mr. Disraeli came to seek re-election as Tory Chancellor of the Exchequer, this tribune of the people produced at the hustings the Radical manifesto which Mr. Disraeli had issued twenty years before—"what do you say to that, sir" "I say that we all *sow our wild oats* and no one knows the meaning of that phrase better than you. —RUSSELL.

**2** To have *shown one's wild oats* : To have *given up* youthful follies ; To have become steady. [The perfect tense brings out the difference from 1.]

**Obiter.** *Obiter-dictum* (Lat. n) : A thing said *by the way* or parenthetically.

Amid these grim morsels of experimental philosophy Lord Houghton would interject certain *obiter dicta* which come straight from the unspoiled goodness of a really kind heart —RUSSELL.

Mr. Birrell's *Obiter dicta* had secured for him a wide circle of friends,

**Object.** *Object lesson.* A lesson in school on some exhibited object or its picture. [In kindergarten schools much of the knowledge is imparted in this way].

One from which experience may be gained ; the teaching of life. Hence a striking practical illustration of some principle.

When Lord Shaftesbury received his guests, gentle or simple, at "The Saint," the mixture of stateliness and geniality in his bearing and address was an *object-lesson* in high breeding. —G. W. E. RUSSELL.

**Occasion, 1** *On occasion* or *upon occasion* : (adv.) whenever need arises ; From time to time according to opportunity. At certain times when necessary. Occasionally.

I like him because he is useful *on occasion*.

That clever lad can steal *upon occasion*. —H. MACKENZIE.

**Cp.** Now and then. At times.

2. I *have occasion* to complain against your have cause to.
3. I *have occasion* for (help, service &c.): require.
4. To *take occasion* to do anything: To seize an opportunity.

5. To *take occasion by the forelock*: To act at once [see Forelock.]

6. To *rise to the occasion*: To show that energy which is needed in the special situation or circumstance.

If the authorities had *risen to the occasion*, they would have commandeered for the use of the sick and wounded the spacious hotels which are to be founded in Darjeeling and Mussoorie.—STATESMAN.

The necessity for all the terrible paraphernalia of modern warfare has compelled your profession [Engineering] to *rise to the occasion*.—SIR J. MASTON.

We are confident that he (Lord Sinha) will *rise equal* to the great responsibility.—LORD CHALMERSFORD.

7. *On the occasion of*: when the event or occurrence took place.

There was great display of fireworks *on the occasion of* his daughter's marriage.

[Note the omission of article in (1) to (5) and its insertion in (6) and (7).]

**Odd. 1.** *At odd times or moments*: (adv) when unoccupied.

2. (To sit or lie in) *an odd corner* (or angle): A place unconnected with the main building; an out-of-the-way place.

3. To *do odd jobs*: To perform casual work.

He was Prince Bismark's man Friday *doing all sorts of odd jobs* for him.—D. NEWS.

A charwoman does my domestic work *in odd jobs*.

4. *Oddly enough* or *very oddly*: [condensed phrase = It is very odd that]. It is curious or strange that. [A paradigm.]

Nature, *very oddly*, when the horn of plenty is quite empty always fills it with babies.—W. BRANT. Cp. For a wonder.

5. *Five Rupees and odd* = Rs. 5 + some annas; so 500 *and odd* = 500 + excess in tens and units; so, again 5000 *and odd* = 5000 + excess in hundreds tens and units.

**Odds** 1. To be at odds with: at variance with, In disagreement with (persons fate &c); disliking (things.)

2. To fight against odds. To combat with numerical-excess force.

They maintained an unequal struggle against overwhelming odds.

Hercules himself must yield to odds — SHAK.

3. The odds are in our favour: The chances of advantage (or success) So, the odds are that (adv) most probably.

4 By Long odds (adv) The ratio being 10 to 1, or 1 to nothing, i. e. by considerable excess; by far, pre-eminently.

He is by long odds the boldest of the champions

C. By a long chalk; out and away [Long odds=high probability.]

4A. To lay odds, To offer advantage at betting.

There were a number here who were ready to lay odds on Lord Chalmersford being the New Viceroy — ENGLISHMAN

So, To take odds To accept such advantage.

5. Odds and ends: (n) Remnants; small miscellaneous scraps, (fig) unimportant collections, news, remarks, &c. picked up as stray things; oddments; 'snatches of old tunes' — SHAK.

Thus I clothe my naked villainy

With old odds and ends storied of holy writ — SHAK,

A marine store is a shop where all kinds of odds and ends are sold. Mrs. Besant submitted that hers was the first case in which a trivial collection of odds and ends were put together to justify the forfeiture.

Waste basket is one into which waste odds and ends are thrown.

Cp. Flotsam and jetsam; candle-ends; waifs and strays; cheese-parings.

**Odour.** 1. In bad odour: (pred adj): In bad repute or in disfavour (with persons).

Cp. Under a cloud, Blown upon So, a reputation is said to be off colour.

2. [In opposition to the above] the odour of sanctity: the reputation of being a saint.

There the hermit lies buried in the odour of sanctity about him.

**Of.** 1. Forsaken of God and man: discarded by.

2. That he of *all men* should have done this is very strange i. e. most or even least of all. So, *of all others* [see Others (5).]

3. He looks in *of an evening* : at *sometime* in the evenings.

It is worth enduring the worst part of the rains to be able to view the beautiful sunsets when the rain ceases *of an evening*.—STATESMAN.

4. I wish you joy of this success : congratulate you on it,

**Off** 1 *off-hand* manner : (adj) free and easy. Hence, *off handed* : (adj) without ceremony; wanting in ceremony.

2. He can deliver speech *off hand* : (adv) without previous preparation; extempore. *impromptu*.

3. I refused him *off-hand* : (adv) point blank; unceremoniously.

4. He is *well-off* at present (pred adj) : in good circumstances. So, *comfortably off*; *Budly off*. *Pompously off*.

[In these "off" denotes the circumstance specified by the preceding adverb].

5. *Off with you* : [Imp. mood] Be off; get away (a peremptory order) So, *off with his head* : Behead him; strike off his head.

6. *Off and on* : (adv) Intermittently; Now and again.

He pays me calls *off and on*.

This work took me eight months *off and on*.

7. *Off-day* : a day in which a person is disengaged from usual work.

8. *The off-scourings* of society : The dregs.

9. *The off-side* (of horse or vehicle) : The right.

**Contra** : The near side i. e. The left.

• **Offensive**. 1. To take the *offensive*: To take the aggressive action Contra. To be on the defensive,

2. To put upon the *offensive* (V. T.)

Christ proposed to preserve Judaism by putting it upon the *offensive*, by making it universal.—ECCLES HOMO:

3. The most effective defence is offence.

**Oil—1** To *strike oil*: (Lit) To find a spring which yields mineral oils as petroleum. (fig) To make a lucky hit. To attain prosperity or success.

**2.** To *pour oil on the flame*: To aggravate passion already inflamed.

**Op.** To add fuel to the flame. To kindle into a flame (V. I.)

**3** To *pour oil on the* (troubled) waters: To smooth matters over. To appease strife or any disturbance.

**4.** To *burn the midnight oil*: To labour at study or writing *far into night*. [A common phrase.]

Whence is thy learning; hath thy toil

O'er books consumed the midnight oil?—GAY.

**Old, 1.** of *old* (adv): formerly; from long ago.

The Psalms as of *old* still nerve men and women to suffer, to dare, to endure.—PROTHERO.

It was said of *old* that those whom the Gods love die young.—TIMES.

**2.** of *old standing*: (adj) Long established.

**3.** *old woman*: This phrase is jocularly applied to *fussy timid men* who are like women in their ways.

The argument of the honourable Member (Lord Coleridge) amounts to this—because some judges are *old women*, therefore all women are fit to be judges.—SIR CECIL DOWSE.

*Old women* of modern India—PROF. J. N. SARKAR.

So, All the *old women* of both sexes.

**Olive. 1.** The *Olive branch*: an emblem of peace and reconciliation.

Even then dishonour's peace he (Fox) spurned,

The sullied *olive-branch* returned,

Stood for his country's glory fast

And nailed her colours to the mast —SCOTT. (Marmion)

I hold the *olive* in my hand; my words are as full of peace as water.—SHAK. (T. N.)

I will use the *olive* with my sword.—IBID (Timon).

**2.** Also, a *child* [generally in the plural from the simile used in the Book of Psalms (128) "thy children like *olive plants* round thy table."]

The lodgers were the wife and *olive-branches* of one Mr. Kenwigs, a turner in ivory.—DICKENS.

**Once.** 1. *Once for all*: (adv) [though for one time yet for all time, i. e. permanently] In final manner; definitely; outright. Not to be repeated.

~~In~~ the habitual acts of administration the king officiated, but there were some acts which Jehovah had done for the nation *once for all*, in which, as they were not to be repeated, none of the house of David could represent him.—ECCLES HOWO.

Inventions and discoveries which are final and stereotyped can be learned *once for all*.—SIR J. MESTON.

[Some writers insert *and* between 'once' and 'for all'].

2. *Once in a way*: (adv) on very rare occasions; very rarely.

The monsoon has burst on the official date *for once in a way*.—PIONEER.  
*Once in a way* a man might get drunk.

**Cp** *Once and away* [=on one particular occasion] *Once in a blue moon*

3. *Once and again*: (adv) Repeatedly; a few times

4. *Once upon a time*: (adv) formerly; at some indefinite time in the past; one fine day,

**Cp**. (I was the man in the moon) when time was,—SHAK.

Hence, the adj. *once loved* friend, i. e. quondam.

5. *Once bit twice shy*: A loss, failure or mishap suffered in an undertaking is a lesson of caution against future rashness.

**Cp** A burnt child dreads the fire.

6. *Do it at once* (adv): Immediately; forthwith; without further deliberation; not gradually.

When vested interests come in, and class privileges stand in danger of being disturbed, the considerations of justice are *at once* put out of court.—B. N. DHAN.

Also, at the same time (indicating hostile or opposite attribute)

\* \* \* A grateful mind

By owing owes not, but still pays, *at once*

Indebted and discharged.—MILTON (P. L. iv),



The Kingdom of God has always been in this manner *at once* present and future, *at once* realised and waiting to be realised.—ECCLES HOMO.

Ruskin's work is *at once* a *speculum Mundi* and a *speculum Dei* : it is a mirror of the world and of God in the world.—PANTHERO.

**One. 1.** *At one* : (pred adj.) : In union, concord, or agreement.

I am *at one* with you in this matter.

Against the dominion of appetite all the teachers of mankind are *at one* : all agree in repudiating the doctrine of the savage.—ECCLES HOMO.

Also, reconciled (with).

**2.** *With one voice* : unanimously. (adj.)

Princes of the country and people of all classes can now *with one voice* acclaim that Lord Hardinge has proved true to every one of his promises—*V. REVIEW*. **Cp.** As one man.

**3.** It is *all one to me* whether you pass or fail: (pred adj) just the same; making *no difference* whatever; of no consequence; indifferent.

**4.** *One of these days* : *some of these days* : (adv.) soon; shortly.

He would go home *some of these days* and knock the old girl up.

He will hang himself *one of these days*.—HAGGARD.

**Cp.** One fine day ; one fine morning, (some day)

At last *one fine morning* two glass<sup>s</sup> coaches, drove up to the Miss Willise's door.—DICKENS.

**5.** *For one thing* he drinks : If nothing else can be said.

The fellow's very carelessness about these charges proved, *for one thing*, their resolute want of foundation.—PATR

For one thing, we ought all to be here,—BLACKWOOD.

For *one thing* the profit aimed at in public department is very different from the profit of dividend?—N STATESMAN.

Is it not a startling circumstance *for one thing* that great discoveries of science, that the quiet studies of men in laboratories, that the thoughtful developments which have taken place in quiet lecture rooms have now been turned to the destruction of civilization.—PREST WILSON.

**6.** *I for one* do not believe this (i. e. although others may believe) [see I.]

## One

7. We shall be *one too many for him* : It will be too hard for him to deal with us by one degree.

8. *One by one* : (adv.) separately.

When bad men combine, the good must associate ; else they will fall, *one by one*, an unpitied sacrifice, in a contemptible struggle.—BURKE,

9. He is *one in (or of) ten thousand* : exceptionally good.

10. *At one blow or stroke* : (adv.) By a *single* exertion ; without repeated efforts.

They supported a measure which, *at one blow*, put an end to all trade.

Cp. At one fell swoop ; At one jump ; At one snatch,

**Open.** 1. (To receive persons) *with open arms* : (adv.) (To welcome them) warmly.

2. *To open the door to* : (V. T.) To give scope or opportunity for.

This method of appointment *will open the door* to nepotism and consequent mal-practice.

3 This is *an open secret* : a matter which, though not publicly announced, is known to every body. (placed in an open box, as it were,)

4. Who will *open the ball* : (Lit.) lead the first dance. (fig) Take the first step in an operation. So, To open the debate.

5. *An open question* { (n. pred.) : a matter in regard to which different opinions exist ; (hence) legitimate ; one admitting of further discussion.

Cp. A moot point.

So, To keep an *open mind* : not to form any definite or decisive opinion.

6. To *open one's eyes* : To disclose to him a *surprising* fact : To undeceive him ; To enlighten him about a matter which was not suspected before [see Eye 6.]

7. *Open-sesame* : [The secret magic pass-word of the Forty-Thieves in the Arabian Nights for entry into their treasure cave] : (n) (fig.) a magical or mysterious means of commanding access to what is usually inaccessible.

Then with outstretched arms, he [the Benedictine novice] sang three times the verse which was the "open sesame" of the monastic life — P.

**8. To keep open house :** To keep open doors : To be hospitable. To welcome and entertain all comers.

Christ compared himself to a king who kept open house and surrounded his dinner table with beggars from the high way. — ECKHARD, —

**Oracle.** To work the oracle: To secure desired answer by tampering with the priests ; (fig) To bring secret influence to bear in one's favour.

**Orange.** 1. To squeeze the orange : (Fig) To take all the good from any person or thing.

2 I am a sucked orange now : one from whom no more good can be got.

**Order** 1 In order (adv) with a view (to) ; to the end (that) ; as means to an end. In keeping with usage.

The coalition ministry was formed in order that the war might soon come to a finish,

Let all things be done decently and in order — BIBLE,

**Contra :** out of order ; out of trim (as a machine not working well).

2. To take order . To take measures for a purpose.

Whilst to take order for the wrongs I went — SHAK.

Whoever voluntarily gives to another irresistible power over human beings is bound to take order that such power shall not be barbarously used. — MACAULAY.

2a. To take order with : (V. T) To arrange ; To dispose of.

A dawning fear oppressed her (India), lest if she did not take order with her own household, success in the war for the empire might mean decreased liberty for herself. — MRS A. BRANT,

3. To take orders . To be ordained as a clergyman.

So, To be in orders : [Note the plural]

4. All orders and degrees of men ; All ranks.

**Op.** Talents of a high order ; consideration of quite another order [order = kind]

5. *The order of the day* : *List* The business (specified in the agenda) to be transacted on a particular day. [see Day (4)]  
*(fig)* The prevailing characteristic of the time generally.

Hockey and football are *the order of the day*, (Every school and college gives prominence to these sports)

In London Bridge and Poker banish the fiend of ennui and cutlet for cutlet *is the order of the day*.—RUSSELL

5A. *To pass to the order of the day* : To give up the point under discussion as "boring" or annoyingly tedious and take up the next item on the list of business (agenda).

6. Mr. Chintamani *rose to a point of order* : interrupted the debate with inquiry whether some thing which was being said (by a member) was *in order* or *out of order* [see supra 1].

7. *Standing orders* : Rules or regulations respecting the manner in which business or debate at a council should be conducted.

[When a member infringes them he is called to order i. e. his attention is drawn to the standing orders]

8. *A large order* : [colloq] A difficult job. (pred adj.)

**Other.** 1. *the other day* : (adv) Not long ago ; Lately ; only a few days ago .

2. *Every other day* : (adv) on alternate days. So, every other week.

3. *the other way* (adj): just the opposite : (also adv ) [see Way]

4. *On the other hand* (conj) [It introduces a fact or argument making against or contrasted with the previous one]. see Hand (9).

It is very difficult to satisfy the demands of duty to the poor by money alone. *On the other hand*, it is extremely hard for me to give them much in the shape of time and thought, for both with me are already tasked up to and beyond their powers. —GALSTON.

Cp. On the contrary.

5. *Of all others* (adv) : more than all others. Beyond comparison with others.

You are the man *of all others* for this business, i. e. pre-eminently fitted.

Brutus is the *'very man of all others* to give a moral sanction to such an act as the conspirators have in hand.—SHAK'S CHARACTERS.

[Note the supersession of grammar by Idiom here ;

"Of" in comparison is *inclusive* following a superlative adjective. e. g., He is the best of all. ("He" is *included* in 'All') But "others" forms a separated class ; it is wrong grammatically to use "*of*." Grammar would have "*than*" which is *exclusive* following a comparative adjective or adverb e. g. He is better than others.]

Now is the time, *of all others*, to accept moderate proposals for peace

So, Pick out this day *among all others* as a holiday.

**Out. 1** *Out and away*. (adv) By far. Incomparably ; [followed by a comparative or superlative adj] [see Far].

**2.** *Out of* : (prep) From ; proceeding from (as source or origin).

Behold, there ariseth a cloud *out of* the sea, like a man's hand —BIBLE.

Iago, *out of* jealousy and devilish malignity, persuaded Othello of Desdemona's unfaithfulness.—SHAK'S CHARACTERS.

Also, in various senses according to the noun which follows, e. g. (Times) *out of number* - which cannot be counted.

(The book) has *gone out of date* . become obsolete

**3.** *Out of the ordinary* (or the common or the common run) (adj pred) unusual. Novel. Exceptional.

**Cp** Never was seen, heard, or known the like.

**4.** *Be out with him* : [Imperative mood] Drive him out.

**Cp.** Off with you. (restricted to the 2nd person).

**5.** He is *out with you* : in disagreement or discord with you.

**6.** The youth has been *out of his time* : served out the period of his apprenticeship

**7.** *Out upon you* : [Interjection] an exclamation expressive of shame or abhorrence.

**8.** *Out-and-out* : (colloq) (adv) completely ; thoroughly ; without reservation.

Also (adj) thorough ; thorough-going ; downright ; positive,

*This is an out-and out swindle.*

A man who would declare himself an *out-and-out* lover and disciple of an author would be recognised as a survival from an earlier age.

It is the best house in the school *out-and out* — HUGHES.

*Cp.* To the backbone. Thorough—paced.

Hence the noun (slang) an "*Out and outer*": a thorough-going fellow.

9. To *out-herald Herod*: To surpass Herod in cruelty or blustering. Hence (from particular to general) To go beyond in any excess of evil or enormity.

[In old mystery plays the part of king Herod of Judaea B. C 40 as a cruel tyrant was acted with most telling effect. During his reign Christ was born and he caused the children of Bethlehem to be killed on 28th December which has since become a Christian festival day, known as the Innocent's day.]

This is a typical idiom consisting of a *noun-word* with the prefix *out* and a proper name made into a transitive verb—surpass (followed by the proper name itself as object.) Thus it is feared that the new Governor will *out-carry Curzon*.

I would have such a fellow whipped for overdoing Termagant; it *out-herods Herod* — SHAK. (H)

1). *At the outside* (adv) making computation at the highest figure.

The distance is a mile *at the outside*

There were a hundred visitors *at the outside*.

**Over** 1. *Over again*: (adv) once more.

Soothed with the sound; the King grew vain;

Fought all his battles *over again* — DRYDEN.

As I lay down my pen, dreamily thinking over old names, old friends, and old faces of by-gone years, I live my life *over again* — SIR H. HAWKINS.

2. *Over and over*: (adv) Repeatedly. So, *over and over again*. *Cp.* Once and again.

3. *Over against*: (prep): Opposite. In front of.

At the feast of Belshazzar, the King of Babylon, there came forth fingers of a man's hand and wrote *over against* the candlestick upon the plaster of the wall of the King's palace. — BIBLE.

*Over against* Bhishma, Drona, and all the rulers of the world, behold these Karus gathered together.—GITA (Mrs. Besant) Cp. *Over the way*.

4. *Over and above* (prep adv) Besides; In addition to; Beyond the limit real or supposed.

*Over and above* this vagueness about figure there is in the mind of the average man an inexplicable tendency to exaggerate in money matters.

[as adv = excessively or highly (happy). Cp. *Into the bargain*.]

5. *Not over and above*: Not up to the standard; not reliable.

[Note. Indian students sometimes confound "over" with "on." The latter implies contact with the object, the former means occupying space *lying above* the object i. e. *above* in position. But "over" may denote contact when the entire surface of the object is affected or covered]

The following combinations with verbs having 'over' as prefix are worth noting. To *overflow* with gratitude (V I); To *overshoot* the mark or To *overshoot* oneself. (i. e. To go too far; To exaggerate, or overdo something) To *over work* oneself. To be exhausted 'by too much work. Cp. To burn the candle at both ends.

To be overpowered with grief etc,

*Over-nice*: fastidious (tastes etc) [adj] Meticulous.

*Over-scrupulous* in religion: Superstitious.

**Own.** 1. To *hold one's own* [See Hold 8A].

2. *Of (or all) its own*: (adj) quite peculiar, distinctively belonging.

Cardinal Manning's subsequent career superadded certain characteristics of *its own*.—RUSSELL.

With a truth and liveliness *all his own* Dickens photographed the poor and the lowly in his immortal works.—TIMES.

All can now look forward to that supreme moment when Prussian Militarism will be completely shattered and civilization will come once more into *its own*.—MELVILLE.

[Note that this emphatic sense of "own" is implied when it follows a noun or pronoun in the possessive case].

3. And *his own* received him not; (u) his kindred &c.

4. He *owns* to having done this: admits that he has done it. Cp. confess to.

5. He *owns himself* indebted to me : acknowledges his indebtedness or gratitude.

So, He *owns himself* beaten : Cp. throws up the sponge. Again, he *owns himself* in the wrong.

[Note the adjective following the reflexive pronoun]

Cp. (He is) Condemned out of his own mouth.

" He cries *peccavi* (I have sinned).

## P.

P. To *mind* one's *p's* and *q's* : To be very careful in one's speech or behaviour (colloq.)

Sir John Meston's letter was a distinct threat to the speakers on the Congress platform. But there was no necessity to tell them to *mind their p's and q's* — Cp. To pick one's steps.

**Pace.** 1. To *keep pace with*. To go or progress as fast as.

2 To *go the pace* (V.I) To live extravagantly ; To indulge in dissipation.

3. To *set the pace*. To set an example or show at what rate a movement should progress.

4. To *try one's paces*. To put him on trial. To examine what his qualities are [metaphor from trying a horse regarding his pace.]

5. This is *thorough paced* villainy, i.e. complete; downright. [used only in bad sense]

6. (Latin pronounced as pa-se) *Pace tua* or *Pace Mr. Curtis* [A parenthetical way of courteous difference of opinion].

Not to give offence to ; without meaning any offence to.

[*Pace* is a predication]

Next came the History of a Crime (*pace Victor Hugo*) of the high-salutin order.—Ed. R. Cp. Saving your presence.

**Pack.** 1. We *packed him off*. sent him away hurriedly; hurried him away.



**Cp.** To send a person packing. To send him bag and baggage.

**2** A *pack of nonsense* : (a farrago of nonsense) : collection. So, a pack of rogues : a set of them.

**3.** To *pack a meeting* : To fill it only with persons who are sure to express or give a *biased* or partial opinion on any subject. So, *To pack a jury*.

**Paddle.** To *paddle one's own canoe* : (colloq) To depend upon one's own exertions and resources. To be independent of others ; To be altogether self-reliant.

My wants are small, I care not at all

If my debts are paid when due ;

I drive away strife in the ocean of life

While I *paddle my own canoe*.—H. CLIFTON.

**Pagoda.** To *shake the pagoda tree* ; To make a rapid fortune. To earn or amass enormous wealth especially in India.

[The pagoda tree is supposed to shower Pagodas (formerly Indian coins of 8s. sterling) when *shaken*].

India is no longer the land of *pagoda trees* which may be *shaken* by British exploiter speculators.—PATRIKA. **Cp.** The milch-cow.

**N. B.**—*Plucking* the Pagoda tree is wrong [The tree is no fruit].

**Pain.** **1.** on *pain of* (some punishment for disobedience) : with threat of (punishment as death, forfeiture &c.)

We do strictly charge and enjoin all those who may be in authority under us that they abstain from all interference with the religious belief or worship of any of our subjects *on pain of* our highest displeasure.—QUEEN VICTORIA. (*Proclamation on assumption of direct Government of India.*)

All Americans *on pain of* ostracism must be more than neutral.—PRESIDENT WILSON.

**Cp.** On *peril of* (losing your life).

Also, He was forbidden *under pain of* death.

[Pain = punishment as in the phrase *Pains and Penalties*].

**2.** I *took pains* (in writing this book) : took both care and trouble ; used all my skill and care.

**3.** I was *at some pains* (to write this memorial) : careful enough,

**Note** the *plural* in both cases and the adjective preceding 'pains' in the latter. No article. But, Government is *at pains* to recognise such opinion as there is.—LIONEL CURTIS.

**Palm.** 1. To *palm off* any thing (usually spurious) *upon* a person : To pass it off (as genuine) with a view to 'deceive him [from the palm of the Juggler's hand].

Of late he *palm'd off* huge trash *upon* the public.

Cp. To *fob off* a thing *upon* ; also, To *fob* a person *off* with (a thing). To *pass off*.

2. To *bear the palm* : To achieve victory or superiority [Leaves of the palm-tree were in ancient times symbols of triumph]. To have the pre eminence.

So, To *carry off the palm* : To acquire such pre eminence. To gain victory.

\* \* \*  
Ye gods, it doth amaze me  
A man of such a feeble temper should  
So get the start of the majestic world,  
And *bear the palm* alone.—SHAK. (J. C.)

Hence, *In one's palmy days* :

In the most high and *palmy state* of Rome,—SHAK.

i. e. When Rome was at its height of power and glory.

3. (Conversely) 'To *give (or yield) the palm* to a person - To acknowledge him as superior.

Two distinguished orators and statesmen belonging to two different generations put forth all their efforts in support of the Bill. The House of commons heard Pitt for the last time and Burke for the first time and was in doubt to whom *the palm* of eloquence *should be assigned*. It was indeed a splendid sunset and a splendid dawn.—MACAULAY,

4. To *grease (or oil) one's palm* : To bribe him. Tip.

Hence, an *itching palm* = a hand that itches for i. e. longs to grasp bribes, or *douceur*.

**Par.—I.** At *par* : At the same price as the nominal one (of any stock or share of public companies)

The Government securities will not be *at par* for some time to come.

∴ *Above par* : at more than the nominal value ; at premium.

3. *Below par*: at less than such value; at discount.

4. *On a par* (with): in a state of equality; on an average.

Several Indian officials whom to name will be invidious are *on a par* with the pick of the European members of the Service.—CHRONICLE.

In all disputes between the people and their rulers the presumption is at least *upon a par* in favour of the people.—BURKE.

[No article before 'par' in (1) (2) and (3); but in (4) it is necessary.]

5. *Par excellence*: (adv.) By way of (its) *special* excellence. Above all others of the same kind.

**Parsnip**.—*Fine words butter no parsnips*:

Mere hopeful promises are of no value unless carried into effect.

**Ant**: Hard words break no bones. Words are but wind.

**Part**.—1. *To part with* (property or anything) V. T.

To give up. To surrender. To resign.

A time must come, sooner or later in everyone's life, when he has to *part with* advantages, connections, supports, consolations that he has had hitherto and face a new state of things.—REYNOLDS.

2. *To part with or from* (a person) V. T.

To go away from; To quit; To take leave of.

3. A *man of parts*: (adj.) possessing talent or good natural abilities. [Note the plural]

My train are men of choice and *rarest parts*.—SHAK.

4. *To take part in* (a movement, or discussion etc.) (or in doing a thing): To assist (its promotion).

But, *To take or have a part*: To partake. (share in common with others.)

5. *To take the part of* (a person): To back (him) up or support. [Note the definite article and its absence in (4)]

6. He is *playing a part*: (V. I.) Acting deceitfully.

It is *a part* that I shall blush in acting.—SHAK.

[Note there is no adjective or possessive before "part," but insert one and the meaning is changed; e. g. He *plays a noble part* = behaves nobly.]

Honour and shame from no condition rise

*Act well your part, there all the honour lies*—POPE.

So, To *play the part of* (a patriot): To behave as; To discharge the function of a definite position in life (assumed or assigned.) Cp. To play the role of

7. *For my part*: (adv) As far as I am concerned.

*For my own part*, I welcome the change.

*For my part* no word need be uttered.

*For my part*, the loss is too great.

8. *For the most part* such speculations end in loss.

In most cases; mostly; commonly. Cp. In general:

9. *On the part of* (a person) [A common adj. phrase placed after the qualified noun] Proceeding from; as being possessed; done or practised by.

This is our part and nothing will condone its neglect whether *on the part of* the Government or the people—TIMES.

The Christian Church is a society that claims unlimited self sacrifice *on the part of* its members—ECCLES HOMO.

The work shows evidence of great research and very considerable learning *on the part of* the authors—I REVIEW.

10. *Art and part* (in) [See Art]

So, *part and lot* (with)

Christ could have *neither part nor lot* with men destitute of enthusiasm.—ECCLES HOMO.

11. *Part and parcel*: An essential part.

In grafting, an incision is made in the bark of one tree in which is fixed the bud of another and which thus becomes *part and parcel with it*. I am *part and parcel* of yourself, half of your being

This is only *part and parcel* of the Congress ceremony.

[Note. Be careful not to use any article before the combination which rather resembles a predicative adjective.]

Cp. *True Indian* that he was he would not desert the sacred cause—Not "a true Indian"]

12. *Parting words*: Advice given at the time of leave-taking.

In reply to the valedictory address of my numerous students I had the pleasure to offer some *parting words*.

So, *Parting injunctions* (given by a person in authority).

**Cp.** It only remains to take a *parting glance* at the picture.

**Parthian.** *Parthian shaft*: An arrow aimed at an adversary while flying. (*Fig*) A final reply to an opponent. Remark reserved for the moment of one's departure. **Cp.** The last word (in any discussion).

**Party.**—1. *Party-spirit*: Intolerance towards those who are opposed to one's own party; Partisanship.

**Cp.** Party is the madness of many for the gain of a few.—POPE.

So, party cry.

2. *Party-word* or *party-phrase*: Any special watch-word or phrase used by a party to denote their compactness and to distinguish them from their opponents.

**Cp.** Shibboleth. The leaders refuse to echo all the *shibboleths* and the party faith. Also, "Open Sesame"

**Pass.** [A student cannot be too careful in distinguishing the transitive and intransitive uses of this verb].

1. *To pass away*: (V. I.) To vanish (away—out of sight) Hence, To die i. e. disappear permanently (used of persons).

**Cp.** To pass off

2. *To pass by*: (V. I.) To move near and then away from any person or place always specified. [Here "by" is an adverb. But, "we passed *by* your house in course of our drive"; ["by" is prep.] As we came out a carriage *passed by*. Nor are fresh ideas as abundant as blackberries so that whoever *passes by* may pick up any number of them.

(V. T.) Not to take notice of: To overlook or excuse (as remark, conduct &c.)

Don't view me with a critic's eye,

But *pass* my imperfections *by*.—EVERETT.

Christ commands them, when dealing with a brother Christian firmly to exact that repentance, not to *pass* the injury *by*.—ECCE HOMO.

3. *It came to pass* (that etc.): (V. I.) Happened.

A self-government, though remote at present, in none the less sure to come to pass in the fulness of time.—STAR.

4. To bring to pass : (V. T.) To cause to happen.

Cp. To carry out.

5. The document passed through my hands, [Not: the plural] also, To pass through (troubles, sufferings etc,) V. T. To experience.

6. To pass over (V. T.) To pass by [see (2)].

Christ systematically passed over everything relating to politics and government.—ECCLE HOMO.

The latest proceedings have raised a grave issue which cannot be passed over in silence,

7. To pass for : (V. T.) To be accepted as.

Their vices pass for virtues.—ECCLE HOMO.

8. To pass (oneself or somebody or thing) off (as or for): To impose fraudulently. To obtain recognition (as against reality)

Colonel Feign well personated the Quaker and passed himself off as the "Real Simon Pure"—BOLD STROKE. Cp. To palm off.

9. To pass off : (V. I.) To be brought to a finish (as entertainment, any celebration &c) ; To be discontinued.

[When we speak of a thing passing off is with a sense of what remains behind or takes its place—An illness passes off and leaves health ; an even passes off and we resume our former routine ; an impression passes off and we revert to our former state of mind ; and so on. But we cannot say that time or a period of time passes off. It is sufficient to say it passes. Or if we accentuate the passage we may add the adverb "away."]—G. C. W

10. To pass to one's rest : (V. I.) To die.

With the joyful mien of a man who receives the boon for which he craves Fisher received the blow of the axe upon his slender and feeble neck, and so passed to his rest.—PROTHERO.

11. [Noun] Things are coming to a pretty pass : assuming a strange critical position.

I think things have come to a pretty pass when religion is allowed to invade the sphere of private life.—MELBOURNE.

So, this pass : such a point.

Have matters come to this *pass* that you can speak of me in these terms?

**12.** *To pass muster* : [see Muster.]

**13.** *Pass-word* : A secret parole by which one is allowed to pass [see Party-word].

**Passage.** *A passage of (or at) arms* : Fight; Encounter; Hence, any kind of quarrel on quite real or playful.

**. Passive.** **1.** *Passive resistance* : A method of securing rights by personal suffering. Refusal to obey ["passive" is opposed to "active".]

All India will watch with the keenest interest and readiness to help the gallant action of the apostle of *passive resistance* and the champion of the poor. (Mr. Gandhi)—NEW INDIA.

**2.** *Passive debt* : One that brings no interest.

**Past.**—*Past master* : One who has been master in any Freemason's Lodge.

Hence *fig.* a complete master in or of a subject.

The French bakers are *past masters* in the production of light bread.

**Patch.** **1.** *To patch up* (a quarrel) : To repair hastily and clumsily. To tinker.

So, *To patch up* (peace, reconciliation, trouble, matter &c.)

What hope is given in that speech that the whole root and cause of this great bitterness, the arrogant spirit of the Prussian military caste will not be as dominant as ever if we *patch up* peace now.—LLOYD GEORGE.

It must not be a *patched up* and precarious compromise.—MR. ASQUITH.

**Cp.** *To patch grief with proverbs.*—SHAK.

**2.** He is *not a patch on you*: not nearly so good as (you); Not comparable to (you); Nothing to you.

**3.** *Patch work*; work made up of fragments which do not go well together.

**Pave.** *To pave the way for* (reform &c.): To prepare for (something following) so that its progress may be easier.

The purpose of the allies in this war is to *pave the way* for an international system "Pourparler" is a French word for a preliminary conference tending to *pave the way* to subsequent negotiation.

**Pay.—1.** To *pay a person out* : To punish him *adequately*. To have revenge from him for some *past* offence [out = thorough ly].

Am I not perfectly justified in *paying him out* with my own hand?

**Cp.** To quit scores with ; To pay off old scores.

So, in the *passive* form. "I am paid out for it." i. e. I now *smart* for it.

**2.** To *pay down* (V. T.) : To pay *at once* (as though on counter.)

Sir Mark Sykes offered to pay any one who would *then and there* give him 100 guineas, a guinea a day as long as Napoleon lived. A clergyman, named Gilbert, took the bet and *paid the money down*.—Cyc.

**3** To *pay for* a fault, misconduct &c, = To be punished for it.

Also, good education is worth *paying for* : i. e. any money expense.

**4.** To *pay a person in his own coin* [see Coin].

**5** To *pay off* a bill, claim, debt &c : To pay it *in full*.

**Cp.** To *pay up* [this is used with the object or indefinitely.]

So, To *pay a person off* : To discharge him, from service after paying his dues.

**6.** To *pay one's way* : To meet one's ordinary expense without being involved in debt.

**Cp.** To keep one's head above water. Also, To pay one's footing.

**7.** To *pay the piper* or To *pay the fiddler* : To bear the cost of (any entertainment, merry—making, a freak or luxury) ; To suffer or make good the loss.

Indians certainly *pay the piper*, but they are not allowed to call the *na*.—INDIA.

[From the proverb : He who pays the piper calls the tune. (*Fig*) the payer has the rightful control of a proceeding]

**Cp.** Where was money to *pay the post* !—TRACKERAY.

**8.** There will be *the devil to pay* : Trouble to be expected. Serious consequences (will follow) [see Deuce].



**9.** To pay through the nose : To pay an *inordinately large* sum as price for any article bought.

**10.** To pay *the debt of nature* (V, I.) To die. [see Nature].

**11** I am *in his pay*, i. e. in his employment : I get pay for serving him.

**Peace**—**1.** *Bound over to the peace*, or *bound over to keep the peace* : under written obligation to the government to pay a fine or undergo imprisonment in the event of causing disorder, i. e. of *breaking the peace*.

**2.** To hold one's *peace* : To keep silent (especially under provocation)

Even a fool when he *holleth his peace* is counted wise—BIBLE.

I began to scent my old story from afar, but he'd *my peace*, and awaited results.—RUSSELL.

**3** *Peace offering* [Biblical] Thanksgiving to God ; Propitiatory gift.

**Pearl**.—To *cast pearls before swine* : To offer any thing good to one incapable of appreciating it.

Cardinal Manning never introduced religious topics unseasonably, never *cast his pearls before unappreciative animals*—RUSSELL.

**Cp.** To pour water into a sieve, To cast one's bread upon the waters.

**Peck**. To *peck at* (a person or thing) : (*Lit*) To peck at as woodpeckers do (*Fig.*) To carp at ; *always* to find fault with ; To nag at.

**Peg**—**1** *Round peg in a square hole* : (*Fig*) A person not fitted for the place he occupies.

So, a square peg in a round hole.

**2.** A *peg to hang* (a theory, theme discourse etc.) on : *Lit.* a pin on which to hang a thing ; (*Fig*) an occasion or pretext for a theme or discussion.

Of course there must be theories, if only for *pegs to hang facts upon*.

On the present occasion the noble and learned Lord (Lord Northcliffe) has succeeded in making an apparently innocent question a *peg on which to hang an oration*—EARL CURZON.

3. To *take a person down a peg*: To humiliate him. So, (V. I) To come down a peg. (To be humbled).

**Pelion.**—To place Mount Ossa on Pelion: [In their wars against the gods, the giants did this to scale the heavens with greater ease].

The great Protector (Cromwell) had at last been disinterred from beneath *Pelions and Ossas* of calumny and rubbish, heaped upon him by generations of detractors.—TIMES.

**Pell.** *Pell mell*: (adv) In confusion and disorder. They ran *pell mell*. (thrown) Promiscuously. **Cp.** In the melee.

**Pendulum.** *The swing of the pendulum*: Reaction from one extreme to another: alternation of power between political parties.

**Penny.**—1. *Penny-a liner*: a hack writer (paid at the rate of a penny per line); a literary drudge.

2. *Penny wise and pound foolish*: (pred. adj): wise i. e. economical in respect of a penny but foolish i. e. extravagant in respect of a pound. Hence, by generalization too careful in *small* but too wasteful in *large* matters.

3. *In for a penny, in for a pound*: A thing once begun must be finished *at all costs*.

**Pepper.** *A pepper-corn rent*: a nominal rent.

**Cp.** Rock-bottom price.

**Per.**—1. *Per se* (adv): By oneself; Apart from all other considerations.

2. *Per saltum*: (adv.) with a leap i. e. without intermediate stages. Immediately.

**Cp.** All at once; By leaps and bounds.

**Peril.**—1. You are *in peril of* (your life): (adj) In danger of losing; or, your life is in peril.

2. You *do it at your peril*: (adv) take the risk; it is a risky affair.

The social Journalists of the time set privacy at defiance, But they did it *at their own peril*.

**3.** Keep off *at your peril* : (adv.) Take the risk if you fail to keep off. Cp. On pain of.

**Permit.** [As V. T. it is usually followed by a person : will you permit me to alter this word? I am not permitted, to do so etc. (passive) But]

To *permit of* : [The verb is intransitive ; the compound is transitive] To admit of.

The words of the document do not *permit of* this construction, The feeble state of my health does not permit of a change. My pension is too exiguous to *permit of* luxuries.

**Person.—1.** *In person* : (adv.) Personally ; not through any substitute or agent.

The speech was read by the king *in person*.

The Magistrate investigated the matter *in person*.

**2.** *In one's own person* : (adv.) affecting one's physical sense.

The voluptuary surfeited with wealth and indulgence refuses to see the miseries around him, because he does not feel them *in his own person*.

**3.** *In the person of* : (prep) *In no less a person than*.

I found a friend *in the person of* my rich neighbour.

I got a patron *in the person of* the District Magistrate.

**4.** *Personal equation* [An astronomical phrase : Inaccuracies in time calculations to which the calculator is liable.] (*Pij*) A person's peculiarities and idiosyncracies which must be taken into account as likely to lead to errors in his actions or judgment. Results or influence on events arising from the particular nature of the individual person concerned.

It is necessary to take note of the *personal equation* in this matter.

**5.** *Personal God* : God represented as individual person. Conception of God as concrete existence.

R. Tagore's conviction of the union of the Supreme will with our will and of our love with the love everlasting means the doctrines of a *personal God* and the soul's immortality.—EAST AND WEST.

**Pet.**—1. To *take the pet* : To assume the attitude of a child. To be in a fit of ill temper; To be sulky. To be offended. Cp. To take it ill.

2. *One's pet aversion* : What one *specialy* dislikes.

Cp. Bête noir (Fr, Black beast) ; Bugbear

**Petard**.—To be *howt with one's own petard* [See Hoist.]

**Peter**.—To *rob Peter to pay Paul*. [Here is an allusion to the misappropriation of the endowments of the church of St. Peter to the repairs of St. Paul's cathedral].

To take away from one to give to another *in an unfair way*.

To borrow money from one person (i. e. Peter) to pay off another (i. e. Paul) without the least likelihood of being able to discharge the debt.

**Petit**.—*Petit maitre* [Fr. a little master] A dandy; a coxcomb; any person of *small* intelligence or capacity but *large* conceit. A panjandrum

**Petticoat**.—1. He was then *in petticoats* ; (adj pred ) a small child.

An infant freethinker, a baby philosopher, a scholar *in petticoats*—a man, when he grew up, who knew almost every thing except *himself*.

Cp. *In swaddling clothes* : (i. e. the clothes in which infants are *swathed* or enwrapped )

That great baby (pointing to Polonius) you see there is not yet out of his *swaddling clothes* —HAMLET.

Also, *In jackets* [which see]

[Note. Petticoat is the skirt worn by women, girls, and young boys.]

Ant. *In trousers*.

2. She is a Napoleon *in petticoats* (i. e. wearing the garb of women) : In every thing except sex.

3. *Petticoat government* : Predominence of women in the home or politics. The rule of women domestic or political.

Cp. The *graymare* is the better horse.

**Phoenix**.—*Phoenix-like* : (adv) so as to be infused with

new life after death [see Bird.]

**Pick.**—1. 'To *pick up* (a livelihood, an acquaintance, information &c) : (V. T.) To earn, gain, or acquire *casually*.

Also (V. I.) He has *picked up* considerably since his last illness—i.e. acquired *fresh* strength and vigour; *regained* fresh spirit &c. (rather colloquial.)

2. To *pick up* one's heels : (V. I.) To move very smartly.

3. I *have a bone to pick with you* : I have reason for displeasure or quarrel with you [see Bone]

4. To *pick flaws in* : To find fault *with*. To peck at. To nag at.

**Cp.** To look a gift horse in the mouth.

5. To *pick a hole in* one's coat : To find fault with him, To talk scandal against him ; To cavil at him.

So, (metaphorically) To *pick a hole in* a person's character . To find a weak point in it.

6. To *pick holes* (in) [used without specific reference to coat].

Our very selves are reopening questions long ago answered, *picking holes* in true-honour'd flags.—RUSSELL.

7. To *pick a lock* : To open it with some instrument other than the key as pointed rod &c.

The key which is used in *picking locks* is called *skeleton key*.

Hence, the noun *pick-lock* = one who picks locks (dishonestly).

8 To *pick a person's pocket* : To steal its contents.

Hence, the noun *pick-pocket* = one who makes a practice of stealing from people's pockets.

So, To pick and steal ; [*pickings* in the plural = pilferings ; tips.]

9. To *pick a quarrel* (with) : To contrive or invent (intentionally) some occasion for quarrel [The adverb *up* is not admissible after *pick* in this sense.]

We believed that France was weak and we tried to *pick a quarrel with*

her over Fashoda (Anglo-Egyptian station on White Nile evacuated by the French)—RUSSELL.

**Cp.** To trail one's coat-tails. (Also) To fasten quarrel upon.

**10.** To *pick* one's *steps* : To be very careful about. To select carefully.

An easy way to truth is not to be found by rejecting wholesale any more than admitting wholesale. The risk of error lurks on both sides. Truth lies in a middle way and it is our business to *pick our steps* carefully—OLIVER LODGE. **Cp.** Mind one's p's and q's.

So, To *pick* one's *way* = To walk carefully (fig) through, i. e. in the midst of a difficulty. Also, To *pick* one's *words*.

**Cp.** To speak by the card. To thread one's way.

So, again To *pick and choose* = To select fastidiously.

**11.** The *pick* (of any thing) : (n) The very best ; as chosen first:

It was the Book of Psalms that cultivated those masculine virtues that made the Huguenots *the pick of the nation*.—REMOND.

So, the *pick of the basket*.

**Pie.—1.** To *eat humble pie*. To have one's sense of self-importance lowered.

**Cp.** To eat the leek ; To eat one's words.

**2.** To *have a finger in the pie*. [See Finger.]

**3.** Promises are like *pie-crusts* made to be broken, i. e. Baked paste of pie.

Will Indian members be induced for a third time to eat the Government *pie-crust* !—MUS. BESANT.

**4.** To *go to pie* : (V. I.) To fall into disorder or chaos (as set types in a printing establishment). [From Printer's pie = confused mass of types.]

**Piece. 1.** *Of a piece with* : (adj.) similar to ; in keeping with.

Our thoughts, words, and deeds are to be *of a piece*.—ECCO HOMO.

**2.** To *piece out* : (V.T.) To extend or enlarge by addition of pieces ; To eke out.

The *piecing out* of an old man's life is not worth the pains.—SIR TEMPLE.

**3.** To *piece together*: (V. T.) To put together so as to form a whole.

It is impossible to give more than the real facts as they were elicited in cross examination and *pieced together* in his (Sir Henry Hawkin's) opening speech.—R. HARRIS.

Her words provoked their hearers to try to gather some meaning from them to *piece them together* so that they may give a coherent sense. (D)

**4.** I will give him a *piece of my mind*: candid opinion bluntly expressed; Rebuke him.

Cp. Talk to (v.) Give a talking-to.

**5.** By *piecemeal* or *piecemeal* (adv.) piece by piece; By little and little.

Better to sink beneath the shock

Than moulder *piecemeal* on the rock.—BYRON.

Unless all who love liberty unite we shall be destroyed *piecemeal*—

**6.** To work *by the piece*: (adv.) By the measure of quantity done or turned out irrespective of the time expended:

**Fig—1.** A *pig-headed* fellow (ulj) obstinate and stupid.

**2.** To buy a *pig in a poke* (i.e. sack): (u) anything without inspection or knowledge of its value.

C. A leap in the dark. A blind bargain.

**3.** To *bring one's pig to a fine*, or *wrong market*: To sell at a loss. (*Fig*) To fail in a venture.

**Pigeon.—1.** *Pigeon English* or *Pidgin English*: Jarjou of English words used in commercial transactions between the Chinese and the Europeans,

Cp. Pedlar's French; St. Giles's Greek. Thiene's Latin.

**2.** To *pluck a pigeon*: Lit, To strip feathers from a fowl. (*Fig.*) To swindle a gull or simpleton; To fleece a young inexperienced person.

**3.** *Pigeon-hole*: a compartment for sorted papers in a desk or cabinet.

**Pile.—1.** To *pile it on*: [*It is indefinite*] To exaggerate matters. Cp. To throw the hatchet.

2. To *pile on the agony*: To intensify any painful description or acting of a pathetic part; To recount a story with sad details. (*Fig.*) To overburden a person.

3. He has *made his pile*: amassed a fortune.

**Pill.**—1. A *bitter pill to swallow*: (*Fig.*) A too unpleasant a proposal to be accepted.

2. To *gild the pill*. [See Gild].

**Pillar**—1. Driven *from pillar to post*: (adv) From one resource to another; (also) from one business to another.

The Indians in South Africa were kicked *from pillar to post*.

Driven *from post to pillar* Education cries in bitter anguish 'why dost thou persecute me.' But the bureaucrat who has set his heart upon checking and controlling education is in no mood to listen.—I. MESSENGER.

2. *Pillar box*: A hollow pillar in which letters are posted.

**Pillow**.—To *take counsel of one's pillow*: To take a night for reflection. Also, to consult *one's pillow*.

**Pin**.—On *pins and needles*: (pred. adj.) (*Lit.*, feeling the tingling sensation in a benumbed part of the body.) (*Fig.*) In a state of great uneasiness or anxiety. Cp. In a stew.

2. I *pinned my faith on him*: Had implicit trust on him; absolutely relied upon him.

Some will *pin their faith* even to the crossing of a T, the perpendicularity of a down stroke or the obliquity of an upstroke.—SIR H. HAWKINS.

Nor is it to mere verbal declarations that Mr. Wells *pins his faith*.

We may *pin our faith* on the specializing instinct.—SIR J. MEARON.

We know that the Germans *have pinned their whole faith* to the prosecution of this submarine campaign.—LORD CURZON.

So, To *pin oneself upon* a person: To hold fast to him.

3. I *pinned him down* to his engagement: bound him.

3<sup>4</sup>. He *does not amount to a row of pins*: is quite an insignificant person. Cp. A man of straw.

4. *Pin-pricks*. (*Fig.*) Trifling irritation; Petty annoyances.

5. *Pin money*: Husband's allowance to his wife for her separate use (as for dress expenses etc.) Cp. Pocket money.



**Finch** —1. *At a pinch*: In a difficulty; at a critical juncture. In some special emergency; In time of need.

["On a pinch" and "at the pinch" are also used] I have worked hard since I came here; but since Abner left me *at the pinch*, it has n't been man's work — C. READE

2. That is *where the shoe pinches*: (n) the trouble lies. —

3. Only the wearer knows or can feel *where the shoe pinches*. The real and exact cause of any discomfort.

Practical and personal experience as to where the cause of trouble lies in any matter.

It is the women who know *where the shoe pinches* and any purely man-made scheme is sure doomed to failure — LORD CHELMSFORD

Indian Judges approach the subject from a totally different point of view from that of European Judges who don't possess an inch of land and don't know *where the shoe pinches*, while in England every member of the judiciary holds land. — MR. JACKSON

**Cp** Sore subject, Skeleton in the cupboard Thorn in one's side,

**Pis** A *pis aller*. (Fr) one's last shift or resource.

**Cp** Dernier ressort.

**Pit** —1 The *bottomless pit*: Hell.

2. My heart *went pit-a-pat* (V L.) Palpitated

3. To be *pitied against*: To be set to fight, or matched against. [Metaphor from cocks and dogs fighting in a pit].

Valuable results have been obtained by men of different views *pitching* their minds *against* each other — SIR J. MESTON.

Before *pitching himself against* their opponents he must force his way to the front through a line of dangerous rivals. — LORD BEACONSFIELD.

4. *Pitfall*: a covered pit into which animals unsuspectingly fall; a trap. (Fig.) unsuspected danger.

**Pitch** —1 To *pitch into* (a person, food etc): (V. T.) To attack vigorously with blows, words etc.

To reprove harshly. To scold.

I shall *pitch into* him when I meet him next. **Cp**. To give it one right and left.

2. He *pitched it strong*: [It is indefinite for speech,

action etc.] spoke with very great warmth.

3. To *pitch upon*: (V. T.) To decide upon; To choose.

Sir A. Helps was very fortunate in the particular subject he *pitched upon*. —TIMES

4. To *touch pitch*. (*Fig*) To mix into or deal with nefarious business or character,

They that *touch pitch* must be defiled. —SHAK.

**Pitcher.**—1. *Pitchers have ears*: There are persons likely to overhear.

Pitchers have ears, and I have many servants. —SHAK.

So, *Little pitchers have long ears*. [Proverb] Children are apt to observe what is said or done in their presence, especially when it is not intended for them.

2 To *break the pitcher at the fountain* [See Fountain]

**Pith.** (*Enterprises*) of *great pith and moment*: most important and momentous. [oft quoted from Hamlet's famous soliloquy] of soaring character and mighty impulse.  
[Moment = momentum, i. e. impulse.]

Diplomatic consequences of *great pith and moment*. —RUSSELL.

Canon MacColl has conducted negotiations of *great pith and moment*.

**Pique.**—1 He did this in a *fit of pique*. Actuated by malice.

2. He took a *puke against me*: conceived grudge or ill feeling towards me.

3. To *puke oneself on*: To value oneself highly for.

He *puiked himself on* his skill in the use of the sword. —DAINGTON.

(p. To *pride oneself on*,

**Pity.**—1 To *take pity on*: (V. T.) To feel or act compassionately towards

2. For *pity's sake*: [adverbial form of interjection to denote entreaty]. I entreat you to (do this) Have pity and do this.

3. *More is the pity*: so much the worse.

4. It is a *pity* that etc.: [Beware of using 'matter' before 'pity' because pity includes the matter causing the feeling. But, say it is a matter of regret that etc.]

2a. *In place of* (prep.): Instead of. In lieu of. [No article after *in*.]

**Place.**—1. *Out of place* (adj. pred.): Not occupying the right place or position; misplaced; Not done or said at the right time; inappropriate.

These rhyming fools are utterly *out of place* in times of war.—DRYDEN

Perhaps Lord Coleridge's gibes were a little *out of place* on "The Royal Bench of British Thumbs."—RUSSELL. Cp. *Mis-a-propos*.

2 *In place*: [Exact opposite of (1)] occupying the right place; appropriate, relevant.

It seemed to me that your home-thrusts were *in place*:

Oft He seems to hide his face,

But unexpectedly returns,

And to his faithful champion hath *in place*

Bore witness gloriously —MILTON (Samson).

Cp. *I propose* of (To the purpose)

3. To *give place* to (V. T.) To yield to; To retire in favour of (another); To be succeeded by.

The rustic honours of the sceptre and share

Give *place* to sword and pike, the pile of war.—DRYDEN,

4. To *take place* (V. I.) To happen (as a quarrel, riot, event)

**Plague.**—Plague-spot.—A locality infected with plague. (*Fig*) A place where great social and moral evils prevail.

Would it not be a sin worthy of damnation to let this *plague-spot* upon human nature have further opportunities for evil!—(Hamlet on his uncle-king.)

**Play.**—1. To *Play* into the hands of; [see Hand] To work so as to give the advantage to another person. (usually an opponent). To act so that another is benefitted.

The drudge, a very clever person, has been *playing* into the hands of designing masters,

**Op.** To turn the grindstone.

**2** To *Play on or upon* (a person or a thing:) To exercise unfair influence over him; To make unfair use of. To trifle with; To delude.

No unbeliever has done anything great in this world by merely *playing* on the beliefs of another —W,

Guru Govindgar *played upon* the ignorance and credulity of the Bhills in a remarkably successful manner.—MOD. REVIEW

**2A** To *Play off* one person against another: To place one person in opposition to another for the furtherance of one's interests.

The policy of Government is to *play off* the Mahomedans against the Hindus.

**3.** To *play upon words*: To give a humorous turn to them; To use them in double sense; To pun. Hence the noun "A play upon words" = a pun; a quibble. But *play of words*: using them jestingly. **Op** Double entendre.

**4.** Their game is *played out*, i. e. played to an end, used; of no further service [Note passive .Pred. ad] the patronage system is rather *played out*.

[In the above 4 combinations the sense of *work* or *use* is prominent]

**5.** To *play the deuce* (or *devil*, or *mischiefs*) *with* (V T) : To act the part of the devil in regard to; To spoil; To ruin.

Yet human hearts need sun as well as oats,

So cold a climate *plays the deuce with* votes.—BULWER LYTTON.

**5a.** To *play the fool*: To act like a fool; To act foolishly. To behave in the manner of a fool.

**Op.** To *play one's part* well; To play the tyrant; To play a traitor &c.

**6.** To *play a person false*: [an instance of prolepsis] To behave *treacherously* towards him; To deceive him [To *play* V. I. has acquired force of the transitive being followed by the adjunct "false."]

**6a.** To *play a person tricks* [Here "play" is a double object verb]: To deceive him; To bamboozle him.

7. *To play the role of*; *To play the part of* (To act as on the stage).

Assumption of superiority is offensive, both when people express contempt for others as well as when they *play the role of* patrons.—M.R.

Hence, *To play a part*: To show two faces, i. e. To be hypocritical; To dissemble; To feign. Cp. *To play fast and loose*.

8. *To play the game*: To observe strictly its rules (much used figuratively). To behave honourably (in any affair or business).

Over consumption by the affluent must not be allowed to create a shortage for the less well-to do, and I hope I can appeal to men and women of all ranks to *play the game*—LLOYD GEORGE.

Differentiate "*To play a deep game*" and "*to play a game*" and "*to play at a game*." [See Game.]

9. *To play up to a person*: To flatter him; To toady him taking advantage of his weakness.

10 *To bring into play* (a person's talents, skill &c.) = To give scope for the exercise of (V. T.)

Cp *To call into play* in recent times chemistry has been called into play in aid of the perfume.

So, *To come into play*: (V. I.)

Then the higher qualities of Lord Sinha's genius *came into play*

11 *To hold in play*, (V. T) To keep engaged or occupied.

I with two more to help me

Will hold the foe in play - MACAULAY (Horatius)

**Plough**—1. *To put one's hand to the plough*: To begin any work vigorously (Taken from the Bible—Luke ix.62).

Cp *To put one's shoulder to the wheel*.

2. *To plough a lonely furrow*: To be estranged and isolated from former associates.

**Pluck**—*To pluck up* (courage or one's spirit) - *To assume or resume* To muster.

The tradition which I have received from the whigs who promoted the bill is that if the Tories had *plucked up* courage to throw it out on the

First Reading, the cause of Reform would have been retarded for a generation — RUSSELL Cp. To take heart

**Plume.**—1 To *plume* oneself upon : (V, T) To boast of.

Cp. To pride oneself on (or in).

2 (To appear or come) in *borrowed plumes* : wearing ornaments belonging to others.

Cp. Jackdaw in peacock's feathers ; Am in lion's skin

**Pocket**—1. I am Rs. 100/ in *pocket* by that transaction have made a profit of so much.

Contra, To be out of pocket,

He was both *out of pocket* and out of spirits by that catastrophe.

2 To *po ket* an insult or any wrong To take it calmly without seeking redress.

Cp. To stomach an affront (i, e, To put up with it.)

**Point**—1. To *point* a moral. To allude for or piquancy to a moral precept.

He left the name at which the world grew pale,

To *point* a moral or a torn a tale — S. JOHNSON,

Bunyan's Pilgrim's Progress furnishes a leading example in Allegory, a discourse couched in figurative language and intended to *point* a moral

Shakespeare's rhyming lines stand out from the surrounding blank verse and *point* the moral of the preceding situation, DELIUS.

So to *point* one's observations with apt quotations.

Cp. His action gave point to his words.

**Differentiate** To *point out* = To show or indicate

(fig) To *point* to a thing To direct one's attention to it.

When I add that officials and educated Indians stand opposed like two political parties, I am only *pointing* to acknowledged facts — MA. CURRIE.

2. *Point by point* (adv) in-detail ; *seriatim*.

From *point* to *point*, now have you heard

The fundamental reasons of this war — SHAK.

And *point by point* the treasons of his master

He shall again relate. — SHAK (Henry VIII)

3. When it came to the *point* he receded (adv.) : At the precise moment for action [‘it’ is indefinite for time]

[See ‘To the point’ *Infra*.] †

4. To *carry one's point*: To gain the particular thing one desired. To secure one's end.

5. To *make a point of*: To be very particular about; To regard as essential.

I wished, in view of the Punjab's great record, *to make a special point* of visiting you while the war is still in progress.—LORD CHELMSFORD.

In the colleges established under the Theosophical Educational Trust we shall *make a point of* training our students to realize the essential unity of all religions, while clinging specially of course to their own.—MR. ARUNDALE.

[NOTE the corresponding idiom we shall *make it a point* to train &c. Infinitive instead of gerund in (5)—CP. We shall *make it a point* of duty to feel this passion—ECCF ROMO.

6. To *stretch a point*: To strain a matter beyond its legitimate extent or scope; To relax some customary rule; To make an exception of a principle in favour of some body.

6A. He is *at the point of death* on the verge of, i. e. about (to die).

7. Here is a case *in point*: (adj.) Illustrative.

The Judges live so entirely in their own narrow and rather technical circle that their social abilities are lost to the world. The late Lord Coleridge was preeminently *a case in point*—RUSSELL.

8. *In point of*: (prep.) In regard to; as regards. As a matter of (fact).

I think as connected with the judicial service, *in point of* both intellectual and moral capacity there is no judicial appointment to which the Indians might not attain.—SIR ESKINE PERRY.

9. To *the point*: (adj.) Pertinent; relevant, opposite; Bearing directly on the business in hand.

Say any thing so long as it is *to the point*.

Cp. To the purpose; "germane to the matter"—SHAK.

Contra; off the subject; neither here nor there.

If anything were to be learnt from the most tedious visitor he (Lord Clarendon) suppressed all signs of weariness, followed him through every irrelevant excursion, brought him back dexterously to *the point*, and elicited the one grain of worth from whole bushels of chaff.—THOMAS.

10. To *give points* (i. e. *adv.*) to one (in competition with

him) To be superior to him; to give useful suggestions.

Our local council can give *points* in this respect (Hindu-Mahomedan entente) to other legislative bodies in India.

Hamlet has *three points* given him, and with these odds he boasts that he shall win.—MOZART.

**11.** To *stand upon points*: To be punctilious or over-scrupulous. To have prudish scrupulousness. To be meticulous. [Note the plural.]

**12.** *Point of view*: (*Lit*) the position of an observer or an artist when drawing a picture; (*fig*) way of looking at a matter.

This statement was made from the speaker's own *point of view*.

The British and the French section in Canada regard a common European civilization from entirely different *points of view*.—MR. POLAK.

**13.** A *Point blank* shot [Reference to the black or white mark in the centre of a butt]. one going directly to the mark.

Hence, (*adj.*) direct and plain (remark &c). Also (*adv.*) He refused me *point blank*, i. e. flatly or off hand.

**Pomp**.—1. Pride, *pomp and circumstance* (of glorious war) (Shak): Proud and showy display in all (its) details; pompous details.

2. *Pomps and vanities* (of this wicked world) *Vani splendours*.

[In these two phrases the figure used is called, *Hendiadys*: two nouns instead of one and an adjective, as goblets and gold = golden goblets,]

**Pore**—1. To *pore over* (books &c.): To be absorbed in studying.

2. To *pore one's eyes out*: To tire them by close reading

**Pose**—1. To *pose as*. (V I.) To give oneself out as; To pass oneself off as.

[From *assuming* an attitude for artistic purposes] To *attitudinize as*.

The women gypsies *pose as* fortune-tellers.—CRC.

I am too conscious of the very small claims I have to *pose as* an authority.—W. LUTAN.



Cassius's known hatred of Caesar renders it impossible that in an attempt against the latter's life he should *pose* as a disinterested patriot.

Look at that *foff posing* as a lady-killer.

[Beware of using the verb as Reflexive transitive. As transitive it means to puzzle, whence the noun, *poser* = a puzzling question.]

Hence, the noun, as *pose* of ignorance, i. e. ignorance as aimed for effect. = Socratic irony (Socrates feigned ignorance in order to entice others into display of supposed knowledge).

The physical culture magazines display photographs of this or that athlete *in the pose* of this or that Greek statue.

2. *In pose* : In proper place (Pred. adj.). Statuesque.

(Contra. *Out of pose* [Note the omission of the article.]

**POSSESS** --1. To *possess* oneself of (a thing). (V. T.)  
To get for one's own.

Hence, the passive form : I am *possessed* of extensive land in the country. Have : an

1 a. To *possess* oneself in patience : To maintain one's patience. Also, To *possess* one's mind in patience.

2. A thing in *possession*. (adj.) Possessed.

2 a. I am *in possession* : Actually hold, or exercise the power of ownership (over a property) : Cp. Possession is nine points of law.

3. That property *came into my possession* five years ago : Became my own [Beware of using "to" instead of "into"].

4. He is *possessed with* a devil : Dominated by. (fig) To be *possessed with* an idea (usually devilish) To be obsessed by.

**POSSIBLE**. --*possibility upon a possibility* : A double contingency. A result depending upon a possible event which in its turn depends upon another remote possible event.

The difference is a remote contingency upon a very remote contingency. It is a mere *possibility upon a possibility* —MR. NORTON.

Indian students generally confound the senses of *Possible*, *Practicable*, and *Probable*, as their vernacular equivalents are one and the same. The difference between them should therefore be carefully noted, (a) Possible (adj.) = that may exist, happen, or is capable of being done : not contrary to the nature of things : [Be + able = happenable]

Miracles are not *possible*. It is *impossible* to make a silk purse out of a sow's ear. You cannot protect the oceans of the world against the *possible* torpedoing of trading ships. It is an *impossible* task.—MR. ASQUITH.

So, the Adv. *possibly* = Perhaps, Perchance, may be.

These proposals are worth considering because they might *possibly* be given effect to in the future.

(b) *Practicable* (i. e. Do + able) = capable of being effected by human agency; Feasible.

Archimedes thought it possible to lift the world, but this has been found not yet *practicable*.

(c) *Probable*: (i. e. Prove + able): Believable subject to *doubt*; having more reasons *for* than *against*, expected to happen; likely. Hence the adv. *probably* = In all likelihood.

The man was convicted on *probable* evidence.

The movement (Pan Turanian) is still a mere *possibility* and its success is not yet a *probability*.—TIMES.

It is *possible*, and indeed even *probable*, in the circumstances that the pressure of arguments was strongly used and that people were pressed to invest larger amounts than they felt inclined to. —B. G. PEARSON.

*Perhaps* the two courtiers did not intend to give the Queen a correct account of their interview with Hamlet. *Possibly* after Hamlet's generous forbearance in not forcing them to a confession as to the reason of their coming, they may have felt some scruples of delicacy in betraying what they knew; *probably* they felt if they reported much of the conversation it would be discovered how completely he had seen through them, what poor diplomats they had shown themselves. —DAUGHTON.

**Post.**—1 \*To *post up* (paper, bills &c.). (V. T.) To stick in some *prominent* place. (Hence, poster = placard).

The list is *posted up* showing the names of successful students.

2. The ledger is *posted up*: All entries have been made *up to date*. Hence, used of persons, as being supplied with all the details of a subject or *up to date* information.

The newly appointed editor of the journal is not *posted up to date* ('up' is adverb to 'posted' and separate from 'date'.)

3. (Send me a reply) *by return of post*: by the next mail in the opposite direction [originally, post = courier taking a despatch].

4. *The last post: Lit.* The last occasion when letters &c. are despatched from any particular post office. (Military), a bugle-call giving notice of the hour of retiring for the night. Also, the bugle-call usually sounded at a soldier's grave.

5. *Poste haste* (adv.); with very great haste

The news of Arnold's death reaches Tom Brown in the Isle of Skye, and he travels down *post-haste* to Rugby only to find that the funeral is over and that his old master has been laid to rest beneath the altar of the school-chapel.—T. HUGHES.

6. *Driven from post to pillar* [see Pillar].

**Pot.**—1. To make the *pot* boil: (V. 1) To earn sufficient to live up; To make a living.

Hence, A *pot-boiler*: a work of art or literature (usually not one's best) done only to make money.

2 To keep the *pot* boiling: To continue any fun or merriment; To keep anything going *briskly*.

3 (All my things are) *gone to pot*: come to an ill-end; destroyed or ruined—[colloquial reference to the particular pot in which old metals are melted down]

**Cp.** Gone to the dogs.

4 Come and take *pot-luck* with us; whatever is to be had for a meal.

5. *Let not the pot call the kettle black*: do not blame another for a fault from which you too are not altogether free.

**Cp.** Satan reproving sin.

6. *Pot-hook*: A hook to hold a pot over a fire.

He is a credit to a nation. He is actually the *first pot-hook* on the crane; the whole weight is on him

7. *Pot-hooks and hangers*: Ill formed letters (in hand-writing)

8 *Pot-volant*: (adj.) Inclined to fight because of intoxication caused by drinking.

**Pour.**—1. To *pour oil upon troubled waters*: To calm a disturbance with soothing (oily) words.

**2.** To *pour* (or *throw*) cold water on (a project or a person's zeal) : (V. T.) To discourage ; To pooh-pooh.

**3.** To *pour new wine into old bottles* : To introduce measures based upon new principles too powerful to be restrained by old forms.

He (Prince William) was prepared to support his Royal brother in the constitutional course. But this course consisted in an attempt to *pour new wine into old bottles*.—TIMES.

**4.** It *never rains but it pours* ; [But (adv.) = without the result that] Events especially misfortunes always come together. Events usually happen *several together* ; they never come singly.

**Cp.** Misfortune comes *huddle upon huddle*, --WEBSTER.

When arrows come, they come *not single spies*,

But in *battalions*.—SHAK.

**Contra** : Nothing succeeds like success.

**Powder**.—Not *worth powder and shot* : Not justifying the necessary trouble and expense.

**Cp.** The game is not worth the candle.

**Power**.—*The powers that be* : [a solecism sanctioned by the Bible instead of *are*] men *now* in authority ; the constituted authorities.

*The powers that be* are ordained of God, —ROM xiii 1,

Mr. Gladstone's respect for the *powers that be*, from the crown to the vestry, from Cæsar to Dogberry—for all hierarchy of Society,—was an inherent principle of his nature.—RUSSELL.

I understand that *the powers that be* look askance upon students who take any part in politics.—MR. POLAK.

**Premium**.—To *be at a premium* : (*List of stocks &c.*) To be over-valued, i. e. at more than the par value.

Hence, To *be held in high esteem* ; (a practice &c.) much resorted to : Demand (of persons or things) exceeding supply.

Differential ignorance, conciliatory manners, and a plentiful absence of originality and independence are now, and always will be *at a premium*.—

**Presence**.—**1.** *Presence of mind* : coolness and readi-

ness of invention or resource in sudden emergencies.

2 *Saving one's presence* (i. e. grace). {adv.}; without disrespect to one's dignity.

[An apologetical phrase for an unseemly expression made in the presence of a priest or clergyman. Cp *Saving your reverence*; *Parce tua* = *By your leave* without disrespect to you. (God) save the mark.

**Present**—1. He *presented* the book to me. }

2 He *presented me* with the book. }

Both these forms are recognised uses of the transitive verb 'To present' Though almost a synonym of "give" in the form 1 it cannot take two objects.

3 *The present*, i. e. the present time.

So *up to the present* = continuing to the pre-ent time.

The book has passed through 26 editions up to the present  
Work the power of *the present*, we will not hand a rope (any) more—S.

4. *At present*. [There are two ellipses in this phrase *at the present time*.

Cp *So far*, and **Differentiate** 'Till no w<sup>th</sup> which suggests a change of condition *Presently* (a future adverb = very soon).

**Prevail**—1. He *prevailed upon* me to part with this property: one came by persuasion.

Yet, a moment later, his wife's entreaties *prevail upon* Cæsar—Deighton.

2. *To prevail against or over*: To gain the mastery over.

**Prey**.—1. *Beast of prey*: an animal (carnivorous) that feeds on the flesh of other animals.

2. *To prey upon*: *Lit.* To feed upon by violence (as beasts of prey do) To take as prey or booty; To plunder.

According to ancient superstition this spectre (Vampire) rose from its grave at night and *preyed upon* the living as they slept.

Disease and bereavements *preyed upon* the poor fellow (i. e. exerted their baneful influence on him.)

[N, B. In the converse form, the man *fell a prey to* melancholy]

**Pride**—1. *To pride oneself on*: To value oneself for, To plume oneself on.

The fanatical fakirs of India sometimes commit self-mutilation and *pride themselves upon* their wretchedness.—CRO.

If there is one feature in the national life of the last sixty years on which Englishmen may justly *pride themselves*, it is the amelioration of the social condition of the worker.—RUSSELL.

2. *To take a pride in* a thing : To regard it with elation and pleasure and self glorification.

These do-nothing trades take a *pride in* the titles which Government is pleased to confer on them.—P. OPINION.

3. I am *proud of* my nationality = I *pride myself upon* my nationality : if this is self-esteem I consider it praiseworthy. I feel myself greatly honoured by.

**Prima.** *Prima facie* (Lat) (adj or adv) : (arising) at first sight. At the first glance. In the first blush.

The evidence is *prima facie* against the accused

**Prime** —1. *To be past one's prime*. To have ceased to flourish ; To have gone beyond the time when one was at his best.

In France a woman who is *past the prime* (i. e. past the period of her greatest beauty) is said to be *Passée*.

It is a mere scrap heap policy —to discard what is *past its prime*.

Cj. To fall behind the times ; To be no longer in the swim.

2 *The prime of* (any thing, e. g. life, beauty, manhood) = The best part of.

**Print** —1. The book is *in print* : (pred. adj) on sale. [Differentiate "in the press" = being printed].

2. The book is *out of print* : sold out ; The stock is exhausted.

3. Don't *rush into print* : Publish books or write to newspapers, Reviews, and other periodicals without sufficient knowledge or materials.

4. *Printer's devil* : an errand boy in a printing press because he gets so blackened with the ink.

[It is an inappropriate figure to apply the phrase to the

error instead of to the person that makes it. "

A typographical mistake is said to be due to *the printer's devil*.

**Pro.** 1. Let us hear the reasons *pro and con* (Lat): (adj) for and against [*con* is the abbreviation of *contra*.]

2. The ordinary meetings of public companies in India are held *pro forma* (adv.): as a matter of form, - i. e. only to satisfy the rules laid down by the companies' Act, the real business being transacted beforehand.

**Probable.** [See Possible *Ante*].

*In all probability*: (adv.) most probably; very likely. In all likelihood.

**Note**—The character of the phrase would be gone if "all" were omitted.

*In all probability* Wordsworth's standard of intonation was miserably low. —SIR FRANCIS DOYLE. **Cp.** The odds are.

**Promise** 1 To go back upon one's promise: To fail to keep it, [See Back].

2. To keep the word of promise to the ear, but break it to the hope: i. e. as regards what was hoped,

3. A young man of promise: (adj.) i. e. promising; = giving expectation of future achievements and good results.

So, he promises well.

Ye who expect that age will perform the "*Promises of youth*."

**Cp.** He hath borne himself beyond the promises of his age. —SHAK.

**Prose.** *Prose run mad*: ordinary unimaginative language (as distinguished from poetry) written in wild disorderliness and infatuation devoid of reason or rhyme.

He whose fashion is so solemnly bad

'It is not poetry, but *prose run mad*. —POPE.

So, To talk prose: To speak ordinary language in a matter-of-fact way or fashion.

**Proverb.** 1. To a proverb: (adv.) Proverbially; so as to become a proverb (a general saying or adage) for good or ill; Praiseworthy or notoriously.

A proverb is one man's wit but all men's wisdom.—RUSSELL.  
The Hindus are charitable to a proverb.

**Cp.** A proverb and a by-word among all people. **BIBLE.**

**Provide. 1.** To *provide* against a rainy day. [As ants do] To take measures *beforehand* to fight with mishaps.

So, a prudent man *provides* for his future wants, his safety, and anything desirable.

**2.** To *provide oneself* = To equip oneself with necessaries.

Also, To *provide for* oneself and dependants: To *provide* a person *with* a thing = To *provide* the thing to him = To *provide* it for him: To supply.

**3.** *Provided that*: (conj.) On the condition that; The word 'provided' is also used as conjunction.

I will maintain you in competence *provided* you be not refractory.

**4.** *Special Providence*: Particular instance of God's beneficent care of all creatures.

**Psycho.** The *Psychological moment*: The exact or critical instant for undertaking or doing a thing; The proper or fitting time. **Cp.** The nick of time.

It is anticipated that the United States, like Britain in 1914 will prove that Germany has made another *psychological miscalculation*.—REUTER.

We are living in a *psychological moment* in the history of our own country. The signs are all in our favour.—MRS. A. BESANT.

**Public. 1.** *Public-house*: An inn; a tavern.

Where the *public house* slays its thousands the grocer's license always its tens of thousands.

**2.** *Public life*. A career devoted to the service of the people generally. Social activities, Civicism.

**3.** *Public spirit*: Heart for doing good to the community or people generally. Patriotism.

**4.** *In public*: (adv.) Before the people at large. In open view.

**Contra**: In private = (in secrecy): *In camera*.

**Pull. 1.** To *pull asunder*: (V, T.) To draw apart: To rend. To break up.



**Cp.** To pull in *pieces* or Pull to pieces.

**2.** To pull down a building: (V. T.) To demolish: To subvert.

**3.** To pull off a garment, hat, etc = To take off; To put off. To doff.

**Contra:** To pull on (as boots); To put on To don.

**4.** To pull out (as tooth) To draw out. To extract.

**5.** The gardener pulls up the weeds; plucks them up; tears them up by the roots.

**6.** To pull up a horse: To stop him by means of the reins. (V. T.) Also, to reprove (a person). To restrain him from taking a wrong course.

Hence, Figuratively, (V. I. in a general sense), To stop or halt in any course of conduct

It is curious to note that "pull up" when addressed to the driver of a vehicle tells him to stop if his carriage be moving, and to move forward if it be stationary. —G. C. WHITWORTH.

**7.** He has pulled through: (V. I.) Recovered from his serious illness; Also, got through the difficult task.

**8.** The nurse pulled him through: (V. T.) Enabled him to recover from his dangerous illness. Got him over it; ["Through" is adv. = through a difficulty].

Also, He pulled me through: helped me out of difficulties.

**9.** To pull to pieces or in pieces: (V. T.) To break up; or tear asunder (something).

(Fig) To demolish (an argument or thesis). To make a slashing criticism of.

**10.** To pull on well together: To be in harmony or union.

The British and the Dutch in South Africa are not pulling on very well together.—MR. POLAK.

The attitude of the India office was one of reluctant acceptance of the forward movements advocated by Simla. Simla and Whitehall were not pulling well together.—MESOPOTAMIA COMMISSION.

**Cp.** A long pull, a strong pull, and a pull altogether, To keep together: To run in harness with. **Contra.**—To pull different ways: To act at cross purposes.

**11. To pull oneself together :** To rally ; To recover oneself. To overcome the severity of some shock.

The innocent suspect *pulled himself together* and began to address the court.

" Well, you Harrow fellows need not be so beastly cocky. When you wanted a Head Master you had to come to Eton to get one—(said an Eton boy.)

The small Harrovian was dumfounded for a moment, and then *pulling himself together* for a final effort of deadly sarcasm exclaimed, " well, at any rate, no one can say that we ever produced Mr. Gladstone -- RUSSELL.

**12 He had the pull of me :** was in a more favourable position.

**Cp.** The vantage-ground ; Coigne of vantage.

**13. Pull back (n.) :** any retarding influence ; check or draw-back. A set back.

**Note.** " To pull " and " To push " imply motion in opposite directions, the former *towards* the mover and the latter, *away from* him. Care should be taken not to use the one for the other.

**Purchase. 1.** The property is *worth ten year's purchase* ; will yield in ten years an amount equal to its purchase-money.

**2.** His life is *not worth a year's purchase* : cannot be trusted to last one year.

**Purple. 1. The purple :** (n.) The imperial dignity.

The purple robe was the distinguishing dress of the emperors of Rome.

**2** Born or nurtured in *the purple*, i. e. the royal or imperial household (said of a prince or princess).

To *marry into the purple* (V. I.) To become a member of the royal household by marrying a prince.

**Purpose. 1 On Purpose :** (adv) purposely ; Intentionally ; not by accident.

This is *on purpose* laid by some that hate me

To quench my honour—SHAK (Hen VIII.)

People sin upon purpose.—IBID

**2 Of set purpose :** [this is more emphatic than the above] (adv) Deliberately ; Designedly.

**3. On purpose to :** In order to (do something) or In order that (something may be done).

[See the quotation from Milton under Life—blood] He came here *on purpose* to see me.

The exclusive character of the English peerage was destroyed, finally and of *set purpose*, by Pitt when he declared that every man who had an estate of ten thousand a year had a right to be a peer.—RUSSELL

**4. With the purpose of** (doing something)

[Note the insertion of the def. article as specifying the purpose which is qualified by the following participial or gerund phrase.]

**5. He spoke to the purpose:** (adv) Relevantly to the matter in question.

**6. His coming here is to some purpose,** i. e. with reference to certain object, effect or result in view ; (adj) useful for his purpose. So, *To no purpose:* (adv) uselessly; For nothing.

**7. To answer or serve a purpose:** To be adequate or useful for it.

**Purse. 1. purse—proud :** (adj) Puffed up from consciousness of being rich.

The most offensive manner in the world is that which combines the roughness of the artizan with the *purse-proud* inflation of the moneyed man.—RUSSELL.

**2. To make up a purse:** To collect money as a present to some individual.

**3. To purse up one's lips:** To pucker; To contract into folds or wrinkles.

**Pursuit.—1. In pursuance of** (a policy or design) : In carrying it out. [pursuance = execution.]

**2. Pursuant to** (a notification) : In compliance with ; as consequence of ; Agreeably to ; conformably to.

**Push.** [See Note under Pull] Opposed to Draw.

**1. To push on :** (V. I.) To urge one's course forward.

**2. To push a matter through :** To bring it to a conclusion.

**3. I am pushed for time.** cannot find it.

So, To be *pushed* for money.

4. *The push* : An extremity ; a critical test or emergency.

He was *put to the push*, but he neither shrank nor shirked. It is very easy to speechify about Social Reform by means of widow-remarriage, but when it comes to the *push* it is no more than mere talk. (i. e. when the critical moment of practice arrives).

**Put.** [This is a very common transitive verb = place or set "in any position or condition" expressed by the adverb, adverbial phrase, or even the preposition used as adverb that follows it.]

1. To *put a person about* : To put him to inconvenience. (*About* adv. = away from the right state) [From a vessel which changes its course.]

Often used in the passive form in the sense of "distracted" "flurried" "annoyed." Cp Put out. I was *put about* by his remarks.

2. To *put away* : To discard (a friend) ; To divorce or repudiate (a wife) ; To lay by (money) for future use.

3. To *put by* : (*By* adv = aside) : To evade (a question or argument) : To put off (a person) with evasion.

Thou, over whom thy immortality

Broods like the day, a master o'er a slave

A presence which is not to be *put by*. — WORDSWORTH

Also, To lay *aside* for future use (as papers and documents) ; To save (as money).

*Put by* for a rainy day, i. e. Provide against it [Intransitive in the general sense].

4. To *put down* : To crush ; To quell (as rebellion) ; To suppress [down = causing end].

The movement had got too firm a hold to be summarily *put down*.

To silence (a person) by confutation. Also, To write down.

He *put down* Rs. 100 against his name on the subscription list.

Again, We must *put* the present discontents *down to* the poverty of the people (i. e. attribute it to the latter as cause,) — CHRONICLE.

5. To *put forth* (leaves, buds, blossoms &c.) : To shoot out.

To stretch out (limbs); To exert (one's strength effort, eloquence, energy &c.) [See the Quotation from Macaulay under *Palm* 3].

To display (as light, beauty); generally, To offer to notice; To make known (as an appeal, one's opinions &c.); To publish.

The eyes of all men were suddenly surprised at a new and incredible lustre which this setting sun *put forth*.—LAMB.

When the moment for action comes the great man-of-war *puts forth* all its beauty and its bravery, collects its scattered elements of strength, awakens its dormant thunder.—GEORGE CANNING.

**6** Recently he has been *putting himself forward*, i. e. thrusting himself into *prominence*. To *put forward* a proposal, thesis, or a theory = To set it *forth*.

**7.** To *put in* : To insert, To introduce *among others*.

Make the sentence idiomatic by *putting in* "and". I *put in* my oar in no one's boat. So, Would you kindly *put in* a word for me? i. e. recommend me.

**8** To *put in an appearance* : To appear [at a meeting or in court]; To attend. To make one's appearance.

**9.** The ship *put in* : V. I. entered the harbour.

**10.** To *put in (V. I.) for* : To offer a claim for (anything) So, He *put in for* that post : offered himself as a candidate for it ; applied for it.

**11. a.** To *put off* (garments, clothes etc) : To remove (them) from one's person ; To doff (i. e. do + off).

b. To postpone ; To delay.

Don't *put off* till tomorrow what can be done today.

c. To evade (any person or demand) with excuse ; I *put these beggar-harpies off with promises*.

Hence the noun, 'Put-off = evasion or postponement.

d. *Put off* that libellous composition *upon* him : Palm it off upon him, foist etc.

e. (V. I.) To set out from the shore (used of men or vessel).

**12.** (a) To *put on* (clothes) : To wear. To don (i. e. do +

on). (b) *Put it on*: [*It is indef.* = character, emotion, or appearance] assume a character, etc. To simulate.

He *put on* this behaviour with a view to effect.

**Cp.** To take on. To attitudinize.

(c) I *put the blame on him*: I accuse him of this.

**13.** To *put out*: (a) To annoy; To disconcert; To irritate. {out = out of temper or the right mood}.

In his old age the merest trifle *puts him out*.

**Cp.** To put about (*Supra*); off one's balance. To put out of countenance.

(b) To extinguish (as light, candle, fire etc.)

(c) He is clever enough to *put out* his money most advantageously i.e. lends it at very good interest; invests it very well.

(d) To exert; To put forth;

When we see the social energies *put out* to day by Oxford and Cambridge, even the gloomiest pessimist must admit that England is moving in the right direction --RUSSELL.

**14.** He was able to *put through* the task: To carry it out. To finish it off.

**15.** To *put together*: To combine (parts).

To *put two and two together* } To consider facts together  
To *put this and that together* } so as to draw a logical

conclusion. To infer from given premisses.

Lucian Gay was often at the top of his form, yet sometimes near the bottom; and never could *put two and two together* in Mr. Rhomboid's schoolroom --RUSSELL.

To *put (our, your their heads together)*: consult each other with a view to arrive at a satisfactory result.

**Cp.** Two heads are better than one.

**15A.** To *put* (a noun or pronoun) + *to* (a noun) [Read the remark at the beginning: the adverbial adjuncts begin with the preposition "to"]: Subject (V. T.): make liable.

e. g. *Put him to death* = To cause his death; To put him to flight, = cause him to flee; so, To put to inconvenience (To inconvenience; To incommode) expense, sale, shame, (To shame or disgrace), the sword, the test, the vote &c.

16. To *put the (or one's) hand to* (a thing) : To begin to take hold of. To undertake.

To *put one's hand to the plough*. So, To put one's shoulder to the wheel. (To undertake the task.)

17. To *put one's signature to* a document : To sign it.

18. To *put an end to* (an affair, business, matter etc.) : To end it. So. To *put a stop to* = To stop.

19. *Put him to it* : [It is indefinite for difficulty or hardship. Often used in the passive form as I am *hard put to it* = I am hard pressed.]

Cp. To be sore beset.

20. To *put to the blush* : [See Blush.]

21. To *put to the test* : To test ; To subject to a trial. But, To put to (or on) trial [No article before trial.]

22. To *put or set* (things matter &c.) *to rights* : To set in proper order. Cp. In trim.

[Note. The plural form *rights* = proper condition or true state.]

23. The ship *put to sea* : Began its voyage (V. I.)

Cp. Put off. Contra : To put in (V. I.)

24. When you go to Madras where will you *put up*? (V. I.) lodge, or take lodgings.

25. If you come to Lucknow I shall *put you up*. (V. T.) ; lodge, and entertain you as my guest.

26. To *put a person up to* (infinitive, gerund or abstract noun) : To instigate him to (an act) ; To urge him to it.

Also, To instruct him in (certain dodges or tricks of a subject &c.)

It was my pleasure to *put my pupils up to logic* by means of certain mnemonic words of my own.

27. A *put-up affair* : (adj.) Fraudulently concocted.

28. To *put up* a petition or a prayer : To present or offer.

29. I asked the auctioneer to *put up my horse* } To exhibit  
or I told him to *put up the horse to auction* } bit conspicuously.

So, To *put up* a notice : To affix it to a wall or to a board on the wall. To exhibit it in a conspicuous position.

31. To *put up* the sword : To sheath it :

Cp. To bury the hatchet, To lay down one's arms.

32. To *put up with*, nuisance, any person or thing annoying, a wrong treatment, hardship, an insult &c.) (V. T.) To endure, To tolerate ; To brook ; To submit to ; not to resent,

These are some of the caprices of a jury which a Judge has sometimes to *put up with* ; and it has often been said that Judges are more tried than prisoners.—SIR H. HAWKINS,

Cp. To pocket an affront, To bear with (a person), To *rough* it ; To suffer a person to do a thing ; To suffer a thing to be done,

Contra : Not to take (non-sense or bad treatment.)

33. To be *put upon* : To be deceived or gulled.

Also, to be treated unfairly in respect of work, profits &c.

[Note the use restricted to the passive form.]

**Puzzle.**—The problem or question was at last *puzzled out* : Its solution was made out.



**Quaff.** To *quaff* the bitter cup: (Fig) To labour under affliction.

**Qualm.** *Qualms of conscience*: Compunction; a twinge of the moral sense. An uneasy feeling that one is not acting uprightly.

**Quasi.** *Quasi* [A Latin prefix of many *English Compounds* with a hyphen joining it to the word qualified — as if.] Partaking somewhat of the nature of the unreal in some degree; seemingly; practically ; Almost; e. g. Quasi-public, a quasi-war.

He has a *quasi*—ministerial position. The verb is *quasi*—passive. e. g. I Photograph badly.

Cp. As if it were,



**Quest.** To be *in quest of*: (adj. pred) seeking.

Wordsworth's poems seemed to be the very culture of the feeling which I was *in quest of*.—J. S. MILL.

**Question.**—1 The point, or matter *In question*: (adj) Being at present dealt with; now under debate or consideration. The watch *in question* was found in the accused's coat pocket. So the person *in question*: one that we are referring to. Also, The matter *same into question*: was discussed because of its practical importance.

2. Reconciliation between us is *out of the question*: Too impracticable to be worth discussing. [Note the article.]

2A. *Beside the question* (pred, adj) Irrelevant to the matter in hand or under discussion. Beside the point.

[Note that (1) has no def. article whereas (2) has]

3. To *call in question*: (V. T.) To doubt; To challenge the correctness of (something.) To raise objections to (any statement); To throw doubt upon; To arraign.

Polonius is deeply scandalized at the idea of his infallibility being *called in question*.—DEIGHTON.

Under the military law almost any action may be *called in question*.

Beware of using "into" instead of "in"; for there is no sense of movement. Question is merely a state of doubt.]

4 *out of question*: (adv.) Undoubtedly. So, *Beyond question*; *without question*. Cp Sure as a gun.

[No definite article before 'question']

5 I *make no question of* your integrity: raise no doubt about.

5A. It *cannot be questioned but that* &c: It is certain that &c.

~~or~~ The word "But" is a puzzle—It should be treated as *expletive*.

6 Victory is *only a question of time*: sure to come sooner or later.

7. To be or not to be—that is the *question* (SHAK): the problem that requires solution.

8. (Self-government within the empire is) the *burning question* of the day: a subject which is being *hotly* discussed.

9. *open question*: a matter on which differences of opinion are legitimate.

10. To *beg the question*: [a logical fallacy.] To assume a disputed conclusion as true.

Cp. To make a precarious assumption. Also, *Petitis principii*; A Woman's reason.—(SHAK)

11. *The crux of the question*: The puzzling part rendering it difficult to find explanation of a matter.

Did Mr. Curtis state the facts correctly? This is *the crux* of the question and to it there has been no answer from Sir James Meeson.—P.

12. To *put a question* to (a person) = To *ask a question* of (him.)

**Qui**—*On the qui vive*: (prel. adj) [Fr. = long live who!] a sentinel's question to any one approaching him]; watchful against surprise. Watching for something to happen.

Cp. On the alert; on the watch.

**Quick**—1. *The quick*: The sensitive parts as flesh below the nails.: (*Fig*) seat of feeling. The adverbial phrase "*To the quick*" is usually used after the verbs *cut*, *probe*, *sting*, *touch*, &c.

This insult stung me *to the quick*.

I will tent him *to the quick*.—SHAK. i. e. probe him to the sensitive point.

2. Lord Curzon is a tory *to the quick*: (adj) through and through: In every *essential* part. To the inmost core.

**Quid**. *A quid pro quo*: A Return or requite; *like for like*; a recompense or equivalent.

The co-operation of the labour party has been promised a *quid pro quo*.

**Quiet**. *On the quiet*: (adv) Privately; secretly.

**Quits** 1. (Take this money and) I am *quits with* you: Owe you nothing more. The balance of our accounts is zero.

Also, (*Fig*) I will be *quits with you*: must have my revenge on you.

2. *To cry quits*: To agree to be *on even terms*. (by repayment or by retaliation;) To agree to give up antagonism.

3. *To quit scores*: To pay fully; Make even by giving an equivalent.

4. *To play quits*: To risk one's all in getting out of a difficulty.

5. *Omittance is no quitance*.—SHAK (A. Y. L.) Debt is not annulled by not being pressed.

## R

**R.** The *three R's*: The three important subjects for the first elementary education of boys which begin with the letter R or which are pronounced with R initially. viz. Reading, (w) riting, and (A) rithmetic.

**Rack**—1. *On or upon the rack*. (pred, adj or adv.) In anxiety or painful suspense; In distress or under strain.

He hates him.

That would *upon the rack* of this tough world,

Stretch him out longer—SHAK (Lear),

Also, In strained activity.

Martin's ingenuity was for ever *on the rack* to supply himself with a light — HUGHES.

2. *To go to rack and ruin*: (V. I.) To be wrecked or ruined: To be destroyed.

**Racket**.—1. To be *on the racket*: To *make a racket*: (V. I.) To move about in scenes of tumultuous pleasures.

2. *To racket about*: (V. I.) To live a gay life.

3. *To stand the racket*: (V. I.) To face the consequences (of an action). Cp. To face the music.

Tell me if I am appointed to another post, am I to stand the racket of a fresh election.—D. MAIL.

Also, To come successfully through a test.

Cp. To pass muster.

**Rage.** All the rage: (pred. comp.) In fashion; much resorted to as producing great excitement and interest; object of popular and eager desire.

The open-air cure is all the rage now.

Cp. Furor (Ital.) or Furor. The fashion (or the craze)

**Rail.**—Off the rails: (pred. adj.) [Figuratively used of any business, speculation, or enterpraise]: Disorganised; not working properly. Cp. Out of order; out of trim.

**Rain**—1. Rain or shine I will see you tomorrow: (adv.) whether it rains or not: whether the day be rainy or sunny.

2. Provide against a rainy day: [As the Ants do.] (Future) Times of hardship, necessity, sickness, or misfortune.

Also, Provide for that rainy day which must come sooner or later.

Cp. To look out for squalls.

3. It has rained itself out: The rain has ceased. [It is indefinite for the weather], Cp. The storm has raved itself out.

4. It never rains but it pours: [See Pour].

**Raise**—1. To raise one's back: (V. I.) To become contumacious or refractory. To recalcitrate.

2. To Raise the blockade or surge: To relinquish it; cease its continuance.

3. To raise a dust: To cause commotion. Also, To obscure the truth.

4. To raise the wind: To obtain the necessary supply of cash.

To promote a company was the last shift to which the penurious lawyer resorted for raising the wind.

**Raison**—1. Raison d'être (Fr) The reason for a thing's existence. This is the *raison d'être* of this publication.

Technical and even commercial success is not the *only* *raison d'être* of Government pioneer factories.—HINDU.

2. *Raison d'état*: A reason of state.

**Bake**—1. He *raked together* considerable wealth: gathered with *labour* or *difficulty*.

2. To *rake up* (something very unpleasant or painful as old but forgotten quarrels, grievances, etc.) To *revive* with expenditure of *much labour*.

3. To *rake up* evidence: To bring out from oblivion or obscurity.

**Random**.—1. *Random shot*: one not aimed at a particular point,

2 *At random*: (adv) By chance; without aim or purpose; Cp. *At a venture*.

All reformers call on men to live according to a permanent principle and not, as the poet says, *at random*.—ERCE HOMO.

Where my wrecked desponding thought

From wave to wave of fancied misery

*At random* drove, her helm of reason lost.—YOUNG.

Cp. *At large*, (He scatters imputations *at large*).

**Rank**.—1. The *rank and file*: (*Lit.*) The order of common soldiers; privates. So *the ranks*. (*Fig.*) The lower classes of undistinguished people. The masses. Ordinary people. The proletariat. *Contra*. The bourgeoisie. The classes.

From the *rank and file* (i. e. ordinary members) of the service, whether recruited in England or in India, respectable academic qualifications have always been required.—STATESMAN.

Hence, To *rise from the ranks*: To rise from humble position to prominence and leadership. Cp. A self-made man.

2. A person *takes rank* of another: 'enjoys precedence over him. [no article before *rank*].

3. To *close the ranks*: To come into contact.

Glory to the belligerents (Hindus and Mohomedans) on both sides who have at a psychological moment buried their hatchets and *closed their ranks*.

Cm. (V. L.) To close up.

4. *Rank and fashion*: [an instance of Hendiadys.] Fashionable rank; High society.

**Rara.** *A rara avis.* [Lat = A rare bird]. A person (or thing) the like of which is seldom seen; A prodigy. Phoenix

Cp. Alone the Arabian bird—*SHAK*,  
Himself his parallel. Non-pareil.

**Rat.** *I smell a rat*: suspect a secreted listener? (Hence) have the suspicion that all is not right. [See Smell]

**Rate.** *At any rate*: (adv.) In any possible case; Even if a wider or stronger statement may not be wholly true.

The contention is sound, *at any rate*, that certain subjects which are the necessary outfit of the student must be taught with an 'intensive culture' as to thoroughness of detail and largely by insistence on application.

**Raw.**—1. *Raw recruit* [an alliterative combination.]

(Lit) A soldier unripe in skill being newly enlisted. (*Fig*) any person who has not acquired experience in his trade or profession; a tiro; a greenhorn.

2. *Raw-boned*: (adj.) Having one's bones almost exposed. Gaunt; Lean; baggard.

3. *I touched him on the raw*: wounded his feelings on the point on which he is very sensitive.

Every high-handed act hits Russian pride on the raw and hastens the reaction which must come sooner or later.—*STATSMAN*.

Cp. To tread on a person's corns. To cut him to the quick,

**Reach.** To reach after a thing: To make efforts to reach, attain, or obtain it. ["Reach" generally transitive is intransitive here].

Cp. To attain to, To arrive at.

~~Re~~ Distinguish between attain and obtain.

**Read.**—1. *Mother will read me a lesson*: admonish or reprimand me.

2. *So, my teacher read me a fine lecture*: rebuked me severely. [Note that "Read" is double-object transitive verb in (1) and (2)].

**3.** To *read between the lines*: (V. I.) To discover a meaning not obvious. To infer the writer's *concealed* meaning.

Mr. Maurice declared that by *reading between the lines* he saw in the Thirty-nine Articles and the Athanasian Creed the altogether perfect expression of the Christian faith—MATTHEW ARNOLD

**Cp.** Where more is meant than meets the ear—MILTON.

**Readiness.**—**1.** All is in *readiness*: (adj. pred.) Every thing is *ready*. So, To get things in *readiness*.

**2.** To *make ready*: (V. I.) To get ready: To make preparation.

Send me information beforehand that I may *make ready* for his visit.

**Cp.** Ready to one's hand.

**8.** *Ready money*: money in one's hands. Cash, coin, or currency notes actually in one's possession. I have no *ready money* to meet your demand. **Cp.** Liquid Assets.

**Reason.**—**1.** *By reason of*: (prep.) On account of; in consequence of; Through.

He escaped the penalty of non-attendance *by reason of* his illness—  
 “{Reason” is highly abstract, therefore no article is prefixed}.

**Cp.** On the score of, [*score*=head or category]. *By* or in virtue of.

**2.** It *stands to reason* (V. I.) Is reasonable; or consonant to reason; is generally admitted.

**Contra**: To be paradoxical,

**3.** *Woman's reason*. [See Woman]: *Petitio Principii*

**Reckon.** To *reckon on or upon*: To count or depend upon.

In her Clerk of the Council (Sir A. Helps) Her Majesty always could *reckon upon* a staunch, thoughtful, and capable adviser, —TIMES.

**2.** To *reckon with*: (V. T.) (a) To take into calculation.

He is a negligible quantity—one that need not be *reckoned with*.

I was warned that the possible rise in prices must be *reckoned with* in consequence of the war.

The Congress is a force in the land which has to be *reckoned with* for good or for evil—MADRAS TIMES.

(b) To settle accounts with ; To call to account. ' There was then no democracy to be reckoned with.'

3. To *reckon without one's host*. [See Host.]

4. To *pay the reckoning* : To meet the charges made by a host in a hotel or tavern.

. Cp. So comes a reckoning when the banquet's o'er  
The dreadful reckoning, and men smile no more.—GAY.

5 *Day of reckoning* : a time when accounts or differences must be settled.

The great day of reckoning : The judgment day.

**Record.**—1 In (or upon) *record* : (adj. pred.) Recorded; registered. [No article]

2. To travel *out of the record* : (adv.) Beyond the limits of relevancy. Away from the subject.

**Contra** To keep to the record.

3. To *beat the record*. To surpass the best performance of its kind To outdo all predecessors *on the line*.

So, to *break the record*, [The record = the register of similar antecedent facts].

Hence, 'record' is used as an adjective:

He has given a *record service* They pronounced it a *record popularity*  
—SIR H. HAWKINS (i. e. as surpassing all antecedents of the kind.)

**Contra** : To hold the record.

As an ingenious fantasy of speculations of all imaginable kinds, it is certain to *hold the record*.—I REVIEW.

4. The *recording angel* : one who registers men's good and bad actions.

But, sad as *angels* for the good man's sin

Wear to record, and blush to give it in.—CAMPBELL.

**Red.**—1 (caught or taken) *red-handed* : (adv.) while committing a crime. [Fig. from the bloody deed of murder hands being red, i. e. blood stained.] In the act itself.

Cp. In *flagrante delicto*.

2. *Red-letter day* : A fortunate day worthy to be remembered.



[Originally, a church festival day indicated in the Prayer Book by red letters]. Hence, any day of special significance memorable as date of joyful occurrence

Thus ended a *red-letter* day in the quiet life of Kaligunge (Dacca)—STATESMAN. (Reference to Lord Ronaldshay's visit).

**Contra** : An evil day in the memory of one.

**3. Red rag to a person** : anything that especially enrages him : [any red object enrages a bull].

**3A. Red republican** : an anarchist.

In the first French Revolution the extreme republicans used to wear a red cap.

St. Aldergonde held extreme opinions, especially on political affairs, being a *Republican of the reddest dye*.—LORD BEACONSFIELD.

**4. Red tape**. Excessive adherence to form and routine in public business.

The *red tape* and circumlocation of so elaborate an administrative system are only minor objections.—ALBERT SHAW.

[Here is a sarcasm on the delay and inefficiency caused by disregard of common sense.—From the red tape used in tying up papers in Government offices].

**Reed**. (To lean on or trust to or in) *A broken reed* : (To rely on) a support which is *unreliable*

Thou trustest in the staff of this *broken reed*.—BIBLE.

The Liberals gained, in certain districts, the support of that very *broken reed*, the Irish vote, which was destined to pierce the hand of so many a confiding candidate who leant upon it.—G. W. E. RUSSELL.

Cp. To grasp at a shadow. **Contra**, Sheet anchor = mainstay.

**Reel**. (To go or talk) *off the reel* : (adv.) straight off; in rapid succession. (*Fig.* from fishing which requires the alternate winding up and unwinding of thread on a wheel).

Glibly; in a lively thoughtless way.

Cp. To reel off or rattle off (To talk or write without effort.)

Freddy will *reel off* columns about his host's acres and incomes, taking care not to understate the amount in either case.—RUSSELL.

**Refusal**.—1. I will give you *the refusal* of this thing :

the option of taking or refusing (it) before it is offered to others.

So, you *have the refusal of it*.

2. *He will take no refusal*: He is unfortunate.

**Regard.**—1. *As regards*: (prep.) About; regarding; respecting; concerning; anent: So far as it concerns. [See *As*]

*As regards my qualifications I beg to state etc.*

2. *In this regard*: In this respect; In this behalf.

3. *In or with regard to*: (prep.) Regarding; Touching.

4. Remember me to him with *my kind regards*: my best compliments. [Note the plural.]

**Rein.**—1. To give the rein or reins to (as temper imagination etc.) (*Fig.*) To allow it unrestricted freedom; To let it go its own way. To let it have free scope.

In throwing the rein to the Press, Olliver had said that they trusted it in future to the control of a healthy public opinion.—*Times*.

*Cp.* To let loose.

2. To take the reins of Government: To assume the guidance or management of it. So, To drop the reins of Government: To resign office.

3. To draw rein: (V. I.) [Lit.] To stop one's horse; To pull up. (*Fig.*) To limit one's efforts; To curtail expenses.

4. (To die) *with the reins in one's hands*: (adv.) while at work or in office. *Cp.* To die in harness.

Lord Clarendon passed away *with the reins of office in his hands* with his faculties undecayed and his reputation undiminished.—*Times*.

**Relief.**—1. To stand out (V. I.) *in relief*: (adj) Prominent.

2. The report brings out (V. T.) the fact *in full relief*: (adv.) quite vividly and prominently.

The change brought into clear relief the position occupied by the Huguenots.—*RUSSELL*.

To throw into relief [See the quotation under Wit].

3. To relieve nature (V. I.) To ease nature by passing

stool or voiding urine.

4. To *relieve one's feelings* : To give vent to them,

5. To *relieve a person of a burden or load* : To take it off him. But, he is relieved from misery or any state, or condition etc.

**Report.**—1. *The report goes* : It is said ; They say ; *On dit*. The rumour is spread.

2. (Faithful) *through evil report and good report* : without minding whether the matter is reported or spoken of favourably or otherwise.

**Request.**—1. The article is *in much request*. (adj. pred.) *In great demand* ; much sought after.

Experts, such as land agents and surveyors, were always *in request*.

The High school boy will be more *in request* for the apprenticeship than any other type of youth —SIR J. MASON.

2. It will *come into request* : Be sought after ;

**Responsible.**—1. One man is *responsible to another for his actions* : answerable or liable to be called to account.

2. A thing is *responsible for another* : serving as cause for explanation of.

The art of Ventriloquism was probably *responsible for* many supposed oracular utterances.

3. To do a thing on *one's own responsibility* ; without being authorized by a person competent to give the authority.

**Rest.** 1. To *go or pass to one's rest* ; To die [See Pass]

Since the commencement of this volume many of the old friends mentioned in it with affectionate remembrance *have gone to their rest*,—SIR H H

**Revenge.** 1. *Revenge is wild justice* : [See Avenge].

Revenge at first though sweet,

Bitter ere long back on itself recoils.—MILTON.

CP, Retributive Justice ; Nemesis.

2 To *revenge one's self on* : To take vengeance ; To be revenged.

[*Revenge*, is the carrying into effect of a bitter desire to injure an enemy for a wrong done and is a purely personal feeling. *Vengeance* involves the idea of wrathful retribution more or less just and may arise from no personal feeling and may be taken for another's wrong.]

Hence the verb *Avenge* (Transitive taking either a person or his wrong as object)]

3. Private revenge : Vendetta.

4. *Time has its revenges* : Cp. God's mill grinds slow.

**Rhyme.** 1. *Without rhyme or reason* (adv) : For no cause whatever [reasonable or accountable cause : a sort of hendiadys and alliteration].

He can ring rhyme with reason and rhyme without reason and *without reason or rhyme*—G. RASLE (Edward I).

**Rid.** 1. *To be or get* (V. I.) *rid of* : (V. T.) *To be free from* or *diseumbered of* (any person or thing that is a nuisance or pest.)

At any rate I must *get rid of* such pinchbeck friendship,

2. He is a *good riddance* : It is very well that I am rid of him. I am well out of him. Cp. He is better away.

**Ride.** 1. The ship *rides at anchor* : is anchored and floating buoyantly.

But, the ship *rides the waves* = dominates them. The ship *rides hard* or pitches violently,

2. You are *riding for a fall* : (fig.) acting recklessly ; courting disaster.

3. To *ride full tilt at* a person : To pursue and vigorously attack him. [Taken from tournaments].

4. *To ride one's hobby or one's hobby horse* : (fig.) To pursue any favourite scheme or theory (or fad)

[The adverbial adjunct "to death" is added to the phrase to mean so as to kill or overdo it]

He has been *riding the phrase to death* : using it too frequently to bore or cause disgust and weariness,

Cp. To crack the wind of the poor phrase—SHAK (Hamlet),

5. *To ride the whirlwind* : To direct the storm.

And, pleased the Almighty's order to perform,

Rides in the whirlwind and directs the storm.—ADDISON,

6. *To ride out the storm* or weather : To come safely through it. To withstand its fury. "The vessel will *ride out the gale*" (fig. disturbance or agitation).

7. *To ride rough shod over persons* : To pursue a violent or selfish course regardless of the pain it causes to them.

8. The two travellers happily carried out the plan of *riding and tying* : sharing one horse in such a way that one traveller after riding ahead left the animal tied to await the other that he in his turn follows his example.

**Rift.** The little *rift in* (or *within*) *the lute* : (fig.) Incipient cause though apparently slight, leading to wide breach and dissension. The sign of coming discord or disturbance of harmony.

Unfaith in aught is want of faith in all ;  
It is the little rift within the lute  
That by and by will make the music mute  
And ever widening, slowly silence all—TENNYSON.

**Cp.** The thin end of the wedge.

**Right.**—1. *The right man in the right place* : The man exactly fit or proper for the place. [The idiom consists in the repetition of *right*.]

**Contra** : square peg in a round hole.

2. You are *on the right side of fifty* : not yet fifty years old.

**Contra** : wrong side or shady side.

3. You have hit *the right nail on the head* : [See Nail].

4. To give or extend *the right hand of fellowship* to a person : cordial welcome as associate. [Friends shake each other's *right hand*].

5. You are *my right hand* : Essential or indispensable helper ; chief assistant.

**Cp.** *Fidus Achates* ; *Henchman*.

Also, you are *my right hand man* (adj.)

6. *Put your right hand to the work* : set to it with earnest vigour.

7. *To put or set to rights* : To put into right (i. e. good and proper) order. To arrange (as hair, dress, or any matter) *properly*.

The clever doctor *set my friend to rights* (i. e. cured him) [NOTE the plural form—probably in imitation of the adverbial suffix “S”—so, *By rights* (adv) : The property should have been made over to him *by rights*.

**Cp.** To set one's house in order.

**8.** *To be in the right* (as opposed to wrong) : To have justice on one's side.

For modes of faith let graceless zealots fight

His cannot be wrong, whose life is *in the right*.—POPE.

**9.** *In one's own right* : By absolute right.

He is a Raja *in his own right*—not called such by courtesy.

**10.** *To the right about* : (adv) To the opposite direction.

He was *sent to the right about* : packed off. Dismissed unceremoniously.  
To go or turn *to the right about*, i. e. facing round.

**11.** *Right and left* (adv) [strictly] To or on both sides, (usually) In all directions.

The crowd was dispersed *right and left* [Beware of giving the full grammatical form ‘to the right hand and to the left hand’]. Fig. He was abused *right and left*. i. e. The abuse came from all directions.

**Cp.** On all hands.

**Riot.** *To run riot* : (V. I.) To act or move *without control*.  
To throw off restraint [used with *tongue*, temper, fancy, imagination, as nominative] riot : (adv) riotously.

That an ungovernable temper *running constant riot* should culminate in madness is just what would be naturally expected.

Our fancy *ran riot* among our pleasant sins.

**Rise.** **1.** *To rise in the world* : (V. I.) To attain higher social station.

**2.** *To rise to an occasion* : To develop powers suited to meet or combat the occasion [See Occasion].

Those who know Lord Chelmsford are most confident of his capacity to *rise to the demands* of his new office.—GRAPHIC.

It is hoped that the promoters of the Hindu University will *rise to their responsibilities*.—TIMES OF INDIA.

So, *To rise to an emergency or requirement*.

**3.** *To rise with the occasion*.

Van de Weyer was a man who always rose with the occasion, and always seemed trained and fitted for his work.—TIMES.

4. Prices are *on-the rise* : (pred adj) : increasing ; rising.

5. The proposal will *give rise* to bitter controversy : (V. T.) occasion. Cause.

6. The boy is now *rising fifteen* : getting on for that age.

7. To *worship the rising sun* : [The Hindus literally do, this] (fig.) To pay court to one acquiring wealth, fame, or power.

The true chivalry revered the past, and was the faithful guardian of great memories in the midst of irreverent and ephemeral visions. The false chivalry *worships the rising sun* and makes friends with those forces which have the promise of the future.—RUSSELL.

**Risk.** 1. To *run a risk* : To incur hazard : To encounter danger generally. [Cognate object: risky course.]

2. To *run the risk of* (a thing) : To expose oneself to (its risk or hazard) the possibility of *losing it*.

A Negro would *run the risk of* being lynched if he should aspire to marry a white man's daughter.

3. To *take risks* : (The same as 2 without reference to any particular loss, but note the *plural*).

4. (He did so) *at the risk of his life* (adv): exposing himself to the *chance of losing* his life [Beware of using *to* for *at*].

I hold it an honour to have been so many years a journalist, and never will the public prosecutor, with his declamatory commonplaces, succeed in stigmatising men who write conscientiously and courageously, and defend all our liberties *at their own personal risks*—VAN DE WEYER.

5. *At owner's risk* : (adv) the owner agreeing to bear any contingent loss.

**Road.** 1. There is no *royal road* to learning : way of attaining (it) without trouble.

There is no royal road to success, but one has to get hard knocks and start from the bottom before he can aspire to get up.—MR. JUTWILLER.

"The only *royal road* to peace is the right road and the righteous road,

Cp. Short cut.

2. *On the road* : (pred adj) Travelling ; Tramping about.

3. He has *taken to the road* : Become a tramp.

4. *Road hog* : A bicyclist or motorist regardless of others' safety.

**Roar.** 1. *The roaring game* : Skating, because it causes roars of laughter and hilarity.

2. To *set the table in a roar* : To make the assembly of host and guests *laugh loud*.

So, To *set the room in a roar* : the company in the room.

3. To *drive a roaring business or trade* ; carry it on so that its success is *loudly* spoken of.

Cp. Bonanza business (American) ; A run of luck.

**Roast.** To *rule the roast (or roost)* : To have the lead, To be the master (in any company or enterprise).

Suffolk, the new made Duke, that *rules the roast*.—SHAK.

Cp. To *lord it over* ; (To domineer).

**Rock.** 1. (To see) *rocks ahead* : (Lit.) danger of shipwreck ; (fig.) an imminent danger : A danger looming near.

Cp. Breakers ahead ; Storm brewing : So, To run upon the rocks.

2. Built or founded *on the rock* : Securely and firmly based.

3. He went up *like a rocket* and came down like a stick : achieved a sudden but ephemeral fame, glory, or success.

4. *Rock-bottom prices* . The lowest possible price.

**Rod.** 1. *The rod* : use of the cane for flogging purposes. [concrete for the abstract].

*Spare the rod and spoil the child* —PROVERB.

2. To make a rod for *one's own back* : To create trouble for oneself.

3. To *kiss the rod* : To submit to punishment gladly.

4. I have a rod in *pickle* for you : Keep punishment of you in reserve.

**Roland.** A *Roland for an Oliver* : [These are the names



of two comrades in Charlemagne legends] one lie or incredible story matched with another.

I gave him a *Roland for his Oliver* : a good effective retort or retaliation. Cp Tit for tat. *A quid pro quo*.

**Role.** To play the role of : [See Play].

**Roll**—1. A conveyance *rolled past* (or by) : moved or advanced near (V. I.).

2. Years *roll on* (or by) ; (V. I.) Go smoothly [time is often metaphorically represented as a *wheel*].

3. To *roll up* (V. T.) To wrap with clothes or any covering material. To surround *completely* ; To envelop ; To inwrap.

Hinderburgh's plan to outflank and *roll up* the Russian Rumanian armies has failed.—MAIL.

Also, To put out of action ; To render useless or inoperative.

Why then should we scruple at all to leave all power in the hands of the executive to *roll up* our courts of law, to suspend or lay low your legislative councils altogether ?—S. SASTRI.

3A. To be *rolled into one* : pressed into one mass by rolling.

The Indian system of trials in which the prosecutor and the judge are *rolled into one*.—A MAJUMDAR.

He is saint and philosopher *rolled into one*.

4. He *rolls in wealth* (luxury or ease) : has it in abundance (being completely surrounded as it were by it) [roll = wallow].

4A. So, to *roll on* the mess : To use and expend much money,

5. A *rolling stone gathers no moss* ; A person constantly changing his calling or occupation cannot amass riches.

Also, talents or acquirements if constantly exercised or practised do not get rusty.

Cp. "The used key is always bright."

**Rome.** 1. *Rome was not built in a day* : It took years and ages to raise the *superb* structures to be seen in Rome. Hence, *great* results are achieved by years of patient toil. Don't lose heart.

2. *When at Rome do as the Romans do* : Adapt yourself to your environments (without minding fitness, propriety, or even conscientious scruples).

**Cp.** Swim with the stream or current. Follow the fashion,  
I see the right and approve it too  
Condemn the wrong and yet the wrong pursue.

**Room.** 1. Appointed in the room of a person : as substitute for him ; In succession to him.

**Cp.** In place of. In lieu of.

2. (To find) room *and to spare*. (adj) Enough ; sufficient

**Cp.** Enough and to spare

3. To *make room for* a person : To withdraw in favour of him, i. e. to give him standing ground.

Also, To clear a space for *any thing*.

In the general sense, To open a passage. **Cp.** To give room.

4. *Here is no room to turn in* : The space is confined,

So colloquially, no room to swing a cat,

4A. *I would rather have his room than his company* : His society is disagreeable to me.

**Cp.** I wish him away.

**Root.** 1. To get or lie at the root of the matter, i. e. the bottom of it : Source, origin, (also) Essential substance.

Though his style was as yet a little boyish and florid, Mr. Bright had already *the root of the matter in him* (i. e. was essentially sound.)—Times.

If we take the soul in its wider sense, we shall not be less careful to catechise ourselves about the conceptions which lie at the very root of our citizenship—RUSSELL. •

2. To *take root* : (Lit) To take firm hold of the soil (as plants) ; (fig) To get well established (as institutions).

Also, To strike root.

Hence the adj. "deep-rooted" (prejudice, belief, antipathy &c.)

**3.** To lay the axe to the root of a thing (as institution, system, creed, belief &c.): To set about destroying it *radically*.

**4.** To cut up (a thing) *root and branch*: (adv) completely.

The poor effete Bureaucracy is to be swept away *root and branch*.

Cp. Stock and barrel.

**4A.** *Root and branch* liberal or reformer: (adj) Radical; through and through. To the core.

**Rope.** **1.** A *rope of sand*: (fig) A very feeble tie; any thing apparently strong but in reality liable to give way easily. A *delusive* security.

The oath they took to stand by each other was only a *rope of sand*.

Cp. Broken-reed.

**2.** To give a person *rope enough or plenty of rope* (and he will hang himself): Not to check him in his course (usually of misdeeds) (but trust to his bringing about his own destruction)

**3.** To do a thing *with a rope round one's neck*: (adv) on immediate peril of one's life. In imminent danger of death.

**4.** He *knows the ropes*: is thoroughly acquainted with the necessary conditions (in any sphere of action).

So. He requires to be *put up to the ropes* (mark the plural.)

**5.** On *the ropes*, i. e. the tight rope: one on which the ropedancers perform. (*fig*) In a tense position.

Russia is still *on the ropes* and will in due time come up again climbing strong in her purpose.—LORD GEORGE.

**Rose.** **1.** To do anything *under the rose*: In secret; secretly; or in secret confidence. (Lat) *sub-rosa* [Rose is the symbol of secrecy.]

In the enemy's rank we have *under the rose* some friends.

**2.** He is bent upon *gathering life's roses*: seeking pleasure.

**3.** A *bed of roses*: A very pleasant easy situation.

In proportion as a man's course of thought deviates from the ordinary line, his seat must less and less resemble a *bed of roses*.—ROUSSELL.

4. Life is not *all rose colour*. : (pred. adj.) rose-coloured or rosy. : very pleasant and agreeable ; no pleasant outlook.

So, He *takes rose-coloured views*, i. e. sees things through rose-coloured spectacles : is optimistic.

Cp. Beer and skittle (=all pleasure and amusement.)

5. *Crumpled rose-leaf* : (Fig) an alloy of vexation marring general happiness. Cp. A fly in the ointment.

6. No *rose without a thorn* : There is no unalloyed happiness.

But when you have our roses,

You barely leave our thorn to prick ourselves.—SHAK (A. W.)

Flowers of all hue and *without thorn the rose*.—MILTON.

There is no rose without a thorn and the thorn is the provision of nature in order that the beauty of the rose may not be despoilt.

**Rote.** To *learn by rote* : (V. T.) To Commit to memory *without intelligence*.

By finding truth they (the world at large) mean only *learning by rote* the maxims current around them.—ECCLES HOMO.

So, To *know or say by rote*.

**Rough.** 1. The *roughs* : (n) crowd of rough, *disorderly* people. The mob ; The rabble ; Rowdies ; hooligans.

2. The *roughs and smooths* ; The hard and easy parts of life.

3. I have seen the document *in the rough*, i. e. in its rough or unfinished state.

So, To do a thing *in the rough* (adv): in the general way i. e. without much care or labour bestowed upon it.

4. This degradation is *rough on him* : bears hard upon him ; Is a misfortune which he does not deserve.

Cp. A Peck of troubles : Hard lines for.

5. To *rough it* [*It is indefinite for condition of life*],

To put up with hardship and discomfort.

To do without ordinary conveniences of life.

**Contra** : To live in clover.

6. *Rough and ready* : (adj.) [alliterative combination] Not carefully finished; barely suiting the purposes (*fig* of persons unceremonious in manner but reliable and always prepared for emergencies.)

7. *Rough and tumble* : (n) a haphazard fight; melee.

Cp. Spill and pelt.

(adj) Regardless of rules; rude and disorderly (set of people).

8. He is a *rough diamond* : A person of genuine worth but rude and unpolished manners. *Contra* : Red sea apple.

9. To *lick* (a person) *with the rough side of one's tongue* : (V. T.) To administer reproof to; To reprimand; To speak severely to.

**Round.** 1. To *bring a person round* : (V. T.) To restore him to health or consciousness.

Also, To induce him to change his opinions.

A person comes round (V. I.)

2. To *come or get round a person* : To gain advantage over him by flattery or deception. To cajole him into doing something; To wheedle.

The Doctor came round the imbecile patient and got him to subscribe one million to the University Fund.

3. To *argue round and round a subject* : Not to come near it [The repetition is emphatic].

4. You are stating your case in a *round about way* : (adj.) Not direct or straightforward. Cp. To beat about the bush. To shilly shally; To dilly dally.

5. To *round off* (a sentence, career etc.) = (V. T.) To bring to a well-ordered condition. To finish completely.

6. To *round up cattle* : To collect and bring them into an enclosure..

7. He is an *all round man* : (adj.) of many sided talents, versatile.

**7A.** A mathematician *all round*: (adj.) in every respect or particular.

This movement [Boy scouts] was founded by Lieut. Gen. Sir R. Baden-Powell "to help the boys of whatever class to become *all round men*."

The Government of India have secured the assent of the Secretary of State to an *all-round* increase of pay (in the Police force)—LORD CHELMSFORD.

**8** To *make or go one's round*: To take one's customary walk (usually on inspection duties).

**9.** The story *goes the round*: Passes from mouth to mouth.

**10.** A person *rounds on* his accomplices: peaches upon them; informs against them in breach of faith; turns approver or King's evidence.

**11.** *Round numbers*: Those made up of digits the last being zero as tens, hundreds, thousands, etc.

But a *round sum* = a considerable amount.

Samuel Morley contributed *round sums* £ 3,000 or £ 6,000 at a time to large undertakings —RUSSELL.

**12.** *round robin*: A petition, memorial, or remonstrance signed by names in a circle that it may not be discovered who first signed (as the ringleader).

**Route.** *En route*: (Fr): [adv] *On the way; during the journey.*

In the mail cars letters are carried and sorted *en route*.

Tourist's tickets permit the holders to journey to several places with liberty to break the journey *en route*.

**Row.** **1.** *It is a hard row to the hoe*: The task is difficult (metaphor from gardening): Cp. tough job.

**2.** To *row down* (V. T.): To overtake (another boat) in a rowing race: To bump.

**3.** We *row or sail in the same boat*: (fig) are placed in equally *embarrassing* situation: Equally circumstanced.

Cp. To be in the same box.

**4.** To *kick up a row*: (V. I.) To raise noise; (fig) To make a noisy protest.

Cp. To kick up a shindy.

**Rub.** 1. To *rub down* (a horse): (V. T.) To groom; To curry,

2. To *rub in the wrong way* (V. T.) i. e. To stroke (as a cat) against the grain (Lit). (fig) To irritate by opposition.

*Cp.* To ruffle one's feathers (= To make him angry).

3. To *rub up* (memory etc.): To brush up; To freshen. I must *rub up* Calculus (or Sanskrit); also, To rouse (a person) to action.

4. *There is the rub* [oft quoted from Hamlet's famous soliloquy]. That is the point at which doubt or difficulty arises. A puzzling question.

*Cp.* Where the shoe pinches. The *rubs and worries* of life = Bothers. *Those who play at bowls must look for rubs*—PROVERB.

[*rub* = (In bowling) inequality of ground impeding or diverting the bowl.]

**Rubicon.** To *cross the rubicon*: To do an act from which there is no possibility of retreat or withdrawal without utter ruin; To take a decisive step (often used in the passive form.)

[Julius Cæsar in B. C. 49 crossed this small boundary river of Italy as his decisive action, i. e. declaration of war against Rome.]

*Cp.* The die is cast; our boats are burned. also, Serbonian bog (from which *escape* is difficult). •

**Rule.** 1. *Rule of thumb*: a rule that is based upon practice and not upon strictly scientific theories.

[Used attributively before persons, process, calculation].

2. *As a rule*: (adv) usually; more often than not.

*As a rule*, the sphere of a man's activity is fixed by the time he is forty—TIMES.

The absolute cheat has *as a rule* a short life though perhaps a merry one.—RUSSELL. *Cp.* On the whole (Generally).

3. *One's ruling passion*: The motive, that *habitually* directs his actions.

*The ruling passion*, be it what it will,

*The ruling passion* conquers reason still.—POPE.

At forty the concentrated energies of the soul are thrown into the employment which has become *the ruling passion*.—TIMES.

4. To rule the roost : (V. I.) [See Roast.]

**Run.** [The verb is intransitive in its primary sense. But it is used transitively when it takes a cognate object and when a narrative sense is given to it.]

1. To run a race : Lit To run a running [cognate object]  
To contend in a race. (fig) To enter into a contest or competition ; To compete.

Note following distinctive uses :—

(a) My horse ran in the race. (V. I)

(b) My horse ran a race with yours. (V. T) cognate object.

(c) I have run my race : (i. e. course of life) (V. T.) Ditto.

He passed away before he had run half his race.

Remote from town he ran his godly race—GOLDSMITH,

(d) My race is run. Passive form of (c).

Hence, To run a risk, i. e. a risky course [See Risk.]

So, To run a chance of being rich.

Things must run their course : be left to themselves.

2. To run a hotel (or a company, any enterprise etc )

(V. T.) To carry it on ; To keep it going.

Every public department shall be run on business-like lines but not for business ends.

(e) To run errands or messages = To carry them as by running.

The streets ran blood : caused blood to run : i. e. flowed with.

Fountains running wine—MACCLAY (Virginia).

2A. To run (a parallel, or comparison) to death: To apply it too closely. To force it.

Cp. To ride (a jest) to death, (i. e. overdo it.)

2B. To run to earth: (V. T.) To chase (game) to its lair.  
(fig) To discover after long search.

2C. To run the gauntlet : [see Gauntlet.]

3. To run across (a person) : To fall in with ; To meet accidentally.

3A. She was much run after : Her society was sought by many people.

4. To run against (person, thing etc.) : To come into collision with. The ship ran against a rock.



5. To *run at a person*: To attack him with *sudden* violence.  
Cp. To rush upon.

6. To *run away*: (V. I.) To flee; To abscond.

7. To *run away with* (V. T.): To carry away secretly or clandestinely.

Hence, a *run away* match or marriage = one effected after elopement.

8. The clock has *run down* (V. I.): stopped for want of winding. Hence, (*fig*) I feel much *run down* (p. p. adj.) enfeebled from over work, poor feeding etc. So, my health has *run down*.

9. To *run* (a person or thing) *down*: (V. T.) To pursue with scandal or opposition; To chase to weariness (as a stag).

10. To *run a person hard*. [See Hard].

11. My friend has *run in* or *into* debts: incurred.

He ran *into* great danger, error, absurdity, practice &c.

12. The sand-glass has *run out*: [out denotes completion or exhaustion]: stopped working after running to the end of its time. (V. I.) My stock has *run out*: is exhausted. But, I am *run out* of my stock.

A time must come when music will *run itself out*.—J. S. MILL.

The sands are *running out* and it now only remains for me to take leave of you all (i. e. time is nearly up).—LORD HARDINGE.

So, our long vacation will soon *run out* = come to an end.

Also, The lease has not *run out* yet: expired.

Cp. To *run low or short* (as money materials etc.) (V. I.) = To become inadequate or scanty].

13. To *run over, up, and down* a place: To go there for a flying visit.

Cp. He had a *run on* the continent: (short excursion)

14. To *run over*: (V. I.) To overflow.

Queen Hecuba laughed, that her eyes *ran over*.—SHAK (T & C)

No more tears, Lord God!

The measure *runneth over*.—BROWNING.

My cup (of misery) *runs over*.

\* [Note the verb is used of both the vessel and its contents]

Also, (V. T.) To glance over; To review or recapitulate.

15. To *run through* (a book): (V. T.) To examine cursorily; (a property or estate): To squander by reckless spending.

16. To *run a person through* with a rapier: (V. T.) To kill him,

17. To run to seed [see Seed].

17a. To *run up* a row of buildings: To erect *hastily*.

18. (The writing or exposition is such that) *he who runs may read*: (adj) Legible to the swiftest runner; Easily intelligible.

The evils of the 'expert' system lie on the surface. *He who runs may read them.*—ENGLISHMAN.

It is no secret, for *he who runs may read*, that it would be necessary to recognise our Indian army after this war and some form of second line force will probably be required.—LORD CHELMSFORD.

[N. B. An alive sign of the following Biblical expression:—

Write the vision, and make it plain upon tables that *he may run that readeth it.*"]

19. *In the long run*: [see Long].

20. *In the running*: (pred. adj.) Having a good chance of winning (in a race or any competition).

Mr. Harcourt has become first favourite among the political scripps for the viceroyalty of India with Lord Beauchamp also in the *running*—E.

Contra: *out of the running*.

There was a time when foreign machines and engines were taking the place of English ones and foreign workshops were forcing the pace to an extent which put us *out of the running* in both quantity and price.

21. (A thing happens) *several days (or times) running*: (adv) uninterruptedly, or in succession.

I attended the Board meeting *three sundays running*.

[Beware of inserting any preposition before the adverbial phrase].

22. The building came down *with a run*: (adv) very rapidly.

His fall was *by the run*: (adj. pred) quick and precipitate.

**23.** I had a *run of ill luck*: a rapid succession of misfortune.

*Contra.* a *run of luck* (i. e. good luck), in bonanza.

**24.** *The run of people* (or simply *the run*): or *the common run*: [The people that pass under observation as usual or most generally] Average men; common folks; proletariat.

The training of a public school is best adapted to *the common run* of Englishmen—GIBSON.

## S

**Sack.** **1.** To give the *sack* to (a person): (V. T.) To dismiss him.

**2.** To get the *sack*: (V. I.) To be dismissed from any service. [sack = soldier's knapsack],

**3.** (To go, mourn, or sue) *In sack cloth and ashes*: (adv.) wearing mourning or penitential garb.

At the contemplation of such crime she (Bengal) bows her head in sorrow and humiliation for whose victims she mourns *in sack cloth and ashes*.

**Safe.** **1.** *Safe and sound* (pred adj.) In good health.

*Cp.* Right as a trivet.

**2.** He is a *safe first*: (pred adj.) Sure to take first class.  
So, *Safe to win*, *Safe to be there*.

**3.** *Safe bind, safe find*: [A rhymed proverb].

If you securely (firmly) pack up or fasten your things, you will get them back undamaged. [Adj. *safe* = saved *against* or *from* a danger; secure = free from *any fear* of attack or danger].

**3a.** To be on the *safe side*: To be prudent and cautious.

**4.** To err on the *safe side*: (adv.) with sufficient margin of security against risks.

**5.** *Safety-valve*: (*Lit.*) a contrivance for an automatic opening of the valve when the pressure of the steam on the boiler is excessive, (Fig) A harmless means of venting forth exalted feelings.

6. To sit on the safety-valve: To follow a policy of repression. Not to allow free ventilation of public opinion against hard unpopular measures.

**Saddle.** 1. In the saddle: (pred adj.) Lit. mounted; (Fig.) In office.

• Many men have mounted the saddle both at Simla and at Whitehall only to find themselves confronted by an insurmountable wall of bureaucratic opposition.—INDIA,

2. To put the saddle on the right horse: To blame the person on whom the blame justly lies; To fix the responsibility on the person really responsible. Cp. To hit the right nail on the head.

**Sail.**—1. It (the task or business) is plain sailing (pred. adj.) does not cause any perplexity; smooth and easy.

2. To strike sail. (V. I) Lit. To take it down as sign of surrender. (Fig) To lessen one's pretensions.

How many nobles then should hold their places,

That must strike sail to spirits of vile sort.—SHAK (M. V.)

Cp. To lower one's horn; To hide one's diminished head.

3. To take in sail: To moderate one's ambition, [Lit to furl]

4. A vessel makes sail: starts on its voyage. [Generalized into any kind of starting for a thing].

4A. To set sail: To begin a voyage.

**Sake**—1. For the sake of: (prep) out of consideration for; In order to please or gratify (person or thing.) In order to get or keep (a thing), In the interest of; Because of.

Tell your father that our good Master will reward him a hundredfold for all he has lost for the sake of his faith.—CARDINAL MANNING.

Cp. Love for love's sake: I do not love thee for what thee (thou) is, but I love thee for what I am. I am thy mother and I love thee because of my mother-heart of love and I should love thee just the same no matter what thee (thou) did—(A MOTHER TO HER CHILD.)

2. For old sake's sake: (adv.) Out of regard for the

memory of old days, old friendships etc.

Cp. For auld lang syne. [See Auld]

3. Play, do it for *any sake*: For one reason if not for another.

**Salad.**—*Salad days*: Days of youthful inexperience.

*My salad days* when I was green in judgment — SHAK (A & C)

In London the other day Lord Ronaldshay made a remarkable denunciation of the heroines of his *salad days*.

**Sally.**—1 To *sally out*. V. I. [Mil. To rush upon the besieger] To go forth on a journey, for a walk, or for any other purpose.

I cannot praise a fugitive and cloistered virtue unexercised and unbreathed, that never *sallies out* and seeks her adversary — MITTON.

2. *Salutes of youth* Flighty conduct of young men. Their wild gaiety mirth and frolics, escapades. Cp. Sowing one's wild oats

**Salt**—1. *Worth one's salt* (adj.) Efficient; competent. [See Worth]

2 *The salt of the earth*: That which preserves the world from corruption or worthlessness; That for whose existence the world is better.

[The expression is borrowed from the Bible—Ye are the salt of the earth. (Matt. V. 13)]

They (Christ's followers) are to be *the salt of the earth* that is their Christian enthusiasm is to give a tone to the languid and lifeless heathen society.—ECCLES. HOMO. Cp. Moral elite. Flower of the flock.

3. *To eat a man's salt*: (V. I.) To be his guest or dependant.

So, *To eat salt with a man*: To be his guest.

4. *Above the salt* [Reference to the position of the salt-celler on the dining table in olden times]. (adj. pred. or adv.) (Occupying the position) among the family or their equals.

5. So, *Below the salt*; (Occupying the position) among the servants and dependants.

6. He is *true to his salt*: loyal and faithful to his master.

7. To *lay (or throw) salt upon one's tail*: To capture (or attempt to capture) him. \*

8 To *take* (a report or statement) *with a grain of salt* (V. T) To regard as exaggerated. *Cum grano salis*. [See Grain.]

Cp. With grains of allowance.

**Samaritan** *Good Samaritan*: [allusion to the parable Luke x, 33] A really charitable person; A benevolent benefactor.

**Same**.—1 (Whether you accept the suggestion or not), *it is all the same to me* It makes no difference to me. The two *alternatives* affect me equally.

What a tiresome rule! [referring to the condition that placemen should keep no diary] I think I should keep my diary *all the same*.—RUSSELL Cp. For all that

2. *Much the same*: (adj. pred) not appreciably different.

So, *Just the same*: In spite of (the changed conditions).

3. (and) *At the same time*: [conj. Introducing a fact in *apparent conflict* with the preceding.] Nevertheless; Even under different circumstances.

How can it best be arranged to secure that the government is willing to give, *and at the same time* to provide means of progressive improvement in the future.—INDIA.

**Sand**.—1. *To sow the sand* To use vain efforts.

Cp. To milk the ram.

2. One's *sand runs out*: [See Run out.] The allotted span of his life is nearly at an end.

Now our *sands* are almost run.—SHAK (Pericles).

So, *The sands are numbered* that make up my life.—IBID (H. vi.)

Cp. One's hour is come; one's life hangs by a thread.

3. *Sand-blind*: (adj.) Parblind; dim-sighted.

**Sauce**.—1. I will *pay sauce for all*: Bear the costs on behalf of all.

2. They will be *served with the same sauce*: Treated alike; subjected to the same usage.

3 *None of your sauce!* i. e. sauciness = Impertinence; "check."

4. *Sauce box*: [Jocosely used of] a young person of rude speech and manners.

**Save.** *Saving your reverence*: [See Presence.] a *par-enthetical* phrase introduced in a sentence by way of apology for some *unseemly* remark or statement *in the presence of one worthy of respect*. If I may say so without disrespect; with a proper regard for the respect due to you.

To run away from the Jew, I should be ruled by the fiend, who, *saving your reverence*, is the devil himself.—SHAK (M. V.)

Cp. God save the mark; also, saving your presence.

**Say.**—1. *They say*: ['They' is indefinite for people generally] It is said; The rumour goes; *On dit*.

So wise so young, *they say*, do ne'er live long.—SHAK.

2 *That is to say*: (conj.) Or; In other words. viz. (videlicet = namely.)

Cp To wit. Scilicet (sc) [Lat] = Scire licet (it is allowed to know.)

3. *It goes without saying*: It is too obvious to need mention.

**Contra.** *There is no saying*.

Though the diplomatic relations between Greece and the *Entente* Powers are still friendly, *there is no saying* when they may be better or worse.—I REVIEW

4. *As the saying is*: [adverbial parenthesis.] As the proverb goes.

[**Note** the difference in the uses of "say" and "Tell". The former is *declaratory* and the latter is *communicative* and more specific, ordinarily taking two objects—the thing communicated and the person to whom the communication is made. see Speak]

5. *Not to say any thing of* or *To say nothing of*: (conj.) And i. e. without mentioning what is *additionally* important.

[A paranthetical way of stating an important matter instead of using the conjunction **And** = And the important thing viz],

There might be struggle for the supremacy of Asia, for supremacy in the Pacific, for the mastery of Australia—to say *nothing* of the inevitable trade struggles on which Japan was already endangering Indian Industry and Trade while India was unable to protect herself —**Mrs. A. BESANT**.

6. So to say : [See So.]

**Scale.**—1. This circumstance has *turned the scale* : Decided the matter *differently*; *changed* decision in the opposite direction. [See Turn]

2. To *hold the scales even* : To judge without bias or prejudice, i. e. impartially. [Note the plural].

3. (Pr parations were made) *On a vast scale* : (adv.) To a relatively large extent In very large proportions.

Literature is life *on a broad scale*. It is democratic (i. e. treats of all men alike).

Gladstone was sometimes forced by conviction or fate or political necessity to be a revolutionist *on a large scale* —**G. W. F. RUSSELL**.

So, *On a small scale* I am an author *on a small scale*.

**Cp** In miniature. In a small way.

**Scapè-goat.**—1. *Scapè-goat* : [From the Bible Lev. xvi].

(Fig.) one made to bear the blame due to others.

An inquiry is needed not to make *scapè goats* but to assure the best treatment for their country's heroes —**STATESMAN**.

It would be a scandal to make Lord Hardinge a *scapè goat*. It makes my blood boil to think that he should be sacrificed and we go free.  
**Mrs. ASQUITH.**

**Cp** Whipping-boy

2. *Scapè-grace* ; [*Lit.*, a graceless] one who is always in trouble and disgrace (especially applied to a child); a hare-brained fellow.

Dick Dowlas is a young *scapè-grace* who for a time figured as a peer of the realm.—**COLMAN** (**HIS-AT-LAW**.) **Cp.** Ne'r-do-weel (Scotch)

**Scene.**—1 (Do not) *make a scene* : Display temper.

2. *Behind the scenes* : (pred. adj) knowing more than is known to others. [*Fig.* from stage-scenes]. Having private



information (about any matter) which is not accessible to the public. [See Behind]. [Note the plural].

**Scent.**—1. *On the scent*: (pred. adj.) *Lit.* following the track of the game by the scent left by it. (*Fig.*) Having clue (to any difficult course or pursuit.)

2 I was put *off the scent*. (adv.) away from the right course by deception or false indication. Cp. Off the track—

**School.**—1. To go to school: [without reference to any particular school] To be receiving education generally.

So, To leave school. [No article before school.] Hence, *school days*: past time of being at school.

2. He is *in the schools now* = undergoing (some) university examination. So, he is *in for his schools*: a candidate for the University Examination.

[~~See~~ Note the plural form in this sense.]

3 *The schoolmaster is abroad*. [See Abroad]. Education has become general. (Concrete for abstract.)

**Score.**—1. To pay one's score: To settle reckoning.

Death pays all scores (i. e. accounts of dues; debts)

So, To quit scores with a person.

2 To pay off old scores: To requite oneself for some past injury.

Cp. To pay one out (for past offence).

3 To go off at score: To start (*Lit.* from the score or scratch). \*To start off well or vigorously; (*Fig.*) To start discourse on a pet subject.

4 On the score of: Because of; on account of.

He declined the invitation *on the score of illness* (i. e. on the ground that he was ill.)

He was rejected *on the score of minority* (i. e. as being minor.)

5. You may be easy *on that score*: (adv.) so far as that matter is concerned.

Cp. Secure thy heart—SHAK (Timon).

6. To score success: To win (*met.* from gaming.)

7. To score off (a person) : To humiliate (

For a bishop to score off a clergyman is an inglorious victory.—RUSSELL

8. To run up a score : (V. I.) To get into debt. Hence to score up.

9. To score out (a word in a passage). To draw a line through it to indicate that it should be omitted.

But, to score it under = To underline it (to signify importance or objectionableness).

**Scrape.**—1. To be in a scrape : (pred. adj.) placed in an awkward predicament or any difficult perplexing situation Cp. "In a cleft stick."

2. To bow and to scrape : (V. I.) To be exceedingly polite. [*Lit.* To bow in an awkward manner with a scraping of the foot].

3. He has just scraped through : (V. I.) Got through with a squeeze. (*Fig.*) narrowly escaped from failing in the examination. Cp. A narrow miss.

4. To scrape together or up (riches, fortune etc.) : To save or gather laboriously and penuriously. Hence, A scrape-penny = a miser, a skinflint, a niggard.

So, work and scrape = earn and spend economically [V. I. in the general sense.]

5. To scrape acquaintance with (a person) : To thrust one's acquaintance on (him) in a servile manner. To insinuate oneself into familiarity with person on slight grounds.

**Screw.**—1. An old screw : a very stingy avaricious person : a skinflint Old hunks. A scrape-penny.

2. There is a screw loose : something is out of working order. Specially, used with reference to a person's brain or intellect (in disordered state).

3. To screw up one's courage : (*Fig.*) To gather resolution.

But, Screw your courage to the sticking place—SEAK (Mac).

I. e. Make the full use of it,

[Here "up" is replaced by the adverbial phrase "to the sticking place."]

**4.** To *put the screw on* (a person): To bring pressure to bear upon him (as by means of extortion or intimidation).

So, To put a person *under the screw*: To coerce him by harsh means.

**5.** *He draws a handsome screw*: gets very good salary or wages.

**Sea.**—**1.** *I am at sea now* i. e. Do not know what to do or how to proceed; In complete perplexity. *Lit. on the open sea.*

**1a.** *At full sea* (of one's glory etc.): At the height. (pred. adj).

**2** *A heavy sea*: one with great waves.

**3.** *He is half seas over.* [Slang] has drunk too much.

**4.** *A sea of troubles*: so many as cannot be numbered; Too many.

**5.** *To go to sea*: To follow the sailor's occupation; [no article].

**6.** *He lives at the sea-side*: close to the sea. [Beware of using "on"]

**Seamy.** *The seamy side*: (*Lit.*) the inside of garments, (*Fig*) the worst side or view (of affairs). Pessimism.

As to the *seamy side* of war, we do not think, that any war in the ancient or modern world has been altogether free from barbarities,—MOD R.

**Seal.**—**1.** *To set one's seal to* (an act, deed etc.): (*Fig.*) To authorize formally; To give one's assurance of. Hence, *seal of love.*

\* \* \* a combination, and a form, indeed,

Where every god did seem to set his seal.—SHAK (Hamlet).

**2** *To seal one's fate*: To settle, or decide it irrevocably.

Though the outbreak was prevented, the affair sealed the fate of Rochette and his companions.—PROTERO.

So, To seal one's infamy: To establish it firmly.

**3.** *He has the seal of death* in his face; His look bears marks (stamped as it were by death) of approaching death.

*Cp.* Death has sealed her for his own.

4. To *seal one's lips* : To stop them up : To close them hermetically ; To prevent one from speaking.

The communication was made to me *under seal of silence* : i. e. imposing the obligation of keeping it secret : Cp. Seal of confidence.

5. The matter is a *sealed book* to me : something which is not only not within my knowledge but also beyond it,

Cp. Heaven from all men *hides the book of fate*.—POPE.

**Search.**—1. To be *in search of* (something missing) : To try to find it.

Cp. To look for. So, To search for.

To *go in search of a thing* = To seek it ; To be in quest of it.

2. To *search (a thing) out* : To find it after search.

**Season.** 1. *In season and out of season* : (adv.) at all times without discrimination (between suitable and unsuitable) ; whether well-timed or ill-timed ;

One weapon in the armoury of the enemies of Indian advancement which they used *in season and out of season* is the alleged cleavage between the Hindus and the Mahomedans.—S. N. BANERJEE.

2. The fruits are *in season* : (can be had) in good condition ; on sale. (pred. adj.)

**Second.** 1. *Second childhood* : Old age ; dotage.

\* \* Last scene of all,

That ends this strange eventful history,

Is *second childishness* and mere oblivion.—SHAK.

Cp. An oldman is twice a child.

2. *At second hand* : (adv.) By hearsay [See Hand (2)].

The glory of the original man is this, that he does not take his virtues and his views of things *at second hand*, but draws wisdom fresh from nature and from the inspiration within him—ECCZ HOMO.

Hence, *second hand* (adj.) information, *Second-hand* articles : Bought from the first user.

3. *Second nature* : Habit (i. e. tendency acquired by constant use and repetition so as to become an instinct.)

Pitt appropriated the dramatic way of doing things till it had become a *second nature* (i. e. natural) to him.—LORD ROSSBERRY.

**Cp.** Custom hath made it in him a property of easiness.—SHAK.  
How use doth breed a habit in man.—IBID.

4. *Second-self*: another myself; most intimate friend; bosom friend; *alter ego*.

Middleton was appointed the confidential agent—the *second self* of Mr. Hastings.—B. B. SHENDAN.

**Cp.** One's right hand; Fidus Achates.

5. *Second-best*: (adj.) Next to the best; of second (as opposed to first) quality.

6. He *came off second best* (in the competition) i. e. was defeated; was worsted (see the quotation under *Conclusions*).

**Cp.** Got the worst of it.

7. To *play second fiddle* (to a person): To be of secondary importance.

8. *Second sight*: The power of looking into *futurity*: Prophetic vision.

Astrology, and for the matter of that, any so-called occult science, pretends to confer *second sight* on its votaries.

**See.** 1. To *see* (*V. I.*) to a thing: To look well to it; To take care that it is done.

It is one of the duties of the Chamberlain to *see to* the furnishing of the Houses of the Parliament and Westminster Hall on state occasions.

Only the watchful continuous co-operation of men can *see to it* that the science as well as armed men is kept within the harness of civilization.

**Cp.** To look after.

2. I will *see about the matter*: pay some attention to it; consider it but decline to act at once.

3. To *see into or through* (a matter, case, etc.): To examine; To enquire; To investigate.

Also, To detect the nature of (a person's thoughts, purposes or motives) so as not to be deceived.

I *see through* your veiled purpose.

Like Kent the fool *see through* the hypocrisy of the sisters.—DRIGHTON

4. If you *see well and good*: (V. I. in the general sense) consider it right and expedient.

5. I went to the Railway station to *see the L. G. off*: to witness his departure.

6. To *see one's way to a thing*: To consider it *easy* (or *to do or doing a thing*): To manage or contrive to do it.

7. To *have seen better days* [see Better].

8. *Seeing that*: (conj) Since; because; considering; in as much as.

Captain H—died early, but not too early for his welfare. *seeing that* all the chances of life are against the gambler.—SIR H. HAWKINS

There is one value in your election of me in this crisis of India's destiny, *seeing that* I have not the privilege to be Indian-born.—MRS. A. B.

**Seed.** 1. *The seed time* The season proper for sowing. The sowing season; (fig) The seed time of life = one's school days.

**Sell.**—1. To *sell oneself*: To give up oneself to a vile purpose for the sake of money (as bribe-takers do)

Thou hast *sold thyself* to work iniquity. —BIBLE.

So, To *sell justice* To pass iniquitous judgment *after taking bribe*.

2. He *sold his life dear* (ly): caused great loss to his assailants before being killed.

[Taking many lives for giving one].

3. To *sell a man up*: To compel him to take insolvency and sell his goods to pay his creditors.

4. To *sell out* (shares or stock): To dispose of (them) altogether.

It will be too heavy a loss to *sell out* government securities at this period of depression caused by the war.

5. To *sell off* (stock in trade): To clear out.

**Send.**—1. I *sent for* a doctor: requested him by *message* to come.

Cp. I sent to warn him [obj. "message" is omitted]

2. The tree has *sent forth* (or out) new leaves or blossoms.

put forth ; brought forth ; emitted ; exhibited.

3. To *send a man about his business* : To dismiss him unceremoniously.

Cp. To send him packing. To send him to the right about.

4. They *sent the enemy flying* in all directions : *caused* his troops to fly. [An instance of *causative* meaning.]

So, To *send destruction* : To cause it to befall ; To inflict.

5. To *send off* a letter etc. To get it *off one's hand*.

6. To *send off a person* : To be present at his departure by way of respect.

Cp. To bid god-speed.

Hence the noun : we gave him a good *send-off* (got up a friendly or respectful demonstration at or before his departure).

**Serve.**—1. To *serve one's turn* : To prove useful *in time of need*. To do well enough. [turn = need, occasion, exigency].

Make my misery *serve thy turn* — SHAK.

When it *served his turn*, Brougham could fawn as well as bully.

So, To *serve the turn* : To meet the emergency. To answer the purpose.

Generally, To *serve a purpose* : To be suitable to it ; To satisfy it.

But, To *serve the purpose of* (a chair) : To be as good as, or To be used as.

1. To *serve one a good turn or bad turn* : [usually "do" is used for "serve."] To do him service or disservice.

1A. To *serve a person out* : To wreak revenge on him. Hence, *He is well served* : punished.

Cp. To serve with the same sauce,

To give a Roland for an Oliver (i. e. an effective retort).

3. *As occasion serves* (adv.) : when it is favourable.

4. I am *at your service* : (pred. adj.) ready to work on your behalf, or obey your orders.

The carriage is *at your service* : may be used by you to suit your requirements.

4. If you *see well and good* : (V. I. in the general sense) consider it right and expedient.

5. I went to the Railway station to *see the L. G. off* : to witness his departure.

6. To *see one's way to a thing* : To consider it *easy* (or *to do or doing a thing*) : To manage or contrive to do it.

7. To *have seen better days* [see Better].

8. *Seeing that* : (conj) Since ; because ; considering ; in as much as. In that.

Captain H—died early, but not too early for his welfare, *seeing that* all the chances of life are against the gambler.—SIR. H. HAWKINS.

There is one value in your election of me in this crisis of India's destiny, *seeing that* I have not the privilege to be Indian-born.—MRS. A. B.

**Seed.** 1. *The seed time* : The season proper for sowing. The sowing season ; (fig) The seed time of life = one's school days.

2. *The seeds of time* : The seeds which are in time's womb.

If you can *look into the seeds of time*,

And say which grain will grow and which will not.—SHAK.

3. To *run to seed* ; (V. I.) Lit To produce seeds instead of flower or fruit. Hence, *fig* To become *useless* ; To go to waste or ruin. To decay.

Mr. Monks is aware that I am not a youngman and also that I am a little *run to seed*.—DICKENS.

The building is *running to seed*.

Hence, the adj. "seedy" = worn out ; out of sorts.

Also, *To go to seed* : To grow shabby.

'tis an unseeded garden,

— That grows to seed.—SHAK.

**Seek.** 1. *To seek or much to seek* : (pred adj) Lacking ; Desiderated ; wanting. Deficient.

Politeness is *to seek* among them.

He is *to seek* (i. e. deficient) in Algebra.



A good head master is much to seek in this school.

So, Not far to seek.

Suggestion and allusion are not far to seek. — RUSSELL.

The reason for the genuflection is not far to seek. — LARD.

2. To seek (*V. I.*) after a thing: To make search or inquire for it. To make pursuit of.

Hence, the noun *seeker after truth* = philosopher. Seeker after God.

(In the passive form) The book is much sought after; In great demand. Contra: A drug in the market.

3. To seek for a thing: To try to find.

[Ordinarily, To seek is *V. T.* — To go in quest of.]

**Seize.** To seize on or upon (a chance or pretext): To attack and grasp; To lay hold of eagerly.

Christ seized upon the substantial principles which lie at the foundation of every civil society. — ECCO HOMO.

Fairest Cordelia, that art most rich, being poor;

Most choice, forsaken; and most loved, despised!

Thee and thy virtues here I seize upon. — SHAK.

Cp. To lay hands on.

**Self.** ~~NOT~~ There is a very large number of compound words with "self". Only a few important ones are chosen below.

1. Self—assertive: Bumptious, uppish, pert, Saucy.

2. Self—approving; commending itself to one's conscience. Cp. Self-praise; self-applause; egotism.

(One self-approving hour weighs whole years outweigh

Of stupid starers, and of loud buzzes). — POPE.

3. Self—collected: Having composure, or showing presence of mind.

4. Self—conceited: conceited (i. e. having an ill grounded opinion) about one's own importance; self-opinionated.

Cp. Wise in one's own conceit.

5. Self—conscious: conscious of oneself; unable to forget oneself in society. Thinking of oneself as an object of observation to others. Nervous.

Mr Balfour's social agreeableness has been marred by the fatuous idolatry of a fashionable clique stimulating the self-consciousness which was his natural foible. — RUSSELL.

Man is a self-conscious being : has the faculty of contemplating himself.

Gp. O wad some power the giftie gie us  
To see ourselves as others see us. — Burns.

6. *Self-contained person* : Reserved ; not communicative.  
It is a self-contained house : Has all necessary apartment complete in itself.

The Bijou grand opera house is self-contained in every department.  
The principal and professors of the Harth college are a self-contained body. — FRANKLIN.

Thou every village will almost be a self-contained unit. — MR. GANDHI  
Western buty (and see) : the English as springing from the  
Asian root of the free and self-contained village communities.

7. *Self-sacrifice* : Sacrifice of one's own interests or happiness for the sake of others ; self-sacrifice. Altruism.

8. *Self-select* (Board society &c) : co-opted

9. *Self-evident* : Requiring no more axiomatic.

We hold these truths to be self-evident : 'let all men are created equal, but they are endowed by their creator with inalienable rights ; that among these are life, liberty, and the pursuit of happiness. — T. JEFFERSON.

10. *Self-government* : a system by which the people appoint their rulers. So, self-termination.

11. *Self-important* : important in one's own eyes ; self-opinioned, pompous.

12. *Self-love* : egoism, egotism, selfishness.

13. *Self-opinionated* : obstinately adhering to one's opinions, unconverted.

14. *Self-righteous* : pharisaical, formalistic.

15. *Self-styled* (patriot, etc) : ostensible, pretended ; would-be.

16. *Selfish theory* : Hedonism (= pleasure is the chief good : "eat, drink, and be merry").

**Sell**—1. To *sell oneself*: To give up oneself to a vile purpose for the sake of money (as bribe-takers do)

Thou hast *sold thyself* to work iniquity.—BIBLE.

So, To *sell justice* To pass iniquitous judgment *after taking bribe*.

2. He *sold his life dear* (ly); caused great loss to his assailants before being killed.

[Taking *many* lives for giving *one*].

3. To *sell a man up* To compel him to take insolvency and sell his goods to pay his creditors.

4. To *sell out* (shares or stock) To dispose of (them) altogether.

It will be too heavy a loss to *sell out* government securities at this period of depression caused by the war

5. To *sell off* (stock in trade) To clear out.

**Send**—1 I *sent for* a doctor requested him *by message* to come

Cp I *sent* to warn him (by "message" is omitted)

2. The tree has *sent forth* (or out) new leaves or blossoms. put forth, brought forth, emitted; exhibited

3. To *send a man about his business* To dismiss him unceremoniously.

Cp I *send him packing* To send him to the right about.

4. They *sent the enemy flying* in all directions. *caused* his troops to fly. [An instance of *causative* meaning]

So, To *send destruction*: To cause it to befall; To inflict.

5. To *send off* a letter etc. To get it *off one's hand*.

6. To *send off a person*. To be present at his departure by way of respect.

Lp. To bid god-speed.

Hence the noun we gave him a good *send off* (got up a friendly or respectful demonstration at or before his departure).

**Serve**—1. To *serve one's turn*: To prove useful in time of need. To do well enough. [turn = need, occasion, exigency].

Make my misery *serve thy turn*.—SHAK.

When it *served his turn*, Brougham could fawn as well as bully.

So, To *serve the turn*: To meet the emergency. To answer the purpose.

Generally, To *serve a purpose*: To be suitable to it; To satisfy it.

But, To *serve the purpose of* (a chair): To be as good as, or To be used as.

2. To *serve one a good turn or bad turn*: [usually "do" is used for 'serve.'] To do him service or disservice.

2A To *serve a person out*: To wreak revenge on him. Hence, *He is well served*: punished.

Cp. To serve with the same sauce,  
To give a Roland for an Oliver (i. e. an effective retort).

3. *As occasion serves* (adv.): when it is favourable.

4. I am *at your service*: (pred. adj.) ready to work on your behalf, or obey your orders.

The carriage is *at your service*: may be used by you to suit your requirements.

**Set—1.** To *set about* (a matter, or doing a thing): To commence; To turn to. Cp. To buckle to.

2. To *set* (advice etc.) *at naught*: (V. T.) To defy. So, To *set at defiance*.

3. To *set apart*: To keep in reserve; To reserve, To dedicate.

The building was *set apart* for public meetings.

A large portion of the year's profit was *set apart* as the nucleus of a Pension Fund.

4. To *set fire to* a house: To apply fire to it: To kindle.

An incendiary is a person who wilfully *sets fire* to property.

But, To *set the house on fire*.

4A. To *set the Thames on fire*: (V. I.) To do some remarkable, extraordinary, or unexpected thing.

[Thames is the corruption of "temae" a corn sieve, and the phrase was used to denote such a degree of energy and such rapidity of action as would cause the sieve to ignite through friction.]

[It has become the fashion now-a-days to substitute the name of any river for "The Thames."]

So matters went on placidly and evenly, without ~~the Thames~~ or any stream being set on fire by any pronouncement of awakening importance.

5. To set forth: (V. I.) To begin a journey; To enter (V. I.) on a journey.

So the Druids, with their chariots, horses, and spear-men, set forth on their mission.—PROTHERO. Cp. To set out. To set off.

(V. T.) To declare; To expound; To exhibit.

All this is so essentially part of our mental and spiritual experience that there is no need to set it forth in words.

6. To set forward. (V. I.) To advance.

7. I am hard set: (pred. adj.) very much embarrassed; posed.

7A. To set in (V. I. in = inwards, adv.) To begin.

The monsoon usually sets in about the middle of July (becomes established).

It set in to rain. (The rainy season became settled.)

The tide set in at 10 a. m. yesterday. (Began to rise).

Morning is now well set in.

Before hibernation sets in, the animals fatten themselves up.

Before winter sets in moles prepare a sort of basin in which they deposit a quantity of earth worms.

The process of deterioration will set in by the adoption of the insidious method of control.—DR. SANDER.

From this time a change for the better set in.—TIMES.

So a fashion sets in (gets vogue.)

[The nominative is something that implies a continuity of course.]

Cp. The weather set fair: (became fine without sign of breaking).

Also, Portland cement after admixture with water sets hard and solid.

8. To set much by (a person or thing): (V. T.) To value or esteem highly.

Cp. To set stores by. Contra. To set little by.

9. To set off: (V. I.) To start (on a journey). (V. T.) To show (a person or thing) to advantage; To adorn. To show off (as a foil does, e. g. a black ground sets off diamond).

Hence, the noun *set-off* = an ornament; also a count claim.

10. To *set a person on* (to do a thing): To instigate him. To incite or prompt him to action; To urge.

Hence, the noun "setter on".

11. To *set on* (in opponent): To attack him (V. T.)

12. To *set out*: (V. I.) To set forth (see *supra*).

12a. To *set* (things or matters) *right*: To bring into proper condition; To adjust [Here *right* is ajective]

So, To *set (thing) to rights* [Here *right* is noun used in the plural form]

12b. To *set one's house in order*: (Fig) To mend abuses prevalent in one's concerns.

Lord Grey, who, in his insolence towards the Church, was a whig all over, had told the Bishops to *set their house in order* — RUSSELL.

13. To *set up* (V. T) To restore from ill health; To establish.

A change to some salubrious hill climate will *set you up* or By such a change you will soon get *set up*.

Also, To start (an institution, business &c); or to provide (it) with means of establishment.

The trappings of a monarchy would *set up* an ordinary commonwealth. — JOHNSON.

In 1613 the East India Company *set up* their first factory at Surat.

(V. I.) To establish oneself (usually followed by *for*).

He *set up for* a scholar or a philosopher i. e. made pretensions to such a character Cp. To pose as.

13a. He is *well set up*: (adj pred) Of stout build or frame.

14. His star is *set* or *has set*: His glory or greatness has departed. Contra: one's star is in the ascendant.

15. *Of set purpose*: (adv.) deliberately [See Purpose].

16. (To make) A *dead set at*: a determined onset on (fig by words.)

Also, an importunate application (for aid or any favour).

17. *Set-back*: (n) a reversal of progress; a relapse.

The Rumanian blunder has been a real *set-back*.—LLOYD GEORGE.

18. *Set-to* (at any thing) (n): a fight with fists; a combat; a contest; a bout.

The members of our most gentle professions loved a good-fashioned English "*set-to*" and no body was the worse for it.—SIR. H. HAWKINS.

**Settle**.—1. To *settle down*: (V. I.) To be established in permanent abode or any line of life, business, occupation, &c. [usually followed by the prep. *to*.]

Marry and *settle down*; or *settle down* to the married life:

(*fig*) To pass from a troubled condition to one of tranquility.

When the preliminary unrest will *settle down*.—SIR. J. MASTON.

Leading men will *settle down* to the fact that India will prosper best by steady progress achieved by earnest endeavours amongst India's responsible men.—STATESMAN

2. Let us *settle up*: (V. I.) i. e. settle accounts; square the account.

[The verb "*settle*" by itself is transitive as '*to settle a dispute*'.

To settle an annuity on a person etc.]

The noun *settles* is colloquially used for whatever settles or finally decides any thing. decisive blow or argument; A clincher.

**Shabby**. *Shabby genteel*. (adj) Retaining in present shabbiness traces of better days; attempting to keep up appearances.

**Shade**. 1. The *shades*. The abode of spirits; the *hades*,

2. To cast or throw into the *shade*: (V. T.) To eclipse or outshine. (*fig*) To place in comparative obscurity. To overshadow; To outshine; To render less conspicuous.

Macanlay has done full justice to the extraordinary blaze of brilliancy which on supreme occasions threw these minor defects (on Edmund Burke's part) into the *shade*. Cp. To take the shine out of.

In the *Intransitive* form—To fall or recede into the shade.  
(Beware of using "in" for "into," the verbs *cast*, *throw*, *recede* implying motion.)

3. A *shade* better (or less or any comparative adjective) (adv): By a small degree; slightly better (or less) in comparison.

Nord Besconfield asserted that when Henry VII summoned his first Parliament there were only 29 peers to obey the call. Professor Freeman, a *shade* more generous, puts the number at thirty — RUSSELL.

**Shadow.** 1. *Shadow of a shade*: Delusion: anything unsubstantial.

I hold ambition of so airy and light a quality that it is but a *shadow's* shade. — SHAK (Hamlet).

At present the guardian in a good many cases is a mere *shadow of a shade* — MR. DELA FOSSÉ.

Cp. The very substance of the ambitious is merely the *shadow of a dream*; also, I am but *shadow of myself*,

You are deceived, my substance is not here — SHAK.

Envy will merit as its *shade* pursue,

But, like a shadow, proves the substance true. — POPE.

Hence, the V. T. To shadow (a person) = To watch secretly all (his) movements.]

2. To take the *shadow* for the substance.

To take the counterfeit for the reality.

The worthy gentleman who has been snatched from us at the moment of the election and in the middle of the contest has feelingly told us what *shadows* we are, and what *shadows* we pursue. — BURKE.

~~NOTE~~ Note the distinction between *shade* and *shadow*; The former implies no particular form or definite limit but the latter represents in form the object which intercepts the light.

3. The *shadow of death*: The approach of death

So, The *shadow* of any calamity: its approach as premonition or adumbration.

Cp. 'Tis the sunset of life gives me mystical lore,

And coming events cast their *shadows* before — CAMPBELL.

4. *Worn to a shadow* (with care, starvation &c.): (pred adj): very thin, Become a skeleton.



**Cp.** Mere skin and bone ; Bag of bones. To wear one to the bone.

The premature decay of vice and profligacy had worn him to the bone.—D.

5. *May your shadow never be less !* [exclamation of reverence] May you not grow thin.

**Shake.**—1. To *shake off*. (V. T.) To get rid of (what adheres)

It is a habit we cannot *shake off*.

O, how I wish to *shake off* this worry.

2. To *shake the dust off the (or one's) feet* : To renounce solemnly all intercourse or connection.

After this most undeservedly shabby treatment at the hands of my dearly loved cousin I left my birth place and *shook the dust off my feet*.

**Cp.** To leave for good and all.

3 To *shake out* (a vessel, garment etc.) (V. T.) To remove contents, dust, etc., from.

4. *All of a shake* : (came or went) trembling much (adv.)

**Shame.**—1. To *put a person to shame* : (V. T.) To disgrace or humiliate him, To cause him to feel shame or ignominy.

**Cp.** To put to the blush.

To your shame be it spoken.

2. *Shame on you !* [Interjection] you should be ashamed (of this).

3 *For shame !* (an exclamation similar to the above) It would bring infamy on you if you should offend against decorum in this way. This should be avoided.

4. He is *lost to shame* : (adj.) quite without shame ; shameless [See Lose.]

5. It is a *sin and a shame* : [alliteration and Hendiadys] : a (mis) deed that in itself brings disgrace ; a thing to be ashamed of (e. g. The shaving of widows, Buffalo sacrifice at a ritual etc.)

6. It is a *matter of shame* : The thing ought to occasion

a feeling of ignominy or distress. So, I would think *shame* to do this.

[Note the omission of article in (6) and its insertion in (5) The former is abstract, the latter concrete].

**Sheet.**—1. He is *three sheets in the wind*: (pred. adj.) Tipsy; intoxicated.

2. The *or* one's *sheet anchor*: [*Lit*, the largest anchor of a ship which is shot out in *extreme danger*.

*Fig.* The last refuge for safety, one's chief support or mainstay. *Contra*: Broken reed.

The preservation of the General Government in its whole constitutional vigour as *the sheet anchor* of our peace at home and safety abroad.—

**Shift.**—1. To *make shift* (to do something) (V. I): To contrive; To find ways and means (for a livelihood). To get along *somehow*.

To *be put to one's shifts* To adapt some course in a case of difficulty.

*Cp.* A man here need not live by shifts.—*BRAG.*

**Shilly.** To *shilly shally*. (V. I.) To be undecided. To say yea and nay. To vacillate. To act. as if not knowing one's mind. *Cp.* To beat about the bush. To dilly dally.

**Shine.**—1. To *take the shine* (*n*) out of a person: To outshine him. *Cp.* To cast into the shade.

2. *Rain or shine* (I will go): (adv.) whatever the weather.

**Shirt.** *Near is my shirt but nearer is my skin*: Self is the first consideration.

*Cp.* Charity begins at home, Blood is thicker than water.

**Shoe.**—1. To *step into another man's shoes*: To take the place vacated by him.

So, To stand in another man's shoes: To occupy the position held by

2. To *put the shoe on the right foot*: To give the blame to one who truly deserves it.

Cp. To hit the right nail on the head.

3. To *wait for another man's shoes*: To look forward to his death for property or position.

4. *Where the shoe pinches*: Hardships of one's lot. [See Pinch (3)].

5. *Shoe latchet or shoe tie*: A string for fastening a shoe in wearing it.

In India I met men of the purest character, the finest intellect, the most courteous manner--men the *latchets of whose shoes* I have felt myself unworthy to *unloose*: (of unapproachable superiority).—DR. FISHER.

**Shop**.—1. To *talk shop*: (V. I.) To speak of one's calling or profession only.

He (Mr. Gladstone) was the first Chancellor of the Exchequer who ever made the Budget interesting. He *talked shop*, it was said, like a tenth muse.—RUSSELL.

Others *talked of the shop* as *infra dig* (i. e. beneath dignity).—MAYNARD.

The Reichstag is little more than a *talking shop*.—TIMES.

Hence the adj. 'Shippy': (a person) given to talk or think of nothing but his own calling.

Also, His conversation *smells of the shop*.

2. To *sink the shop*: (V. I.) To refrain from "talking shop" [as above] Also, To conceal one's occupation.

**Shorn**.—1. God *tempers the wind to the shorn lamb*: i. e. softens or makes misfortune bear lightly on the weak and the feeble.

To a *close shorn sheep* God gives wind by measure.—G. HEUWERT.

What could be done to mitigate the cruel east wind & tether a *shorn lamb* at the place.—MR. TOM ARLETON.

Cp. Smooth the *rudd brow of care*.

**Short**.—1. To *come (or fall or run) short* of a point or standard: To be unable to reach it.

Local bodies should not *fall short* of their obligation.—SRA. J. MAYOR.

No person perfectly heathen probably ever existed. The individual heathen excelled his own moral system as much as the individual Christian *falls short* of him.—ECCLES. HOMO.

The actual results *fell far short* of the estimate.

**Contra.** To excel ; To over-do.

2. The provision *fall short* or *ran short*: (V. I.)  
Became inadequate.

You are more incapable of properly appreciating her (Goneril's) merits than she is capable of *falling short* in her duty.—DEIGHTON.

Like many other little boys he (Prince Alexander) *ran short* of pocket money.—RUSSELL.

3. *Short of*: (adj.) Less than ; Inferior to ;

His escape was nothing *short of* a miracle.

It is nothing *short of* sacrilege to consign Chaitanya to the genus agitator.—CHRONICLE.

Nothing *short of* the will of a WHOLE PEOPLE can change or affect the rule by which a nation is to be governed.—LORD RESKINE.

The insolences of our aristocracy and the scandalous exemption of the peers from all ignominious punishment *short of* death &c.—DR. ARNOLD.

This is an opinion based on grounds *short of* proof.

*Short of* committing suicide he does his best to keep out of the way, i. e. putting it out of the question.

[This last is a device for contracting *unless clause* into participial phrase]

4. To *stop short*: (V. I.) To stop *abruptly* or *suddenly*.

Not to go so far as was intended.

So, To *turn short*: To turn *suddenly* on the occupied spot.

4½. To *be taken short*: To have a feeling of sudden motion of bowels. (V. I.)

5. To *make a short work of* (a thing). (V. I.) To finish it *hastily*; also To destroy. Cp. To win at a canter.

6. *In short*: (adv.) To give the conclusion using few words. Without periphrasis or circumlocution.

7. *The long and the short*: (n.) The long story stated

shortly, i. e. in few words. The total up-shot,

Note the repetition of *the* before 'short.'

Op. The sum and substance.

8. *Short shrift* (n.) A very short interval between condemnation and execution; A swiftly following punishment especially by death. [*Shrift* = Priest's absolution after confession]

Make a *short shrift*; he longs to see your head.—SHAK

The newspapers have given very *short shrift* to President Roosevelt's proposal to establish a new system of spelling. (i. e. condemned very quickly)

**Shoulder.**—1. *The cold shoulder* A cold or cool reception (i. e. without the warmth of friendliness)

He turned the *cold shoulder* upon me. He gave me the *cold shoulder* or he *showered* me the *cold shoulder*.

2 (To go or stand) *shoulder to shoulder* (adv.) Forming a party in co-operation working well together.

India has not fallen behind other portions of the British Empire but *stands shoulder to shoulder* with them by the side of the Imperial Mother in the hour of her sorest trial.—SIR R. P. SINHA.

3. To *put (or set) one's shoulder to the wheel*: To work with energy; To make vigorous effort.

Put your *shoulders to the wheel* or rather keep your shoulders to the wheel for they are at it already.—SIR GEORGE COURSE.

Op. To put one's hand to the plough.

4. To *rub shoulders* (with). come into contact (with other people).

Your sons should at an early age get accustomed to the climate and *rub shoulders* with those, amongst whom the greater parts of their life will be spent.—SIR J. MASON. (to Kumaon Darbar) 25. 9. 16.

5. To *shrug the shoulders*: To exhibit signs of dislike or dissent.

**Show.**—1. To *show a person the door*: To expel or dismiss him.

2. To *show forth*: (V. T.) To publish; To make manifest

3. To *show off*: (V. T.) To exhibit *ostentatiously*; To display to advantage.

Persons of celebrity sought after to be *shown off* at social gatherings are called "Idons".

(V. I.) To display one's self, To act *conceitedly*; To make impression by exhibiting one's wealth or skill.

The athletics *showed off* at the Grand Tournament.

4. To *show a person in*: To conduct him *into the house*; To open the door for his entrance. So, To *show him out*.

Also, he *showed us round* the house: he conducted us all over it. Again, To *show him over* (a house).

"These are the things that make death terrible", said Johnson, when shown by Garrick over his handsome house.

5. To *show up* (an imposter or his act) To expose; To hold up to *ridicule* by revealing the character of.

Shuffle--1. To *shuffle the cards* (Fig) To try a new policy, To put any organization into new order.

To *shuffle off* (V. T.) To rid oneself of.

Hence To *shuffle off* the mortal coil (a Shakespearian expression) = To die.

Shut--1. To *shut (a person) off from society*: (V. T.) To exclude. To separate, To prevent the passage of.

So, To shut off steam, gas, water etc. = To shut the valve and check the flow.

2. To *shut up* the house: To close all its doors.

3. To *shut up shop*: To cease business temporarily or permanently.

Siamee. The *Siamese Twins*: Two Siamese (d. 1874) joined by cartilaginous band from one's right to the other's left side. (Fig) Two inseparable friends.

The four sisters seemed to have no separate existence but to have made up their minds just to winter through life together. They were the three fates with another sister—the *Siamese twins* multiplied by two—

Drumma. Cp. These two Drumma one in semblance.—SHAK.

Also, "Twinned—brothers" now contracted into "Twin brothers."

**Sick.** 1. He is *sick of* measles : Laid up with. (fig) I am *sick of* his attendance : wearied of it, i. e. disgusted with it.

I am *sick of* things; I have been bored to-night—GOOD WORDS.

2. *Sick at heart* : (adj pred) comfortless.

3. He is *sick for* a sight of home : pining for it.

Hence the adj. *Home sick*. [Homesickness = Nostalgia.]

**Side.** 1. (To go) *side by side* : (adv) close together and abreast.

2. To *put on side* (V. I.) To be arrogant; To assume an air of importance like a panjandrum.

The noble whose position is assured needs never *put on side*—W.

3. *On this side* the grave : [preposition "of" after *side* being dropped] In life.

Cp. On this side nothing—MILTON.

4. To *take sides* To espouse one's cause in preference before another.

5. *Side glance* : an ogling look, an askant look.

6. *Side-light* : any incidental illustration.

7. *Side-wind* : something acting indirectly.

You could get something that was not exactly evidence in favour of a prisoner by a *side-wind*, as it were, although it was not the correct thing to do.—SIR H. HAWKINS.

**Sight.** 1. *At sight* : (adv) as soon as seen.

The bill is payable *at sight* (i. e. when presented).

2. *In sight* : (pred. adj) *within* the range of visibility; visible.

The steamer is *in sight*; (fig.) The millennium is *in sight* : The signs of its advent are clearly visible.

Contra. *Out of sight* (i. e. invisible).

*Out of sight*, out of mind.—LORD BROOKS (we soon forget the absent).

3. *Out of sight* : (adv.) Incomparably.

Yours is *out of sight* the best house in Lucknow.

So, He is a *long sight* better than his brother.

Cp. By far, Far and away.

4. *A sight of things* : a great quantity of them as, a sight of furniture ;

So, the publication of this book cost me a sight of money.

5. *To make a sight of oneself* : To be dressed in a grotesque or outlandish fashion.

6. *A sight for sore eyes* : any person (or object) to see whom is a relief from some unpleasant thought or from any affliction. A welcome visitor.

**Contra:** Eye-sore : something offensive to the eye or sight.

Also *Bete noir* i. e. pet aversion

**Sign.** 1. *Signs of the times* : Things showing the tendency of affairs ; an ominous warning [Note the plural]

**Cp.** Gathering clouds. Storm brewing.

2. He did *signs and wonders*. [a hendiadys for wonderful signs or exhibitions] : (worked) miracles.

**Silk.** 1. *To take silk* : V. l. } To be made a King's or Queen's Counsel and entitled to wear a silk robe [other barristers wear stuff gown]

But enough, I took silk and a new life opened before me I was a leader.—SIR H. HAWKINS.

2. *To make a silk purse out of a sow's ear*.—To make a good thing out of bad materials ; To achieve an impossibility

**Cp.** To make bricks without straw.

**Silver** 1. *Every cloud has a silver lining* : [See Cloud]

The silver lining to our cloud of unpreparedness at the out-break of the war was to be found in the ready support coming from all parts of the Empire.—LORD STANHOPE.

**Cp.** Behind a frowning providence

He hides a shining face.—COWPER.

The night is long that never finds a day —ШАК. (Macbeth)

i. e. The longest night at last gives way to the brightness of day.

**Cp.** Balm in Gilead ; Bottom of Pandora's box. (i. e. Hope)

2. *One's Silver wedding* : The 25th anniversary of one's marriage.



[The 50th anniversary is one's *golden* wedding and the 60th is the *diamond* wedding].

**3.** He has a *silver tongue*: is eloquent and smooth in speech; is a fluent speaker.

**4.** He is born with a *silver* (or *gold*) spoon in his mouth: Born in wealth, or heir to great wealth.

**Cp.** Born under a lucky star. **Contra.** Wooden ladle.

**5.** The *silver thread* is loosed: [Biblical expression] Death takes place.

One yearning look on her who will come no more and the *silver thread* is loosed, the golden bowl for ever broken.--SHAK'S CHARACTERS.

**Simon. 1.** *The real Simon Pure*: The real person, i. e. not a personator: Also, the real thing, i. e. not a counterfeit one. **Cp.** Not a makeshift, or inferior article.

[A Character in Centlivre's *Bold stroke for a wife*].

**Sine. 1.** The meeting is *postponed sine die*: adjourned indefinitely without any day being fixed when to meet next.

**2.** *Sine qua non*. [Lat. = without which not.] (n.) an indispensable condition. An essential requisite.

**Sinews.** *The Sinews of war*: money; funds.

We should raise a fund to supply the *Sinews of war*. [Lit. Muscles]; **Fig.** What constitutes strength.

The highest honours of the legal profession lie open not to a privileged few, but to the sons of that middle class which forms the *sinews and strength* of the nation.--TIMES.

**Sing. 1.** To *sing small* (V. I.) To become more humble. **Cp.** To be crest fallen.

**Single. 1.** *Singleness of heart*: Freedom from duplicity; sincerity; protity. So singleness of mind or purpose. Hence, the adj. Single-minded; single-hearted.

**2.** *Single blessedness*: The (happy) unmarried state;

**Sink. 1.** To *sink one's self* (or one's interest): To be altruistic.

**2.** To leave a person to *sink or swim*: To let him take his chances without aid or interference on the part of others. To leave him in the lurch.

My father undertook to allow me a hundred a year for five years and after that time it was to cease automatically whether I *sank or swam*.—  
SIR H. HAWKINS. Cp. Cast adrift.

**Sit.** **1.** To *sit out*: To sit till the end of (a performance) also, To outstay (other visitors);

To refrain from taking part in (a dance or other amusement). Hence, the noun *sitting-out*.

No *sitting-out* at a ball was permitted.—RUSSKIN.

**2.** To *sit under* (a church minister): To attend church for the purpose of hearing (him).

So, To sit under a lecturer.

**3** To *sit at the feet of* (a master): To be educated or taught by.

Conspicuous among the youths of high promise who were proud to *sit at the feet of* Newton was the quick and versatile Montague.—MACAULAY.

Cp Brought up *at the feet of* Gamaliel—(said of a scholar).  
[From the Apostle Paul's having been actually so brought up].

**4.** To *be sat upon*: To be snubbed or rebuked.

**Six.** **1.** *Six to one*: long odds. Six chances *against* me.

**2** *It is six of (or to) one and half a dozen of (or to) the other*: The difference is only nominal.

Cp. Distinction without a difference.

**3.** *At sixes and sevens*: In confusion (adv.)

The coming of the mother-in-law placed his domestic affairs at *sixes and sevens*. So, All goes to *sixes and sevens*.

**Skeleton** **1.** *Skeleton at the feast*: Intrusive care; something that alloys or mars pleasure.

**2.** *The skeleton in the (or one's) house*: something to annoy and to be concealed in the family; any discreditable act concealed from strangers.

The word 'cup-board' is also used for "house"

I find that the *skeleton* in my domestic closet is becoming a pretty big one.—DICKENS Hence, Family skeleton.

**Skin** 1. To *skin a flint*: To be hard-fisted; To be too grasping.

Hence, the noun *skin flint* (= a niggard; a hunk).

2 To escape by the *skin* of one's teeth: Narrowly

A man who after all might be a criminal who had just escaped by the skin of his teeth was raised up and regarded as a martyr or a hero.—

Cp. Close shave Hairbreadth escape,

3. Lord Hardinge tried to get into the *skins* of (people). To enter into their feelings and aspirations.—I. REVIEW.

4. To *save one's skin*. To get off safe To escape punishment or harm Cp. To save one's bacon

5 He is *only skin and bone* (pred. adj.) very thin.

A mere skeleton.

6 Thick-skinned (person) one impervious to affront or criticism. Pachydermatous.

Contra. Thin skinned (i.e. very sensitive of affront and criticisms)

**Skip** 1 *Skip-jack* (n). an upstart fellow, a parvenue

2 You *skipped over* two sentences: omitted in reading

Cp. To stir over.

**Sky**. 1. To laud, praise, or extol to the *skies* very highly. [mark the plural]

Cp. To applaud to the echo.

2. Under the *of us sky*: (adv.) out of doors.

**Slate**. 1. With a *clean slate* With mind free from preconceived notions, hastily formed prejudices, and bias.

Lord Ronaldshay would go to Bengal with a *clean slate* apart from some manifest prepossessions in favour of India.—MR. A. ALING

Cp. Tabula rasa.

2 To *clean the slate*: (V. I.) To rid oneself of obligations.

3 *Slate club*: a mutual benefit society with small weekly subscriptions.

**Sleep.** 1. *Let sleeping dogs lie* (Imp. mood) Do not rake up unpleasant past matters. Avoid stirring up trouble.

2. To *sleep over* (or upon a question): To leave it till tomorrow. (To be taken up when the brain has been refreshed by sleep).

**Sleeve.** 1. *Upon one's sleeve*: (adv.) exposed to the public gaze [see Heart].

2. *In one's sleeve*: (adv.) Secretly; without being seen or perceived: [see Laugh].

I enjoyed the joke in my sleeve.

3. To have or keep (oath, plan &c.) *up one's sleeve* (adv.) in reserve; concealed but ready for use.

I had learned by this exhibition of forces that there was a defence if I could only keep it up my sleeve.—SIR, H. HAWKINS

4. A *sleeveless errand*: useless mission unskillfully executed.

Cp. A wild goose chase.

4A To *hang on the sleeve* of a person: To follow him in a most servile manner. So, To hang on the skirts of.

**Sleight.** *Sleight-of-hand* (n.) A kind of performance in which trick and dexterity of hand and fingers *deceive the eye* and give the impression of facts that are naturally impossible. Conjuror's or Juggler's trick, Legerdemain.

Also adj. as a *sleight of hand* trick.

**Slide.** 1. To *let things slide*. To let them have their own course. Not to interfere with them. To show negligence  
Let the world slide.—SHAK. C. To let alone; Laissez faire.

2. To *slide over* (a delicate subject): Barely touch upon (it).

**Slip.** 1. To *give a person the slip*: To escape secretly from him. To evade payment of a creditor: To blink or cheat (him).

The prisoner gave the slip to the guard,

I was once leading a little fox-terrier with a string because on several occasions he had given me the slip and caused me to be a little late in court.—SIR H. LAWKINS.

2. To slip through fingers : To miss (an opportunity).

3. *There's many a slip betwixt the cup and the lip* (proverb): before the cup (say of wine) reaches the mouth it may fall down and you may be deprived of its enjoyment. Nothing is certain till it has happened.

Cp. Count not your chickens before they are hatched,

So, a slip on an orange peel may be fatal,  
Don't halloo till you are out of the wood,

4. *Slip shod* (adj & adv) *Lit.* Having the shoes down at heel. Hence, slovenly (*fig.* of speech, writing, speaker, and style): careless and unsystematic; Loose in arrangement.

Lord Palmerstone's style was not only devoid of ornament and rhetorical device, but it was *slip shod* and untidy in the last degree.—RUSSELL.

**Smart.** *The smart set*: Stylish people leading the fashion.

I turn to that class which is called "Smart Society" and here I frankly say as far as I know it has no religion. — RUSSELL.

**Smell.** 1. To smell a rat : To suspect foul dealing.

*I smelt a rat* behind the hangings, (Traitor). —SHIRLEY

Cp. An eaves dropper (one standing under the eaves to listen to secrets).

2. To smell a person out : To scent his duplicity.

There I found them, there I smelt them out.—SHAK.

Cp. To get the wind of.

3. To smell of the lamp. (V. l.) To give indication of laborious preparation at night.

Demosthenes's orate style of speech smells of the lamp.

Cp. To smack of; To savour of vanity etc.)

Virtue cannot so graft herself upon human nature but it shall smack of its original depravity —DEIGHTON

So, It reeks of murder: gives an unpleasant smell of it.

**Smoke.** 1. Their deliberations *ended in smoke*: came to nothing.

**Cp.** Flash in the pan. The mountain brought forth a mouse. To turn out crabs.

2. From *smoke into smother*: (adv) From one evil to another or worse.

**Cp.** Out of the frying pan into the fire. Go further and fare worse.

**Snake.** 1. *Snake in the grass*: a hidden deceiver or danger.

2. To *warm* or *cherish a snake in one's bosom*: To meet with ingratitude at one's hand. To receive evil for expected good from him.

[Contra. To heap coals of fire on one's head.] [See Coals.]

3. To rouse or *wake snakes*: To start violent quarrel.

This partition of the ancestral estate roused *snakes*.

4. To *scotch the snake*: [See Scotch]

**Snap.** 1. To *snap off*: (V. T.) To bite (or break off) suddenly. (fig) To *snap a person's nose off*: To interrupt him angrily.

2. To *snap at* or *up* an offer &c.: To accept it *eagerly*.

**Cp.** The whole issue of the Bouds will be *snapped up* within a year.—I. Review.

3. To *snap one's finger at* (a person): To *defy* him by making an audible *filip* at (him).

**Cp.** To gnash at.

4. The door *snapped to*: (V. I.) closed with snapping sound. ["To" is adverb.]

5. A *cold snap*: a sudden spell or time of cold weather.

**Snatch.** 1. To *snatch at* (an offer) V. T. To take it *eagerly* or *suddenly*.

2. To work *by snatches*: (adv) spasmodically. Desultorily.

**Cp.** By fits and starts.

**So.** 1. It is a *very so-so affair* i. e. mediocre (adj).

2. I am *only so-so*: (pred adj): in indifferent health; not more than passable.

**Cp.** I am only middling (i. e. fairly well in health).

3. *So and so* [used to avoid exactness]: something of the kind; as my name is *so and so*. Cp. Thingamy.

4. *And so on*, or *and so further* (adv): And thus things went on. *Et cetera*.

5. *So to say or speak*: [a conjunctive adverb introduced in the way of parenthesis]: If I am allowed to use such an expression which in either loose or strong, Pardon me for using this metaphor or *neologism*.

His (Dickens's) creations have become naturalized, *so to speak*, among all classes.—TIMES.

The scientific life is less noble than the Christian; it is better, *so to speak*, to be a citizen in the New Jerusalem than in the New Athens.—ECCLES

Pitt's countenance was, *so to speak*, enamelled with such anxious care that a heedless laugh might crack the elaborate demeanour.—LORD (R)

6. *So called* (adj.): Improperly called; inaccurately described.

It suited Lord Beaconsfield's political purposes to flatter the *so-called* aristocracy.—RUSSELL.

'Zenith' 'auspicious' and 'influence' are all terms in the *so-called* sciences of astrology.—DEIGHTON.

7. *So much so*: (adv) [This is a device for emphatically qualifying an adjective or adverb in a preceding clause]. In so great a degree Also, *In so much*,

Eloquent indeed Sheridan was; *so much so* that all that I have ever heard, all I have ever read, dwindles into nothing and vanishes like vapour before the sun.—CH. JAMES FOX.

8. *You do not say so*: what a surprise this statement or narration is to me.

**Soft** 1. *Soft sawder*: gross flattery: Blarney,

My friend is an adept in *soft sawder*, dignified reproach, friendly intercourse.—C. READE.

2. *Soft soap* (fig) flattery.

Hence the *adj* Soapy = unctuous, flattering, or suave (manners)

3. *Soft money*: Notes and bills as opposed to **HARD CASH**

**Soi.** *Soi-disant* (fr—adj.) : self-styled ; pretended ; would-be ; Having taken the name or title without right.

They belong to the *soi-disant* "High circle". So, the *soi-disant* reformers, Patriots, etc.

**Soon.** 1. *As soon as* : (adv. conj) : (At) the moment that : also (adv) = willingly [with expressed or implied comparison.]

I would just *as soon* stay at home (as go).

2. *No sooner than* : [another form of (1)].

No sooner (was it) said than (it was) done, i. e. done the moment it was proposed.

Cp. *Scarcely* was the covenant made *before* it was broken.

3. *Sooner or later* : (adv) some day ; after indefinite lapse of time. Cp. In the long run [see the quotation under "Part with"].

**Sop.** (To throw or give) *a sop to cerberus* : A bribe (fig.) or anything offered to pacify a formidable or troublesome enemy.

[Cerberus was the many-headed dog which kept watch over the gates of the Hades—Classical Mythology]

Also, To put a sop into the pan

**Sow.** To have (or get) *the wrong sow by the ear* : To fix on wrong person or thing ; Hence, to reach a wrong conclusion.

Cp. To have or get the dirty end of the stick.

**Sorts.** To be *out of sorts* : (pred. adj) Not in one's usual state of health, spirits, or temper.

Cp. To be, feel, or look *no how*.

**Spade.** 1. *To call a spade a spade* : To speak plainly or without reservation. To give a thing its proper name without gloss.

He (Mr. Birrell) says what he means and *calls a spade a spade*, and glories in an old-fashioned prejudice.—RUSSELL.

Cp. Not to mince matters.



2. *Spade-work*: *Lit* digging over ground to prepare soil for cultivation, plantation &c. (*fig*) Preparing the first initial stage of any work or enquiry.

There is much important *spade work* for you to do—LORD CHELMEFORD

**Speak.** 1. This *speaks well* for your generosity: is sufficient testimony or indication of.

So, To *speak* volumes for.

Cp His conduct *speaks* him generous (V. T.)

2. A thing *speaks for itself*: is self-explanatory; no aid of comment is necessary. Cp. To tell its own tale.

3. To *speak* (V. T) a person fair: To speak to him politely.

3A. *Fair spoken* person: [Past participle for present participle.] Fair speeched; speaking fair to others; given to use polite language. So, *well spoken*; *ill-spoken*.

4. The price is *nothing to speak of*: (pred adj.) Not worth mentioning.

4A. *Not to speak of*. (conj & adj) And what is no less important viz; [See Not].

There were no more no increase in crimes *to speak of*.—ILLUSIONS

Cp: To say nothing of.

The six powers forget that every one of these terrible occurrences (in Armenia) revive in history—*to say nothing of* higher record still—GLADSTONE.

5. To *speak out* (or up): To speak louder.

Also, To *speak* boldly; To *speak* one's whole opinion.

My object in having you behave in this manner is to afford myself an opportunity of *speaking out* my mind on the subject.—DEIGHTON.

6 To *speak to* a person: To address him.

7, I will *speak to* that point tomorrow: address in reference to.

8. I can *speak to* his having attended college yesterday: I can corroborate the fact by my evidence.

8A. To *speak with* (a person): To converse with (him).

9. I am not on *speaking terms* with him: I am so estranged from him that I do not *speak with* him.

*Cp.* On *visiting terms*; on familiar footing.

9a. He delights in *speaking ill of* me: *maligning*.

10. *Strictly speaking*: [conjunctive adverb]. In the strict sense of the word. If I am to speak strictly.

• Strictly speaking, he is no member of our association

11 *So to speak*: [See *So to say*]

**Special.** *Special-pleading*: The specious or plausible, but insincere, unsound, or unfair argumentation of one whose aim is *victory* (by misleading) *rather than truth*.

We must use all our authority as king to put a good face upon, and all our skill in *special pleading* to excuse the deed. —DEIGHTON.

Perfectly versed in all the antiquated refinements of old fashioned *special pleading*, Sir F. Pollock saw with contentment a new and improved system take its place.—TIMES.

**Spin.** 1. To *spin out* (a discourse or discussion): To prolong.

2. To *spin a (long) yarn*: (colloq.) To exaggerate; To tell a long story,

*Cp.* To go great lengths; To draw the long bow;

Also, To spin yarns: To tell yarns.

**Spite.** 1. *In spite of*; Notwithstanding; Despite.

*In spite of reason, in erring reason's spite*

One truth is clear: what'er is, is right.—POPE.

We shall remain convinced, *in spite of* all adverse appearances, that the spirit of revenge, if not expelled from human life, has been at least dethroned and fettered by Christ.—ECCZ HOMO.

2. To *cut off one's nose to spite one's face*: To injure oneself for the sake of satisfying anger or revenge. [See *Nose*.]

**Split.**—1. To *split on a rock*: (V. I.) To err fatally; To have one's hopes and designs frustrated.

2. To *split hairs*: (V. I.) To make over-nice distinction.

Hence, Hair-splitting (adj.) distinction.

3. To *split the (or one's) sides*: (V. I.) To burst with laughter.

Hence, *Side splitting* (adj.) joke or person.

**Spoil.**—1. *Spoiled child*: one ruined by being petted and over-indulged; one whose character is thus injured.

He (Lord Byron) was truly a *spoiled child*: not merely the *spoiled child* of his father, but the *spoiled child* of fortune &c.—MACAULAY.

Cp. Spare the rod and *spoil the child*.—PACIFICUS.

**Spoke.** To *put a spoke in another's wheel*: To hinder the progress of his schemes. To thwart his purposes.

**Sponge.**—1. To *sponge upon a person*: To live by practising parasitic arts upon him;

["Sponge" (n.) a cringing dependant, a sycophant, a parasite Cp. Dead head?]

2. To *throw up the sponge*: To own oneself vanquished.

**Spoon.**—1. To *be spoons on* (a woman): To be silly in love with (her). Hence, the adj 'spooney.'

2. Silver (or gold) spoon: [See Silver].

Contra: Wooden ladle.

3. *Wooden spoon*: no scholar; dunce; ignoramus.

4. *It takes a long spoon to sup with the devil*. Be not too intimate with a man of devilish character. [In common use "Devil" is substituted by any person who is of doubtful character. It is not safe to parley with him.]

It may be that Lord Kitchener's replications take the shape of recognising that he who *supps with a Secretary of state* needs to have a long spoon.—PIONEER.

Cp To give wide berth to: To keep well away from.

**Sport.**—1. *In sport*: (adv) Jestingly: [Contra. In earnest.]

2. To *make sport of a person*: To turn him into ridicule.

3. *The sport of fortune*: (Pred.) in affliction (as a play thing of fortune).

Born to be the sport of fortune—WALKER.

**Spot.**—1. The matter was decided *on the spot*: (adv.) Then and there.

2. There was Mr. Russell *on the spot*: (adj.) Equal to the situation.

To *see spots in the sun*: To be fastidious; meticulous.

• **Sprat**—1. To *throw a sprat to catch a whale*: To stake something *small* in the expectation of a *very large* gain.

Cp. To give an inch and take an ell.

**Spring.**—1. The door *sprang* to: (V. I.) rapidly moved from its constrained position. [*To* is adverb.]

2. To *spring up* (V. I.): come into being; To arise.

There *has sprung up* an important industry in preserved fruits in this country during the last half century.

3. He loves to *spring surprises* on people: amaze them by some *sudden* development of a theory etc.

So, To *spring a mine upon* a person: To cause it to burst upon him quite *unawares*. To lay a plot against him secretly and *suddenly* announce its final development.

4. To *spring to one's feet*: To rise up *suddenly*.

**Spruce.** To *spruce oneself up*: To smarten oneself; To make *oneself* bright and fresh in appearance.

**Spur.**—1. *On the spur of the moment*: (adv.) actuated by the impulse of the moment: Without previous thought or reflection. *Impromptu*.

Mr. Gladstone was never so happy as when coping *on the spur of the moment* with the arguments and appeals which an opponent had taken perhaps days in elaborating beforehand.—RUSSELL

• 2. To *win one's spurs*: To make one's first great success. [Allusion to the historical feudal warriors winning the spurs of knighthood]. To gain the *first* distinction; To get recognition as expert at something. To make a name.

So, a soldier *wins his epaulette* i. e. gains promotion to the rank of officer.

**Square.**—1. *Fair and square*: (adj and adv.) Without artifice or subtlety of contrivance (to gain a point). Above-board.

2. (To act) *on or upon the square* (adv.): with strict honesty; honestly; fairly.

I have always been *on the square* (pred. adj) with you—A. TROLLOPE.

They will beat you even if they play *on the square*.—H. FOXER.

So, *By the square*: (adv.) = exactly.

3. To *square accounts with* a person: (Fig.) To have revenge on him. [Note the plural].

4. To *square the circle*: To perform a demonstrable impossibility.

5. To *put a square thing into a round hole*: To appoint a person to a place for which he is not fitted,

Cp. To put the saddle on the wrong horse.

**Stake.**—1. *At stake*: (pred. adj.) risked; jeopardized; in peril.

In the question of the Baltic the future peace of all the European powers is *at stake*.—19th CENT & After.

My honour is *at stake* put at hazard.

Differentiate *At the stake* as in the phrases: To be burnt at the stake, "To suffer at the stake" etc. where stake = the post to which one condemned to die by fire was fastened in olden times ]

2. I *have a stake in the country*: my material interest lies in its welfare as landowner. If any evil happened to it I should be a great loser.

**Stamp.** To *stamp out*. (V. T.); *Lit.* To extinguish (as fire) by stamping on with the foot.

(Fig.) To suppress (as a pestilence, rebellion etc having a tendency to spread like fire) by immediate *strong measures*.

Judge Jeffreys *stamped out* the remnant of the Rebellion in the Bloody Assize.—CRC.

**Stand.** ~~Now~~ This verb primarily intransitive implies to be in a state opposite to that of *motion*. But with many adverbs or adverbial phrases it receives the sense of *motion* as previous to coming to rest and becomes equivalent to go or come e. g. To stand aloof, apart, aside, back, forth &c.

1. To *stand against*: (V. T.) To resist (enemy), To oppose (a measure).

2. To *stand by*: (V. I. *By adv.*) To be near, To be present as witness. Also, To be on the alert (nautical).

I would not *stand by* and hear your enemy say so without defending you against his charge.—DEIGHTON. Cp. To *stand aside*.

To *stand aside* with stopped ears, folded arms, and averted gaze, when you have power to intervene is to become not a mere spectator but an accomplice.—MR. ASQUITH,

3. To *stand by* (V. T. "*By*" Prep.): Not to desert. To support; To defend; To assist.

I have *stood by* you and now you must *stand by* me—Queen Victoria to the Whigs 1839.

4. To *stand for* (a cause, as democracy): To espouse the cause of. Also, To offer oneself as a candidate for (= constituency.)

4a. He *stands on* ceremonies: Is a stickler for; insists on as of value.

Cp. To *stand up for* a person or cause (= To side with or support). To rise in defence of.

5. To *stand out*: (V. I.) To project; To be prominent or conspicuous. To be in relief. Also to persist in opposition or endurance.

There was a spice of romance in Mr Smither's disposition which *stood out* in fine relief against the off-hand amateur pick-pocket sort of manner which distinguished Mr Potter.—DICKENS.

Shakespeare's rhyming lines *stand out* from the surrounding blank verse and point the moral of the preceding situation.—DEIGHTON.

Lord Mayo was essentially a ruler—a man of commanding presence and *out-standing* ability.—STATSMAN.

To separate oneself from others. Cp. To hold

6. To *stand to* (a purpose or opinion) To remain fixed in. To abide by (as one's words, contract etc.)

Whatever I say, I will *stand to*, I *stand to it* that your scheme will fail.

7. It *stands to reason*: is consistent with; is demonstrable that. Is a logical conclusion.

8. This matter will *stand over*: (V. I.) not be dealt with now; be postponed;

9. Let every vat *stand on its own bottom* [See Bottom].

10. To *stand one in good stead*: To be serviceable to him. To be of greatest use to him.

I had a favourite motto 'Never fret' which has often *stood me in good stead* and helped me to obey it,—SIR H. HAWKINS.

11. *Stand-offish* (person, manner etc.): (adj.) Reserved; supercilious.

12. *Stand-point*: (n.) Point of view. A position from which a matter is considered; a fundamental principle.

The proper *stand-point* which alone furnishes a satisfactory basis to work upon is that the importation of officials from Europe should be limited to cases of clear necessity,—JUSTICE A. RAHM.

13. To *come or be brought to a stand-still* (i. e. stoppage in the course of progress): To be stalemated.

There are times in history when this world spins so leisurely along its destined course that it seems for centuries to be at a *stand still*—

**Stare**—1. To *stare one in the face*: To be undeniably imminent.

Death stares him in the face,

Ruin was *staring* the spendthrift Duke of Buckingham in the face,—  
RUSSELL.

[Note,—The verb 'to stare' is intransitive but in this combination it has acquired the force of the transitive being followed by the adverbial adjunct 'in the face'],

So, To *stare a man out of countenance* To disconcert him by a mere stare,

2. To *make one stare*: To cause him to gaze as in admiration, surprise, horror or the like.

**Start.**—1. The club had three members *to start with*: (adv.) When first formed, i. e. at the beginning.

2. *To get or have the start of*: To be beforehand with. To get ahead of. To gain advantage over by starting first (in a race) and keep that advantage to the end. To outstrip.

\* \* \* Ye gods it doth amaze me

A man of such a feeble temper should

So get the start of the majestic world.—SHAK. (J. C.)

3. *To start up* (V. I.) To rise suddenly.

Unforeseen difficulties have started up.

**Stave.** To *stave off*: (V. T.) To put off; To delay; To postpone; To avert.

Quick to discern the signs of the times: the Jesuits devised an eccumenical council as a last desperate means of *staving off* their evil day.—TIMES, Cp. To ward off,

**Steal.** To *steal away, forth, in, out, etc.* (V. I.) To slip unperceived; To come or go like a thief.

In the night he *stole forth* and then stole the coins. SIR H. HOWARD.

2. *To steal a march upon* (an enemy or a rival): To gain an advantage over him *stealthily*, i. e. without his knowing it; To anticipate. To forestall. To jump.

It is understating by exactly 250 per cent Mr. Mill's own estimate of the *march he had stolen upon time* to assume that at the age of 12 he had the standing of the most accomplished and well-read gentleman Oxford or even London university could hope to turn out at the age of 22.—TIMES.

Cp. To take the wind out of one's sails Also, (slang) *To wipe one's eye*.

3. *By stealth*: (adv) stealthily; In a secret or clandestine manner.

Do good *by stealth* and blush to find it fame.—POPE.

We are not, Christ says, to sound a trumpet before us; if we would pray we are to go into a closet and shut the door behind us; we are to do good *by stealth*; our left hand is not to know what our right hand does.—ECCLES HOMO.

**Step.** 1. *Step by step* (adv): Gradually; by degrees.

Contra. Per Saltum.

2. *Stepping-stone*: (n) fig. Means to an end or advancement.



Mr. Fawcett made no secret of his distaste for the profession which he would not have adopted save as a *stepping stone* to a career in parliament — TIMES. **Contra.** Stumbling block.

**Stew.** Let a person *stew in his own juice or grease*. This is the motto for abstaining to help him.

As to the Balkan States they seem to be *stewing in their own juice*.

**Stick.** 1. He *sticks at nothing*: is deterred by no scruples whatever.

So, Not to *stick at* telling a falsehood [Note the negative character of the expressions]

2. He *sticks by* his word: abides faithfully by it.

So, he *sticks by his friend*: does not desert him; is constant to him. But, to *stick to* one's principles.

3. To *stick out*: (V. I.) To be stubborn: To refuse to yield.

Cp. To hold out.

Also, to project. Cp. Stiff-necked (adj) = stubborn.

4. He *sticks out* for higher price: refuses to take less.

5. To *stick up*: (V. I.) To stand in an erect or upright position. Cp. To stand on end.

6. To *stick up for*: (V. T.) To espouse the cause of (usually an absent person).

7. To *stick up to* (a person): Not to humble oneself before him.

8. To *stick one's self up*: To assume a conceited manner. To put on grand airs (as a panjandrum).

Cp. To strut and fret one's hour upon the stage. — SHAK.  
(i. e.) To walk about with the pompous fussiness of an actor on the stage.

8A. To *stick one up*: To puzzle him (usually in the passive form "I am stuck up.")

9. If you *throw mud enough*, some of it will *stick*: Innocence is not proof enough against scandal.

**Still.** 1. *Still and anon*: (adv) at intervals and repeatedly:

2. *Still-born* (child): 'eal at the birth.

**Stink.** To *stink in the nostrils* of : (V. I.) To emit a strong offensive smell. Hence, To be offensive to.

Money wrang from highly rented land or from over-crowded tenements of great cities has never *stunk in the nostrils* of our old nobility.

**Stir.** 1. To *stir up* (V. T.) : To incite (a mutiny, a strife &c).

2. These are *stirring times* (or events) : causing excitement.

Oliver Cromwell was the foremost figure in the *stirring times* of the Puritan revolution. — PROTHERO.

Cp. Between 1870 and 1880 there was a great *stirring of the dry bones* at the universities. — RUSSELL.

**Stock.** 1. *Stock in trade* : The goods kept for sale by a shop-keeper. All requisites for a trade.

Mere personalities wheather of appearance or dress or manner are the *stock-in-trade* of the writing woman. — RUSSELL.

2. *Stock phrase* : one constantly ready for service. 'Tag ; a trite quotation.

So, a *stock play* ; a *stock jest*. Cp. Burden of a song.

3. *Stocks and stones* : Inanimate things ; (fig. used of lethargic or feelingless persons.)

Cp. You are not wood, you are not stones but men — SHAK (J. C.)

Contra.. Flesh and blood.

4. To *lay in a stock* : To collect and store.

5. The *stocks* : The state's funded debt as whole.

6. To *take stock of* : (V. T.) To make an inventory of goods on hand.

Also To observe closely and estimate the character of.

When the war comes to an end we shall have to *take stock* as an Empire of our internal relations. — MR. ASQUITH.

Hence, the noun *stock-taking*, i. e. Review of one's stock for accurate knowledge one has on hand.

7. To *take stock in* : To concern oneself with To value. He never *took stock in* his relationship with me.

**Stomach.** 1. To *turn the stomach*: To nauseate. To cause sickness.

So, the *stomach turns against a person* (V. I.).

2. I have not the *stomach* (to do a certain thing): Feel disinclined.

How far will the representatives of wealth and trade have any *stomach* for such drastic proposal?

**Stone.** 1. To *throw a stone at* (a person): To find fault with. To make aspersions on the character of. To cavil at.

[Reference is to the saying of Christ "He that is without blame among you let him first throw a stone at her" (John VIII-7).

Whose history in the category of nations is unblotted the first nation that is without sin let her cast a stone at Servia — LLOYD GEORGE.

So, the *stone-throwing spirit or tendency*.

Cp. To cast the first stone at To throw mud at  
Those that live in glass houses should not throw stones. — PROVERB

2. To *break stones*: (fig) To be reduced to the meanest drudgery in one's extremity.

3. *Stone blind*: completely blind

So stone deaf stone-deaf, stone-cold.

4. To *leave no stone unturned*. Lit To turn every stone (to discover something hidden or unknown.) Fig. Try every possible means. To spare no exertion. Cp. To move heaven and earth.

[The allusion is to the Delphic oracle advising the enquirer for some hidden treasure to turn every stone.]

No one is justified in adopting a cause which may lead to bloodshed unless after the fullest inquiry he is assured that it is right and has *left no stone unturned* to find another. — MR. LIONEL CURTIS.

**Stop.** 1. *Stop press*: News inserted after the printing has begun.

2. To *stop short*: (V. I) To cease abruptly [see Short].

In one word Cromwell *stopped short* of discovering that institutions are an affair of race as well as of circumstances. — CEC.

The undergraduate who has to stop short of his degree has a hard time before him.—SIR, J. MASTON.

3. To stop up: (V. T.) To plug (a hole). (V. I.) not to go to bed.

**Store.** 1. To set stores by: (V. T.) To set a great value on; To appreciate highly.

So, (in negation) To set no great stores by.

2. In store: (adj) on hand; ready to be produced; Laid up; about to come; destined.

They go cheerfully happy in the thought that a better life is in store for them.

If heavens have any grievous plague in store

Exceeding these that I can wish upon thee

O, let them keep it till thy sins be ripe, —SHAK (Riii).

3. Store house: a promptuary.

**Storm.** 1. Storm and stress. Period of fermenting ideas and unrest in a person's or nation's life.

Lord Hardinge guided the ship of state during a period of unprecedented storm and stress.—SIR, S. P. SINHA.

The storm and stress of the drama are now at an end —DIGHTON.

So, storm and drang: Period of unsettled beliefs, restless impulses, or immense difficulties.

2. To lake by storm: Lit. To capture (a fortified place) by assault. (fig) To captivate (persons, hearers, heart &c,) rapidly,

To overcome by one single blow or encounter.

By her sweet unaffected manners she takes man's hearts by storm.

**Strain.** 1. To strain a point: To make a special and inconvenient effort. To overstep. To exceed one's duty or commission, Cp. To go beyond one's tether.

2. To strain at a gnat: To be overscrupulous about something insignificant.

Ye blind guides which strain at a gnat and swallow a camel,—BIBLE.

**Strait.** Strait-laced: (adj) rigid in morals; narrow-minded; puritanic.

**Straw.** 1. To draw straws: To draw lots with different lengths of straw.

2. *Not worth a straw*; *Do not care a straw* [used in the negative sentences; a straw is typical of utter worthlessness].

**Cp** Not worth a row of pins.

3. He is a *man of straw*: *Lit.* the figure of a man formed of a suit of old clothes stuffed with straw.

Hence, a person of no means or substance.

**Cp** A dummy; A figurehead; a lay-figure.

**Contra.** A man of substance, well to do.

4. The *last straw*: [See Last]

**Stream.** To go *with the stream*: To do as others do. [see the quotation under 'Bear up'].

**Street.** *Street arab*: a homeless child; a waif; a wastrel.

**Stretch.** 1 To *stretch out*: (V. I.) To reach out hand or any limb [used absolutely]. (V. T.) To extend.

2 To *stretch a point* = To strain a point [See Strain].

3. To *stretch the truth*: To exaggerate and therefore to lie.

4 On or upon the *stretch*: (pred adj) In a continuous effort, exercise or strain.

I cannot hit the exact word though my memory has been *on the stretch* for the last three hours

All his powers were *on the stretch* to prepare a suitable speech (exerted to the utmost).

5. *At a stretch* (or *on a stretch*): (adv) continuously at one effort at one time.

Though in feeble health I can work three hours *at a stretch*

They will talk for hours *at a stretch* about investments

**Strike.** ~~66~~ In the intransitive uses the general sense is to pass, with rapidity.

1. To *strike at*: To aim a blow at (a person): To attack.

2. To *strike at the root* of (a thing): To threaten to destroy completely.

3. To *strike a person home*: To give (him) an effective blow. To get blow well in. To hit hard.

4 To *strike in*: (V. I.) To put in one's word suddenly. To interpose; To join in unceremoniously.

When the discussion had nearly ended, Mr. Banerjee *struck in*.

5. To *strike in with* (a principle, theory, time, custom etc.): To suit; To conform to (time, custom etc.)

• This department does not *strike in with* good manners

6. We stood ashore for a while and then *struck out*: started to swim.

7. I *struck upon that idea*, or *the idea struck upon me*: Happily occurred to me.

8 The hour has *struck* (V. I): *Lit.* The clock has struck the hour. (*Fig.*) The critical moment has come (or gone).

• The usual sense of the verb as transitive is found in the following combinations:--

9. To *strike* (a person) *blind, dumb, or deaf* (or other adjectives *proleptically*): To produce such a state *suddenly*.

Cp To dumbfound (er.)

10. To *strike* (one) *all of a heap*: [See Heap.]

11. To *strike terror into* (a person). Terrorize (him) *suddenly*.

12 *Well stricken in years* (pred. adj). of an advanced age

If He should grant to her (Queen Victoria) a long sojourn upon earth, and leave her to reign over us till she is *well stricken in years*, what glory! what happiness! what joy! what bounty of God! —SYDNEY SMITH.

13 *Stricken heart*: afflicted by *strokes* of grief.

14. To *strike a balance*: (In book keeping) To determine the difference between the debtor and creditor sides of an account. (*Fig.*) To ascertain generally which of the two sides is preponderant.

15. To *strike* (one) *down*: To fell or prostrate him. So, To be struck down by illness (as fever, gout, etc.)

Cp. The match will not *strike* (i. e. will not give light when struck.)

15A. To *strike a light*: To produce it by striking.

16. To *strike off*: *Lit.* To separate by a blow; (as to strike one's head off, i. e. to behead him Hence, 'to erase or cancel (as name, figure, word etc.)

It is John Stuart Mill who *struck off* the last fetters of the press.

His name was *struck out*: removed by *stroke* of the pen; erased.

Also, To print; To make (as by *stamping*)

Thousand copies of the document were *struck off*.

17. To *strike oil*. [See Oil.]

18. To *strike out* a plan = To devise it by a quick effort.

18A. A plant *strikes root*: causes the root to enter or penetrate into the ground.

So, *Figuratively*: Dicken's great characters have *struck fast root* in the hearts of his countrymen.—TIMES. Cp. To take root.

19. A ship *strikes sail or flag*: To lower it in token of surrender or of respect.

[Contracted into the intransitive form 'The ship *struck*']

20. To *strike a tent* = To take it down.

But, to *strike one's tent*: To break up camp; To depart.

21. To *strike up*: To begin to play or sing;

O! When is the time to come for *striking up* the song of Victory (i. e. to raise it)

22. To *strike work*: To refuse by *concerted* action to work until better terms are promised by employer. Hence, *To go on strike*.

The Presidency College Students went out on *strike* against one of their haughty and overbearing professors.

[Also, contracted into the intransitive form "struck."

The beer-drinkers of Bamber Bridge near Preston *struck as one man* against an increase in the price of their favourite beverage.

Sometimes the Barri-terers and pleaders *strike as a protest* against the "tyrannical attitude" of the presiding judge]

**Stroke.**—1. It is on the *stroke of six*: The clock is about to strike six. ["It" is indefinite for time or clock].

2. I came there on the *stroke*: (adv.) punctually.

3. To *stroke* a person (or his hair) the wrong way = To irritate him.

4. To *stroke* a person down : To soften his anger.

5. *At one stroke* : By one single exertion.

*At one stroke* destroy all the seeds from which ungrateful mankind are generated.—DAIGHTON. Cp. At one fell swoop ; At one blow.

*Stuff*. *Stuff and nonsense* : trash ; worthless rubbish.

**Stumble.**—1. To *stumble over* : (V. T.) To be tripped up by.

Here Gall, *stumbling over* a bramble, fell.—PROTHERO.

Here are verses over which have *stumbled*, forty years ago, the childish lips of brothers, severed from us by years of change and absence, yet now, by force of association with the Psalms seated once again by our side in the broken circle of home.—IBID.

2. To *stumble upon* (a thing) : (V. T.) To come upon or across (it) *by chance*. To discover *accidentally*.

The cohort of parliamentary Tories felt all the alarm of men who have *accidentally stumbled on* some treasure-trove.—RUSSELL.

3. To *stumble along* ; (V. I.) To go with frequent false steps.

4. *Stumbling-block* : (n) any circumstance that serves as an obstacle or causes difficulty or hesitation.

This measure made a regular annual appearance in the British Parliament, usually passing the commons but being rejected by the Lords, the bishops being its real *stumbling-block*.—E. CRC.

The prevailing tendency to regard all the marked distinctions of human character as innate . . . is one of the great *stumbling-blocks* to human improvement.—J. S. MILL.

**Contra.** Stepping-stone.

**Subscribe.** 1. I do not *subscribe* (V.I.) to that opinion: endorse it or adhere to it.

So, I do not *subscribe to* any newspaper. (i. e. take or buy).

2. I *subscribed* (V. T.) Rs. 100/- to that Fund or for the purpose of raising a suitable memorial to him: contributed.



**3.** I have *subscribed* (V. I.) for that book which is going to be issued in parts : put down my name as a buyer.

What you propose is a college to be *subscribed for by* the Shia community —SIR J. MEYER.

**Succeed.** *Nothing succeeds like success* : the usual motto of the *rapidity* with which one success is *followed* by another.

**Contra.** Misfortune never comes single or alone.

It never rains but it pours. [see Pour (4)]

**Such.** *As such* : [(adv.) an idiomatic combination to avoid repetition of a preceding noun or adjective ]

The heathen *as such* (i. e. as heathen) recognised only special obligations towards particular classes of men, his relations or fellow citizens — E. H.

In ancient India a stranger was always welcomed *as such* (i. e. as stranger).

**Suck.** 1. *To suck in* (V. T.) To imbibe (as knowledge)  
A sponge *sucks in* (or up) water — absorbs.

2. I am *sucked dry* : exhausted of the advantages I had  
[a prolepsis]

**Cp.** I am a *sucked orange* now i. e. No goodness or attractiveness is left in me ; all my influences are gone. [see Orange]

3. *To give suck to* To suckle (as the mother does her babe).

I have *given suck* and know.

How tender it is to love the babe that milks me —SHAK (Mac).

**Sudden.** 1. *Of* (or *on*) a *sudden* : (adv.) suddenly ; unexpectedly. **Cp.** All at once.

Beware of using "the" for "a" ]

**Sui** 1. *Sui generis* : (Lat. Pred. adj.) : of one's own genus.

Not referrible to any classified group, peculiar to itself ; unique.

The India of the future will not be a copy of the West, she will be *sui generis* shaping herself by her own ideals and not imitating the forms of other nations. **Cp.** Neither fish nor fowl, nor yet a red herring.

2 *Sui juris* (also Lat. Pred. adj.) Having attained the legal age of majority ; able to act independently and *as one's*

*own discretion.*

**Suit.** 1. *To make suit*: (V. I.) To urge a humble request. [Note the omission of article before "suit"]

2. *Suit yourself*; Do as you please.

**Sum** 1. *The sum and substance* (of a matter): Summary; cardinal point. The total upshot.

- Cp The head and front of one's offending.  
The be-all and end-all.

2. *To sum up*: [usually written at the beginning of a concluding paragraph as adverbial phrase] ∴ Let us now recapitulate the arguments; Briefly speaking.

*To sum up*: the forgiveness of injuries which was regarded in the ancient world as a virtue indeed but an almost impossible one, appears to the moderns in ordinary cases a plain duty; and whereas the ancients regarded with admiration the man who practised it, the moderns regard with dislike the man who does not,—ECCO HOMO.

Also, (V. T): To summarise,

In this brochure the author attempts to *sum up* the present political situation in the country and its aims for the future.—I. REVIEW.

3. *The summum bonum*: The supreme good; The ultimate principle in any ethical system.

The Christian *summum bonum* was a social one; it was the welfare of the Christian society.—ECCO HOMO.

**Summer.** 1. *Summer friends*: Friends only in one's prosperous times Trencher-friends.

C. Feast won, fast lost.—SHAK (T. A.)

Also, such summer birds are men.—IBID

Time's flies (Shak); one cloud of winter showers, these flies are couched,

2. *Summer-house*: a light building in a garden or in the country.

3. *Summer-lightning*: distant sheet lightning: Flash of diffused brightness.

**Sun.** 1. Nothing new under the sun: on earth; in the world; anywhere.

**N. B.**—The phrase is usually preceded by a negative or by a superlative, e. g. It is the best place *under the sun*.] or by "every" "all", "any"

I have no hesitation in giving the preference to that university which did nothing over that which exacted of its members an acquaintance with every science *under the sun*.—A. U.

**2.** *To hail or adore the rising sun*: To curry favour with the new or coming power.

**3.** *His sun is set*: The time of his prosperity is over.

So, the *sunset* of life: its declining period.

'Tis the *sunset of life* gives me mystical lore

And coming events cast their shadows before.—CAMPBELL.

**Sure.** **1.** *To make sure* (V. I.) against a thing: To guard against it.

**2.** *To make sure of*: (V. T.) To make certain; To secure so that there can be *no failure* of the purpose or object; ensure the happening of.

Conveniently for our purpose we may *make sure of* finding him.

But ethics apart, we believed in the intellectual acuteness of the Democracy, and *made sure* that it would intuitively penetrate imposture. R.

**3.** *To be sure*: Interjection denoting certainty, surprise, or an introductory or conclusive adverbial phrase = certainly.

*To be sure*, the question is a frivolous one.—ECCLE HOMO.

The moment the law was taken of him, there was an end of honour, *to be sure*.—M. EDGEWORTH.

And when I hope his blunders all are out.

Reply discreetly, 'To be sure—no doubt'—THE NEUROTIC BARD.

**4.** *Of a surety*: (adv.) certainly.

We shall know *of a surety* that in such a mood Portia would exclaim that the full sum of her was the "sum of—nothing".—FURNESS.

**Sursum.** *Sursum corda*: (Lat. = Hearts above) Lift up your hearts; Let your thoughts be of heaven.

**Swaddle.**—*Swaddling band or cloth*: such as is wrapped round an infant. *Fig.* any influence that restrains freedom of action or thought. Also, swathing clothes.

It was only when nature did at last break through the biggest and tightest *swaddling clothes* ever strapped round human soul that Mr. Mill was discovered to be a lovable and interesting person.—TIMES.

**Swan.** 1. *All his geese are swans*: He places too high a value on his own belongings. He over-estimates what is his own.

**Cp.** He thinks his penny silver. **Contra**: Think thy swan a crow—SHAK (R. J.)

2. *Swan-song*: The last production of a poet, artist, author &c, [Swans were formerly supposed to sing melodiously at point of death]. *Lit.* The song of a dying swan.

**Swash.** 1. *Swash buckling*: Bullyism; Bravado.

It will be cruel folly not to see to it that this *swash-buckling* through the streets of Europe in the disturbance of all harmless and peaceful citizens shall be dealt with now as an offence against the law of nations.

So, a *swash-buckler*—a swaggering fellow, a bully; a bravo.

2. *Swashing blow*: a hard one [From *swash* = To strike violently.]

**Swear.** 1. *To swear by* (a person or thing): To take his (or its) name most solemnly as *guarantee* of oath; To appeal to as witness to a *solemn* oath.

*By the nine gods he swore.*—MACAULAY.

In the West of India they *swear by* the Gita which preaches action; in Bengal they *swear by* the Upanishads which preach meditation.—STATESMAN

2. *To swear to* (a thing): colloquially used in the sense of professing great belief in.

I am *sworn to* secrecy: bound by oath to keep the matter secret.

3. *I have sworn off* drink: taken oath to abstain from it. [A prolepsis].

**Swell.** 1. *The swell mob*: (pl.) pickpockets dressed like gentlemen—[sing. A swell mobs man.]

2. *The swells*: The *swell society*; Persons smartly and finely dressed. So, he looks very *swell*—[swell, adj.]

**Swim.** 1. To *swim with the stream*: To conform with anything that is *current*. To act with the majority; To do as others do. [See *Stream*].

2. To *swim with the tide*: To be prosperous.

3. I am no longer *in the swim*: engaged in or acquainted with what is going on (i. e. the main current of affairs).

**Cp.** Laid on the shelf; Past one's prime.

**Swing.** 1. *In full swing*: (predadj): Brisk and active; in free and unrestrained activity.

The market is *in full swing*; so, the work is *in full swing*.

New ideas are *in full swing* now.

Unrestricted war against all sea traffic in the barred zones is now *in full swing* —REUTER.

2. Let it *have its swing*: continue its activity until it stops of itself [Metaphor from the Pendulum].

3. To *give full swing to a thing*: To allow it to have free course till it rests of itself.

4. The *swing of the pendulum*: The natural tendency to alternation (fig of opinions, party preponderance) Tendency of an electorate to put parties in power alternately.

5. The door *swang to*: (V. I.) closed [*To* is adverb].

**Swoop.** 1. To *swoop down upon a prey*: To attack it from a distance with great rush (as a bird of prey does); To pounce upon.

Gairibaldi would come down *with a swoop* on the enemy.

2. *At one fell swoop*; *By one single snatch or attack* [with reference to carrying many things at a time.]

**Cp.** At one snatch; At one stroke; At one blow (or shot) At one jump (i. e. in less than no time). Also, (Take) by storm.

“What? all my chickens and their dam.

*At one fell swoop*. —SHAK (Macb.)

**Swap.** *Never swap* (exchange) *horses crossing the stream*. (Lit) no exchange at a critical juncture (fig) Leave changes till the crisis is over.

**Sword.** 1. To be at *sword's points* : (pred adj) Bitterly hostile.

**Cp.** At daggers drawn at loggerheads. So, To be at *swords drawn*.

2. The *sword of Damocles* : [See *Damocles*].

3. To turn *swords into ploughshares* : To conclude war with peace.

4. To put to the sword : To kill.

5. To cross or measure *swords with* : To have fight (lit or fig), controversy and open rivalry with.

In the session of 1840, in a debate on the Chinese war, Mr. Gladstone crossed *swords with* Macaulay, in a speech remarkable for its eloquent expression of anxiety that the arms of England should never be employed in unrighteous enterprises. — G. W. E. RUSSELL.

6. *Sword-play* : (fig) repartees. Cut and thrust argument.

**Cp.** To bandy words.

## T

**Table.**—1. The facts are *upon the table*. (pred. adj.) open to public discussion.

**Cp.** On the tapis. Above board.

So, To lay (paper, report &c) *on the table* : (V. T.) To bring it forward for future consideration.

2. *Under the table* : (pred. adj.) Hidden ; concealed.

3. *The tables turned* (V. I.). [Reference to gaming] There was change of fortune of the rival parties. The positions of the antagonists were reversed.

Hence, To turn *the tables on* : (V. T.) To overthrow (a formerly victorious rival.) Note the plural 'tables'.

They would not hesitate to swear black was white and they might easily turn *the tables upon me*. — G. J. MELVILLE.

Their efforts to sound Hamlet are as futile as those of Polonius. Hamlet in fact completely turns *the tables upon them* and shows them that he has divined the object of their visit. — DAUGHTON.

**Cp.** To go for wool and come home shorn. To have or get the laugh of.

**Tabula.** *Tabula rasa*: [*Lat* An erased tablet; smooth or blank tablet]. (*Fig.*) The human mind at birth viewed as having no innate ideas. **Cp.** A clean slate.

**Tack.**—1. *On the right or wrong tack*: (pred. adj.) Taking the right or wrong course of policy.

2. To *tack about*: (V. I.) To change one's conduct, opinion, policy etc.

3. To *tack on* a thing to another: To annex; To append.

**Tail.** To *turn tail*. (V. I.) To turn one's back; To run away. To shirk an encounter.

The fellow after so much vaunting turned tail at last.

It is a sign that we ought to turn tail in this her joy, —BLACKMORE.

**Take** [This verb is correlative to 'give.' Hence *give and take* policy (adj.) = spirit of compromise by mutual concession; *Modus Vivendi*]

1. I was *taken aback* to hear the narrative: surprised, confounded.

So, the narrative will *take you aback*: astonish you.

2. To *take after* (V. T.) To resemble (a parent, relation etc.) in character, feature etc.

The Prince of Wales is the strongest of all the Royal children. He can bear great fatigue. He *takes most after* his father's family. —BARON STOCKMAR

3. To *take air* (V. I.) [as any thing mysterious or concealed] To be divulged or disclosed. **Cp.** The cat is out of the bag. The secret has leaked out.

4. To *take the air*: To take an airing; To walk or drive in the open air for refreshment.

5. To *take back* (words etc. colloq.); To withdraw; To retract. **Cp.** To eat one's words. To go back upon.

6. To *take breath*. (V. I.) To rest after exertion.

7. To *take care*: (V. I.) To be careful; To be vigilant.

8. The guardian *takes care of* his ward: Has the charge of him. Hence the noun "care-taker" (of an institution.)

The police *took care of* the culprit: kept watch over him.

9. To *take down*: (V. T.) *Lit.* to remove to a lower position. Hence,

(a) To humble or abase (a person) [usually followed by "a peg or two"]

(b) To remove (building, etc) by taking *to pieces*.

(c) To put in writing (as notes); To write *from dictation*.

10. The leave *took effect* from 1st May: became operative.

11. This will *take from* your credit, dignity, or reputation: lessen, Cp. Derogate or detract *from*.

12. To *take heed (of)*. (V. I.) To be careful or cautious.

A poor man with small earnings and a large family just managed to live on from hand to mouth and to procure food from day to day. He had barely sufficient to satisfy the present cravings of nature and can *take no heed of the future*.—DICKENS.

13. To *take heed to* (a matter, or thing): V. T. To attend to (it) with care.

14. To *take in* (a person): (V. T.) (a) To deceive, To bilk; To cozen.

No body can be *taken in* by this sort of argument.

I was unfortunately *taken in* by his smooth manners.

(b) To absorb or digest mentally.

(c) I cannot *take in* that statement: Believe or admit.

(d) The ship *took in* the sails: furlled.

[If these phrases 'In' is adv=into something as trap, mind, room, condition &c,] I was *taken in* to dinner i. e. into the dining room.

15. To *take off* (V. T.) To remove (as clothes). To divest oneself of; To doff. To put off. Also, To kill (a person but not oneself.)

[N. B. To *take one's life* is the idiom not to *take off*.]

Cp. To make away with



**16.** To *take on* : (V. I.) To be violently affected ; To fret

How will my mother for a father's death

*Take on* with me and ne'er be satisfied.—SHAK

Do not *take on* so.

So, the noun : I was in a *pretty take-on* ; Also, I was in a *terrible taking*.

(V.T.) To undertake ; To assume (as work or responsibility).

**17.** To *take out* (V. T.) : To remove (from within or from a number) by cleaning, as a blot, mark, etc.

**17a.** I will *take out the debt* in (books, wine etc) : accept payment of it in (things or kinds).

**17b.** I will *take (or have) it out of you* : Have revenge on you ; revenge myself ; get satisfaction from you.

**18.** To *take over* (charge, business, etc.) : To assume management in succession or by *transference*. [*over* implies transference].

**19.** I have *taken to* astronomy : become fond of, begun the study of it. He has *taken to* bad habits ; (fallen into)

Within each caste individuals *take to* learning

**20.** To *take up* : (V. T.) To raise ; To lift.

No one will *take up* this book expecting to find much amusement in it

Also, To begin where one has left (as a narrative).

And just as the evening shades prevail

The moon *takes up* the wondrous tale.—ADRIANSON.

I *took up* the inquiry : pursued it further.

Also, To absorb. The investigation *took up* all my time. again. To enter upon ; I *took up* the profession as most congenial.

**21.** To be *taken up with* (an idea, etc.) To be possessed by it to the exclusion of other matters, To be obsessed by ; absorbed.

**Cp.** Transported and rapt in secret studies.—SHAK (Tempest) i. e These were the whole subject of my occupation.

**21a.** He is not likely to *take up* with such a rogue (V. I.) Associate ; consort.

Also, (*Fig.*) with things, ideas, schemes, etc.)

It must be born with a man to be contented to *take up with* little things.—JOHNSON.

Mr. Barratt never *took up with* a project in which he had no confidence.

**22.** To *take* (a person) *to task*: (V. T.) To accuse him of a fault; (Also) To rebuke (him) for doing something.

Sheil *took* Lord Lyndhurst *to task* for applying the term 'aliens' to the Irish in a speech on municipal reform.—RUSSELL.

**Tale.**—1. *Tale of a tub*: an idle fiction.

1. To *tell tales* (out of school): To report (especially) with malicious intent) what is meant to be secret. Hence, the noun "Tell-tale" = Tale-bearer.

You speak to Casca; and to such a man,

That is no flooring *tell tale*.—SHAK (J. C.)

**3** A thing *tells its own tale*: explains itself requiring no extraneous aid. Cp. To speak for itself.

**4.** *Thereby hangs a tale.* [See Thereby.]

**Talk** 1. [This verb is primarily intransitive unlike 'say' and 'tell' In particular cases it becomes transitive as when followed by adverbial adjuncts [Prolepsis].

The broken soldier kindly *bade to stay*.

Sat by the fire and *talked the night away*.—GOLDSMITH.

**2.** So, I succeeded in *talking him out of that course* (plan or project): dissuading him from it. Similarly, I will *talk him over*: win him over by talking. Cp. I will *talk him up* persuade him. To *talk him round*.

**3.** Again, He *talked himself hoarse* or *out of breath* or *out of patience*. [A prolepsis].

**4.** The matter is now *talked about*: become a subject of gossip or common tattle.

**5.** I shall have occasion to *talk to you*: (V. T.) Remonstrate with; reprove gently.

Cp. I will give him a *talk*: a piece of my mind,

[Beware of using 'A talk' as equivalent for general rumour.]

6. *Fine talking* = overestimation.
7. *Tall (or big) talk* : Boast; Braggadocio; Rodomontade.
8. *Turgid talk* : Rant; Tirade.
9. *Talkee-talkie*. (n) Incessant idle talking. [Adj. Voluble]  
Cp. (Personal nouns): Chatter-box; wind bag; Magpie.

**Tangent.** To *go or fly off at a tangent* : To break off suddenly into a very different line of thought or action. To diverge *impetuously* from the matter in hand or from *normal* line of thought or conduct. [*fig* from geometrical tangent].

**Tamper.** To *tamper with* (a draft, will, manuscript, etc.)  
T.) To make unauthorized changes in.

**Tapis.** To be, or come, *on the tapis* [Fr = carpet] : (pred. adj.) under consideration. Cp. On the table.

**Tar.** *Tarred with the same brush* : (pred adj) Having the same idiosyncrasies.

Cp. Cast in the same mould. Birds of a feather.

**Tare.** *Tare and tret* (u) : allowance in weight or on goods for waste.

**Tartar.** To *catch a tartar* : To catch one too strong for the assailant. To meet with more than one's match (in strength, skill, craft etc.) To encounter more than was bargained for. [Tartar = a person of irascible temper; a vixen or shrew].

**Tea.** 1. *Tempest in a tea-cup* (or tea-pot) : commotion in a circumscribed circle (usually about *trivial* matters).

[The expression has no reference to any particular tea-pot, So the definite article must not take the place of the indefinite].

What great a storm have you raised in a tea-cup.—C. READE.

2. *Tea fight* : a social gathering where tea is drunk.

**Tear.** 1. To *tear away* : V. I. [colloq] To make off at a great pace.

1A. To *tear a hole* : To cause a hole by *rending*.

2. To *tear to tatters* (rags or shreds etc.) : Pull to pieces.

Whoever else might endeavour to evade action Lord Clarendon was urging despatch, and *tearing to shreds* the excuses put forth for leaving things alone.—*Times*. Cp. Knock to atoms.

3. *To tear up*: To remove from a fixed state *violently*. To rend *completely*. So, *To tear into pieces*.

Tear up that document. [Beware of substituting *off* for *up*]

4. *To tear the hair*: To pull it *violently* as a sign of grief.

Cp. To wring one's hand. To beat one's breast. Weeping and gnashing of teeth.

5. *To weep bitter tears* [cognate object] i. e. bitterly.

6. *The tear and wear*: [see Wear].

**Teens.** *In one's teens*: (pred adj): past 12 but not (years of age); within thirteen and nineteen

**Tell.** 1. This anxiety is *telling upon you*: producing marked effect. So, every shot *tells* ('tell' is V. I.).

Hence, the speech was delivered *with telling effect* i. e. with great effect; the audience were carried by it.

2. *To tell off*: (V. T.) To count off; To detach or select for some special duty; To detail.

A patrol of six constables *were told off* to perambulate the town.

When by law Honorary magistrates constitute a bench, it is quite illegal for them to be voluntarily *told off* into parties constituting a quorum to try separate cases.—*LAW JOURNAL*.

The fatigue party consists of soldiers *told off* for performing non-military duty.

Cp. A file of men (= Two *told-off* for a special purpose).

3. *There is no telling*. No one can say or tell.

Woman's will has no distinguishable bounds nor assignable limits; *there is no telling* what she will do or where she will stop.—*Hudson*.

4. *They were 100 men all told*: being completely counted in the total [see Told].

**Tempt.** 1. *To tempt providence* (or God): To provoke by defying.

2. So, *To tempt fate*.

Now that I approach this high theme (the writing woman) my knees knock together for I feel I am *tempting fate*.—RUSSELL.

**Ten.** 1. *Ten to one* : [ten chances *against* one]. High probability.

It is ten to one he will succeed in the examination.

**Cp.** Long odds. Lombard street to a china orange,

2. He is *one of ten thousand* : an exceptionally able or clever person. **Cp.** One among many.

3. *The upper ten* : The aristocracy.

**Tenterhook.** On *tenterhooks* : (adv) In a state of most awful suspense or severe mental torment.

**Cp.** On the rack; In a stew.

**Term.** 1. On *good terms* : (pred adj) friendly; on footing of friendship.

*On terms* is also used as an abbreviated form.

2. *To bring to terms* : (V, T.) To pacify. To cause (a person) to accept conditions.

3. *To come to terms* : (V, I.) To yield. *To give way*.

**Cp.** To strike a bargain.

4.—*To make terms* (V, I.) To conclude an agreement (with).

It has been all along a dishonest attempt *to make terms* with a power which we believed to be stronger than ourselves, but which in our hearts we dreaded and disliked.—RUSSELL.

5. The deed was written *in terms* of diplomacy : i. e. in the *language* peculiar to it.

6. We praised him *in no measured terms* : (adv) in glowing set terms [*fig* Litotes].

**Teste.** 1. *Teste Mr. Gladstone* : (we state this) using his testimony as authority; according to him. [*Teste* is prep.]

2. *To bear testimony to* (a fact assertion etc.) : To give evidence in support of.

Paul's epistles bear testimony to it (kindling of enthusiasm throughout)  
—KEES HEMO. **Cp.** To witness to.

**Tete.** 1. *Tete à tete*: (Fr) A private intercourse; a confabulation.

• Double arm-chairs in one and short sofas with ends alike are made for *tete à tete*:

2. Also, a sofa for two persons.

**Than.** *Than whom*: In this combination (grammatically incorrect) 'than' must be treated as a quasi preposition.

• They came Lord Ripon *than whom* no truer friend of the country and its people had ever governed India.—MAIL.

**Thank.** 1. *Thanks to* (person or thing): [an adverbial phrase introduced in a sentence by way of parenthesis in an elliptical form]. As the result of.

*Thanks to your obstinacy, you are in this sorry plight.*

Our belief in the final triumph of our arms has been fortified by the unscarcage, *thanks to* our gallant navy and mercantile marine, of the inhuman sub-marines to which Germany committed herself with so confident assurance.—LORD CHELMSFORD (message 3 8 18.)

2. He has only to *thank himself* for that. It is his own fault.

N B. This is an *ironical* expression said of one who has only *himself* to blame for some evil that has befallen him.

For a certain portion of it (the vast drain from India) we have to *thank our own blindness to our national interests*.—DADABHAI NOWROJI.

3. *Thanks giving*: (n) Expression of gratitude to God (not men). (To sing) Te Deum. [= we praise Thee, O God.]

**That.** 1. *In that*: (conj.) since. Because; seeing that.

I am right glad *in that* your health is so well.—SHAK.

Inferior to Macbeth *in that* you will not yourself be king, greater than Macbeth *in that* your descendants will be kings and his not.—DRYDEN.

• Happy *in that* we are not over-happy.—SHAK

Wool differs from hair *in that* it has a wavy serrated fibre, its curl being a notable characteristic whereas hair has a smooth surface comparatively free from serratures.—CYC.

Happy, no doubt, he (Dickens) was *in that* he was snatched away in moment of time.—TIMES.

2. *And all that*: Similar commonplaces,

A prince can make a belted knight,

A marquis, duke, and a' that.—BURNS,

3. *O that*: (Interjection): I wish that,

Cp. *Would that*.

4. *At that*: (adv) So far as it goes.

A hoax and a clumsy one *at that*—STATESMAN.

5. *That he is*: [Adj phrase: see Note on "As".]

Would *that* great man Raja Ram Mohan Roy have ever been the great man *that he was*—the great Bengali *that he was*—if he had not drunk deep of the wells of Western thought!—LORD RONALDSHAY.

**There.** 1. *Thereby hangs a tale* [Shakespeare frequently repeats this expression.]

And so, from hour to hour, we ripe and ripe,

And then, from hour to hour, we rot and rot,

And *thereby hangs a tale*—SHAK (A Y L).

As result of that a story or narrative arises or follows.

[Probably 'tale' is a metamorphosis of 'tail'] Alas! the Boy found some of his passionate votaries among the smart women of society. *Thereby hangs a pitiful tale*. Although drunkenness has so markedly decreased among men, I believe there can be no doubt that it has increased among women.—RUSSELL.

**Thews.**—*Thews and sinews*: Bodify strength.

**They.** *They say*; people in general say; So, the rumour goes. *On dit*.

*They say*, best men are moulded out of faults.—SHAK.

*They say* that those whom the gods love die young.—IBID.

**Thick.** 1. *Thick head*: (sign of stupidity): A block-head. So, a thick skull (= a great dullard).

Cp. The veriest dolt on the dunce's stool.—W. STEAD.

2. He is a *thick-skinned* fellow: (adj) Not sensitive to ridicule, sarcasm, or the like. Stolid. Pachydermatous.

**Contra**: Thin-skinned: unduly sensitive i. e. too easily offended.

3. *Through thick and thin*: (adv) In spite of all obstacles *great and small*; under all conditions; resolutely.

• My rich friend promised me support through *thick and thin*.

Hence, the adj. *thick and thin* (supporter).

• Cp. Through fire and water. Through evil report and good report.

**Thing.** 1. He *knows a thing or two*: Shrewd; experienced.

Cp. To know which is which, what is what; (i. e.) a good thing from a bad

2. I am not feeling at all *the thing*: (adv) well.

• 3. Where diligence was *the thing* (i. e. the most indispensable requisite) he was diligent enough.

4. I will *make a good thing* by that lesson: (V. T.) profit by.

5. He did *the handsome thing* by me: (V. T.) treated handsomely.

**Think.** 1. To *think about* (or of). To consider; To hit upon.

2. You will soon *think better of it*: change your mind.

3. To *think little or nothing* of (a person or thing). To consider insignificant or contemptible.

Cp. To think meanly of (i. e. To consider as mean)

Contra. To *think no end of* a person (i. e. To esteem him highly)  
To think much of; To think highly of; To think no small beer of.

4. I shall *think out* a scheme or plan; consider *carefully*.  
To devise.

5. I shall *think over* the matter: Reflect upon it.

Also, I shall *think the matter over* [*over* is adv].

6. To *think fit or good*: (V. T.) To choose.

**Thorn.** 1. To *sit on thorns*: To be in great mental disquietude.

Cp. To live upon the rack; on tenter hooks; In a stew.

2. He is a *thorn in my side*: a constant source of annoyance, e. g. He is a *thorn in the side* of erring officials.

Gladstone was a peculiarly acute *thorn in the side* of the Chancellor of the Exchequer and criticized the budgets with unsparing vigour.—RUSSELL.

Cp. There was given to me a *thorn in the flesh*—BIBLE.



**Thorough.** 1. A *thorough-going* reformer : uncompromising. Cp. Out-and-out.

2 He is a *thorough-paced rascal* : completely trained or practised in all the tricks of villainy.

Cp. A downright rogue ; an arrant knave ; an arch-villain.

**Though**—*As though* : (conj) As if.

He acts as though he were mad.

**Thought.** 1. *Thoughts that breathe and words that burn* — Inspiring sentiments couched in spirited words.

3 He is a *thought* arrogant : (adv) somewhat.

If the hair were a *thought* browner.—SHAK.

**Thresh.** To *thresh out* the truth (or any matter) : To arrive at or obtain by repeated trials.

**Thrice.** *Thrice happy* &c : [used in the sense of *much, very, highly* without any reference to the specific number three].

Soothed with the sound the king grew vain ;

Fought all his battles o'er again ;

And *thrice* he routed all his foes ; and *thrice* he slew the slain.—DRYDEN.

*Thrice* unhappy are we if we fail to hear the voice which bids us risk our all for a good cause, or hearing, refuse to obey it.—RUSSELL.

*Thrice* is he armed that hath his quarrel just.—SHAK.

**Throat.** 1. He lies in his *throat* : (adv) Grossly ; So, I gave him the lie in his *throat* i. e. told him that he was an egregious liar. [See Lie].

2. To *cut one's own throat* : To adopt a suicidal course.

3. To *cut one another's throat* : To adopt a mutually destructive policy.

**Through.** 1. To go *through with something* : To prosecute it to the end.

So, colloquially, Are you *through with* that job ?

2. This book requires to be read *through and through* : (adv) again and again.

So, he looked me *through and through* : (adv) cast a searching look upon me.

3. I have lived a simple life *all through*; all the time (adv)

4. He is a *through and through* conservative : (adj)  
Through; To the backbone; To the quick.

**Throw.** 1. To *throw away* (any advantage, good, offer, or opportunity) : To lose *by neglect*.

The warning was not *thrown away*.

The learning, eloquence, and moral sentiment, and above all, arguments from the New Testament and ecclesiastical tradition, were *thrown away upon* a Government over which Lord Palmerston presided—RUSSELL.

2 To *throw by* : To cast aside as *unlucky*.

3. To *throw in* (a word or remark) : interpose parenthetically.

4. I *threw in my lot* with him. decided to share his fortunes. ["in" is adverb]

5. To *throw oneself into* (a business) : To engage *vigorously* in.

6 To *throw off* (friendship, illness, companion, etc). To get rid of. To discard.

So, To *throw off* a mask or disguise : To abandon it.

Cp. To throw over [board].

7. To *throw oneself on or upon a person* : resign oneself to his favour or protection.

A criminal under trial *throws himself upon* the mercy of the court.

8. This bill if passed will *throw open the door to* bribery and corruption : make possible.

9. To *throw over* (a friend, companion &c.) To desert. To discard.

So, To *throw overboard* (Lit. from within ship into water)

10. To *throw up* (N. T.) (an office, situation, etc). To resign. Also, (V. I.) To vomit,

**Thumb.** 1. *Rule of thumb* : Rule or calculation suggested

ted by *practical* rather than scientific knowledge. Rough and ready method of doing work,

We care for nothing but the rigid rule of the thumb.—SIR J. MASTON.

2. Get that stubborn relative under your thumb: under your supreme control.

**Cp.** To turn a person round one's little finger.

The Secretary of State for India is a pure despot. He has the Viceroy at the end of a telegraph-wire, and the Queen's three hundred millions of Indian subjects under his thumb.—ROUSSELL,

3. His fingers are all thumbs: He is clumsy,

4. To bite one's thumb at a person: To express contempt for him.

**Tide** 1. To tide over a difficulty: (V. T.) To overcome it temporarily. [*over* is a prep.] Also, To Tide a difficulty over [*over* is an adv].

2. To work double tides (adv.) Night and day.

**Tight** 1. He is on his tight ropes: perked up; haughty.

**Cp.** On stilts

2. He is in a tight squeeze or in tight place: in a very difficult situation.

**Time**.—1. At times: (adv.) Occasionally; at distant intervals of duration.

**Cp.** Now and then; From time to time.

2. At the same time. (conj.) Notwithstanding. [See Same.]

No doubt you have free hand in the matter; at the same time you cannot entirely free yourself from supreme moral obligations.

Also, (adv.) Simultaneously, as we arrived there at the same time

3. From time to time: at intervals, occasionally; now and then.

It is demanded of every member of the Christian commonwealth to testify his membership from time to time by a common meal taken in conjunction with other members according to a prescribed form.—ECCA HOMO,

4. *In time*: In good season; *At the right moment*; sufficiently early. i. e. early enough (*for a thing or to do.*)

*Cp.* In good time; In due time.

*A stitch in time saves nine.*

Impey posted back to Calcutta to be in *time* for the opening of term.

—MACAULAY.

He will throw off the practice in *time*.

Also, Eventually; in course of time. As time progresses.

*Contra*: Out of time. [Beware of using the plural form.]

5. *In good time*: Neither too soon nor too late; In due course.

6. To do a thing in *no time*: most quickly; with very great speed.

*Cp.* In a trice. In two shakes of a lamb's tail [colloq].

7. To work *against time*: (adv.) With the utmost speed possible as if in defiance of time limitation. [Possible vs. Impossible.]

8. *Time-honoured*: Honoured on account of age or long use: Venerable by antiquity.

Some of these *time-honoured* usages he (Christ) stigmatised as immoral and mischievous.—FOSS HOMO.

*Time-honoured* Lancaster.—SHAK.

The Durbar is a *time-honoured* Indian Institution for the symbolic offer of homage and its acknowledgement by the sovereign.—MR. BURN.

9. *Time-server*: one who changes his opinions as time changes to serve his own ends; a trimmer, an opportunist; a practical politician; one who seeks immediate or selfish gain at the expense of genuine principle.

*Cp.* Unpractised he to fawn or seek for power, \*

By doctrines fashioned to the varying hour —GOLDSMITH.

10. *Time out of mind*: (adv.) From time immemorial, "From time whereof the memory runneth not to the contrary"; longer time than any can remember or trace.

*Time out of mind* people have been ready and willing to pay substantial sums to impoverish their younger children and embarrass their posterity

for the sake of a coronet or even a coronetcy.—RUSSELL.

**Cp.** The Hindus worship God as "immemorial

Being" (Sanatan Purusha) i. e. ancient beyond memory.

**11.** *For the time being*: [Being = present] (adv.).

Temporarily; For the particular occasion. The term "heretics" is applied to those persons who adopt a religious belief opposed to that of the Christian Church in general or to that imposed *for the time being* by a state.—CRO.

**12.** *Time and again*: (adv.) Very frequently; Repeatedly.

These men have *time and again* proved their sterling worth.—B. H.

**Cp.** Times without number.

*At this time of day*: (adv.) [see Day].

**N. B.**—Day = a period of time; hence, no article before it.

**14.** *To be ahead of one's time* (or times): (adj. pred.)

Born before one's time (or times); Having notions too enlightened to be appreciated or put into practice.

**Contra**: Behind the times: Back number.

**Tip.** **1.** *On tiptoe*: (Pred. adj.) Lit. on the tips of the toes. (*Fig.*) In a state of ungovernable excitement.

The Apothecary's apprentice wished Mr. Corney joy of her job and took himself off *on tiptoe* (adv.) —DICKENS.

Expectation was *on tiptoe* all the morning—DICKENS.

**2.** *Tip-top* (house, establishment, manners, etc.) (adj.) First rate, excellent.

**Cp.** (Fr) Bonne bouche.

**Tit.**—**1.** To give one *tit for tat*: (n.) a retort in kind.

Like for like; exact retaliation.

**Cp.** A tu quoque. To give a Roland for an Oliver. To serve a person out; To serve him with the same sauce. Also To pay one out; To pay off old scores.

**2.** *Tit-bit*: Choice or dainty morsel.

**Tittle.**—**1.** *Tittle-tattle*: Gossip; silly unmeaning talk.

**Cp.** Chit-chat.

**2.** *Tittle-tattler*: a magpie; a chatter box. [See Talk].

**To.**—1. *To and fro*: (adv.) backwards and forwards  
[*Fro* = *From*].

State affairs had been guided towards definite ends, now they drifted *to and fro* in confusion.—*PROTHERO*.

**Cp.** Back and forth. (Driven) from post to pillar.

2. A peculiar use of "to" as broken form of the Infinitive, the verb that ought to follow being understood.

A friend of mine once asked Queen Victoria if when a Prime Minister resigned she named his successor. 'Not when I ask him to' was her Majesty's significant reply.—*RUSSELL*.

**Token.** *By this token* or *And more by token*: (a parenthetical conjunctive adverb). Moreover; In corroboration of what has been said.

And what is greater evidence, proof, or testimony.

Whether it were St. George I cannot say but surely a dragon was killed there for you may see the mark—yet where his blood ran down, *and more by token* the place where it ran down is the easiest way up the hill-side.—*T. HUGHES*

**Told.** *All told*: (adj.) Every thing being included in counting or calculation.

It was only a retail business on which not more than £500 *all told* had been spent in advertising.—*K. SHORTER*.

**Tom.** 1. *Tomboy*: A romping girl; A hoyden.

2. *Tomfoolery*: Foolish trifling; foolish indulgence in noisy vanity; Rollicking fun. **Cp.** Racketing (about).

**Tongue.** 1. *To give tongue*: To speak out, To throw off reserve.

Give it understanding but no tongue.—*SHAK.*

2. *To hold one's (or the) tongue*: To keep silent.

'Tis seldom seen that senators so young

Know when to speak and when to hold their tongue.—*DRYDEN*.

To keep one's tongue between one's teeth To bridle the tongue.

3. *He has a long tongue*: is over-talkative.

4. *Tongue-tied*: Debarred from speaking out. Dumb, Art made *tongue-tied* Authority.—*MILTON*.

**Teeth.**—1. He struggled *tooth and nail*: (adv.) with most vigorous effort. [*Lit* by the biting and scratching.]

2. *In the teeth* of (any opposition or adverse circumstance,) In spite of; in utter defiance of; In direct antagonism with. [Beware of using the singular "Tooth".]

It becomes no man to nurse despair, but in *the teeth* of clenched antagonism to follow up the worthiest till he die.—TENNYSON.

*Cp.* In the face of.

4. To *cast (anything) in a person's teeth*: To reprehend him for it. To taunt him with it.

Selfishness was *thrown in the teeth* of these would-be patriots.

5. To *escape by the skin of one's teeth*: (adv.) narrowly. [See Skin].

6. To *show one's teeth*: To assume a defiant or threatening attitude like a snarling dog.

The first shot killed a son of S. G. H.—but this was only a *showing of their teeth*.—PROTERO.

7. He is *armed to the teeth*: (adv.) completely; most elaborately. *Cp.* From head to foot; From top to toe; *cap-a-pie*.

8. To *set one's teeth on edge*: cause an unpleasant feeling or dislike (*Lit*, tingling or grating sensation). [See Edge.]

9. To *set the (or one's) teeth (for)*: To get into firm determination:

Every component part of the empire must be prepared to *set its teeth* for a mighty effort.—LLOYD GEORGE.

**Top.**—1. *At the top of the tree*: (pred. adj.) occupying the foremost place (in one's calling or profession).

*Cp.* The first rung of the ladder.

The first pot-hook on the crane.

So, he came out at *the top* of his class.

2. He *has topped his part*: outstripped himself.

3. He *ran at the top of his speed*: with the *fullest* speed that he could command.

So he called at *the top of his voice*.

4. To *topple over*: (V. I.) To totter and fall. (V. T.) cause thus to fall.

5. (To turn) *topsy-turvy*: (adv.) with head downwards.

Cp. Upside down; Higgledy-piggledy (into a state of confusion); also, noun as *in-topsy-turvy* i. e. in utter confusion.

Cp. Inside out; Heels over head.

**Toto** 1. *In toto*: (adv.) wholly; altogether.

In his opinion the Indian who adopts *in toto* the culture the thought, the ways and modes of life of the west is something artificial—a mere mimic of a man, whose soul has become atrophied leaving a mere empty husk.—LORD RONALDSHAY.

2. To differ *toto cælo* (Lat. adv.): By an immense distance. [Lit., by the whole heaven].

**Toss** 1. Let us *toss up*: (V. I.) decide by *throwing up* a coin, i. e. by the side turned up when it falls.

Hence, the noun in "To win the toss."

2. It is quite a *toss* or *toss-up* whether he comes or not: (adj.) i. e. doubtful or uncertain.

It was a *toss-up* whether Gladstone resigned or not, and that, if he did it would break up the liberal party—RUSSELL.

3. To *toss off*: (V. T.) To swallow *at one gulp*.

To drink hastily or *at one draught*. (Fig.) To despatch (any work) *rapidly* or without apparent effort.

4. To *toss oars*: To salute by raising them perpendicularly with the blades uppermost.

**Touch** 1. To *touch on* (or upon) a subject: To treat it rather *briefly*.

2. To *touch off* a sketch: To make it *hastily*, also, To *touch persons off*: To be more than a match for them.

3. To *touch up* (a picture, written composition &c.) To give *finishing touches* to; To correct; To emend.

4. (To keep) *in touch with*: (To remain) in sympathy or personal correspondence with (a person); not to cease such correspondence.



By reading fiction we attempt to *put ourselves* into touch with numberless phases of human nature—PIONEER.

So, *out of touch with* = not having sympathy or intercourse with. Not well acquainted with.

5. To *touch a person home*: To affect him with tender feeling. To cause pain or anger.

So, to touch him to the quick To touch him on a raw or tender part.

5A. To *put to the touch* (i. e. touchstone used for testing alloys of gold): (V. T.) Put to the test; Test.

Time after time we find him (Nelson) *putting it to the touch* to win all or lose all that he had already gained—PIONEER.

6. To *touch pitch*. (Fig.) To be concerned in transaction of *dubious honesty* or with persons of such character.

Cp. To stir the mud.

7. It was *touch and go*: (n) an exceedingly narrow miss or escape. So, *a near touch*.

Cp. A close shave, a narrow or near squeak. A hairbreadth escape also used as adj e g. we were *touch and go* all the time [applied to something such as an accident which had almost happened].

**Tout.** *Tout ensemble* [Fr.] n.; the thing viewed as a whole (fig) Its general effect.

Hunt for the remedy that in its patho-genesis contains what is called *the tout ensemble* of the case:—DR E. B. NASH.

**Town.** 1. A man about town: A fashionable idler in a city.

This is a contemporary description of Lord Beaconsfield's conversation in those distant days when as a young man about town he was talking and dressing his way into social fame—RUSSELL.

2. *Town and gown*: (n. pl.) Non-members and members of a University.

**Toy.** 1. To make a toy of (a hobby): To occupy oneself with (what after all is trifling) as if it were a serious thing.

Also, To follow an occupation in a trifling or careless manner

2. To *toy with* : To deal with in a trifling manner.

A sciolist simply *toys with* a subject without being able to concentrate on any thing.

- Trace.** 1. *In the traces* : In harness (Lit & fig).

2. To *kick over the traces* : (fig) To become insubordinate or recusant or recalcitrant.

- Track.** 1. I am *on his track* : (Pred adj). *Lg.* in pursuit of him. (Fig) In possession of clue to his conduct.

2. The fellow has *made tracks* : departed quickly.

3. The speaker was *off the track* : deviated or digressed from the subject.

**Cp.** Off the scent; off the trail.

**Trail.**—1. A *trail of smoke* : Line of smoke gradually expanding itself.

2. To *follow in the trail of* : To follow behind or in the rear of. (Fig.) To take as example.

**Cp.** To follow in the wake of. To follow suit.

**Train.**—1. To put a scheme *in train* : in working order.

**Cp.** To brew a mischief, rebellion &c; To dig a mine.

**Tramp.**—1. We missed the train and had to *tramp it* : Walk on foot; trudge [*It is indefinite for journey.*]

2. To *go on the tramp* : To be a vagabond.

The most steady of minds will sometimes *go on the tramp*.—

**Treat.**—1. To *treat of* (a subject) : To deal with, To discuss; To handle.

[Beware of changing *of* into *on*. But after the noun *treatise* *on* is rightly used as a treatise on Algebra].

2. I will *treat you to dinner* : supply it at my expense.

3. To *treat oneself to*.

4. He *stood treat to* the ladies at a grand hotel. Bore all the expenses of their entertainment. [no article before 'treat'.]

**Trim.**—1. A thing is *in trim* : in good order.

**Contra.** Out of trim.

**2.** I am in no trim for work today: in the right state of health.

So, I am in no trim for receiving visitors just now. i. e. in a fit or proper state of dress.

**3.** To trim a person up: To make him neat in dress or appearance.

**Trip.** **1.** To trip over an obstacle: To make a false step or stumble over it.

**2.** I caught him tripping in any matter, calculation &c.: detected him in committing mistakes or moral deviation.

The C. I. D. men tried to catch the suspect tripping but he never tumbled into their traps.

**3.** To trip up a person: To cause him to fall or stumble.

He was tripped up; (fig) detected in blunder.

We should never get on together - Gladstone would always be quarrelling with me, and I should be thinking he wanted to trip me up -  
SIR STAFFORD NORTHCOTE.

**True.** **1.** True to an ideal, type, principle etc: Accurately conforming to.

He is true to his words.

He is true to himself: adhering faithfully to his honour and principles.

**2.** He is a true-blue conservative: (adj) uncompromising, faithful and loyal.

Op. 'Out and out; To the backbone.

Also, used as noun.

**Trump.** Abbreviated form of 'triumph.' The trumps are the winning cards.

**1.** Trump-card: one turned up to determine which suit temporarily rank above others.

Trump-cards rank highest.

Whatever strange hazard brought the professor (W. Raleigh) into Lord Chamberlain's hand he has certainly got hold of a trump-card (i. e. most valuable assistant). - TRUTH OF INDIA.

2. To *play one's trump-card*: To make use of one's valuable resource.

The Teuton having grown desperate is determined to play one or two of his last trump-cards with the view of boasting a seeming, if not real, victory.—I. REVIEW.

So, To *hold trump*: To be lucky in having some valuable resource.

3. A person *turns up a trump*: suddenly or unexpectedly becomes a nice excellent fellow.

These circumstances have *turned up trumps*: become most lucky.

4. To *put a person to his trumps*: To reduce him to his last resource.

5. The C. I. D. officer *trumped up* several charges against that poor fellow: brought false accusations.

So, To *trump up* a story or an excuse: To forge or fabricate.

**Trumpet.** 1. He is most apt to *blow his own trumpet* sing his own praise; belaud himself.

So, To be *one's own trumpeter*,

C To be the trumpet of his own virtues as I am myself.—SHAK.

2. *Trumpet call* = *Lit.* call by sound of trumpet; (fig) a loud summons to urgent and vigorous action. Rousing sound. Clarion-call.

3. (To speak) *trumpet-tongued*: with loud sounds as of a trumpet.

his virtues

Will plead, like angels, *trumpet tongued* against

The deep damnation of his taking-off.—SHAK (Mac).

**Trust.** To *trust to* (or in): To place undue reliance on.

Do not *trust to* this broken reed. [See Reed.]

He *trusts too much* to the chapter of accidents. [See Chapter.]

Do not always *trust to* memory.

A good man should die at peace with all men and *trusting to* God's mercy.—DANIEL.

**Try.** 1. To *try on* a garment : To put it on to test if it fits when received from a tailor or seller.

2. 'It is no use *trying it on with me* : testing my power of toleration ; experimenting how much I can tolerate [*It is indefinite for trial.*]

3. To *try back* : To go back.

We have apparently missed the road ; let us *try* it out by *trying back*.

**Tub.** (To throw) *a tub to the whale* : a means of deceiving or ensnaring.

Seamen have a custom when they meet a whale to sling him out an empty tub by way of amusement to divert him from laying violent hands upon the ships.—SWIFT (Preface.)

**Tug.** *The tug of war* : (*Lit*) the fierce progress of a contest. (*fig*) The hardest part of any attempt or undertaking ; sharp contest ; Tussle.

When Greeks joined Greeks *then was the tug of war*.—N. LEE.

**Cp.** Struggle for life or death.

Hard knocks. The brunt of an action. The crux of a question.

**Tune.** 1. His debts were *to the tune of* ten thousand Rupees. To the serious or exorbitant amount of.

**Cp.** Cool ten thousand.

2. To *change one's tune* : (*Lit*) To sing another tune (*fig*) To assume a different style of language or manner (usually from insolent to respectful tone).

3. *Out of tune (with)* : not in concert, agreement, or harmony.

Sweet bells jangled *out of tune*.—SHAK.

Bells which are naturally of a sweet tone may be rung in such a way as to be *out of time with each other* and so harsh-sounding.—DAUGHTON.

The world seem somehow *out of tune* and melancholy marks you as her own on your discovery that for years you have been prancing as mountebank when you were all the time only a man.—E. NORTON.

You are *out of tune* with your surroundings.

**Contra.** In tune with.

**Turk.** To *turn Turk*: To become arrogant like the Turk.  
A proverbial phrase for any change of condition *for the worse*;  
used especially of changing one's religion.

If the rest of my fortune *turn Turk* with me. — SHAK.

**Turn.** This verb denoting *change* has both Transitive and Intransitive uses—Note the following linked together in separate brackets.

- Milk by long exposure will *turn* sour. (V. I.) }  
Long exposure will *turn* milk sour (V. T.) }

His head has *turned* with success. (V. I.)<sup>2</sup>

Success has *turned* his head (V. T.): infatuated him with elation. {

I *turned* pale at the thought—(V. I.) }

The very thought *turned* me pale. (V. T.) }

1. To *turn about*: (V. I.) To face about [*About* implies another direction. Cp. To turn round.

2. To *turn adrift* (V. T.) To expel from some place or office.

He was *turned adrift* in the world: Thrown upon his own resources.

So, To *turn away* a person. (V. T.) To dismiss, discharge, or discard.

Cp. To turn out.

3. To *turn the back*: (V. I.) To flee.

4. He *turned his back* upon me: (V. T.) ceased to show his former favour, & withdrew his assistance.

5. To *turn down* (flame or gas): To reduce it by turning the tap (V. T.).

[See *turn off* and *turn on* Infra].

6. He *turned a deaf ear* to my entreaties: Refused to comply with; did not pay any the slightest attention to.

Contra. To give ear to.

7. He usually *turns in* (V. I.) at 9 p. m. Returns home (in-adv = in<sup>2</sup>wards); goes to bed.

8. To *turn off* (gas, water, or any liquid) [V. T] To shut off by means of a stop cock.

Contra. To turn on (= To give free passage to by turning the cock or tap.)

Humorously, 'To turn on the water works : To begin to cry.  
(see turn down supra.)

8a. The printer *turned off* 1000 copies : (V. T.) Produced to complete the required number.

Cp. To turn out.

(V. I.) The road *turns off* to the right : diverges.

10. I am now *turned off* 66 i. e. Have passed this age.  
[This meaning is restricted to the *passive form*].

Also contracted into "I am now *turned* sixty six.

A man who, when *turned seventy*, could speak from the dusk of a summer evening to the dawn of a summer morning was certainly no common performer on the parliamentary stage — RUSSELL (on Lord Palmerston).

11. To *turn on* [see Turn off].

To depend on. To hinge upon. also, To become antagonistic or inimical to.

Every thing *turns on* his reply to my letter.

That soundrely friend of mine did not feel the least compunction to turn on (or against) me in this my sad bewilderment [a sudden change to hostile attitude is implied]\*

12. To *turn out* ; (V. I.) To dismiss (a person) from his office. To expel ; To cashier (a military officer). (V. I.) To prove in the sequel or result ; to be ; To result in being.

The experiment *turned out* well i. e. was a success. The affair *turned out* better : ended in better result. The tidings *turned out* to be correct.

But, for this one untimely set-back all might have *turned out* differently  
Also, At the bugle call only 20 men *turned out* : assembled.

13. To *turn round* : (V. I.) *Lit* to face about. (fig) To adopt new opinions To take to a new course of action or policy ('Round' is adv.)

14. To *turn over* : (V. I.) To change the position of the top, bottom, or side. To be upset.

(V. T.) He *turns over* Rs. 200 from this job : Earns.  
Also, To turn over the leaves (as of a book).

Hence, To *turn over a new leaf* : [See Leaf].

15. To *turn the tables on* (V. T.) or the tables turned (V. I.): [see Table].

15a. To *turn tail* [see Tail]

15b. To *turn the scale*: Lit To make one side of the balance go lower. (fig) To give superiority; To decide a question (which is in suspense) one way or another. [see Scale].

16. Though keenly expected he did *not turn up*: (V. I.) Make or put in his appearance. Appear.

The proper opportunity did not *turn up*. Happen; present itself. Mr. Micawber was generally hopeful and waiting for something to *turn up*.

(V. T.) To *dig up* (as soil for ploughing), (noun) A *turn up* of the die: a game of chance.

It is often a *turn up of the die*, in the gambling freaks of fate whether a natural genius shall turn out a great rogue or a great poet.

17. The following combinations with "Turn" as noun (= changed direction, situation, or tendency) are useful to note.

(a) *At every turn*: (adv.) Everywhere; frequently.

This war has been an Engineer's war, you see their triumphs *at every* — SIR J. MEARON

(b) The meat is done *to a turn*. (adv.) Enough and not too much, Cp. To a nicety.

(c) To do one a *good turn*: service,

(d) To do one a *bad or an ill turn*: Disservice, injury.

(e) This will *serve my turn* answer my purpose.

(f) The path is full of *turns and twists*; bends and windings

(g) A *turn of fortune's wheel* = change of luck.

(h) The matter *took a favourable turn* assumed a new pleasant aspect. [M. B.—The idiom does not allow of "take" being changed "into assume"].

(i) My friend is of a *humorous turn*: position or bent.

(j) The milk is *on the turn*: just turning sour.

(k) Let us *take a turn* in the Park; stroll or short walk.

M. B.—Let us *take turns* (pl.) = work alternately.

(l) One's *turn*; Proper or allotted time coming successively to each of several persons.

It is *my turn* to speak now; if you speak, it will be out of your



(m) You all will get your doles *in turn* : (adv.) successively. I will take *in turn* the matters that have caused Lord Curzon's unpopularity. (i. e. their turn has come)

To every one of these mercenary lords Timon applied in *their turn* (i. e. successively) — LAMB.

Our work is to train citizens for a free India, not clerks whose value lies in their servility and whose aim is to become petty tyrants in *their turn*. — MRS. BESANT.

Matters political, social, religious, artistic, and industrial, claimed his (the Crown Prince's) attention *in turn* — TIMES.

(n) *By turns* : (adv.) alternately; one after another in rotation.

In blowing hot and cold one is favourable and unfavourable *by turns*.

Cp (To work) *turn and turn about* (adv.) alternately. (To fight) *watch and watch* : (adv.) Taking alternate watches.

18. *Turning point* : The point at which a decisive change takes place.

In September 1812 the French army entered Moscow. A month later they evacuated the smoking ruins of the city and began that retreat which proved the *turning point* in the fortunes of Napoleon. — PROTHERO.

The adhesion of the new ally is the *turning point* of the war.

So, crisis (of a disease); Tide (of a career).

19. This is a *well-turned* phrase. Elegantly formed.

**Turtle.** *To turn (the) turtle* (V. I.) To capsize (as turtles do when struck or threatened to be struck).

The driver who has had two prior narrow escapes when a Garrett engine *turned turtle* is seriously injured — LEADER.

**Twee'dle.** *Tweedledum and Tweedledee* : (Difference between) two things which differ only in name.

Exclude Homerule and there is hardly the difference of *tweedledum* and *tweedledee* between the two parties.

Cp. Distinction without difference [see Distinction].

## U

**Unction.** To lay a specific (= that) flattering unction

to one's soul [The expression is taken from Shakespeare's *Hamlet* Act III. sc. 4].

- Mother, for love of grace  
Lay not that flattering unction to your soul,  
That not your trespass, but my madness speaks.

i. e. Do not try to soothe your soul by imagining to yourself that it is not your sin but any madness which calls aloud in this way. — DAUGHTON.

- Cp. To solace oneself with (the thought or idea).

**Un.** Some oft-used expressions with "un" as prefix to words. —

1. This is *unbecoming* a gentleman (prep).
2. The statement is *undeserving* of belief (pred. adj).
3. He uttered those words in *an unguarded moment* (adv.) when he was *off his guard*: unprepared against his own injuries; thoughtlessly; incautiously.

4. This is the most *unkindest* cut of all, as inflicted by one's dearest friend.

[Shakespearean use of double superlative.]

5. An *unlooked-for* incident: (adj) unexpected.

6. He is *unsettled in his mind*: liable to change his opinion; vacillating.

7. *With unsparring hand*: (adv) Liberally; unstintedly.

Cp. Without stint or measure.

8. *Unwept* (adj) grammatically *unwept for* = no one shedding tears for him. 'To weep' is (V. I.), so in order to be used in the passive form the preposition *for* ought to follow.

The wretch, concentrated all in self shall go down

To the vile dust from whence he sprung

*Unwept, unhonoured and unsung* — SCOTT'S LAY.

**Under.** [Singly or in combination as preposition it is opposed to "over" so, we think *over-proud* and *under honest*. — SMAR.]

1. *Undercurrent*: an *unperceived* influence of a *thwarting* nature.

2. *Under-sized person*: a dwarf not up to the normal size; a shrimp; a podge.

3. *Under-teacher* : an usher at a school.

**Unless.** [Conjunction = *If not*, or *except when*.]

*Unless and until* : [strengthened form of either word.]

**Contra** : *if and when*.

**Up.** 1 *It is all up* (or *over*); *It* is indefinite for situation of affairs generally (pred. adj.): *completely done* i.e. ruined. Ruin and destruction.

2 *It is all up with the villains* : They are in a *hopeless* situation.

But, *up with you*, (Imp mood) Get up. **Contra**, *down with him* (kill him).

3. To *come up with* a person (in a journey, ride, competition &c.) (V T) To overtake.

4. *The time is up* : The allotted time is past (*over*) or exhausted.

5. *Up and about*. (pred adj.) Risen from bed and moving about.

So, *up and doing* out of bed and actively engaged in some work.

Let us then be *up and doing*.

With a heart for any fate.

Still achieving, still pursuing,

Learn to labour and to wait.—LONGFELLOW.

**Sp.** Plough deep, while the sluggard sleep.—B FRANKLIN.

6. *Up in arms* : [See **Arm**.]

7 Dispensaries are now moving *up and down* : (adv) Here and there. In every direction.

8. *The ups and downs* : (*Lit & fig*) Rise and fall (of parties). So, (of life) alternate success and failure. Prosperity and adversity. Vicissitudes. **Sp.** Fortune's wheel.

" " " for thou hast been

A man that fortune's buffets and rewards,

Hast ta'en with equal thanks.—SHAK (H.)

1a. (a) *Up to* (a definite time) : *until*.

{“ Until” may be construed either as *exclusive* or *inclusive* of the day to which it is applied according to the context and subject.—J. GRAYSON.]

(b) He *lives up to his income*: To the farthest limit of his earnings, i. e. spends *all*.

(c) I do not *feel up to work*; He is *up to any thing*: Equal to it; about to carry it out.

What tricks have you been *up to*? (i. e. playing)

[N. B.—“up to = engaged in or about to do or in condition for] Differentiate *up to* = accomplished at; versed in.

Q. *Up to date*: (adj) *fully* abreast of the present day requirements and surroundings.

The war is *fitted up* on the most *up to date* lines.—STATSMAN.

An *up-to-date* edition of a book &c.

[In the expressions: He is *posted up to date*, the edition is brought up to date; no hyphen is to be used as “up” is joined with “posted”.]

Cp. Brought down to the present time.

**Upas.** *Upas tree*: a tree of Java yielding a poisonous sap whose exhalations were formerly believed to be destructive of whatever came under its branches [The combination is often used figuratively].

Ireland is shadowed and blighted by an *Upas tree*.—GLADSTONE.

**Upside.** 1. To be *upside* with a person: on an equal footing with him.

[“s” is adverbial suffix as in “towards” *Inwards, needs, friends* &c.]

2. (To turn) *upside down*: (adv) In complete disorder. Topsy turvy: *Lit* Inverted (= up—so—down.)]

Sixty years afterwards a school fellow remembered seeing William Gladstone turn his glass *upside down* and decline to drink a coarse toast proposed.—RUSSELL.

**Use.** 1. *Of use*: (adj) useful; negatively, *of no use*: quite useless.

2. *Use and wont*: (n) Established custom.

**Usher.** 1. To *usher in*: To show in; Hence, to precede; to introduce.

I was ushered in to his presence.

The peal of thunder threatens to usher in the Day of Judgment.

Pain in the back and limbs ushers in fevers and small pox.—MOORE.

A fine light morning ushered in an exciting day.

2. To usher a person out.

Simmons bows assent and ushers the woman out.—DIKENS.

## V.

**Vain** *In vain* : (adv) To no purpose ; without effect.

Except the Lord keep the city, the watchman waketh in vain.

Except the Lord build the house they labour in vain that build it.

**Vantage** *The vantage ground* : Position or opportunity on which one has the advantage (over others).

No pleasure is comparable to the standing upon the vantage ground of truth.

**Cp.** *Caigne of vantage* To get to the windward of ; To have the weather gauze of,

**Variance**. To be *at variance (with)* : Disagreeing ; Differing ; in dispute. Inconsistent, Incongruous.

**Varnish**. To *varnish right and puzzle wrong*. (V. I.) To quibble ; To prevaricate.

**Veer**. He has *veered round* (V. I.) Changed his mind ; Taken the opposite view or side.

[Met from wind changing].

**Veil**. 1. A woman *takes the veil*. BECOMES A NUN.

2. *Beyond the veil* : (pred adj) on the other side of death ; In the next world. Dead and gone.

All my true friends are beyond the veil—There is not one left to me now.—SIR J. HAWKINS.

**Contra**. In the land of the living.

3. Let us *draw a veil over* this ugly and unpleasant incident : (V. T.) conceal ; mask.

**Vein.** 1. The criticisms were in the same vein, showed the same tendency or spirit.

2. I am not in the vein for going out disposed.

In the mood or humour.

**Vengeance.** 1. To cry to heaven for vengeance, i. e. To wail and invoke divine retribution.

2. With a vengeance (adv) In a higher degree than was expected. In the fullest sense

Here is packing with vengeance —SHAK

Here is German culture with a vengeance —STATSMAN

A hundred years ago the dramatic critic could criticize with a vengeance

Cap. With a witness Inexorable

[Note A person takes vengeance on a wrong doer for the wrongs done to him, or revenges himself on him]

**Venture.** 1. At a venture (adv) At random.

2. To venture on or upon a thing. To venture to do it.

**Verbum.** *Verbum sap.* [An abbreviated form of the Latin *verbum sap sapienti* = A word is sufficient for a wise man] From one word or a hint a really wise man infers the rightful meaning.

**Verge.** 1. This step verges on destruction closely approaches.

2. On the verge of ruin or destruction on the brink or border of.

In early life Thomas Chalmers had hovered on the verge of atheism.—P

**Vest.** 1. Law has vested the power of conferring degrees in the vice-chancellor of the university.

2. Law has vested the vice chancellor with the power.

3. Vested right or interest or estate: An immediate fixed right &c. of possession subject to no contingency.

The Labour party is fully aware that land reorganisation can only be done in the teeth of the most powerful vested interests. Land nationalisation is a vital necessity.—L. MANIFESTO.

*The vested interests in the hill stations of India have grown too strong to be entirely ignored.*—*ENGLISHMAN.*

*The vested interests of the Indian bureaucracy are in jeopardy.*  
[Also, see the quotation under “(at) Once”]

*These reforms have been too long delayed on account of the unwillingness of those who have been in power to part with vested rights and privileges.*—*I. REVIEW.*

**View.** 1. (To have or keep) *in view*: within range of sight.

2. (To present any thing) *to the view*: to the sight.

Note the omission of the article in (1).

3. *With the view of*: for the purpose of. Cp. with an eye to.

4. *With a view to* or *in view to*: In order to obtain some object *in the future* [A noun not an *Infinitive* follows as object]

Christ commanded his first followers to heal the sick and give alms, but he commands the Christians of this age, if we may use the expression, to investigate the causes of all physical evil, to master the science of health, to consider the question of education *with a view to* health, the question of labour *with a view to* health, the question of trade *with a view to* health.

Carecloth is a cloth dipped in wax and used for wrapping corpses *with a view to* their preservation.

Act now *with a view to* then.—*BISHOP WILKINSON* (to Gladstone).

5. *In view of*: considering the *present* state of things, feeling &c.

*In view of* recent developments we do not think the step advisable.

6. The goods intended for sale are *on view*: (pred adj) placed out to be seen; exhibited.

**Virtue.** 1. *By or in virtue of* a power: On the strength of.

The Bishops of that day were *in virtue of* their wealth, their secular importance and their professional cohesiveness, a formidable force in the life of the Church.—*RUSSELL.*

2. *To make a virtue of necessity*: [See Necessity].

**Vogue.** 1. *In vogue* (or fashion): (adj) Prevalent or established; generally current. [To be *in vogue* (V. I.) = To obtain. To prevail.]

2. To get or have *rogue* (V. I.).

The show of puppets moved by strings And such *rogue* in Italy and are still popular.

So, To come into *rogue*:

Draw *come*, we are told, *also rogue* in the Garden of Eden.—OVO.

**Voices.** 1. The still small voice: i. e. of conscience.

2. That still and solemn voice: i. e. of death.

That still and solemn voice to which we must all one day listen whi-  
pered to him "Come" and he went.—TIMES (on Dickens).

**Volume.** To speak *volum-s* (for): (V. I.) To be fully significant of; to be abundant evidence (of).

It spoke *volumes* in favour of those who brought the institution into its present state.—CHRONICLE.

That he no action under such grave provocation speaks *volumes* for his forbearance.

Note "S" is the adv. suff. r. [*Volumes* (adv.) = Voluminously].

## W.

**W.** The three *w's*: The mystery of existence: The eternal questions whence? and why? and whither?

**Waifs.** The *waifs and strays*: destitute persons with no settled home nor means of subsistence. Esp. unowned and abandoned children; wastrels.

Cp. Street Arabs. Odds and ends.

**Wait.** 1. To wait upon (usually a superior person): To give a formal call.

Also to await the convenience of (any person):

2. To be in waiting (for): In attendance.

3. To lie in or lay in wait for (an enemy): To lie in ambush for a surprise attack or. To ambuscade. To waylay. (fig.) To lay snares or make insidious attempts.

**Wake.** In the wake of: (Lit.) Following behind; In the rear of: (fig.) After the example of



**Walk.**—1. I *Walked him off his legs*: tired him out.

2. A *walk-over* (n.) A victory gained without real competition.

It would be a certain seat if I would do them the honour of coming forward. There would be little trouble, and it would almost be a *walk-over*.  
SIR H. HAWKINS

So, *A ride over*. Cp. To win at a canter.

**Wall.** 1. To *go to the wall*: (V. 1) To get the worst of a contest. To be worsted or ruined To be pushed aside.

The weakest *goes to the wall*.—SHAK.

There was a hitch somewhere which soon developed into a split; and it was certain some of us must *go to the wall*.—SIR H. HAWKINS.

2. To *push or thrust* (a person) *to the wall*: To crush by superior force.

Cp. To drive into a corner, To corner.

3. To *have one's back to the wall*: To make a determined stand.

So, *with one's back to the wall*: (adv) alone against odds.

*With our backs to the wall* and believing in the justice of our cause, each one of us must fight on to the end.—MARSHAL HALL.

Cp. Brought to bay.

4. To *run one's head against a wall*: To attempt impossibilities.

5. *Walls have ears*: possibly there are secret listeners outside the room. Eaves-droppers may overhear.

6. *Handwriting on the wall*: [See Handwriting].

**Walnut.** *Over the walnuts and the wine*: At dessert. [Tennyson used 'across' instead of "over" in the Miller's Daughter]: In post-prandial talk or speech.

**Wane.** His influence is *on the wane* (adj): waning; declining, decreasing.

There was a time when England's supremacy in engineering was *on the wane*.—SIR J. MASON.

**War.** 1. England is at war with Germany : Engaged in hostilities with.

2. To *make war on or against* : To wage war with or against.

Those who loved their race a little *made war against* its enemies and oppressors.—ECCO HOMO.

3. To put on *the war paint* : [Savages usually paint their body before battle.] (fig) To dress oneself up in an attractive or gorgeous fashion for a purpose.

Cp Full fig ; Full dress.

**Ward.** To *word off* a blow : (V. T.) To parry ; (fig a danger or mischance) To avert ; To keep off.

**Wash.** 1. To *wash one's hands* of (V. T.) [See Hand].

2. To *wash one's dirty linen in public* : To discuss unpleasant domestic quarrels before strangers.

Contra : wash one's dirty linen at home . To keep quiet about such quarrels.

Cp. Skeleton in one's cupboard.

3. That argument *won't wash* : will not bear examination.

Contra : To hold water ; To pass muster.

**Waste.** 1. To *lay* (a country) *waste* : (V. T.) To devastate ; To depredate ; To despoil.

2. To *run to waste* : (V. I.) To be wasted or become useless from want of care or skill.

Much of the water supplied by the Board *runs to waste*.

All the care and attention I bestowed upon him has *run to waste*,

3 The land *lies waste* : is uncultivated.

Hence, the noun . "A dreary waste expanding to the skies"—GOLDENITE.

4. *Waste basket* or *waste paper basket* ; one into which papers already used which have become useless (or waste odds and ends) are thrown.

Cp. (To consign to) scamp-heap.

**Watch.** 1. (To fight) *watch and watch* : (adv) In alternate watches. [The repetition signifies alternation. Cp Turn and turn about.]

To be *on the watch* : (pred adj) wakeful; vigilant.

3. To be *on the watch for* a thing (as opportunity): To wait for it as being *expected*.

Cp. To look out for.

4. To *watch one's time* : To wait for the right time.

Cp. Watch for ye know not the hour.—BIBLE.

5. I *watch over* that minor girl: Have protection of her. She is my ward; I am her guardian.

6. Sacrifice is the *watch-word* of the day. a short phrase expressive of the ruling principle of a party, community &c.

7. (To keep) *watch and ward*: [A couple used for emphasis] A guardian's control.

**Water.** 1. To *throw cold water on* (a scheme, project, enterprise &c) [See Cold]

2. *Of the first water*: of the finest quality or highest type. [It was supposed that certain kind of water conferred transparency on gems to which their brilliancy is due].

Mr. Harness was a diner out of the *first water* —RUSSELL.

Palmer, the Rugeley poisoner, was a sporting man of the *first water*.

Transferred from persons to things, e g. an achievement of the *first water*; also (facetiously) a blunder of the *first water* &c, [See First (6)].

3. This statement or argument will *not hold water* [See Hold].

**Wax.** 1. Power or influence *wax and wane* : undergo alternation of increase and decrease.

I seek not to *wax* great by other's *waning*.—SHAK.

Cp. Ebb and flow. Vicissitudes of fortune.

2. They have *waxed fat and kicked*: Through elation with too great prosperity have become haughty and unmanageable [Deut. 32 (15)].

**Way.** 1. I am *in a way* dissatisfied with your conduct: (adv) To a certain degree; somewhat; In one respect.

In a way the appointment (of Lord Chalmersford) is a surprise.—I. R.

2. *Once in a way*: [See *Once*].

3. Well established in business my friend is now in a fair way of having (or to have) a prosperous career: having a good chance for; very likely (to).

Cp. To bid fair [See *Fair*].

4. He put me in the way of completing this work: in a favourable position: gave me opportune help towards.

Did the Social equalization bring with it any thing in the way of social Amelioration?

I am conscious of the immense superiority of Indians to Englishmen in the way of acquiring foreign languages.—G. C. WHITWORTH.

Also, He did this in the way of business: in its ordinary course.

The very fact that human life, even when lived on the most exalted stage and enriched by all favouring circumstances, is so transient and frail and limited a thing should inspire one [Queen Victoria] to take it more seriously to use it more diligently, to extract from it whatever it is capable of yielding in the way, not of enjoyment, but of service.—RUSSELL.

5 (To be or stand) in the way of: serving as or proving an obstacle (to).

6. *By way of* [no article before "way"] as substitute for. As being.

Many members resigned by way of protest against the measure

Manners must adorn knowledge, and smooth its way through the world. Like a great rough diamond, it may do very well in a closet by way of curiosity, and also for its intrinsic value.—LORD CHESTERFIELD

Also, He came by way of Delhi, i. e. via.

7. *By the way*: (adv) during journey As one goes.

The hero of Virgil's poems who came to Italy after the fall of Troy passed through various adventures by the way.—CRB.

Also (Conj, as inserting an incidental or irrelevant remark): parenthetically, *En passant*.

Of this inoffensive but not brilliant prince, who, by the way, was Chancellor of the University of Cambridge, it is related that &c.—RUSSELL.

Cp. *Obiter dictum*.

8. The work is on the way: (pred adj) progressing advancing towards its completion.

9. The *other way*: (pred adj) just the opposite.

Before he (Arnold) died, in the school house at least, and I believe in the other houses, the rule was *the other way*.—T. HUGHES.

10. *Out of the way*: (adj) Extraordinary; remarkable.

This is *nothing out of the way*. [Usually with negative].

He lives in an *out of the way* corner or nook: remote, secluded.

So, To *put oneself out of the way*: To inconvenience for the sake of another.

11. To *find one's way to* (or into): (Contrive) To reach; arrive at.

It is a matter of congratulation that the thoughts of Tagore have *found their way to* the minds of thinking Japanese.—PROF. HIRAZAKI.

Has corruption (bribery) *found its way to* the seat of Judgement?

A kind of Pantheism has *found its way into* most religious and philosophical systems. Buddhism and Hinduism partake of this doctrine.

I knew now that all my Epson winnings had *found their way* once more *into* the keeper's pocket.—SIR H. HAWKINS.

12. To *give way*: (V. I.) [See Give].

Her anger might be subdued enough to *give way* to her usually strong sense of family decorum.—GEORGE ELIOT

13. To *go the way of all flesh*: To die. ["Way" is the cognate object of 'go' V. I.]

So, To *go the way of the earth* (or of nature).

14. To *go one's way*: To depart. To set out.

We are arrant knaves all; believe none of us. *Go thy ways* to nunnery

Also, To *follow one's own* settled opinion, inclination, or fancy. To act independently.

Cp. To take one's way.

15. To *make one's (own) way*: To find and keep a *successful* career (through difficulties) To advance in life by one's own exertions. To prosper.

15a. To *make way for*: To step aside so as to allow another to pass. Also fig.

Is Democracy destined to *make way for* some other type of Government?—RUSSELL. Cp. To give place to.

16. To *lead the way*: (fig) To set the example [see Lead].

17. To *pave the way for* (any thing as reform, fashion etc., ... the way of change) [See Pave].

The purpose of the Allies in the war is to *pave the way for* an international system.

The Governor of Madras was anxious to *pave the way*: to prepare the public mind, as it were, for the blow that was intended to be delivered.

18. To *wend one's way*: To go; To walk [see 'go one's way' *Supra*]

A tall Kabuli was *wending his way* slowly along the road with a few boxes of grapes in his hand.

19. *Ways and means*: Methods of providing money as devised and resorted to by financial ministers of state. Money matters.

**Weak** 1. The *weaker sex*: women generally.

2. *One's weak point (or) side*: certain *weakness of character* disabling one from resisting influences or temptations.

3. He is a *weak vessel*: cannot be depended upon.

Cp. Broken reed.

**Wear** 1. *Wear and tear*: [fig from clothes put on and the tearing caused thereby]. Damage or deterioration by *the ordinary use*.

Words suffer phonetic decay by the *wear and tear* of human speech.

Brick walls become weak after time's *wear and tear*.

Even his iron constitution was beginning to show signs of *wear and tear*.

He was bent upon compensating *wear and tear* in his health by taking a change to some salubrious climate.—FOWLER.

The iron plate protected the sole of his boot from the *wear and tear* of the spade in digging.—IBID.

2. Time *wears on* (V. I.) passes tediously.

So, Time, day, season, etc. *wears away*: passes gradually.

Cp. To wear off.

3. To *wear a person out*: (V. T.) To tire him out; To exhaust him.

So, His health is *worn out*: undermined imperceptibly.

4. To *wear down* opposition : To put it down by persistence.

5. *He has worn his years well* : Though old he looks young.

So a person wears well (V. I.)

**Weather.** 1. *Weather cock* : (fig) an inconstant person.

2. To *keep one's weather eye upon* : To remain vigilant, 'To be prepared for something expected.

Cp. To be on the look-out ; On the alert ; or Wide-awake.

3. To *weather the storm* : To resist it ; To come safely through it. Cp. To ride out.

**Wed.** To *be wedded to something* (as belief, opinion, pursuit) : To be firmly devoted to it (fig from indissolubility of marriage).

He [Christ] found society in Palestine in an especial degree *wedded* to the conventional standard.—ECCO HOMO.

The soul of the bureaucracy in India is *wedded* to "empty show"

[See the quotation under "Hit".]

**Wedge.** The *thin end of the wedge* : (fig) an initiatory move of small apparent importance but calculated to produce ultimately an important effect ; something of far greater importance than it seems [used with reference to some impending change, influence, or measure.]

[Beware of substituting *a* for *the*. A wedge has only one thin end.]

This is probably the *thin end of the wedge* and the driving home has to come.

Cp. To give an inch and take an ell.

**Weed.** *All weeds grow apace* : This is a quib on tall persons or fast growing children.

**Weep.** 1. To *weep away one's grief* : To get rid of it by weeping.

2. To *weep oneself out* : To weep one's fill [*out* = completely. V. I. has acquired transitive force followed by adv. adj.]

3. *Weeping willow* : The willow tree droops its branches

and is therefore the proper symbol for weeping or badge of lamentations (for a desolate lover)

Cp. *There is a willow grows aslant a brook* —SHAK.

**Weigh.** 1. The ship is *under weigh* : (pred adj) : moving; in motion.

2. To *weigh anchor* (V. I.) To start for voyage.

3. To *weigh down* (V. I.) To preponderate over; (fig) To oppress with something heavy.

[Usually in the passive form e. g. I am weighed down with cares]

4. This news has *weighed upon me* : produced depressing effect on my mind.

5. *Weighed in the balance* [See Balance].

6. *Dead weight* : a heavy and oppressive burden.

**Weird.** 1. *Dree one's weird* : [See Dree].

2. The *weird sisters* : The three sisters of Fate control human destiny [usually applied to witches]

The *weird sisters*, hand in hand

Posters of the sea and land.—SHAK (Macbeth).

3. *Weird creatures* : uncouth, unearthly, supernatural persons

The Sibyls were *weird women* reputed to be inspired beings

**Well.** 1. He is *a* philosopher and *a* mathematician *as well* : (adv). In an equal degree : In addition.

Cp. To boot; Into the bargain.

[Note the use at the end of the sentence.]

But, He is a philosopher *as well as* a mathematician (conj) And, also.

2. *As well* (adv). followed by a conjunctive clause with *as*. With equal reason; without worse consequence.

You might *as well* throw your money into the sea *as* lend it to an unscrupulous stranger.

*As well* be hanged for a sheep as for a lamb.

That is just *as well* : rather right or proper.

3. It was *well done* of you to have joined the ceremony, A good or praiseworthy act on your part.

*So, it speaks well of you; I wish well of you.*



But, it *speaks well* for your kindness and generosity.

4. I *stand well* with the local authorities : Am in their good graces. They have good opinion of, or are well disposed towards me.

Cp. To be in one's good books

5. (It *is*) *well and good* : [an apodosis elliptically stated after a conjunctive clause. (Protasis).]

If it come up a prize, *well and good* : and if it come up a blank (in lottery) *well and good* too.—MARRIAGE EDGEWORTH.

5a. *Well on* in life : advanced in age

Diabetes is less fatal to people *well on* in life than those of younger years. Dr. MOORE

6. ['Well' forms compound adjectives with p. p but in the active sense instead of the passive] The boy is *well-behaved*. His general behaviour is good

He is a *well-read* man : has read good many books &c

He is *well-spoken* : complaisant, polite [Speaks fairly, politely.]

7. He is now *well off* (prel. adj.) in good condition or fortunate situation especially as to property.

This (personal attendance) was a right which from its very nature, could only be exercised by men living near the place of assembly or else sufficiently *well off* to travel about the country without difficulty.—RUSSELL.

8. *Well-to-do* (adj. attributive) able to spend on good things, sufficiently rich (for any particular purpose), substantial, prosperous

It is argued that higher education is intended only for the *well-to-do* classes. This, however, is a notion entirely foreign to us.—JUSTICE KAHN

Over consumption by the affluent must not be allowed to create a shortage for the less *well to do*.—LORD GEORGE.

Cp. *Well off* (superl.)

Lord Palmerstone was in high favour with the *any-going* and the *well-to-do*—RUSSELL.

9. He is *well up in* (any subject, matter &c. e. g. Mathematics). He has received good education or training in, *sufficiently* instructed in ; proficient in. (Pred. adj.)

Cp. *Adapted* (or *fit*) ; *conversant with* ; *Expert* &c.

But, he is *well up* in the list : occupies a *sufficiently high* position in it.

10. *Well-nigh* (nished) : (adv.) almost.

11. To *let (well) alone* : [see Let].

*Wet*. *Wet bargain* : one that is closed with drink.

*What*. 1. *What next?* interrogative device to stop the narration of an absurd tale or story : broad hint that no absurdity can outdo this.

2. *And what not* : and other things too numerous to detail ; *et cetera* ; and any thing

It was not to be wondered at that women should have resorted to charlatans who professed to be able to make them beautiful with pastes, potions, washes, elixirs, cosmetics, and *what not*.—C. K. SUMNER

[Beware of using the note of interrogation at the end]

Hence the compound noun *what-not* : an article of furniture provided with shelves for light miscellaneous gimcracks.

3. *What though* : (an ellipsis =) What does it matter though! i. e. It does not matter [See Matter]. *What though we are poor?*

Differentiate "What if" = what would be the result if, e. g. What if the experiment were tried.

4. *What do you call him (or there)* : (a) This is an affirmative device in the form of an interrogative as substitute for a name that has escaped from memory.

The sym will buy me a pair of what-d'ye call'ms. So, what is his name?

Op. Thingamy.

5. *What with (this) and what with (that)* : As due or attributable *partly* to this cause and *partly* to another. (adv.)

*What with* debauchery and *what with* gambling speculation he brought utter ruin upon himself.

Op. Between this and that (or one and the other)

6. *But what* : [colloq. an incorrectly *superfluous* use of "what"—This is restricted to negative sentences. "But" is relative pronoun = who (or which) not.

Not a day comes but what makes a change.—FOYLER.

There is not a man but what likes her.—Idem.

**7. Than what :** [Though correct in accordance with the strict rules of grammar is not sanctioned by use. Just contrary to (6). "What" as compound relative should be omitted after "than"].

We want more control over our own affairs *than* [what] Government is prepared to grant.—G. C. WHITWORTH.

The supremacy is no doubt much more limited *than* [what] it used to be.—*IBID.*

I want more time *than* (what) has been allowed.

**Wheel. 1. To break a person on the wheel :** To kill (as in mediæval times) on the torturing machine on which the victim is bound.

**2. To break a fly or butterfly on the wheel :** To make a wasteful expenditure of force or power. [See Fly].

**3. Fly on the wheel :** an insignificant person who assumes an attitude of influence or importance

**4. Fortune's wheel :** vicissitudes of fortune.

**Cp.** Ups and downs.

You may be rich at the next *turn of the wheel*, i. e. Fortune's wheel - The wheel may turn or revolve in your favour.

Fortune, good night : smile once more ; *turn thy wheel* (i. e. at the bottom of which I now am )—SHAK.

The wheel is come full circle.—(i. e. the revolution of events is completed).—SHAK.

**Cp.** To whirligig or time : changes of fortune.

*The whirligig of time* brings in his revenges.—SHAK T. N.

**5. The matter went on wheels :** made smooth but rapid progress.

**6. Wheels within wheels :** (n) Intricacies; a complication of circumstances, motives and the like. Secret agencies.

**Whip. 1. To have the whip-hand of (a person) :** To be in a superior position to rule or control (him).

**2. Whipping-boy.** A boy educated with a prince and whipped or castigated as his substitute on his account.

["whipping" is not part. *adj.* but noun. forming a compound: e. g. "a church going bell"].

If the conductors of a newspaper have no self-respect and no sense of responsibility they can libel the High Court to their hearts' content and to leave an ignorant printer to serve as the *whipping-boy*.—STANMAN.

Cp. *Scapgoat*

**Whistle:** 1. *To bet one's whistle* (i. e. throat) (V. I.).  
To drink.

\*2. *So pay dear for one's whistle* To pay too high a price  
for some caprice or pleasure.

3. We may *whistle for* (something desired): vainly wish.  
Met from sailors whistling for wind when they are becalmed.]

**Whit.** *Not a whit*—No whit. (adv.). Not in the least degree.

Amid the sufferings which Bent shares with his master his cheerfulness abates no *whit*.—SHAK'S Characters. Contra. Every whit.

**White.** 1 *White lie*: Not strictly true, yet excused by the maker's motive.

Cp. Mental reservation (which includes statements for purposes of deception).—*Arriere pensee*.

2. *White witch*: one that uses her power for beneficent objects only.

3. *Whited sepulchre*. [Taken from the Bible. Matt. XXIII] (Fig). A hypocrite; A person or thing having fair exterior but dark interior. Beauty without but foulness within.

O what a goodly outside falsehood hath.—SHAK. (M. V.)

The infernal Ate in good apparel.—IBID.

The words of his mouth were smoother than butter, but war was in his heart.—PSALMS 35 (21).

Cp. A goodly apple rotten at the heart.

\*4. *To wash a blackamoor white*. To attempt an impossibility [a prolepsis].

\*4A. *Bled white* [Prolepsis] (Fig) Drained of all reserves, India was absolutely *bled white*.—LORD HARDING.

The German object is to *bleed* the French *White*.—REUTER.

**Whittle.** *To whittle down*: (V. T.) To reduce the size of (any thing or matter as scheme) by repeated strokes.

Government ought at this time *whittle down* its repressive measures, i.e. take away its rigor by slow and repeated subtractions. [From "whittle:" butcher's knife used for slicing off meat]

**Who.** *At° who should say.* [A parenthical clause inserted in a statement, "who" referring to no particular antecedent. It is used indefinitely as = one]. As though one said.

**Whole. 1.** *On or upon the whole:* (adv) Taking into consideration *every thing* that bears upon the question; altogether. After weighing *pros and cons*.

*On the whole* miracles play so important a part in Christ's scheme that any theory which would represent them as due entirely to the imagination of his followers or of a later age destroys the credibility of the documents not partially but wholly, and leaves Christ a personage as mythical as Hercules — ECKZ HOMO

The labour of life is cheered by the song of life, and the lessons of Hope are, *on the whole*, the lessons of Wisdom — GLADSTONE.

**2.** *As a whole:* In the sum total.

*Cp.* In the aggregate, In the gross.

[N B — "Whole" as adjective is not used with *proper nouns*. It is a mistake to write "Whole India" instead of "all India," which should be corrected int., "the whole of India" by changing the adjective into noun. So, The whole world.]

**3.** (He did the thing) *with his whole heart:* (adv) i. e. without minding any thing else; Most heartily; Hence the compound adj "whole-hearted" (reception), and the adv. "whole-heartedly."

*Note the articles before "whole" in*  
He gave me a whole lot of trouble;  
The golden rule is the whole morality,  
The whole world.

**Wide. 1.** The remark or answer is *wide of the mark* (or purpose); *Let*, at a considerable distance from it (*Fig*) quite irrelevant [See Mark].

Wrong imaginations are fanciful ideas *wide of the reality*. — DIXON,

Indian Gentlemen look with dismay, indeed, I do not think I should beside of the mark now if I said, look with horror upon the prospect of a further westernisation of Bengal.—**LORD RONALDSEY.**

2. **Wide awake.** (adj) alert; oute, shrewd, wary.

Harry Foker is a sporting wide-awake young sybarite in Thackeray's *Pendennis*. Cf. To know the time of day. Also, *Broad-awake*.

So, cited Silver, *broad-awake* and beaming with good nature in a moment.—**STEVANSON.**

3. **Wide berth.** [see Berth]

**Wife.** [In many compounds "wife"=woman e.g. Fish-wife; midwife, housewife]

1. This is *old wives' tale*: foolish and superstitious anecdotes indulged in by women.

1. *All the world and his wife*: All with pretensions and flash on—All [emphatically stated] without exception.

2. *To take to wife*: (V. T.) To take as wife; to marry.

**Wild** *Wild-cat scheme*: A proposition (especially in politics or business) altogether impossible or unlikely to be successful; a reckless or unsound project.

2. The report spread *like wild-fire*: (adv) very fast; so, the book sold *like wild-fire*.

**Will.** 1. *of one's own (free) will*: (adv) Deliberately, or with one's *fixed intention*; quite voluntarily.

As such creation [better moral and material surroundings] cannot be accomplished without money, the State was entitled to exact from the individual such proportion of the cost as that individual ought, but was unwilling, to contribute *of his own free will*.—**RUSSELL.**

**Contra**: Against one's will

2. *Free will*: The uncaused power of determining one's choice of action. The power to do a thing simply as one pleases without reference to causes or motives, or without constraints by necessity or fate. Spontaneity.

**Contra**. Necessity or predetermination, Fate.

My poverty consents not my will.—**SHAK.**

3. *Will power*. Control over impulse, self-control.

Mrs. Besant is the impregnation of will-power.

B. To do any thing at *will*; (adv). arbitrarily; as one pleases.

Hence a *tenant-at-will*: one liable to be evicted whenever the landlord pleases without being served with notice.

**Willow.** To wear the *willow*: i. e. to put on the garland of willow leaves, formerly the symbol of grief or mourning for one's beloved; (*fig*) for any thing lost.

Dear, you have worn the *willow* too long.

**Wind** (n)—1. What is in the *wind* now? The general talk as to a likely event.

So, there is *something* in the *wind*: signs of some secret preparation.

2. How the *wind* blows or lies: *Lit*, what is the direction of the wind; (*fig*). how matters stand; what is the state of public opinion; what developments are likely to take place.

3. The scent comes on the *wind*: - is carried by it.

4. To go or sail before the *wind*: To be driven forward by it. [see Sail].

5. The shot struck the vessel between *wind* and *water*: a the part which is below the normal water-line and above the line formed made by its heeling over under pressure of the wind.—At its vulnerable point.

6. To ride upon the *wind* or to ride the wind: To direct

God moves in a mysterious way

His wonders to perform:

He plants his footsteps in the sea,

And rides upon the storm.—COWPER.

7. The ship was sailing near the *wind* or close to the *wind*: very nearly against it. (*Fig*.) A person is said to be near the *wind* when he ventures very near some moral impropriety.

8. To get or take *wind*: (V. L.) To be rumoured; to become known. [Beware of placing an article before "wind."] ]

We should depart very early at dawn before the matter gets wind.

The C. I. D. officer's plan had taken wind and the culprit escaped.  
[Note the omission of the article.]

84. To take the wind out of another's sails: To anticipate his arguments; to frustrate him by using his material etc.  
To forestall him.

Why not take the wind out of the sails of these mischief-mongers by conceding those reforms?

Cp. To steal a march upon.

9. To get wind of: (V. T.): To get to know about; To begin to suspect.

The C. I. D. got wind of the conspiracy. [No article before "wind"]

Cp. To smell out.

10. To raise the wind: [see Raise].

11. The four winds; The four cardinal points [North, East, South, West].

The news came from the four winds i. e. from all directions.

The money was scattered to the four winds. Spent so as to be utterly irrecoverable. So, his courage went to the winds: was lost; utterly failed him.

12. To sow the wind and reap the whirlwind: To suffer the evil consequences of a recklessly bad act.

The faithless Ferdinand [King of Bulgaria] has sown the wind and is bound to reap the whirlwind, whether it blows from Berlin or Petrograd.

13. In the wind's eye: (To proceed) directly against it. So, to fall into the wind's eye.

Cp. In the teeth of the wind; In the face of the wind.

14. To hit a person in the wind: while in breathless state.

15. To get to the windward of (any vessel, thing). To avoid the smell of (being on the windward side). (Fig.) To have advantage of or over; to stand on the vantage ground.

Cp. To have the weather gauge of.

16. Wind-bag: (n) a wordy orator; a frothy speaker; a mere talker. [used also as adj].



I was anxious to return to the toilsome duties of the Law Courts with their prosaic pleadings and *wind-bag* eloquence; - SIR. H. HAWKINS.

**Cp.** Chatter box : a person (esp. a child) given to incessant foolish talk.

**17. Windfall :** (*Lit*) Fruit blown down from a tree by the wind. (*Fig*) A sudden accession to rich property as legacy from an unexpected quarter. An *unexpected* good fortune.

**Wind. (v.) 18.** The boy *wound himself into my affections* : *gradually* gained.

**Cp.** To insinuate oneself or to worm oneself into a man's favour or confidence.

**19.** To *wind up* debate or speech : To bring it to a conclusion. (V. T.)

So, *the winding up* of the plot in a play : Its conclusion; the catastrophe (in a tragedy). Denouement.

**20.** Expectation *was wound up* to a high pitch. (*Met.* from the tightening of coiled string or spring; as, "the clock requires to be wound up").

So the administration needs *winding up*. [An implication that it has become slack]

**Cp.** Expectation was on tip-toe. — DICKENS.

**21.** To *wind up* a company for some business : (V. T.) To dissolve; To close.

Also, the company has *wound up* (V. l.) — ceased to carry on its business; gone into liquidation

**22** To *wind off* : To unwind; To uncoil.

**Window.** *window dressing* : *Lit*, arrangement of articles in a shop window for show.

(*Fig.*) — The presentation of financial affairs of a business firm in the most favourable light (on the stock exchange).

My connection with the University is only valuable for *window-dressing* : It is a heavy drain on my energies to attend its various meetings. — B.

**C.** *Top-dressing* : spreading of manure on the surface of land instead of ploughing it in.

The Chancellor's (Gladstone's) mode of handling the income-tax attracted interest and admiration. It was no nicely-calculated less or more, no tinseling or top-dressing.—RUSSELL.

**Wine.** 1. *Adam's wine or ale* : simple water.

2. *New wine in old bottles* : (Fig.) New ideas and principles too powerful to be dominated by old notions. [See *Old*].

Then came that pressure almost to bursting, the new wine in the old bottles, the new society under the old institutions.—LORD MACAULAY.

**Wing.** 1. News came on the wings of the wind : very quickly ; with great swiftness.

Cp. Evil news rides post while good news waits.—MILTON.

Post haste (i. e. with great expedition.)

2. To add or lend wings to a person or movement.

To accelerate his (or its) speed.

Fear adds wings to our course

Contra : To clip one's wings,

To hamper his movements ; to check his ambitions or his lavish expenses.

Cp. To put a spoke in one's wheel ; to scotch the wheel.

3. To be on the wing : (pred. adj.) Flying (as birds). (Fig.) Travelling ; in motion.

To take wing : (V. I.) To fly off suddenly. To start flying.

[Note the absence of "the" before 'wing' and the singular number]

5. Money takes to itself wings : Flies off, imperceptively disappears because of want of control over expenditure. Note the plural].

6. The Chief Justice has taken me under his wing : promised me his patronage ; considered me as his protegee.

Cp. The ages of one's protection.

**Wink** 1. To wink at a person : To close one's eye for a moment as sign of intimation for carrying out a prearranged plan.

2. To wink at a thing, that ought to be opposed. (e. g. a

fault omission, abuse etc.)

Cp. To connive at, To slur over.

3. I had not a *wink* of sleep: no sleep at all (even with half closed eyes). So, I did not *sleep* a *wink*.

4. *Forty winks*: Brief and light sleep; nap.

**Wire**.—1. To pull the wires: [see Pull].

2. [Hence, the compound noun] *wire-puller*: One who has secret influence over affairs (especially in politics.)

As for Patriotism it is turned on like beer at election times or worked like a mechanical doll by *wire pullers*.—G. W. E. RUSSELL.

**Wish**.—1. He *wishes me well*: is well-inclined towards me. S. I have *wished well to my country*: been a patriot. Hence the noun my "*well wisher*."

Contra. To wish me ill; To wish ill to (me).

2. To *wish for*. To express desire for.

He has 'nothing left to *wish for* or he would not *wish for* any thing better.

Hence the adj a *wished-for* object, 'success' etc.

3. You have my *good wishes* i. e. blessings; benediction. I hope you may be happy and prosperous.

4. I *wish you joy* on your good luck: congratulate you, [But to wish a person joy of a thing is a sort of sarcasm that it may prove an *unhappy* possession. Cp. Frankenstein's monster.]

**Wit**.—1. To *wit*: (adv.) Namely; *v. delictet* (*viz.*) *scilicet* (*sc.*); That is to say.

2. To *live by one's wits*: To earn one's living by shifts as one without a regular means of living.

But the very spectacle of the imperuniques led who *live by his wits* or his wealthier congener who wears a fortune in jewellery, only serves to throw into high and admirable relief the better, if rarer, type on which "build my hopes for the future of this country,—RUSSELL.

Cp. *Hand to mouth shifts*,

3. He *has his wits about him*: is guided by his intelli-

gence. His intelligence has not forsaken him; is keenly observant.

**Contra.** He is *out of his wits*: distracted.

4. He is *at his wit's end*: (pred. adj.) Quite confounded; unable to think further. "Stumped."

They reel to and fro and stagger like a drunken man and are at their wit's end.—**PSALMS.**

**Cp.** At a loss. On the horns of a dilemma.

5. *Wit and humour*: Faculty of exciting mirth and laughter. Facetious imagination:

[Wit is more intellectual and less sympathetic than Humour].

**Withers.** *Our withers are unwrung*: (*Lit.*) We escape being hurt. (*Fig.*) We who are innocent need not complain. The imputation made does not touch us.

(Withers = the ridge between the shoulder blades of a horse on which the strain of the collar falls).

Let the galled jade wince, our withers are unwrung.—**SHAK.**

**Contra.** When I asked an eminent educationist what Harrow produces, he replied "A certain shy bumptiousness." It was a judgment which *wrung my Harrobian wither*.—**ROBERT.**

**Witness.—1.** (To do a thing) *With a witness*: (adv.) Effectually; so as to leave some mark as a testimony behind. Here is packing *with a witness* to deceive us all.—**SHAK.**

**Cp.** With a vengeance.

2. *In witness* whereof I set my hand and seal to this document: (adv.) as confirming which.

The Monument stands *in witness* of the event (the Great Fire).

3. *To call Heaven to witness*: To appeal to Heaven for confirmation.

**Cp.** In the name of God (Invoking God to witness).

So, witness (sup. mood) Heaven = I call Heaven to witness that.

**Woe.—1.** *Woe is me*: I [an ungrammatical use apparent by 'to' being taken as understood after 'is']: A cry of *Alas* (interjection).

O, woe is me

To have seen what I have seen, to see what I see.—**SHAK.**

[This use is restricted to first person singular.]

2 *Woe be to you*: [an imprecation.] A curse upon you; may woe befall you

3 *Woe worth the day*: [worth as archaic = befall.] May the day be cursed

Cp. *Woe the while*

4 *Woe-begone* (person, face etc.): Weighed down with sorrow; dismal looking. [Indicating sad surroundings.]

**Wolf**—1 *To keep the wolf from the door*: To avoid dying of hunger and want. To avert starvation.

At the present time the great profession of teaching is only regarded as a form of employment which will *keep the wolf from the door* until brief comings in or some other permanent occupation be secured — LORD CHELMSFORD

2 *To cry wolf*: To raise false alarms too often until the genuine ones are disregarded. To set up false cries of danger too often until they are unheeded or poohpoohed when the real danger comes.

Cp. *To flatter the dove-cote*.

3. *He is a wolf in sheep's clothing*: a hypocrite; a wicked person wearing the garb of innocence or disguised.

Cp. *Look like the innocent flower,*

*But be the serpent under it*. — SHAK (Mc).

*The infernal Ate in good apparel* — SHAK (M, A, V)

4. *To hold the wolf by the ears*. To be in such difficult situation that one can neither advance nor retreat nor even stop. Cp. *To take the bull by the horns*.

**Woman**—1 *Woman's reason*: no reason at all; the fallacy of *Petitio Principii* e.g.

*I take the case to be fatal because it is fatal,*

Cp. *Begging the question*.

2. *Woman hater*: A misogynist.

**Wonder**.—1. *For a wonder he had no fall*: (adv.) As a wonderful thing [used in connection with a fact which is contrary to expectation]

Cp. *Oddly enough. Strangely enough. Strange to say.*

2. *No wonder*: [contraction of 'It is no wonder that'] (adj.) Quite natural; happening as a matter of course. Nothing to cause surprise.

3. *Signs and wonders*: miracles.

4. *To do or work wonders* ['s' is to be taken as adverbial suffix]: To do surprisingly well; to achieve remarkable success.

**Wood.**—1. I cannot see *wood foretrees*: (*Fig*) Fail to take a view of the general aspect owing to too numerous details.

2. *Wood-cock*: a kind of game-bird allied to the snipe that easily falls into snares. (*Fig.*) A person having little brain; a fool; a simpleton; a gudgeon.

*Ay, springes (snares) to catch wood cocks.*—SHAK (H.)

3. *Woolen spoon* (Formerly at Cambridge) the prize conferred on the *lowest* mathematical graduate in a college list. [Distinguished from *Wrangler* and *Optime*] i. e. no scholar; a mere pass without honours or distinction.

A State Railway train probably *holds the woolen spoon* in the matter of rapidity. — STREESMAN. i. e. travels more slowly than others.

4. *Born with a wooden biddle* in one's mouth; in poverty, **Contra.** Silver spoon [See Silver.]

**Wool.**—1. He was *wool-gathering*: (pred. adj.): absent-minded.

2. *His wits have gone a wool-gath'ring*: He is in a state of bewilderment; engaged in a foolish or frivolous pursuit; indulging idle fancies

But with a heart like Garibaldi's a man may well afford to allow his brain to go a wool-gathering. — TIMES,

3. *All cry—no wool.* — [Butler's *Hudibras*.] [Reference to a sheared hog]

So, much cry and little wool: The result is quite disproportionate to promises and professions. All the bravado has ended in fiasco.

*Cp.* Tall talk: (*Braggadocio*) Empty vaunting.

4. *I went for wool and came home shorn*: in expectation of prizes: (in a lottery or gambling) I lost all the money hazarded.

5. *To draw the wool over one's eyes*: To hoodwink or overreach him.

(p To turn the tables upon.

**Word.**—1. *Sharp is the word*: Hurry on. Cp. Look sharp. Butesharp words = angry talk; high words.

2. *In a word*. (adv.) Briefly speaking;

*In a word*, Lord Rosebery is one of the most agreeable talkers of the day.—RUSSELL.

3. *I have a word with you*: I want to converse with you briefly. I want a short interview. [Mark the singular.]

4. *I had words with him*: quarrelled with him. So, *we had words*: quarrelled. [Mark the plural.]

Cp From words we proceeded to blows,

5. *I have a word to say*: something worth hearing.

6. *He is a man of his word*: keeps his promises,

Contra A break-vow or a promise breaker.

Cp. As good as his words.

7. *He is a man of few words*: Taciturn.

Cp. He has not a word to throw at a dog: His taciturnity shows haughty indifference.

8. *To take a person at his word*: To assume that he means what he says. [Not to be used in the plural number.]

9. *Upon my word*: (Imperative mood) Believe what I say. I assure you or (adv.) certainly; assuredly. Also, on my honour.

Cp. Word of honour: a statement as good as a bond.

10. *Upon the word*: as soon as the utterance has been made.

Cæsar said to me "Darest thou, Cassius, now  
Leap in with me into this angry flood  
And swim to yonder point?" *Upon the word*

Accoutred as I was, I plunged in  
And bade him follow.—SHAK (J. C.)

Cp. No sooner said than done.

11. (To copy, repeat, or reproduce) *word for word* (adv.):  
verbatim; exactly as written or printed.

12. To *say a good word for one*: To commend or defend  
one.

13. To *give a person one's good word*: To recommend him  
for a post or patronage in the gift of another.

14. *By word of mouth*: orally; not in writing.

Could you not have made known your objects *by word of mouth*.

15. *Word-pictures*. Beautiful and vivid description;  
Imagery.

16. Words of learned length and thundering sound,—  
(GOLDSMITH) i. e. BOMBAST.

**Work.**—1. To *work* a person or oneself *into* some emotion;  
To excite such feeling *artificially and gradually* in him.

Mr. Bauerjous has the art of *working* his audience into enthusiasm.

2. To *work off* (V. T.) To get rid of (as rage, bad temper etc.)

3. To *work out* a sum, problem etc.: To solve by  
mathematical process of calculation.

Also. To effect (a result) by *continued* labour.

He *worked out* his salvation.

Again, To elaborate (as scheme); to plan details of.

The financial member has *worked out* a scheme of Income Tax which  
gives general satisfaction.

[Note. the intransitive use in "The scheme will not *work out*"].

4. A person is *worked out*: is exhausted with work.

[Note. the passive form].

Cp. To be done up. To be knocked up.

5. To *work up* (a story etc.) To elaborate.

Also [in the p. p. use] *wrought up*: Excited by degree  
cp. to (1)].



He is in a highly wrought up state (i. e. nervous).

Again, To *work up* a subject : To acquire familiarity with it by study.

6. To *work unt'rape* (as one may) : To practise economy.

7. To *make short work of* (anything or person). [see Short]

8. In this *work a day* world : practical ; where it is man's portion to work, to eat h s bread in the sweat of his brow.

Lord Chelmsford has the singular advantage of knowing *work-a-day* India at first hand.

**World.** —1. *World-wide* : (adj) spread over the world ; known or found *everywhere*.

Such stories are of almost *world wide* currency.

2. *All the world and his wife* : [See Wife.]

3. *Worldly wise* : Having large experience of the ways of the world or of the affairs of this life (relating particularly to wealth and pleasure).

Merciful over all his works with good

Still overcoming evil and by small,

Accomplishing great things—by things deemed weak

Subverting worldly strong and *worldly wise*

By simply meek, —MILTON, (p. L. xii')

So, *A man of the world*.

4. To make the best of *both worlds*, i. e. this and the next : to reconcile secular and spiritual interests. To show practically that the conflicting secular and spiritual interests may be harmonized.

5. *The world, the flesh, and the devil* : [concrete for the abstract]. Pleasure-seeking sensual gratification and commission of sin. All kinds of worldly temptation.

There were times (for he (St Antony) was still young) when his enthusiasm failed his courage flagged and the temptations of the world and the flesh swept over him with all their storms. — PROTHERO.

6. To *begin the world* : To start one's career in life.

7. As the (or this) *world goes* : As the way of the world

is; In conformity with what usually happens. *As*, *thence* are now. **Cp.** So wags the world.

AY, sir, to be honest, as *this world goes*, is to be one man picked out of ten thousand. — SHAK (12).

8. *Let the world slide.* Don't try to influence events;

*Let the world slide*, let the world go :

A fig for care, and a fig for woe. — J. HERWOOD.

9. *'Take the world as it is or as you find it.* Be adaptable to circumstances and environments.

10. *All is right with the world* : This is the motto of *optimism*, Belief that the movement of the human race is on the whole towards good. The world is gradually passing towards its Golden Age. **Contra** Pessimism. —

11. *The world forgetting by the world forgot* : (adj.) Secluded and retired.

How happy is the blameless vestal's lot !

The world forgetting by the world forgot. — PERC.

12. *World without end* : Eternally (adv.) For ever.

13. *For all the world like* : (adv.) Exactly ; precisely.

14. *Citizen of the world* : A cosmopolitan ; one free from national limitations.

**Worm.**—1. *To worm oneself into* a person's favour or confidence : *To insinuate oneself.* [Prolepsis.]

**Cp.** *To wind oneself or To wind one's way into*

Also, *To wriggle* (V. I.) into

2. *To worm out* (an information, secret, story etc.) of any person : *To extort by crafty persistence.*

**Worry.**—1. *To worry a problem out* : *To assail it repeatedly till its solution is found.*

2. *He worries along* : advances despite adverse circumstances,

3. *You are worrying yourself* : Taking needless trouble.

**Worst.**—1. *To get the worst of it* : To be defeated in a contest.

2. *If the worst come to the worst* : If the worst happens. [generally used with reference to one's death from illness or of an army's defeat in battle.]

**Worth.**—1. It is not *worth while* (to do a thing) i. e. worth the time and pains which it requires; will not repay the time spent (in doing it)

Also, *It is not worth one's while* (to do a thing).

And none however humble in station thinks it *worth while* to show reverence to Cæsar now dead to whom when alive no flattery would have been too great,—DEIGHTON,

2. The man is *worth his salt* : earns his keep by good services ; *well repays* by service whatever is paid as his wages. Efficiently serves.

3. *Little worth*. (pred adj) of no value.

Education without religion is but *little worth*—LORD HARDINGE,

Also, *of no worth* (pred, adj, valueless,

**Would.** *Would-be* : (adj.) vainly aspiring to be called or known as; desiring to be considered as. [*Prefixed* to nouns describing a particular character].

The inclination (to ape the manners) may exist among the small gentility the *would-be* aristocrats of the middle classes.—DICKENS.

**Write.**—1 To *write down* (a note, memorandum, resolution etc) To record or commit to writing. Also, To denounce anything in writing.

2. To *write off* (bad debts etc) To cancel ; To annul (in writing.) Also, He *wrote off* five foolscap pages : composed with facility.

3. To *write out* (any matter) : To write the whole of it. To write it *in full*.

4. I have *written myself out* : I feel exhausted by writing.

5. To *write up* a thing : To praise it *in writing* through the press.

He was busy *writing up* the sad incident i. e. writing an elaborate account of it,

1. **Wrong**—1. In the wrong box: (pred. adv.) awkwardly placed. [See Box.]

2. I am on the wrong side of sixty: Have passed that age. ['shady' side is also used.]

3. You have hold of the wrong side of the stick: hold it invertedly. (Fig.) You have inverted a theory or position.

4. He was born on the wrong side of the blanket: Illegitimate.

5. You are in the wrong: the offending party.

6. I will put you in the wrong: demonstrate that you have given offence.

7. To do wrong to a person: To malign him.

8. (To say or do things) the wrong way about: to treat them unjustly in inverted order.

Cp. To put the cart before the horse.

**Wry.** To make wry face (at): To distort it by turning it to one side. Grimace. A bitterly sarcastic smile. [Sign of annoyance, sneer etc.]

Sardonic smile is a medical term applied to the peculiar twisting of the muscles of the face (wry face) formerly supposed to be caused by eating a Sardinian herb.

## Y.

**Yarn.** 1. To spin a long yarn or yarns: (See Spin)

2. To tell yarns (Ibid)

**Year.**—1. My ward has come to the years of discretion: adolescence; (arrived at) an age when he can distinguish right from wrong. So, In years: (pred. adj.): old; very near the legal age of majority.

2. Year of Grace (i. e. of our Lord) (See Grace).

3. To get into years: To become old,

In 1835 Andrew Pears who then for some years had been established in

a shop, now pulled down and by this time was getting into years decided upon taking his grandson. —C. K. SHORTEN

**4. To bear one's years well :** To bear age lightly.

Although feeble and old Mr. Dadabhai bore *his years well*.

Hence the adj : Full of years. Cp. Young for his years.

Shrinking from no duty for which he felt himself fit and seeking no honour or applause from men, he (Mr. Grote) has departed, *full of years and fame*, an example to all students, whether of history or philosophy to seek the truth, and when they have found it to tell it boldly, without fear or favour. —TIMES

**4A Struken in years :** (pred adj) Enfeebled by age.  
[See Strike.]

**Contra.** *Not borne down* with the pressure of advanced age.

**5. From year to year :** (adv) Each year. So, year by year.

Cp. As years go by.

**6. Yearlong** (practice etc.) : (adj) lasting a year.

**Yeoman.—1. Yeoman's service :** Right trusty service : a great help in real need.

[The yeomen of old days were among the most serviceable of troops. They were voluntary cavalry force raised from farmers and holders of free land of certain annual value.]

A baseness to write fair and laboured much

How to forget that learning (forgery) but sir now

It did me *yeoman's service*. —HAMLET SHAK.

**2. Yeoman of the guard :** Beefeater.

**Yester.** [A prefix-word used before *day* and its part to form compound nouns and adverbs denoting *immediate past*,]

**1. Yesterday :** (both n. and adv); The day immediately preceding to-day. Yesterday (u) was rainy. He came *yesterday* (adv.)

Also, used as adjective e. g. *yesterday morning, yesterday noon, yesterday evening* (Scotch, *yestreen*.)

It should be noted that the forms "yestermorning," "yesternoon" "yester evening" and "yester night" are now considered obsolete. The last form is substituted by "last night,"

2. This form of religion is *but of yesterday's* recent growth.

But yesterday the word of Caesar might  
Have stood against the world; now lies he there  
And none so poor to do him reverence, — SHAK.

**Yet.** *As yet*: (adv.) up to now or then (usually with the suggestion that the statement would not be true of later time.)

The scheme has worked well *as yet*. He has been innocent *as yet*.

**Yoke.**—1. *One's yoke-fellow*: companion in the same kind of laborious work in which one has been engaged.

We feel that Edgar is no unworthy *yoke fellow* in arms with Kent in the fierce struggle against evil wherein their fate has involved them —  
BRINGTON.

2. *One's yoke mate*; one's partner in marriage.

3. *The yoke*: (symbol of) Servitude under some oppressive sway.

**Yore** *Of yore*: (adj.) *Days of yore* = old days.

(Adv) Formerly; in ancient times. Cp. In the good old times.

And often, glad no more,  
We wear a face of joy, because  
We have been glad of yore — WORDSWORTH.

'Whom the gods have die young' was said of yore — BYRON.

**Yculg.**—1. *In my young days* (I was more pious): (adv.) while I was young; in my youth.

2. So, in my school days; in my college days. Cp. Salad days (young inexperienced time.)

2. **My youngsters**: Those that are younger (than I am)

**Contra**: My elders: Those that are senior to me in age.

[Beware of using as synonym youngster (which is used independently of my, your, his etc., and takes the def. article before it) = children.]

FINIS.













